

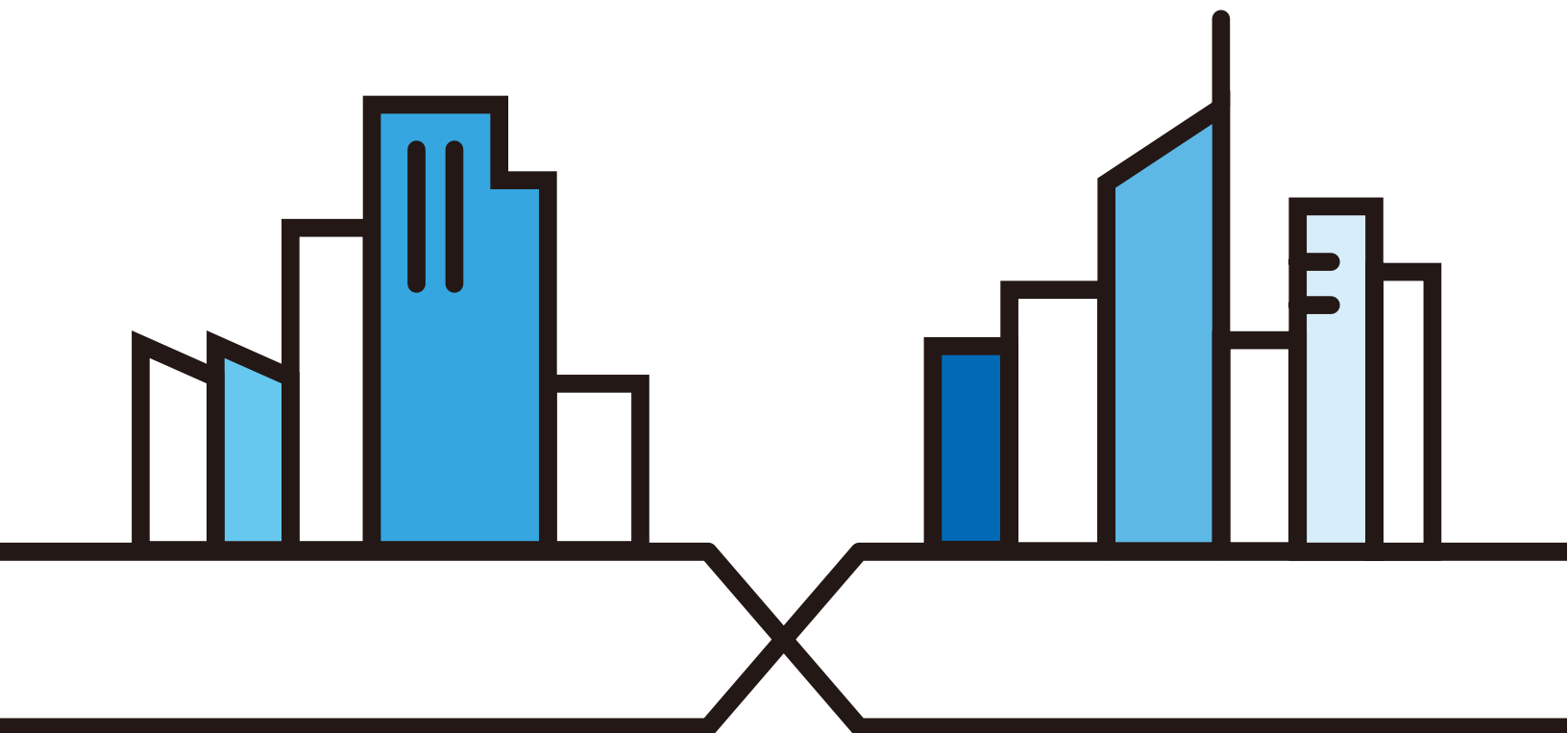
# User's Guide

AX7501-B0/DX5301-B2/DX5301-B3/DX5401-B0/  
EX5300-B3/EX5301-B3/EX5401-B0/EX5501-B0/  
PX7501-B0

## Default Login Details

LAN IP Address	http://192.168.1.1
Login	admin
Password	See the device label

Version 5.15-5.17 Ed 2, 12/2020



---

**IMPORTANT!**

**READ CAREFULLY BEFORE USE.**

**KEEP THIS GUIDE FOR FUTURE REFERENCE.**

This is a series User's Guide. Screenshots and graphics in this book may differ slightly from what you see due to differences in your product firmware or your computer operating system. Every effort has been made to ensure that the information in this manual is accurate.

### **Related Documentation**

- Quick Start Guide

The Quick Start Guide shows how to connect the Zyxel Device.

- More Information

Go to [support.zyxel.com](http://support.zyxel.com) to find other information on the Zyxel Device.



# Document Conventions

## Warnings and Notes

These are how warnings and notes are shown in this guide.

**Warnings tell you about things that could harm you or your device.**










Note: Notes tell you other important information (for example, other things you may need to configure or helpful tips) or recommendations.

## Syntax Conventions

- Product labels, screen names, field labels and field choices are all in **bold** font.
- A right angle bracket ( > ) within a screen name denotes a mouse click. For example, **Network Setting > Routing > DNS Route** means you first click **Network Setting** in the navigation panel, then the **Routing** sub menu and finally the **DNS Route** tab to get to that screen.

## Icons Used in Figures

Figures in this user's guide may use the following generic icons. The Zyxel Device icon is not an exact representation of your device.

Zyxel Device 	Wireless Device 	Laptop Computer 
Switch 	Firewall 	Server 
Internet 	User 	Smartphone 

# Contents Overview

<b>User's Guide</b> .....	<b>17</b>
Introducing the Zyxel Device .....	18
The Web Configurator .....	38
Quick Start Wizard .....	47
Tutorials .....	52
<b>Technical Reference</b> .....	<b>99</b>
Connection Status .....	100
Broadband .....	113
Wireless .....	149
Home Networking .....	184
Routing .....	206
Quality of Service (QoS) .....	214
Network Address Translation (NAT) .....	235
Dynamic DNS Setup .....	252
IGMP/MLD .....	257
VLAN Group .....	260
Interface Grouping .....	263
USB Service .....	271
Firewall .....	277
MAC Filter .....	286
Parental Control .....	288
Scheduler Rule .....	298
Certificates .....	300
VoIP .....	307
Log .....	335
Traffic Status .....	338
VoIP Status .....	342
ARP Table .....	345
Routing Table .....	347
Multicast Status .....	350
WLAN Station Status .....	352
Cellular Statistics .....	354
xDSL Statistics .....	356
xPON Status .....	359
System .....	360
User Account .....	361
Remote Management .....	364

SNMP .....	368
Time Settings .....	371
E-mail Notification .....	374
Log Setting .....	377
Firmware Upgrade .....	381
Backup/Restore .....	383
Diagnostic .....	387
<b>Troubleshooting and Appendices .....</b>	<b>394</b>
Troubleshooting .....	395

---

# Table of Contents

<b>Document Conventions</b> .....	<b>3</b>
<b>Contents Overview</b> .....	<b>4</b>
<b>Table of Contents</b> .....	<b>6</b>
<b>Part I: User's Guide</b> .....	<b>17</b>
<b>Chapter 1</b>	
<b>Introducing the Zyxel Device</b> .....	<b>18</b>
1.1 Overview .....	18
1.1.1 Multi-Gigabit Ethernet .....	19
1.2 Example Applications .....	20
1.2.1 Internet Access .....	20
1.2.2 Dual-Band WiFi .....	21
1.2.3 VoIP Applications .....	22
1.3 Ways to Manage the Zyxel Device .....	22
1.4 Good Habits for Managing the Zyxel Device .....	22
1.5 Hardware .....	23
1.5.1 Top/ Front Panel .....	23
1.5.2 Bottom/ Back Panel .....	30
1.5.3 WPS Button .....	37
1.5.4 RESET Button .....	37
<b>Chapter 2</b>	
<b>The Web Configurator</b> .....	<b>38</b>
2.1 Overview .....	38
2.1.1 Accessing the Web Configurator .....	38
2.2 Web Configurator Layout .....	41
2.2.1 Navigation Panel .....	41
<b>Chapter 3</b>	
<b>Quick Start Wizard</b> .....	<b>47</b>
3.1 Overview .....	47
3.2 Wizard Setup .....	47
3.2.1 Time Zone .....	47
3.2.2 Internet .....	48
3.2.3 WiFi .....	50

**Chapter 4**  
**Tutorials** ..... **52**

- 4.1 Overview ..... 52
- 4.2 Wired Network Setup ..... 52
  - 4.2.1 Setting Up a DSL Connection ..... 52
  - 4.2.2 Setting Up an Ethernet Connection ..... 55
- 4.3 WiFi Network Setup ..... 57
  - 4.3.1 Changing Security on a WiFi Network ..... 58
  - 4.3.2 Connecting to the Zyxel Device's WiFi Network Using WPS ..... 60
  - 4.3.3 Setting Up a Guest Network ..... 64
  - 4.3.4 Setting Up Two Guest WiFi Networks on Different WiFi Bands ..... 68
- 4.4 USB Applications ..... 73
  - 4.4.1 Setting up a Cellular Network Connection ..... 73
  - 4.4.2 File Sharing ..... 74
  - 4.4.3 Media Server ..... 79
  - 4.4.4 Using FTP ..... 83
- 4.5 Network Security ..... 84
  - 4.5.1 Configuring a Firewall Rule ..... 84
  - 4.5.2 Parental Control ..... 86
  - 4.5.3 Configuring a MAC Address Filter ..... 91
- 4.6 Internet Calls ..... 92
  - 4.6.1 Configuring VoIP ..... 92
  - 4.6.2 Adding a SIP Service Provider ..... 92
  - 4.6.3 Adding a SIP Account ..... 93
  - 4.6.4 Configuring a Phone ..... 94
  - 4.6.5 Making a VoIP Call ..... 95
- 4.7 Device Maintenance ..... 96
  - 4.7.1 Upgrading the Firmware ..... 96
  - 4.7.2 Backing up the Device Configuration ..... 96
  - 4.7.3 Restoring the Device Configuration ..... 97

**Part II: Technical Reference**..... **99**

**Chapter 5**  
**Connection Status**..... **100**

- 5.1 Overview ..... 100
  - 5.1.1 Layout Icon ..... 101
  - 5.1.2 Connectivity ..... 101
  - 5.1.3 System Info ..... 102
- 5.2 WiFi Settings ..... 105
- 5.3 Guest WiFi Settings ..... 106

---

5.4 LAN Settings .....	108
5.5 Parental Control .....	109
5.5.1 Create/Edit a Parental Control Profile .....	111
5.5.2 Define a Schedule .....	112
<b>Chapter 6</b>	
<b>Broadband.....</b>	<b>113</b>
6.1 Overview .....	113
6.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter .....	113
6.1.2 What You Need to Know .....	114
6.1.3 Before You Begin .....	117
6.2 Broadband Settings for DX5301-B2/B3 and DX5401-B0 .....	117
6.2.1 Add/Edit Internet Connection .....	118
6.3 Broadband Settings for EX5300, EX5301, EX5401-B0, EX5501, AX7501 and PX7501 .....	125
6.3.1 Add/Edit Internet Connection .....	127
6.4 Cellular Backup .....	134
6.5 The Broadband Advanced Screen .....	140
6.6 Technical Reference .....	144
<b>Chapter 7</b>	
<b>Wireless .....</b>	<b>149</b>
7.1 Wireless Overview .....	149
7.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter .....	149
7.1.2 What You Need to Know .....	149
7.2 Wireless General Settings .....	150
7.2.1 No Security .....	153
7.2.2 More Secure (Recommended) .....	153
7.3 Guest/More AP .....	154
7.3.1 Edit Guest/More AP Settings .....	155
7.4 MAC Authentication .....	159
7.4.1 Add/Edit MAC Addresses .....	161
7.5 WPS Settings .....	161
7.6 WMM Settings .....	163
7.7 Others Settings .....	165
7.8 Channel Status Settings .....	167
7.9 The MESH Screen .....	168
7.10 Technical Reference .....	171
7.10.1 Wireless Network Overview .....	171
7.10.2 Additional Wireless Terms .....	173
7.10.3 Wireless Security Overview .....	173
7.10.4 Signal Problems .....	175
7.10.5 BSS .....	175
7.10.6 MBSSID .....	176



7.10.7 Preamble Type ..... 176  
 7.10.8 WiFi Protected Setup (WPS) ..... 177

**Chapter 8  
 Home Networking..... 184**

8.1 Home Networking Overview ..... 184  
     8.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter ..... 184  
     8.1.2 What You Need To Know ..... 184  
     8.1.3 Before You Begin ..... 186  
 8.2 LAN Setup ..... 186  
 8.3 LAN Static DHCP ..... 191  
 8.4 UPnP Settings ..... 193  
     8.4.1 Turning on UPnP in Windows 7 Example ..... 195  
     8.4.2 Turning on UPnP in Windows 10 Example ..... 196  
 8.5 LAN Additional Subnet ..... 199  
 8.6 STB Vendor ID ..... 200  
 8.7 Wake on LAN ..... 201  
 8.8 TFTP Server Name ..... 202  
 8.9 Technical Reference ..... 203  
     8.9.1 LANs, WANs and the Zyxel Device ..... 203  
     8.9.2 DHCP Setup ..... 204  
     8.9.3 DNS Server Addresses ..... 204  
     8.9.4 LAN TCP/IP ..... 205

**Chapter 9  
 Routing..... 206**

9.1 Overview ..... 206  
 9.2 Static Route Settings ..... 206  
     9.2.1 Add/Edit Static Route ..... 207  
 9.3 DNS Route ..... 209  
     9.3.1 Add DNS Route ..... 209  
 9.4 Policy Route ..... 210  
     9.4.1 Add/Edit Policy Route ..... 212  
 9.5 RIP Settings ..... 213

**Chapter 10  
 Quality of Service (QoS)..... 214**

10.1 QoS Overview ..... 214  
     10.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter ..... 214  
 10.2 What You Need to Know ..... 214  
 10.3 Quality of Service General Settings ..... 216  
 10.4 Queue Setup ..... 218  
     10.4.1 Adding a QoS Queue ..... 220

---

10.5 QoS Classification Setup .....	221
10.5.1 Add/Edit QoS Class .....	222
10.6 QoS Shaper Setup .....	226
10.6.1 Add/Edit a QoS Shaper .....	227
10.7 QoS Policer Setup .....	227
10.7.1 Add/Edit a QoS Policer .....	228
10.8 Technical Reference .....	230
<b>Chapter 11</b>	
<b>Network Address Translation (NAT) .....</b>	<b>235</b>
11.1 NAT Overview .....	235
11.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter .....	235
11.1.2 What You Need To Know .....	235
11.2 Port Forwarding .....	236
11.2.1 Add/Edit Port Forwarding .....	238
11.3 Port Triggering .....	240
11.3.1 Add/Edit Port Triggering Rule .....	243
11.4 DMZ Settings .....	244
11.5 ALG Settings .....	245
11.6 Address Mapping .....	246
11.6.1 Add/Edit Address Mapping Rule .....	247
11.7 NAT Sessions .....	248
11.8 Technical Reference .....	248
11.8.1 NAT Definitions .....	249
11.8.2 What NAT Does .....	249
11.8.3 How NAT Works .....	249
11.8.4 NAT Application .....	250
<b>Chapter 12</b>	
<b>Dynamic DNS Setup .....</b>	<b>252</b>
12.1 DNS Overview .....	252
12.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter .....	252
12.1.2 What You Need To Know .....	252
12.2 DNS Entry .....	253
12.2.1 Add/Edit DNS Entry .....	253
12.3 Dynamic DNS .....	254
<b>Chapter 13</b>	
<b>IGMP/MLD .....</b>	<b>257</b>
13.1 IGMP/MLD Overview .....	257
13.1.1 What You Need To Know .....	257
13.2 IGMP/MLD Settings .....	257

<b>Chapter 14</b>	
<b>VLAN Group</b> .....	<b>260</b>
14.1 Overview .....	260
14.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter .....	260
14.2 VLAN Group Settings .....	261
14.2.1 Add/Edit a VLAN Group .....	261
<b>Chapter 15</b>	
<b>Interface Grouping</b> .....	<b>263</b>
15.1 Interface Grouping Overview .....	263
15.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter .....	263
15.2 Interface Grouping Setup .....	263
15.2.1 Interface Group Configuration .....	265
15.2.2 Interface Grouping Criteria .....	269
<b>Chapter 16</b>	
<b>USB Service</b> .....	<b>271</b>
16.1 USB Service Overview .....	271
16.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter .....	271
16.1.2 What You Need To Know .....	271
16.1.3 Before You Begin .....	272
16.2 File Sharing .....	272
16.2.1 Add New Share .....	274
16.2.2 Add New User .....	275
16.3 Media Server .....	275
<b>Chapter 17</b>	
<b>Firewall</b> .....	<b>277</b>
17.1 Firewall Overview .....	277
17.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter .....	277
17.1.2 What You Need to Know .....	278
17.2 Firewall Settings .....	278
17.3 Protocol Settings .....	280
17.3.1 Add New/Edit Protocol Entry .....	280
17.4 Access Control .....	281
17.4.1 Add/Edit an ACL Rule .....	282
17.5 DoS Settings .....	284
<b>Chapter 18</b>	
<b>MAC Filter</b> .....	<b>286</b>
18.1 MAC Filter Overview .....	286
18.2 MAC Filter Settings .....	286

---

<b>Chapter 19</b>	
<b>Parental Control</b> .....	<b>288</b>
19.1 Parental Control Overview .....	288
19.2 Parental Control Settings For EX5300, EX5301, DX5301-B2/B3 and DX/EX5401 .....	288
19.2.1 Add/Edit a Parental Control Profile .....	289
19.2.2 Define a Schedule .....	290
19.3 Parental Control Settings for AX7501/PX7501 and EX5501 .....	291
19.3.1 Add/Edit a Parental Control Profile .....	293
<b>Chapter 20</b>	
<b>Scheduler Rule</b> .....	<b>298</b>
20.1 Scheduler Rule Overview .....	298
20.2 Scheduler Rule Settings .....	298
20.2.1 Add/Edit a Schedule Rule .....	299
<b>Chapter 21</b>	
<b>Certificates</b> .....	<b>300</b>
21.1 Certificates Overview .....	300
21.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter .....	300
21.2 What You Need to Know .....	300
21.3 Local Certificates .....	300
21.3.1 Create Certificate Request .....	302
21.3.2 View Certificate Request .....	303
21.4 Trusted CA .....	304
21.4.1 View Trusted CA Certificate .....	305
21.4.2 Import Trusted CA Certificate .....	306
<b>Chapter 22</b>	
<b>VoIP</b> .....	<b>307</b>
22.1 Overview .....	307
22.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter .....	307
22.1.2 What You Need to Know About VoIP .....	308
22.2 Before You Begin .....	308
22.3 SIP Account .....	309
22.3.1 SIP Account Add/Edit .....	309
22.4 SIP Service Provider .....	313
22.4.1 SIP Service Provider Add/Edit .....	313
22.5 Phone Device .....	317
22.5.1 Phone Device Edit .....	317
22.6 Phone Region .....	319
22.7 Call Rule .....	319
22.8 Call History .....	320
22.9 Technical Reference .....	322

---

22.9.1 Quality of Service (QoS) .....	329
22.9.2 Phone Services Overview .....	330
<b>Chapter 23</b>	
<b>Log .....</b>	<b>335</b>
23.1 Log Overview .....	335
23.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter .....	335
23.1.2 What You Need To Know .....	335
23.2 System Log .....	336
23.3 Security Log .....	337
<b>Chapter 24</b>	
<b>Traffic Status .....</b>	<b>338</b>
24.1 Traffic Status Overview .....	338
24.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter .....	338
24.2 WAN Status .....	338
24.3 LAN Status .....	340
24.4 NAT Status .....	341
<b>Chapter 25</b>	
<b>VoIP Status .....</b>	<b>342</b>
25.1 VoIP Status Settings .....	342
<b>Chapter 26</b>	
<b>ARP Table .....</b>	<b>345</b>
26.1 ARP Table Overview .....	345
26.1.1 How ARP Works .....	345
26.2 ARP Table Settings .....	346
<b>Chapter 27</b>	
<b>Routing Table .....</b>	<b>347</b>
27.1 Routing Table Overview .....	347
27.2 Routing Table Settings .....	347
<b>Chapter 28</b>	
<b>Multicast Status .....</b>	<b>350</b>
28.1 Multicast Status Overview .....	350
28.2 IGMP Status .....	350
28.3 MLD Status .....	351
<b>Chapter 29</b>	
<b>WLAN Station Status .....</b>	<b>352</b>
29.1 WLAN Station Status Overview .....	352

<b>Chapter 30</b>	
<b>Cellular Statistics</b> .....	<b>354</b>
30.1 Cellular Statistics Overview .....	354
30.2 Cellular Statistics Settings .....	354
<b>Chapter 31</b>	
<b>xDSL Statistics</b> .....	<b>356</b>
31.1 Overview .....	356
31.2 xDSL Statistics .....	356
<b>Chapter 32</b>	
<b>xPON Status</b> .....	<b>359</b>
32.1 Overview .....	359
32.2 xPON Status Screen .....	359
<b>Chapter 33</b>	
<b>System</b> .....	<b>360</b>
33.1 System Overview .....	360
33.2 System Settings .....	360
<b>Chapter 34</b>	
<b>User Account</b> .....	<b>361</b>
34.1 User Account Overview .....	361
34.2 User Account Settings .....	361
34.2.1 User Account Add/Edit .....	362
<b>Chapter 35</b>	
<b>Remote Management</b> .....	<b>364</b>
35.1 Remote Management Overview .....	364
35.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter .....	364
35.2 MGMT Services .....	364
35.3 Trust Domain .....	366
35.3.1 Add Trust Domain .....	367
<b>Chapter 36</b>	
<b>SNMP</b> .....	<b>368</b>
36.1 SNMP Overview .....	368
36.2 SNMP Settings .....	369
<b>Chapter 37</b>	
<b>Time Settings</b> .....	<b>371</b>
37.1 Time Settings Overview .....	371
37.2 Time .....	371

<b>Chapter 38</b>	
<b>E-mail Notification .....</b>	<b>374</b>
38.1 E-mail Notification Overview .....	374
38.2 E-mail Notification Settings .....	374
38.2.1 E-mail Notification Edit .....	375
<b>Chapter 39</b>	
<b>Log Setting .....</b>	<b>377</b>
39.1 Logs Setting Overview .....	377
39.2 Log Settings .....	377
39.2.1 Example E-mail Log .....	379
<b>Chapter 40</b>	
<b>Firmware Upgrade .....</b>	<b>381</b>
40.1 Firmware Upgrade Overview .....	381
40.2 Firmware Upgrade Settings .....	381
<b>Chapter 41</b>	
<b>Backup/Restore .....</b>	<b>383</b>
41.1 Backup/Restore Overview .....	383
41.2 Backup/Restore Settings .....	383
41.3 Reboot .....	386
<b>Chapter 42</b>	
<b>Diagnostic.....</b>	<b>387</b>
42.1 Diagnostic Overview .....	387
42.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter .....	387
42.2 What You Need to Know .....	387
42.3 Diagnostic Settings or Ping & TraceRoute & Nslookup .....	388
42.4 802.1ag (CFM) .....	389
42.5 802.3ah (OAM) .....	390
42.6 OAM Ping .....	392
<b>Part III: Troubleshooting and Appendices.....</b>	<b>394</b>
<b>Chapter 43</b>	
<b>Troubleshooting.....</b>	<b>395</b>
43.1 Power and Hardware Problems .....	395
43.2 Device Access Problems .....	396
43.3 Internet Problems .....	399
43.4 WiFi Problems .....	399

43.5 USB Problems ..... 400

Appendix A Customer Support ..... 401

Appendix B IPv6..... 407

Appendix C Services..... 415

Appendix D Legal Information ..... 419

**Index .....425**



---

# PART I

## User's Guide

---

# CHAPTER 1

## Introducing the Zyxel Device

### 1.1 Overview

Zyxel Device refers to these models as outlined below.

- AX7501-B0
- DX5301-B2
- DX5301-B3
- DX5401-B0
- EX5300-B3
- EX5301-B3
- EX5401-B0
- EX5501-B0
- PX7501-B0

The AX7501-B0 is an AON (Active Optical Network) while the PX7501-B0 is a PON (Passive Optical Network) router. They provide fast Internet access. They both have one 10 Gbps Multi-Gigabit Ethernet LAN port and four 1000 Mbps Ethernet LAN ports.

The DX5401-B0, DX5301-B2 and DX5301-B3 are DSL routers, which provide fast Internet access over telephone lines. They also support WiFi6 that is most suitable in areas with a high concentration of users. You can schedule WiFi usage using Parental Control. See [Section 7.1.2 on page 149](#) for more information on WiFi6.

The EX5300-B3, EX5301-B3, EX5401-B0 and EX5501-B0 are Ethernet gateways which provide fast Internet access. The EX5501-B0 has 2.5 Gbps Multi-Gigabit Ethernet (GbE) WAN ports that are backward compatible with standard Gigabit speed. See [Section 1.1.1 on page 19](#) for more information on Multi-Gigabit Ethernet.

The Zyxel Device also has one USB port that can be configured as a backup WAN port in case the Cellular/Fiber connection has a problem as well as for file sharing and as a media server.

The following table describes the feature differences of the Zyxel Device by model.

Table 1 Zyxel Device Comparison Table

	AX7501-B0	DX5301-B2	DX5301-B3	DX5401-B0	EX5300-B3	EX5301-B3	EX5401-B0	EX5501-B0	PX7501-B0
WiFi6 Wireless Standard	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
2.4G WLAN	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
5G WLAN	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Parental Control Schedule	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Parental Control URL Filter	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes
2.5 Gbe WAN	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	Yes	No
2.5 Gbe LAN	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	Yes	No
10 Gbe LAN	Yes	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	Yes

Table 1 Zyxel Device Comparison Table (continued)

	AX7501 -B0	DX5301 -B2	DX5301 -B3	DX5401 -B0	EX5300 -B3	EX5301- B3	EX5401- B0	EX5501 -B0	PX7501 -B0
1G AON (SFP)	No	Yes	No	Yes	No	No	Yes	No	No
1G Ethernet (SFP)	Yes	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No
2.5G GPON (SFP)	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No
10G AON (SFP)	Yes	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No
10G Ethernet (SFP)	Yes	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No
10G XGPON (SFP+)	Yes	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No
USB 3.0 Port for Cellular Backup, File Sharing and Media Server	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Phone Port (VoIP)	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
DSL Port	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No	No	No	No
Wall Mount	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

## 1.1.1 Multi-Gigabit Ethernet

A 2.5 Gigabit Ethernet port supports speeds of 2.5 Gbps if the connected device supports 2.5 Gbps. While a 10 Gigabit Ethernet port supports speeds of 10 Gbps if the connected device supports 10 Gbps and a Cat 6a (up to 100 m) or Cat 6 cable (up to 50 m) is used.

Some network devices such as gaming computers, servers, network attached storage (NAS) devices, or access points may have network cards that are capable of 2.5 Gbps or 5 Gbps connectivity.

If these devices are connected to a 1 Gbps or 10 Gbps Ethernet port, they can only transmit or receive up to 1 Gbps as speeds of 2.5 Gbps / 10 Gbps cannot be attained. Moreover, if network devices with 2.5 Gbps / 10 Gbps network cards are connected to a 2.5 Gbps / 10 Gbps Ethernet port, you must use Cat 5e / Cat 6A or better Ethernet cables to achieve 2.5 Gbps / 10 Gbps speeds. Most buildings, at the time of writing, use Cat 5e or Cat 6 Ethernet cables.

Multi-Gigabit Ethernet ports automatically allow connections up to the speed of the connected network device (100 Mbps (not supported on EX5501-B0), 1 Gbps, 2.5 Gbps or 5 Gbps), and you just need to use a Cat 5, Cat 5e or Cat 6 Ethernet cable.

See the following table for the cables required and distance limitation to attain the corresponding speed.

Table 2 Ethernet Cable Types

CABLE	TRANSMISSION SPEED	MAXIMUM DISTANCE	BANDWIDTH CAPACITY
Category 5	100 Mbps	100 m	100 MHz
Category 5e	1 Gbps / 2.5 Gbps / 5 Gbps	100 m	100 MHz
Category 6	5 Gbps / 10 Gbps	50 m	250 MHz

Table 2 Ethernet Cable Types

CABLE	TRANSMISSION SPEED	MAXIMUM DISTANCE	BANDWIDTH CAPACITY
Category 6a	10 Gbps	100 m	500 MHz
Category 7	10 Gbps	100 m	650 MHz

## 1.2 Example Applications

This section shows a few examples of using the Zyxel Device in various network environments. Note that the Zyxel Device in the figure is just an example Zyxel Device and not your actual Zyxel Device.

### 1.2.1 Internet Access

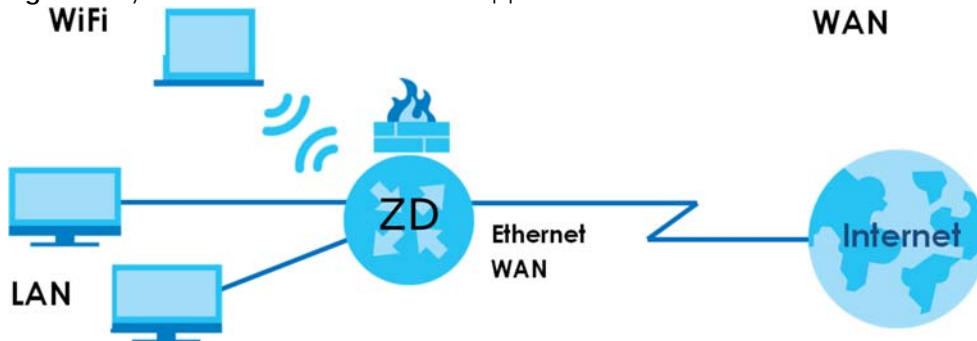
The AX7501-B0, PX7501-B0, DX5401-B0 and EX5401-B0 provides shared Internet access by connecting a fiber optic cable provided by the ISP to the FIBRE port. It supports OMCI (ONU Management and Control Interface) to connect to the ISP's OLT (Optical Line Terminal).

The DX5301-B2/B3 and DX5401-B0 provide Internet access by connecting the WAN port to your ISP through DSL cables.

The EX5501-B0, EX5300-B3, EX5301-B3 and EX5401-B0 provide Internet access by connecting the WAN port to your ISP through Ethernet cables.

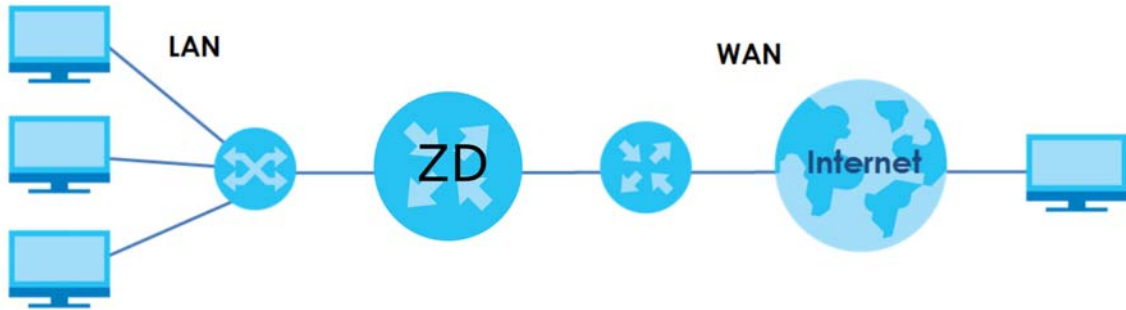
Computers can connect to the Zyxel Device's LAN ports (or wirelessly) and access the Internet simultaneously.

Figure 1 Zyxel Device's Internet Access Application



You can also configure Firewall on the Zyxel Device for secure Internet access. When the Firewall is on, all incoming traffic from the Internet to your network is blocked by default unless it is initiated from your network. This means that probes from the outside to your network are not allowed, but you can safely browse the Internet and download files.

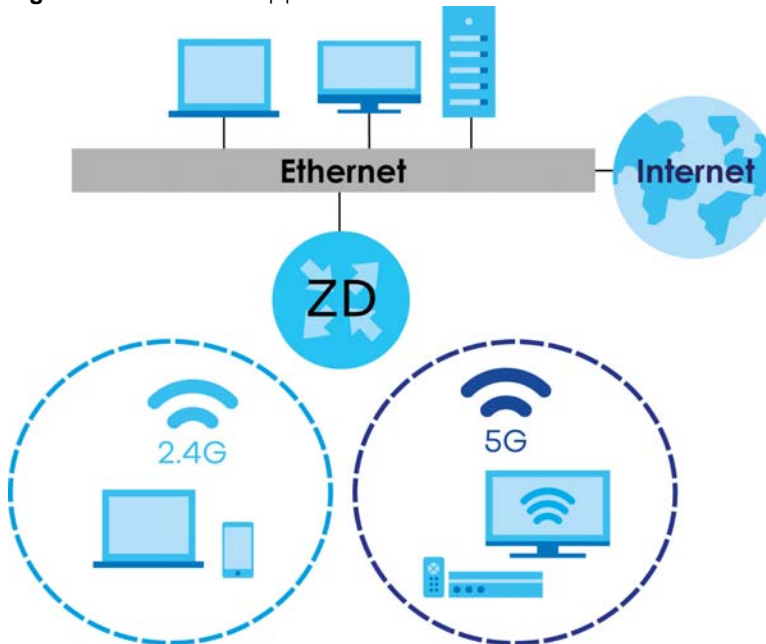
Connect the WAN port to the broadband modem or router. This way, you can access the Internet via an Ethernet connection and use the QoS, Firewall and parental control functions on the Zyxel Device.

**Figure 2** Zyxel Device's Internet Access Application: Ethernet WAN

## 1.2.2 Dual-Band WiFi

By default, WiFi is enabled on the Zyxel Device. IEEE 802.11a/b/g/n/ac/ax compliant clients can wirelessly connect to the Zyxel Device to access network resources.

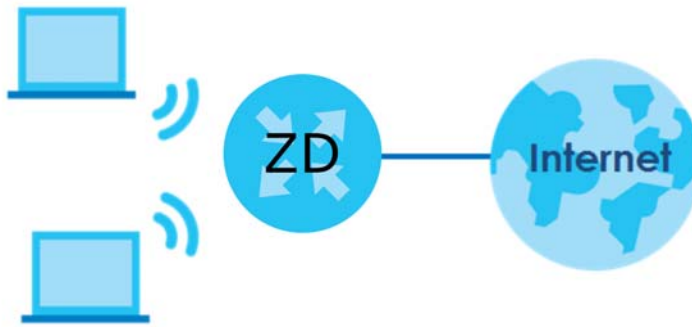
The Zyxel Device is a dual-band gateway that can use both 2.4G and 5G networks at the same time. You could use the 2.4 GHz band for regular Internet surfing and downloading while using the 5 GHz band for time sensitive traffic like high-definition video, music, and gaming.

**Figure 3** Dual-Band Application

The Zyxel Device is a wireless Access Point (AP) for IEEE 802.11b/g/n/a/ac/ax wireless clients, such as notebook computers, iPads, smartphones, and so on. It allows them to connect to the Internet without having to rely on inconvenient Ethernet cables.

Your Zyxel Device supports WiFi Protected Setup (WPS), which allows you to quickly set up a wireless network with strong security.

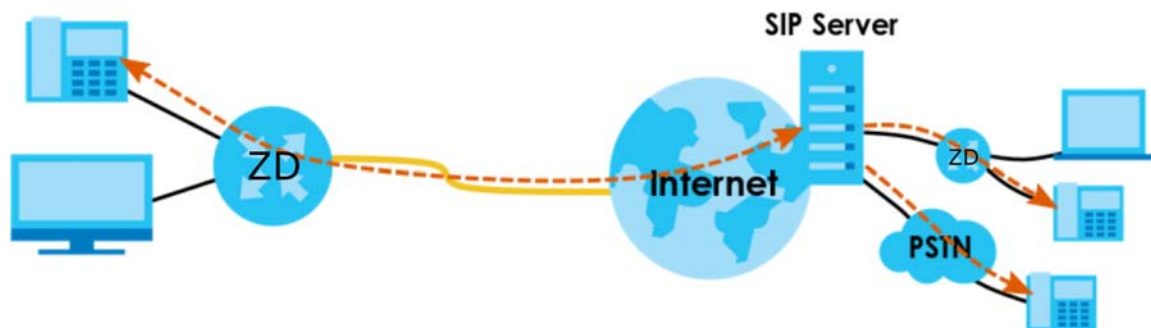
Figure 4 Wireless Access Example



### 1.2.3 VoIP Applications

The Zyxel Device's VoIP function allows you to register up to 2 SIP (Session Initiation Protocol) accounts and use the Zyxel Device to make and receive VoIP telephone calls. The Zyxel Device sends your call to a VoIP service provider's SIP server which forwards the calls to either VoIP or PSTN phones.

Figure 5 VoIP Application



## 1.3 Ways to Manage the Zyxel Device

Use any of the following methods to manage the Zyxel Device.

- Web Configurator. This is recommended for management of the Zyxel Device using a (supported) web browser.
- Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP). Use to monitor and/or manage the Zyxel Device by an SNMP manager. See [Section on page 368](#).
- Secure Shell (SSH), Telnet. Use for troubleshooting the Zyxel Device by qualified personnel.
- FTP. Use FTP for firmware upgrades and configuration backup/restore.

## 1.4 Good Habits for Managing the Zyxel Device

Do the following things regularly to make the Zyxel Device more secure and to manage the Zyxel Device more effectively.

- Change the WiFi and Web Configurator passwords. Use a password that is not easy to guess and that consists of different types of characters, such as numbers and letters.
- Write down the passwords and put it in a safe place.
- Back up the configuration (and make sure you know how to restore it). Restoring an earlier working configuration may be useful if the device becomes unstable or even crashes. If you forget your password, you will have to reset the Zyxel Device to its factory default settings. If you backed up an earlier configuration file, you would not have to totally re-configure the Zyxel Device. You could simply restore your last configuration.

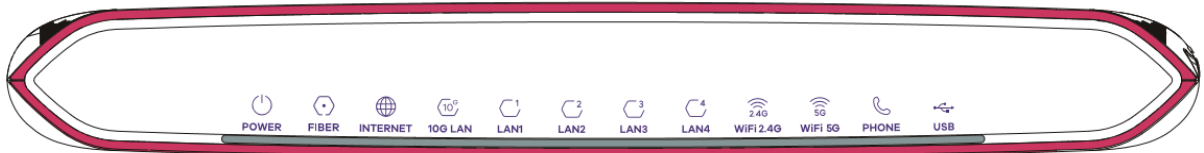
## 1.5 Hardware

This section describes the front and rear panels for each model. If your model is not shown here, refer to the Zyxel Device's Quick Start Guides to see the product drawings and how to make the hardware connections.

### 1.5.1 Top/ Front Panel

The LED indicators are located on the top or front panel.

**Figure 6** LED Indicators (AX7501-B0 / PX7501-B0)

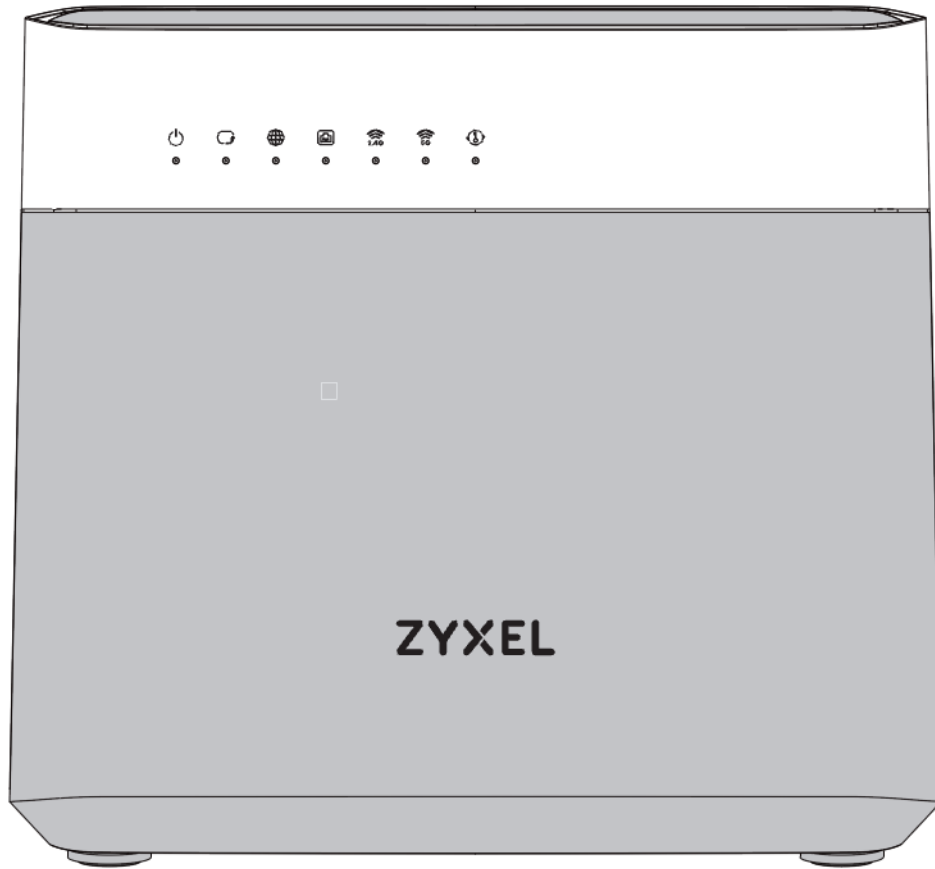


**Figure 7** LED Indicators (DX5301-B2 / DX5301-B3 / EX5301-B3)





**Figure 8** LED Indicators (EX5300-B3)



**Figure 9** LED Indicators (DX5401-B0/EX5401-B0)

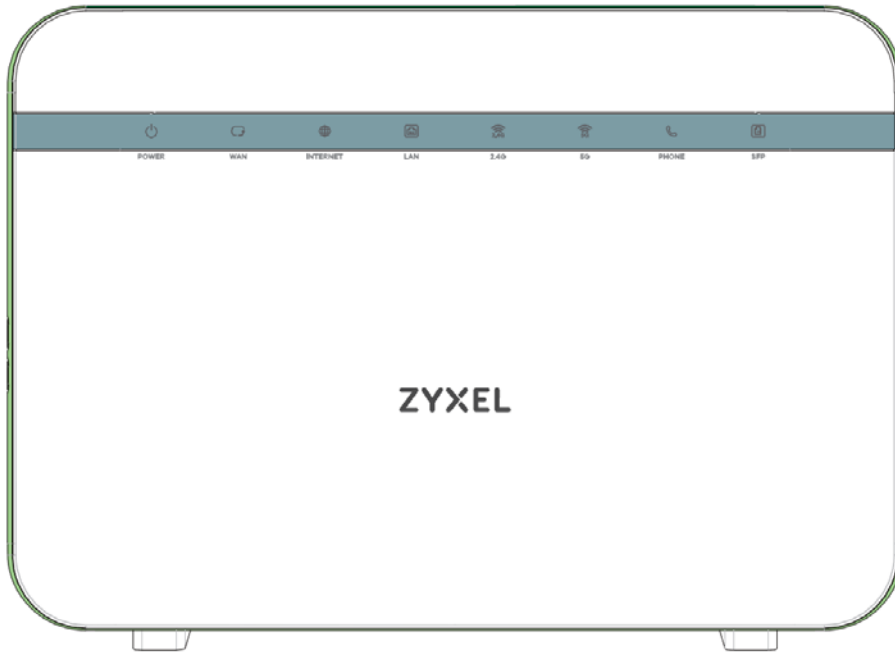


Figure 10 LED Indicators (EX5501-B0)



None of the LEDs are on if the Zyxel Device is not receiving power.

Note: This table is for AX7501, EX5501 and PX7501.

Table 3 LED Descriptions

LED	COLOR	STATUS	DESCRIPTION
POWER	Green	On	The Zyxel Device is receiving power and ready for use.
		Blinking	The Zyxel Device is self-testing.
	Red	On	The Zyxel Device detected an error while self-testing, or there is a device malfunction.
		Blinking	The Zyxel Device is upgrading firmware.
	Off	The Zyxel Device is not receiving power.	
2.5G WAN (for EX5501-B0)	Blue	On	The Zyxel Device has a successful 2.5 Gbps Ethernet connection on the WAN.
	Green	On	The Zyxel Device has a successful 1 Gbps Ethernet connection on the WAN.
		Off	The Zyxel Device does not have an Ethernet connection with the WAN.
			The LED will cycle Green > Blue > Off > repeat, when the Zyxel Device has an unsupported 100 Mbps Ethernet connection on the WAN.
FIBER	Green	On	The FIBER port is connected to the ISP's ONT and the Zyxel Device is receiving optical signals normally.
		Blinking	The Zyxel Device's FIBER port is trying to build a PON connection.
	Red	On	The optical power received (the strength of optical signals transmitted on the remote optical module) is too low.
		Off	The connection to the ISP's ONT is down.
INTERNET	Green	On	The Zyxel Device has an IP connection but no traffic.  Your device has a WAN IP address (either static or assigned by a DHCP server), PPP negotiation was successfully completed (if used).
		Blinking	The Zyxel Device is sending or receiving IP traffic.  Note: For AX7501-B0 / PX7501-B0 only.
		Off	There is no Internet connection or the gateway is in Bridge mode.
	Red	On	The Zyxel Device attempted to make an IP connection but failed. Possible causes are no response from a DHCP server, no PPPoE response, PPPoE authentication failed.
		Blinking	The Zyxel Device has an unsupported 100 Mbps Ethernet connection on the WAN.  Note: For EX5501-B0 only.

Table 3 LED Descriptions (continued)

LED	COLOR	STATUS	DESCRIPTION
2.5G LAN (for the EX5501 only)	Green	On	The Zyxel Device has a successful 2500 Mbps Ethernet connection with a device on the Local Area Network (LAN) via the 2.5G LAN port.
		Blinking	The Zyxel Device is sending or receiving data to/from the LAN at 2500 Mbps via the 2.5G LAN port.
		Off	The Zyxel Device does not have an Ethernet connection with the LAN via the 2.5G LAN port.
10G LAN (for AX7501-B0/ PX7501-B0)	Green	On	The Zyxel Device has a successful 10/100/10000 Mbps Ethernet connection with a device on the Local Area Network (LAN) via the 10G LAN port.
		Blinking	The Zyxel Device is sending or receiving data to/from the LAN at 10/100/10000 Mbps via the 10G LAN port.
		Off	The Zyxel Device does not have an Ethernet connection with the LAN via the 10G LAN port.
LAN1~4	Green	On	The Zyxel Device has a successful 10/100/1000 Mbps Ethernet connection with a device on the Local Area Network (LAN) via the LAN1~4 ports.
		Blinking	The Zyxel Device is sending or receiving data to/from the LAN at 10/100/1000 Mbps via the LAN1~4 ports.  Note: For AX7501-B0 / PX7501-B0 only.
		Off	The Zyxel Device does not have an Ethernet connection with the LAN via the LAN1~4 ports.
WiFi 2.4G	Green	On	The 2.4G wireless network is activated.
		Blinking	The Zyxel Device is communicating with 2.4G wireless clients.  Note: For AX7501-B0 / PX7501-B0 only.
		Off	The 2.4G wireless network is not activated.
	Amber	Blinking	The Zyxel Device is setting up a WPS connection with a 2.4G wireless client.
WiFi 5Gi	Green	On	The 5G wireless network is activated.
		Blinking	The Zyxel Device is communicating with 5G wireless clients.  Note: For AX7501-B0 / PX7501-B0 only.
		Off	The 5G wireless network is not activated.
	Amber	Blinking	The Zyxel Device is setting up a WPS connection with a 5G wireless client.
PHONE	Green	On	A SIP account is registered for the phone port.
		Blinking	The telephone connected to this phone port has an incoming call or is off the hook.
		Off	The phone port does not have a SIP account registered.
	Amber	On	A SIP account is registered for the phone port, and there is a voice message in the corresponding SIP account.
		Blinking	The telephone connected to this phone port has an incoming call or is off the hook. There is a voice message in the corresponding SIP account.
USB	Green	On	The Zyxel Device recognizes a USB connection through the USB port.
		Blinking	The Zyxel Device is sending/receiving data to/from the USB device connected to it.  Note: For AX7501-B0 / PX7501-B0 only.
		Off	The Zyxel Device does not detect a USB connection through the USB port.

Note: This table is for DX5301-B2/B3, EX5300-B3 and EX5301-B3.

Table 4 LED Descriptions







LED	COLOR	STATUS	DESCRIPTION
POWER 	Green	On	The Zyxel Device is receiving power and ready for use.
		Blinking	The Zyxel Device is self-testing.
	Red	On	The Zyxel Device detected an error while self-testing, or there is a device malfunction.
		Blinking	The Zyxel Device is upgrading firmware.
		Off	The Zyxel Device is not receiving power.
WAN  (for DX5301-B2)	Green	On	The DSL or Ethernet WAN or SFP port is connected successfully.  Note: SFP connection has priority over DSL and Ethernet WAN connection. Ethernet WAN connection has priority over DSL connection. The Ethernet WAN and DSL ports will be disabled if SFP link is up. The DSL port will be disabled if the Ethernet WAN link is up.
		Blinking (Slow)	The DX5301-B2 is detecting the connection type (ADSL or VDSL) on its DSL port.
		Blinking (Fast)	The DX5301-B2 connection on its DSL port is in process.
		Off	The DSL or Ethernet WAN or SFP port is not connected successfully.
WAN  (for DX5301-B3)	Green	On	The DSL or Ethernet WAN port is connected successfully.  Note: Ethernet WAN connection has priority over DSL connection. The DSL port will be disabled if the Ethernet WAN link is up.
		Blinking (Slow)	The DX5301-B2 is detecting the connection type (ADSL or VDSL) on its DSL port.
		Blinking (Fast)	The DX5301-B2 connection on its DSL port is in process.
		Off	The DSL or Ethernet WAN port is not connected successfully.
WAN  (for EX5301-B3/EX5300-B3)	Green	On	The Ethernet WAN port is connected successfully.
		Off	The Ethernet WAN port is not connected successfully.
INTERNET 	Green	On	The Zyxel Device has an IP connection but no traffic.  Your device has a WAN IP address (either static or assigned by a DHCP server), PPP negotiation was successfully completed (if used).
		Blinking	The Zyxel Device is sending or receiving IP traffic.
		Off	There is no Internet connection or the gateway is in Bridge mode.
	Red	On	The Zyxel Device attempted to make an IP connection but failed. Possible causes are no response from a DHCP server, no PPPoE response, PPPoE authentication failed.
LAN 	Green	On	The Zyxel Device has a successful 10/100/1000 Mbps Ethernet connection with a device on the Local Area Network (LAN) via the LAN1~4 ports.
		Blinking	The Zyxel Device is sending or receiving data to/from the LAN at 10/100/1000 Mbps via the LAN1~4 ports.
		Off	The Zyxel Device does not have an Ethernet connection with the LAN via the LAN1~4 ports.

Table 4 LED Descriptions (continued)











LED	COLOR	STATUS	DESCRIPTION
WiFi 2.4G 	Green	On	The 2.4G wireless network is activated.
		Blinking	The Zyxel Device is communicating with 2.4G wireless clients.
		Off	The 2.4G wireless network is not activated.
	Amber	Blinking	The Zyxel Device is setting up a WPS connection with a 2.4G wireless client.
WiFi 5G 	Green	On	The 5G wireless network is activated.
		Blinking	The Zyxel Device is communicating with 5G wireless clients.
		Off	The 5G wireless network is not activated.
	Amber	Blinking	The Zyxel Device is setting up a WPS connection with a 5G wireless client.
PHONE  (for DX5301-B2/B3, EX5301-B3 and EX5301-B0)	Green	On	A SIP account is registered for the phone port.
		Blinking	The telephone connected to this phone port has an incoming call or is off the hook.
	Amber	On	A SIP account is registered for the phone port, and there is a voice message in the corresponding SIP account.
		Blinking	The telephone connected to this phone port has an incoming call or is off the hook. There is a voice message in the corresponding SIP account.
		Off	The phone port does not have a SIP account registered.

Table 5 DX5401-B0/EX5401-B0 LED Descriptions

LED	COLOR	STATUS	DESCRIPTION
Power 	Green	On	The Zyxel Device is receiving power and ready for use.
		Blinking	The Zyxel Device is self-testing.
	Red	On	The Zyxel Device detects an error while self-testing, or there is a device malfunction.
		Blinking	The Zyxel Device is upgrading firmware.
		Off	The Zyxel Device is not receiving power.
DSL / Ethernet WAN  (DSL is for DX5401-B0 only)	Green	On	The VDSL line or a successful 10/100/1000 Mbps Ethernet connection on the WAN is up.
		Slow Blinking	The Zyxel Device is looking for a VDSL line.
		Fast Blinking	The Zyxel Device is initializing the VDSL line.
		Off	There is no Ethernet connection on the WAN.
	Amber	On	The ADSL line on the WAN is up.
		Slow Blinking	The Zyxel Device is looking for an ADSL line
		Fast Blinking	The Zyxel Device is initializing the ADSL line.

LED	COLOR	STATUS	DESCRIPTION
Internet 	Green	On	The Zyxel Device has an IP connection but no traffic.  Your device has a WAN IP address (either static or assigned by a DHCP server), PPP negotiation was successfully completed (if used) and the DSL connection is up.
		Blinking	The Zyxel Device is sending or receiving IP traffic.
		Off	There is no Internet connection or the gateway is in bridged mode.
	Red	On	The Zyxel Device attempted to make an IP connection but failed. Possible causes are no response from a DHCP server, no PPPoE response, PPPoE authentication failed.
LAN1~4 	Green	On	The Zyxel Device has a successful 10/100/1000 Mbps Ethernet connection with a device on the Local Area Network (LAN).
		Blinking	The Zyxel Device is sending or receiving data to/from the LAN at 10/100/1000 Mbps.
		Off	The Zyxel Device does not have an Ethernet connection with the LAN.
2.4G WLAN/ WPS 	Green	On	The 2.4 GHz wireless network is activated.
		Blinking	The Zyxel Device is communicating with 2.4 GHz wireless clients.
		Off	The 2.4 GHz wireless network is not activated.
	Amber	On	The WPS process fails.
		Blinking	The Zyxel Device is setting up a WPS connection with a 2.4 GHz wireless client.
5G WLAN/ WPS 	Green	On	The 5 GHz wireless network is activated.
		Blinking	The Zyxel Device is communicating with 5 GHz wireless clients.
		Off	The 5 GHz wireless network is not activated.
	Amber	On	The WPS process fails.
		Blinking	The Zyxel Device is setting up a WPS connection with a 5 GHz wireless client.
Phone1, Phone2 	Green	On	A SIP account is registered for at least one phone port, and there's no voice message in the corresponding SIP account.
		Blinking	A telephone connected to one of the phone port has its receiver off the hook or there is an incoming call. There's no voice message in the corresponding SIP account.
	Amber	On	A SIP account is registered for the phone port and there is a voice message in the corresponding SIP account.
		Blinking	A telephone connected to the phone port has its receiver off the hook or there is an incoming call. There's voice message in the corresponding SIP account.
		Off	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The SIP account is not enabled.</li> <li>The phone port does not have a SIP account registered.</li> </ul>
	SFP	Green	On
Off			A fiber link is down.

## 1.5.2 Bottom/ Back Panel

The connection ports are located on the bottom or back panel.

Figure 11 AX7501-B0 Bottom Panel

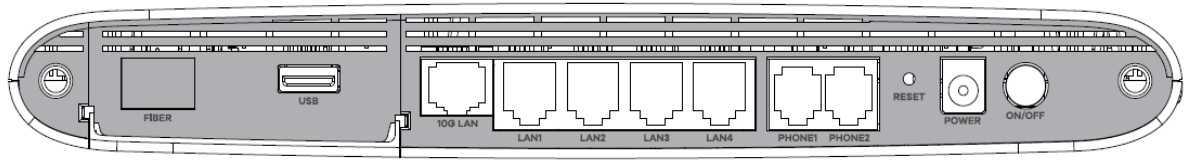


Figure 12 DX5301-B2 / DX5301-B3 Back Panel

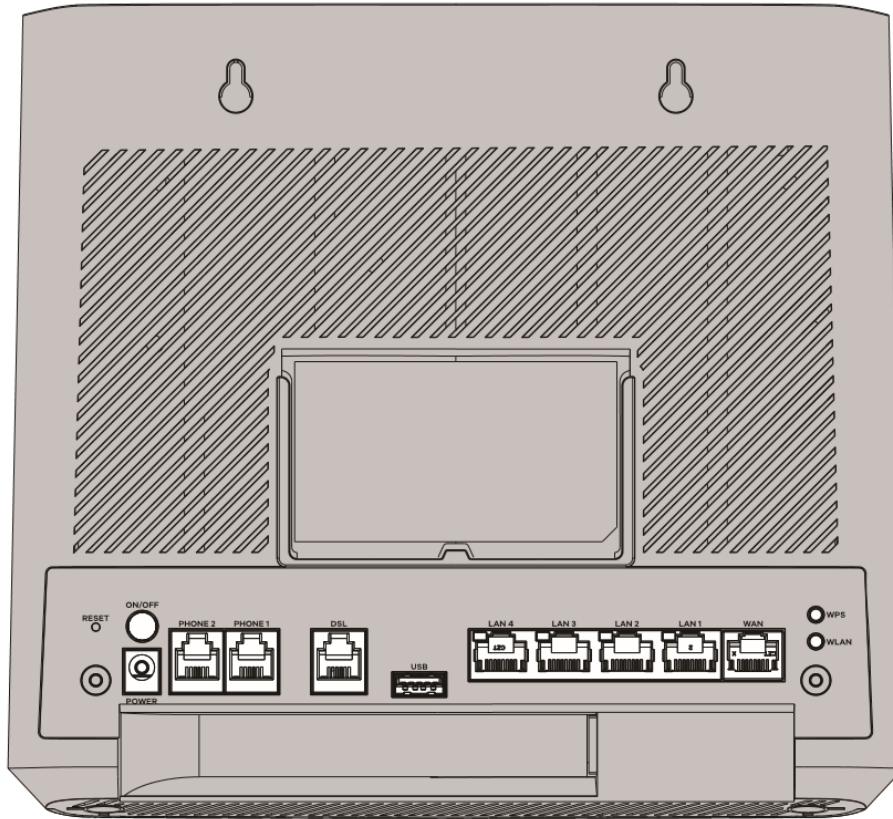


Figure 13 DX5401-B0 Back Panel

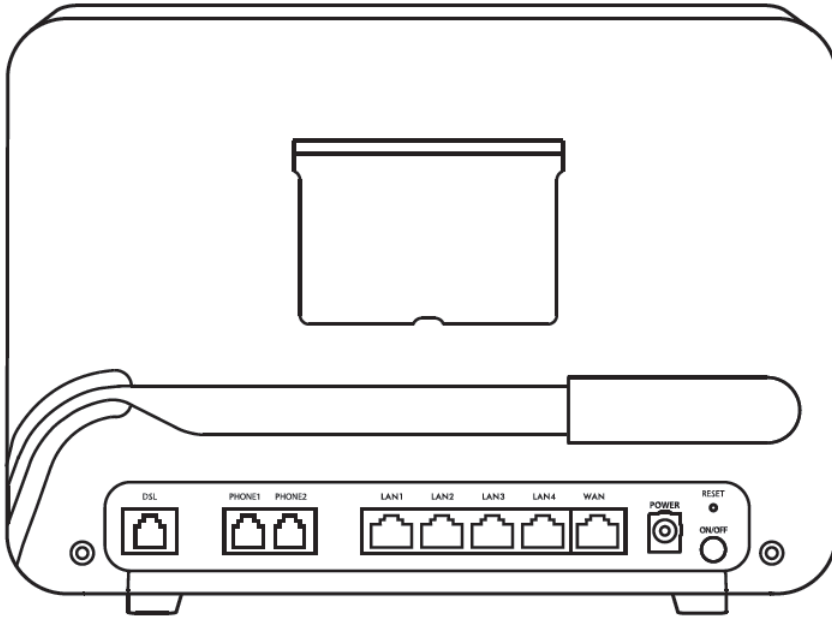


Figure 14 EX5300-B3 Back Panel

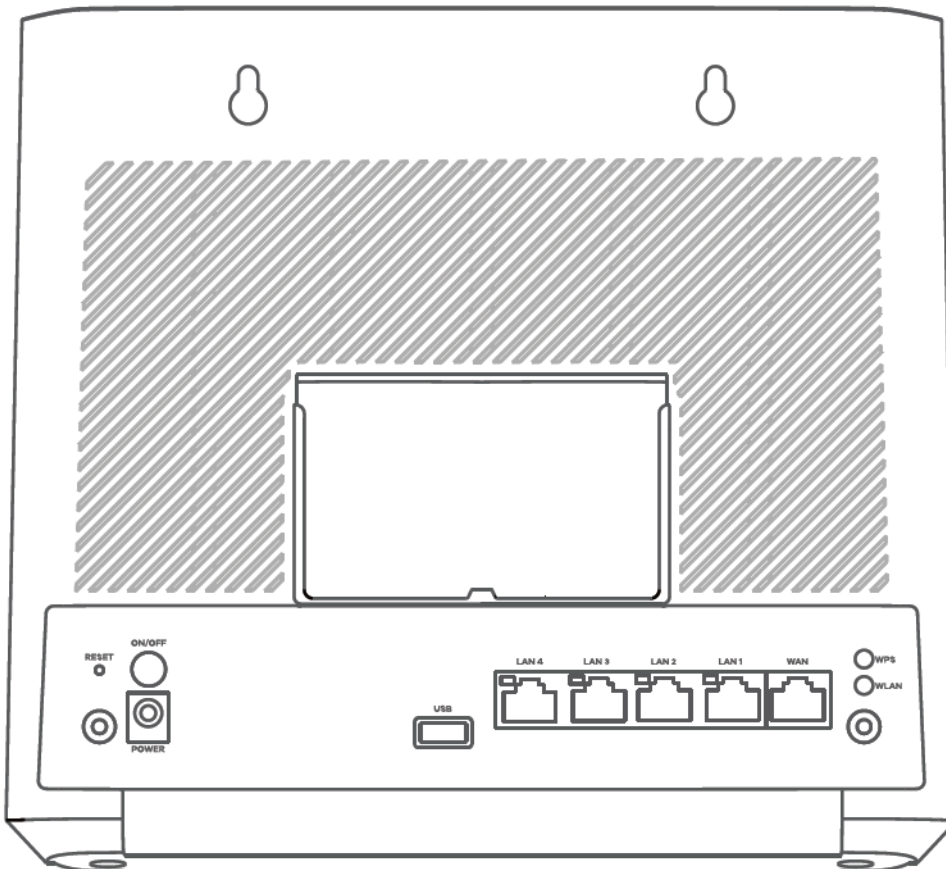




Figure 15 EX5301-B3 Back Panel

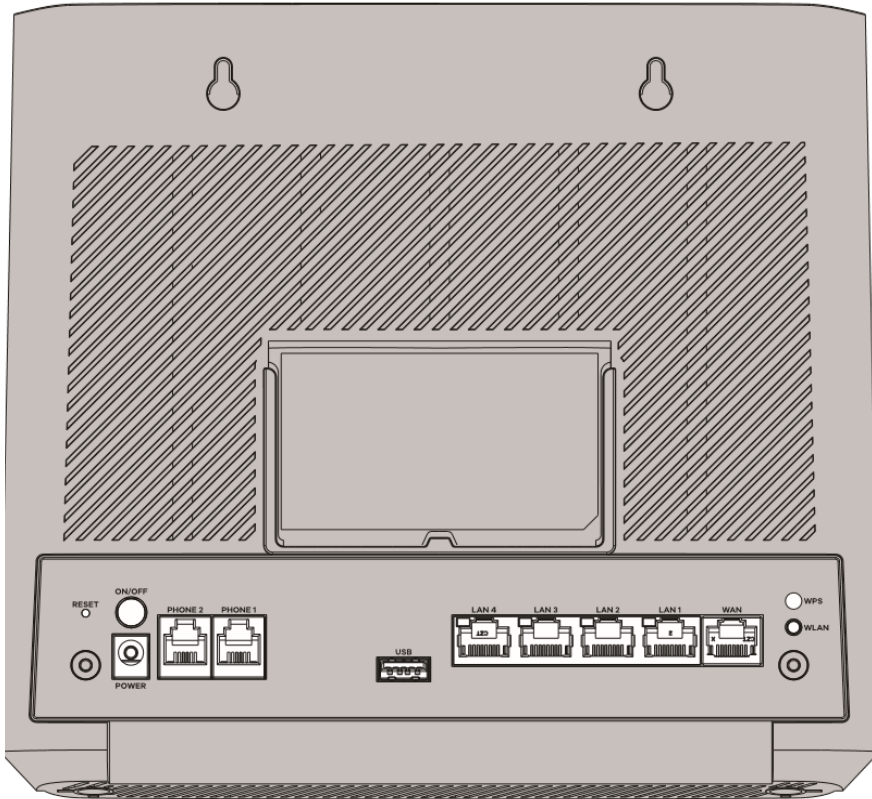
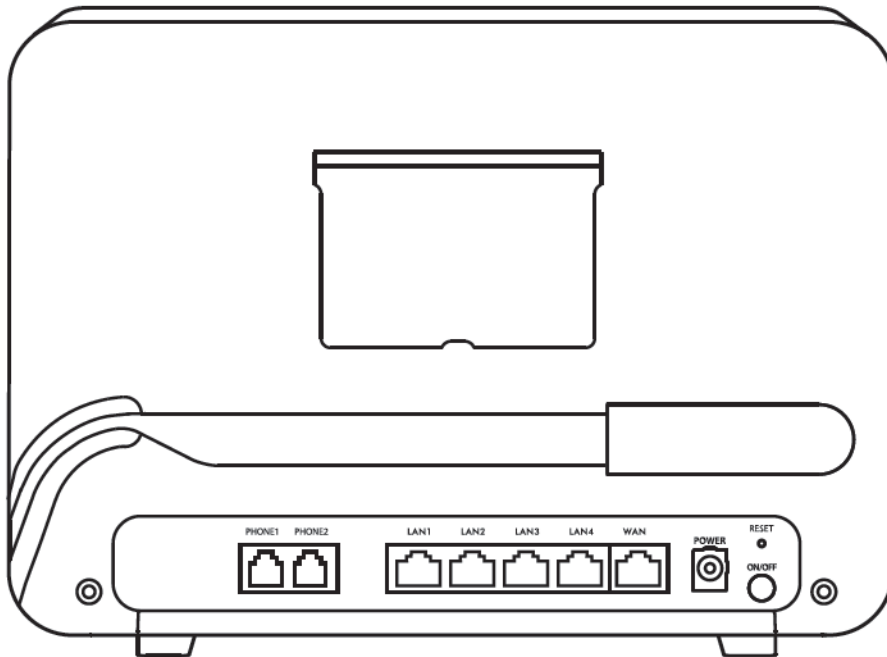
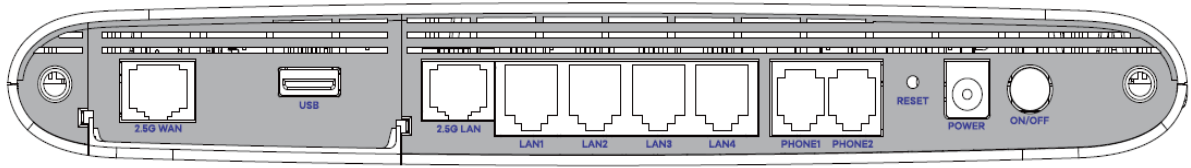


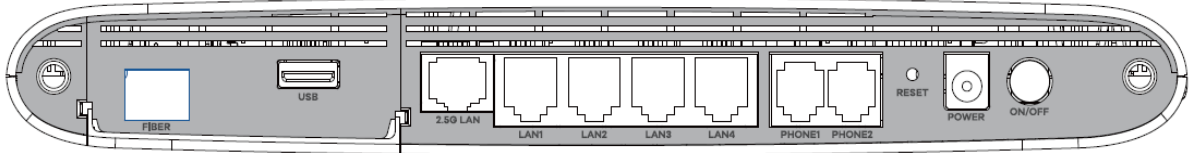
Figure 16 EX5401-B0 Back Panel



**Figure 17** EX5501-B0 Bottom Panel



**Figure 18** PX7501-B0 Bottom Panel



The following table describes the items on the bottom and side panels of EX5501, AX7501 and PX7501.

**Table 6** Panel Ports and Buttons

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
2.5G WAN	For EX5501 Connect an Ethernet cable to the Ethernet WAN port for Internet access.
FIBER	For AX7501-B0 Insert a compatible SFP+ transceiver to the FIBER port and connect the fiber optic cable for Internet access.  For PX7501-B0 Connect the fiber optic cable to the FIBER port for Internet access.
USB	The USB port is used for cellular WAN backup, file-sharing, and media server.
LAN1 ~ LAN4 2.5G LAN 10G LAN	Connect computers or other Ethernet devices to Ethernet ports for Internet access.
PHONE1/2	Connect analog phones to the PHONE ports to make phone calls.
RESET	Press the button to return the Zyxel Device to the factory defaults.
POWER	Connect the power adapter and press the ON/OFF button to start the device.
WPS	Press the WPS button for more than 1 second (EX5501-B0) / 5 seconds (AX7501-B0 / PX7501-B0) to quickly set up a secure wireless connection between the device and a WPS-compatible client.
WLAN	Press the WLAN button for more than 1 second (EX5501-B0) / 2 seconds (AX7501-B0 / PX7501-B0) to enable the wireless function.

The following table describes the items on the bottom and side panels of DX5301-B2/B3, DX5401-B0, EX5300-B3, EX5301-B3 and EX5401-B0.

**Table 7** Panel Ports and Buttons

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
WAN	For DX5301-B3, EX5300-B3, EX5301-B3 and EX5401-B0, connect an Ethernet cable to the WAN port for Internet access.  For DX5301-B2, connect an Ethernet cable or a SFP cable for Internet access.
LAN1 ~ LAN4	Connect computers or other Ethernet devices to Ethernet ports for Internet access.
FIBER	For DX5401-B0 and EX5401-B0, Insert a compatible SFP transceiver to the FIBER port and connect the fiber optic cable for Internet access.

Table 7 Panel Ports and Buttons (continued)

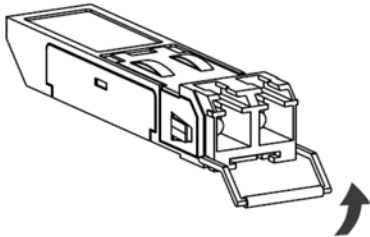
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
USB	The USB port is used for cellular WAN backup, file-sharing, and media server.
DSL	For DX5301-B2/B3 and DX5401-B0, connect a DSL cable to the DSL port for Internet connection.
PHONE1/2	For EX5301-B3, DX5301-B2/B3, DX5401-B0 and EX5401-B0, connect analog phones to the PHONE ports to make phone calls.
RESET	Press the button to return the Zyxel Device to the factory defaults.
POWER	Connect the power adapter and press the ON/OFF button to start the device.
WPS	Press the WPS button for more than 5 second to quickly setup a secure wireless connection between the device and a WPS-compatible client.
WLAN	Press the WLAN button for more than 2 second to enable the wireless function.

## Transceiver Installation

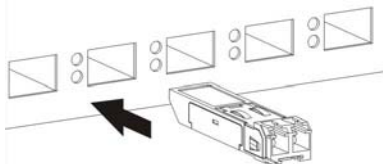
Use the following steps to install an SFP transceiver.

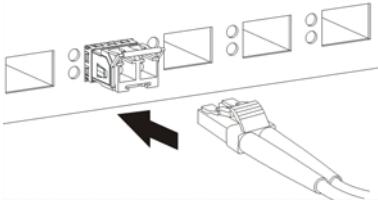
- 1 Attach an ESD preventive wrist strap to your wrist and to a bare metal surface.
- 2 Align the transceiver in front of the slot opening.
- 3 Make sure the latch is in the lock position (latch styles vary), then insert the transceiver into the slot with the exposed section of PCB board facing down.
- 4 Press the transceiver firmly until it clicks into place.
- 5 The Zyxel Device automatically detects the installed transceiver. Check the LEDs to verify that it is functioning properly.
- 6 Remove the dust plugs from the transceiver and cables (dust plug styles vary).
- 7 Identify the signal transmission direction of the fiber cables and the transceiver. Insert the fiber cable into the transceiver.

**Figure 19** Latch in the Lock Position



**Figure 20** Transceiver Installation Example



**Figure 21** Connecting the Fiber Cables

## Transceiver Removal

Use the following steps to remove an SFP transceiver.

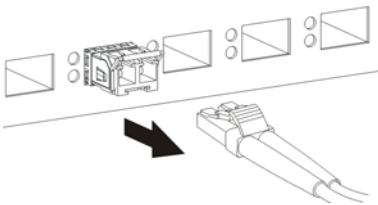
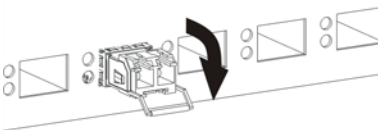
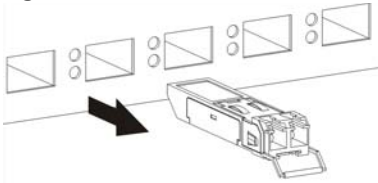
- 1 Attach an ESD preventive wrist strap to your wrist and to a bare metal surface on the chassis.
- 2 Remove the fiber cables from the transceiver.
- 3 Pull out the latch and down to unlock the transceiver (latch styles vary).

Note: Make sure the transceiver's latch is pushed all the way down, so the transceiver can be pulled out successfully.

- 4 Pull the latch, or use your thumb and index finger to grasp the tabs on both sides of the transceiver, and carefully slide it out of the slot.

Note: Do NOT pull the transceiver out by force. You could damage it. If the transceiver will not slide out, grasp the tabs on both sides of the transceiver with a slight up or down motion and carefully slide it out of the slot. If unsuccessful, contact Zyxel Support to prevent damage to your Zyxel Device and transceiver.

- 5 Insert the dust plug into the ports on the transceiver and the cables.

**Figure 22** Removing the Fiber Cables**Figure 23** Opening the Transceiver's Latch Example**Figure 24** Transceiver Removal Example

### 1.5.3 WPS Button

You can use the **WPS** button to quickly set up a secure wireless connection between the Zyxel Device and a WPS-compatible client by adding one device at a time.

To activate WPS:

- 1 Make sure the **POWER** LED is on and not blinking.
- 2 Press the **WPS** button for 1 second (EX5501-B0) / 5 seconds (AX7501-B0, DX5301-B2/B3, DX5401-B0, EX5300-B3, EX5301-B3, EX5401-B0 and PX7501-B0) and release it.
- 3 Press the **WPS** button on another WPS-enabled device within range of the Zyxel Device within 120 seconds. The **WIFI 2.4G / WIFI 5G** LED flashes amber while the Zyxel Device sets up a WPS connection with the other wireless device.
- 4 Once the connection is successfully made, the **WIFI 2.4G / WIFI 5G** LED will light green.

### 1.5.4 RESET Button

If you forget your password or cannot access the Web Configurator, you will need to use the **RESET** button to reload the factory-default configuration file. This means that you will lose all configurations that you had previously. The password will be reset to the factory default (see the device label), and the LAN IP address will be "192.168.1.1".

- 1 Make sure the **POWER** LED is on (not blinking).
- 2 To set the device back to the factory default settings, press the **RESET** button for more than 5 seconds or until the **POWER** LED begins to blink and then release it. When the **POWER** LED begins to blink, the defaults have been restored and the device restarts.

# CHAPTER 2

## The Web Configurator

### 2.1 Overview

The Web Configurator is an HTML-based management interface that allows easy system setup and management via Internet browser. Use a browser that supports HTML5, such Internet Explorer 11, Mozilla Firefox, or Google Chrome. The recommended screen resolution is 1024 by 768 pixels.

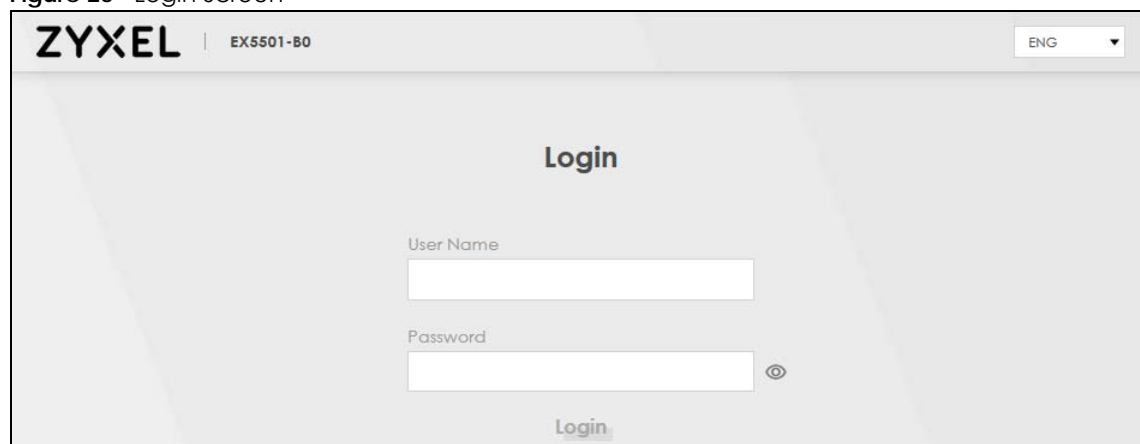
In order to use the Web Configurator you need to allow:

- Web browser pop-up windows from your device.
- JavaScript (enabled by default).
- Java permissions (enabled by default).

#### 2.1.1 Accessing the Web Configurator

- 1 Make sure your Zyxel Device hardware is properly connected (refer to the Quick Start Guide).
- 2 Make sure your computer has an IP address in the same subnet as the Zyxel Device. Your computer should have an IP address from 192.168.1.2 to 192.168.1.254. See [Section 43.2 on page 396](#) for more details.
- 3 Launch your web browser. If the Zyxel Device does not automatically re-direct you to the login screen, go to <http://192.168.1.1>.
- 4 A login screen displays. Select the language you prefer.
- 5 To access the administrative Web Configurator and manage the Zyxel Device, type the default username **admin** and the randomly assigned default password (see the device label) in the login screen and click **Login**. If you have changed the password, enter your password and click **Login**.

Figure 25 Login Screen

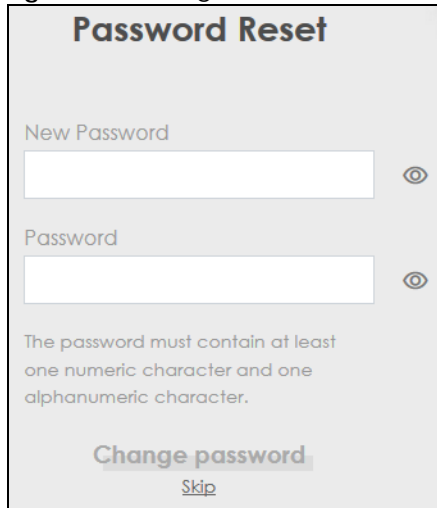


The screenshot shows the Zyxel Web Configurator login interface. At the top left, the Zyxel logo and model number 'EX5501-B0' are displayed. At the top right, there is a language selection dropdown menu currently set to 'ENG'. The central heading is 'Login'. Below this, there are two input fields: 'User Name' and 'Password'. The 'Password' field includes a small eye icon to toggle password visibility. At the bottom center, there is a 'Login' button.

Note: The default allowable times that you can enter the **Password** is 3. If you entered the wrong password for the fourth time, by default the Web Configurator will lock itself for 5 minutes before you can try entering the correct **Password** again. You can change these settings in **Maintenance > User Account > Add New / Edit Account** (see [Section 34.2.1 on page 362](#)).

- 6 The following screen displays when you log into the Web Configurator for the first time. Enter a new password, retype it to confirm, and click **Change password**. If you prefer to use the default password, click **Skip**.

**Figure 26** Change Password Screen



**Password Reset**

New Password

Password

The password must contain at least one numeric character and one alphanumeric character.

**Change password**

Skip

- 7 The **Wizard** screen displays when you log into the Web Configurator for the first time. Use the **Wizard** screens to configure the Zyxel Device's time zone, basic Internet access, and wireless settings. See [Chapter 3 on page 47](#) for more information about the **Wizard** screens.
- 8 The **Connection Status** page appears. Use this screen to configure basic Internet access, wireless settings, and parental control settings (see [Section 5.1 on page 100](#) for details).

Figure 27 Connection Status

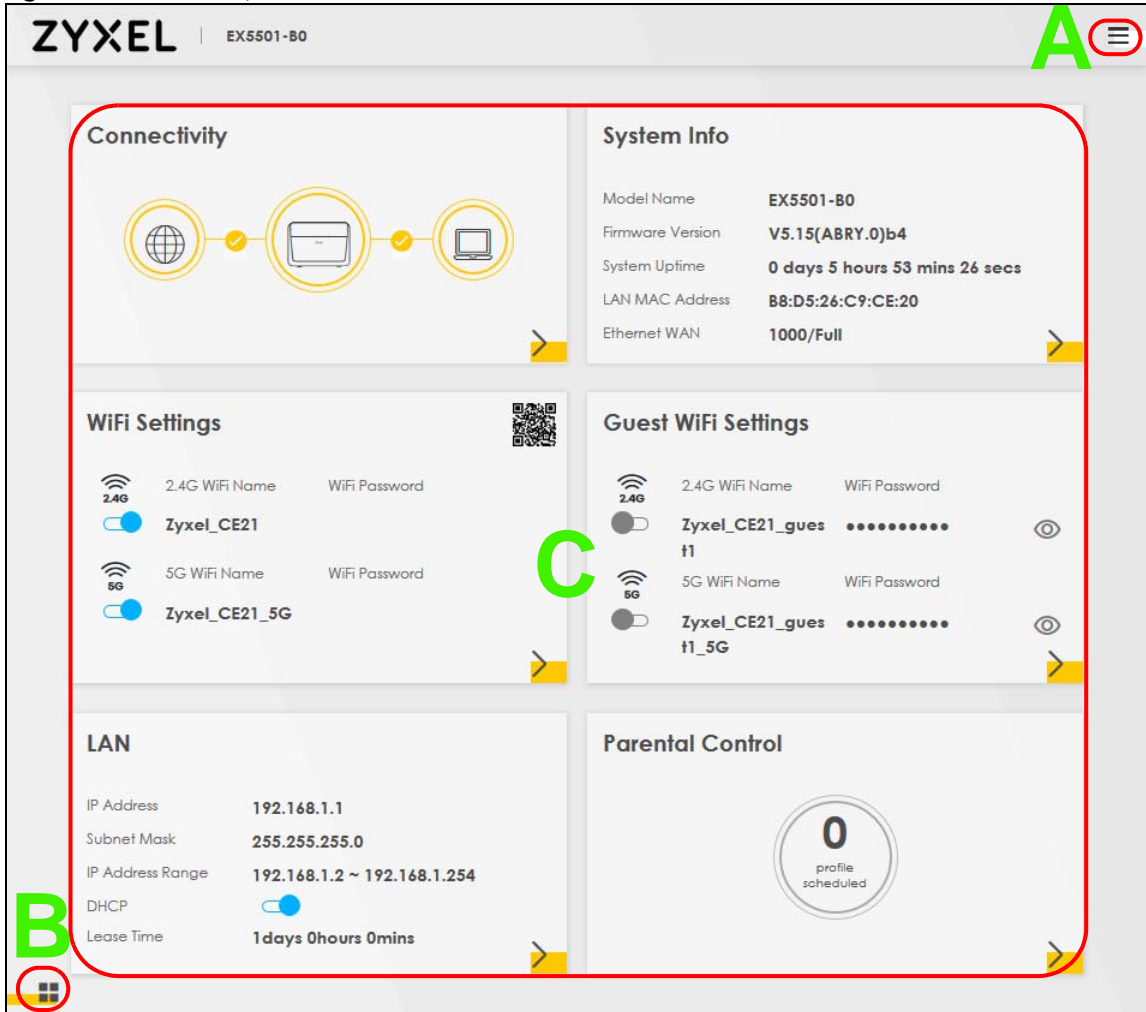
The screenshot displays the 'Connection Status' page of a web configurator, organized into six main sections:

- Connectivity:** Shows a network diagram with three nodes (Internet, Router, Client) connected by lines with checkmarks, indicating successful connectivity.
- System Info:**
  - Model Name: EX5501-B0
  - Firmware Version: V5.15(ABRY.0)b4
  - System Uptime: 0 days 5 hours 50 mins 18 secs
  - LAN MAC Address: B8:D5:26:C9:CE:20
  - Ethernet WAN: 1000/Full
- WiFi Settings:** Includes a QR code and two sections:
  - 2.4G:** WiFi Name: Zyxel\_CE21, WiFi Password: [Redacted]
  - 5G:** WiFi Name: Zyxel\_CE21\_5G, WiFi Password: [Redacted]
- Guest WiFi Settings:** Includes two sections:
  - 2.4G:** WiFi Name: Zyxel\_CE21\_gues t1, WiFi Password: [Redacted]
  - 5G:** WiFi Name: Zyxel\_CE21\_gues t1\_5G, WiFi Password: [Redacted]
- LAN:**
  - IP Address: 192.168.1.1
  - Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0
  - IP Address Range: 192.168.1.2 ~ 192.168.1.254
  - DHCP:
  - Lease Time: 1 days 0 hours 0 mins
- Parental Control:** Shows a circular gauge with '0' in the center, indicating '0 profile scheduled'.



## 2.2 Web Configurator Layout

Figure 28 Screen Layout



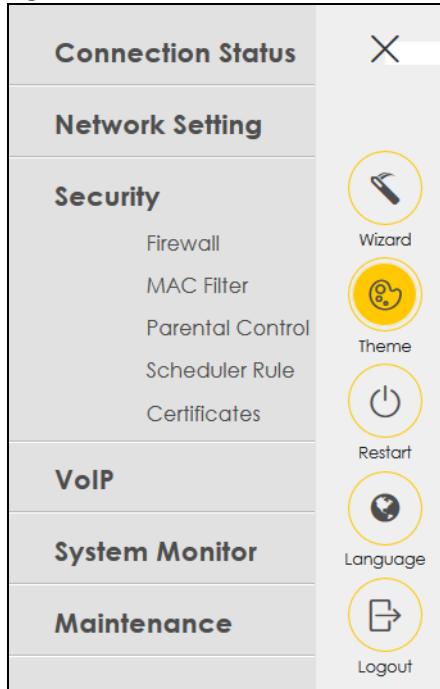
As illustrated above, the main screen is divided into these parts:

- A - Navigation Panel
- B - Layout Icon
- C - Main Window

### 2.2.1 Navigation Panel

Click the menu icon (☰) to display the navigation panel that contains configuration menus and icons (quick links). Click X to close the navigation panel.

Figure 29 Navigation Panel



### 2.2.1.1 Configuration Menus

Use the menu items on the navigation panel to open screens to configure Zyxel Device features. The following tables describe each menu item.

Table 8 Configuration Menus Summary

LINK	TAB	FUNCTION
Connection Status		Use this screen to configure basic Internet access, wireless settings, and parental control settings. This screen also shows the network status of the Zyxel Device and computers/devices connected to it.
Network Setting		
Broadband	Broadband	Use this screen to view and configure ISP parameters, WAN IP address assignment, and other advanced properties. You can also add new WAN connections.
	Cellular Backup	Use this screen to configure a cellular WAN connection as a backup to keep you online if the primary WAN connection fails.
	Advanced	Use this screen to enable or disable PTM over ADSL, Annex M/Annex J, and DSL PhyR functions.
Wireless	General	Use this screen to configure the WiFi settings and wireless LAN authentication/security settings.
	Guest/More AP	Use this screen to configure multiple BSSs on the Zyxel Device.
	MAC Authentication	Use this screen to block or allow wireless traffic from wireless devices of certain SSIDs and MAC addresses to the Zyxel Device.
	WPS	Use this screen to configure and view your WPS (WiFi Protected Setup) settings.
	WMM	Use this screen to enable or disable WiFi MultiMedia (WMM).
	Others	Use this screen to configure advanced wireless settings.
	Channel Status	Use this screen to scan WiFi channel noises and view the results.

Table 8 Configuration Menus Summary (continued)

LINK	TAB	FUNCTION
	MESH	Use this screen to enable or disable Zyxel Mesh (Multy Pro).
Home Networking	LAN Setup	Use this screen to configure LAN TCP/IP settings, and other advanced properties.
	Static DHCP	Use this screen to assign specific IP addresses to individual MAC addresses.
	UPnP	Use this screen to turn UPnP and UPnP NAT-T on or off.
	Additional Subnet	Use this screen to configure IP alias and public static IP.
	STB Vendor ID	Use this screen to configure the Vendor IDs of the connected Set Top Box (STB) devices, which have the Zyxel Device automatically create static DHCP entries for the STB devices when they request IP addresses.
	Wake on LAN	Use this screen to remotely turn on a device on the local network.
	TFTP Server Name	Use DHCP option 66 to identify a TFTP server name.
Routing	Static Route	Use this screen to view and set up static routes on the Zyxel Device.
	DNS Route	Use this screen to forward DNS queries for certain domain names through a specific WAN interface to its DNS server(s).
	Policy Route	Use this screen to configure policy routing on the Zyxel Device.
	RIP	Use this screen to configure Routing Information Protocol to exchange routing information with other routers.
QoS	General	Use this screen to enable QoS and traffic prioritizing. You can also configure the QoS rules and actions.
	Queue Setup	Use this screen to configure QoS queues.
	Classification Setup	Use this screen to define a classifier.
	Shaper Setup	Use this screen to limit outgoing traffic rate on the selected interface.
	Policer Setup	Use this screen to configure QoS policers.
NAT	Port Forwarding	Use this screen to make your local servers visible to the outside world.
	Port Triggering	Use this screen to change your Zyxel Device's port triggering settings.
	DMZ	Use this screen to configure a default server which receives packets from ports that are not specified in the <b>Port Forwarding</b> screen.
	ALG	Use this screen to enable the ALGs (Application Layer Gateways) in the Zyxel Device to allow applications to operate through NAT.
	Address Mapping	Use this screen to change your Zyxel Device's address mapping settings.
	Sessions	Use this screen to configure the maximum number of NAT sessions each client host is allowed to have through the Zyxel Device.
DNS	DNS Entry	Use this screen to view and configure DNS routes.
	Dynamic DNS	Use this screen to allow a static hostname alias for a dynamic IP address.
IGMP/MLD	IGMP/MLD	Use this screen to configure multicast settings (IGMP for IPv4 and MLD for IPv6 multicast groups) on the WAN.
VLAN Group	VLAN Group	Use this screen to group and tag VLAN IDs to outgoing traffic from the specified interface.
Interface Grouping	Interface Grouping	Use this screen to map a port to create multiple networks on the Zyxel Device.
USB Service	File Sharing	Use this screen to enable file sharing via the Zyxel Device.
	Media Server	Use this screen to use the Zyxel Device as a media server.
Security		

Table 8 Configuration Menus Summary (continued)

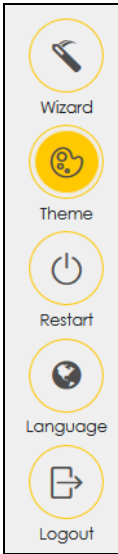
LINK	TAB	FUNCTION
Firewall	General	Use this screen to configure the security level of your firewall.
	Protocol	Use this screen to add Internet services and configure firewall rules.
	Access Control	Use this screen to enable specific traffic directions for network services.
	DoS	Use this screen to activate protection against Denial of Service (DoS) attacks.
MAC Filter	MAC Filter	Use this screen to block or allow traffic from devices of certain MAC addresses to the Zyxel Device.
Parental Control	Parental Control	Use this screen to block web sites with the specific URL.
Scheduler Rule	Scheduler Rule	Use this screen to configure the days and times when a configured restriction (such as parental control) is enforced.
Certificates	Local Certificates	Use this screen to view a summary list of certificates and manage certificates and certification requests.
	Trusted CA	Use this screen to view and manage the list of the trusted CAs.
VoIP		
SIP	SIP Account	Use this screen to set up information about your SIP account and configure audio settings such as volume levels for the phones connected to the Zyxel Device.
	SIP Service Provider	Use this screen to configure the SIP server information, and other SIP settings, such as QoS for VoIP calls, outbound proxy, DTMF mode and SIP timers.
Phone	Phone Device	Use this screen to control which SIP account(s) each phone uses to handle outgoing and incoming calls.
	Region	Use this screen to select your location and call service mode.
Call Rule	Call Rule	Use this screen to configure speed dial for SIP phone numbers that you often call.
Call History	Call History	Use this screen to view detailed information for each outgoing call you made or each incoming call from someone calling you. You can also view a summary list of received, dialed and missed calls.
System Monitor		
Log	System Log	Use this screen to view the status of events that occurred to the Zyxel Device. You can export or e-mail the logs.
	Security Log	Use this screen to view all security related events. You can select level and category of the security events in their proper drop-down list window.
Traffic Status	WAN	Use this screen to view the status of all network traffic going through the WAN port of the Zyxel Device.
	LAN	Use this screen to view the status of all network traffic going through the LAN ports of the Zyxel Device.
	NAT	Use this screen to view NAT statistics for connected hosts.
VoIP Status	VoIP Status	Use this screen to view VoIP registration, current call status and phone numbers for the phone ports.
ARP Table	ARP Table	Use this screen to view the ARP table. It displays the IP and MAC address of each DHCP connection.
Routing Table	Routing Table	Use this screen to view the routing table on the Zyxel Device.
Multicast Status	IGMP Status	Use this screen to view the status of all IGMP settings on the Zyxel Device.
	MLD Status	Use this screen to view the status of all MLD settings on the Zyxel Device.
xDSL Statistics	xDSL Statistics	Use this screen to view the Zyxel Device's xDSL traffic statistics.

Table 8 Configuration Menus Summary (continued)

LINK	TAB	FUNCTION
WLAN Station Status	WLAN Station Status	Use this screen to view the wireless stations that are currently associated with the Zyxel Device.
Cellular Statistics	Cellular Statistics	Use this screen to look at the cellular Internet connection status.
GPON Status	GPON Status	Use this screen to view the fiber optical transceiver's TX power and RX power level and its temperature.  Note: Not yet available as of this writing.
Maintenance		
System	System	Use this screen to set Device name and Domain name.
User Account	User Account	Use this screen to change user password on the Zyxel Device.
Remote Management	MGMT Services	Use this screen to enable specific traffic directions for network services.
	Trust Domain	Use this screen to view a list of public IP addresses which are allowed to access the Zyxel Device through the services configured in the <b>Maintenance &gt; Remote Management &gt; MGMT Services</b> screen.
SNMP	SNMP	Use this screen to configure SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) settings.
Time	Time	Use this screen to change your Zyxel Device's time and date.
E-mail Notification	E-mail Notification	Use this screen to configure up to two mail servers and sender addresses on the Zyxel Device.
Log Settings	Log Setting	Use this screen to change your Zyxel Device's log settings.
Firmware Upgrade	Firmware Upgrade	Use this screen to upload firmware to your Zyxel Device.
Backup/Restore	Backup/Restore	Use this screen to backup and restore your Zyxel Device's configuration (settings) or reset the factory default settings.
Reboot	Reboot	Use this screen to reboot the Zyxel Device without turning the power off.
Diagnostic	Diagnostic	Use this screen to identify problems with the Zyxel Device. You can use Ping, TraceRoute, or Nslookup to help you identify problems.
	Ping&Traceroute &Nslookup	Use this screen to identify problems with the Zyxel Device. You can use Ping, TraceRoute, or Nslookup to help you identify problems.
	802.1ag	Use this screen to configure CFM (Connectivity Fault Management) MD (maintenance domain) and MA (maintenance association), perform connectivity tests and view test reports.
	802.3ah	Use this screen to configure link OAM port parameters,
	OAM Ping	Use this screen to view information to help you identify problems with the DSL connection.


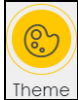
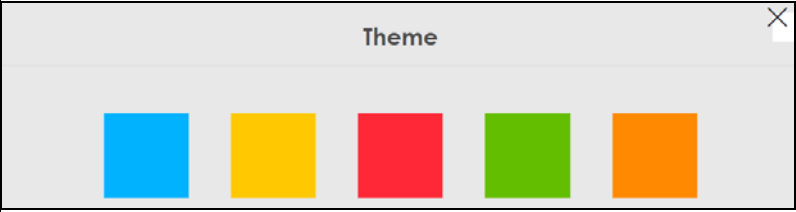



### 2.2.1.2 Icons

The navigation panel provides some icons on the right hand side.



The icons provide the following functions.

Table 9 Web Configurator Icons

ICON	DESCRIPTION
 Wizard	<b>Wizard:</b> Click this icon to open screens where you can configure the Zyxel Device's time zone Internet access, and wireless settings. See <a href="#">Chapter 3 on page 47</a> for more information about the <b>Wizard</b> screens.
 Theme	<b>Theme:</b> Click this icon to select a color that you prefer and apply it to the Web Configurator. 
 Language	<b>Language:</b> Select the language you prefer.
 Restart	<b>Restart:</b> Click this icon to reboot the Zyxel Device without turning the power off.
 Logout	<b>Logout:</b> Click this icon to log out of the Web Configurator.

# CHAPTER 3

## Quick Start Wizard

### 3.1 Overview

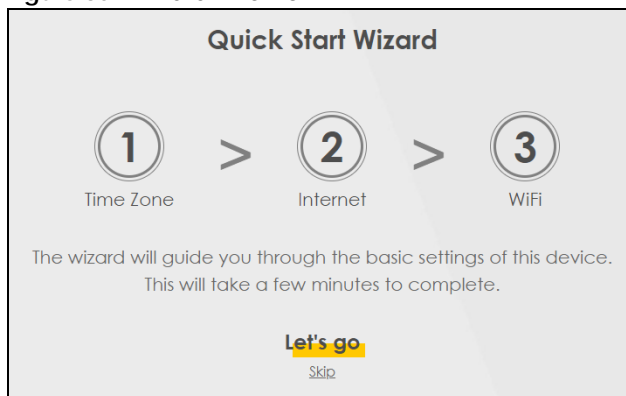
Use the **Wizard** screens to configure the Zyxel Device's time zone, basic Internet access, and wireless settings.

Note: See the technical reference chapters (starting on [Chapter 4 on page 52](#)) for background information on the features in this chapter.

### 3.2 Wizard Setup

You can click the **Wizard** icon in the navigation panel to open the **Wizard** screens. See [Section 2.2.1 on page 41](#) for more information about the navigation panel. After you click the **Wizard** icon, the following screen appears. Click **Let's Go** to proceed with settings on time zone, basic Internet access, and wireless networks. It will take you a few minutes to complete the settings on the **Wizard** screens. You can also click **Skip** to leave the **Wizard** screens.

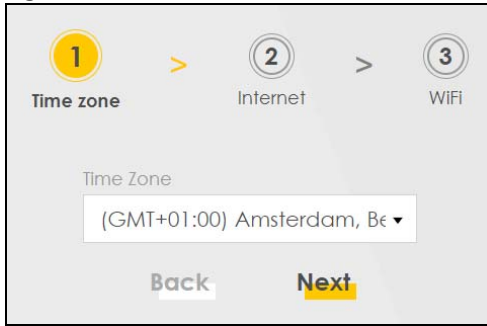
Figure 30 Wizard - Home



#### 3.2.1 Time Zone

Select the time zone of your location. Click **Next**.

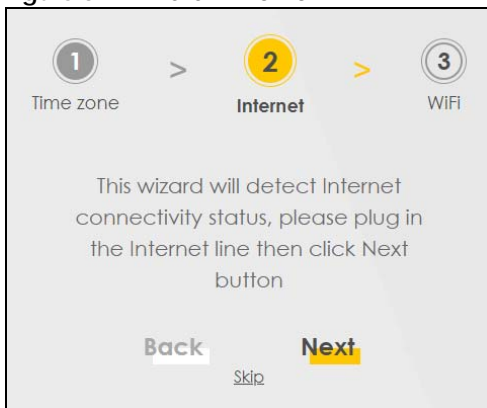
Figure 31 Wizard - Time Zone



### 3.2.2 Internet

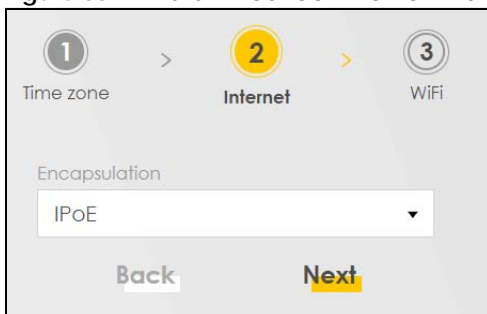
- 1 The Zyxel Device will check the Internet status automatically, and determine your connection type. Click **Next** to proceed. You can also click **Skip** to bypass checking for an Internet connection.

Figure 32 Wizard - Internet



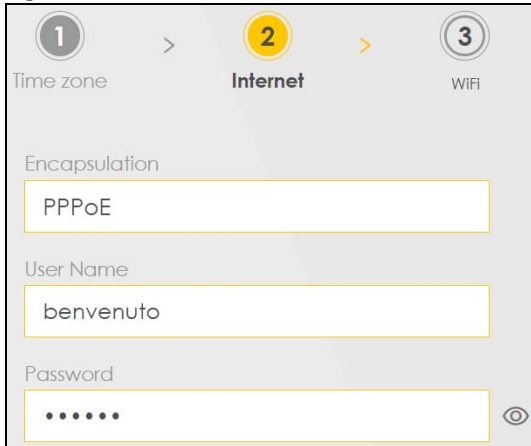
- 2 If the following screen displays, select the encapsulation type your ISP uses. Click **Next**.

Figure 33 Wizard - Incorrect Internet Information (IPoE)



- 3 Enter your Internet connection information. The screen and fields to enter may vary depending on your current connection type. Click **Next**.



**Figure 34** Wizard - Internet Connection Information (PPPoE)

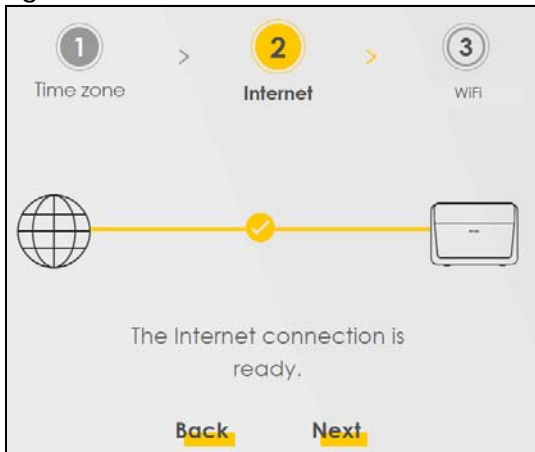
1 > 2 > 3  
Time zone Internet WIFI

Encapsulation  
PPPoE

User Name  
benvenuto

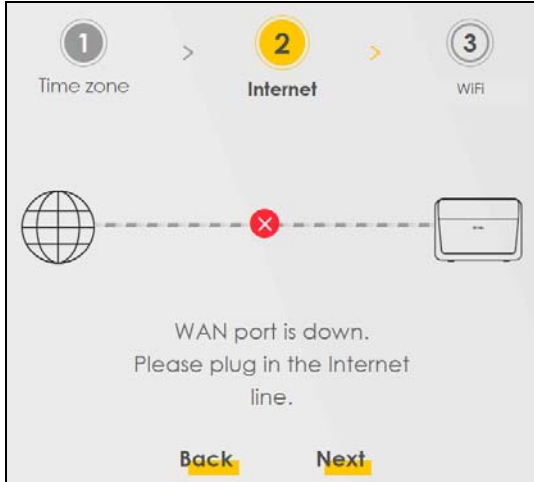
Password  
.....

- 4 Click **Next** when the Zyxel Device has a successful Internet connection.

**Figure 35** Wizard - Successful WAN Connection

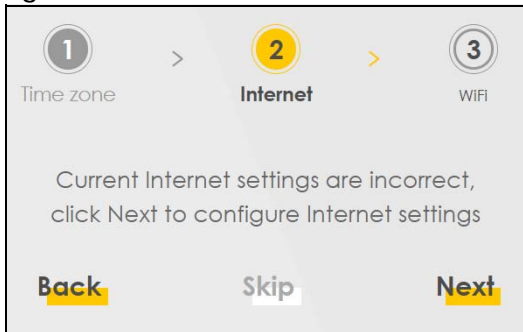
## Unsuccessful Internet Connection

The following screen displays when the Zyxel Device did not detect a WAN connection. For EX5501-B0, EX5301-B3 and DX5301-B2/B3 connect the WAN port to a broadband modem or router. For AX7501-B0 / PX7501-B0, connect a fiber optic cable to the Fiber port for Internet access if you have not connected any. Click **Next**.

**Figure 36** Wizard - WAN Connection is Down

### Incorrect Internet Information

If the following screen displays, click **Next** to configure the Internet settings.

**Figure 37** Wizard - Incorrect Internet Information

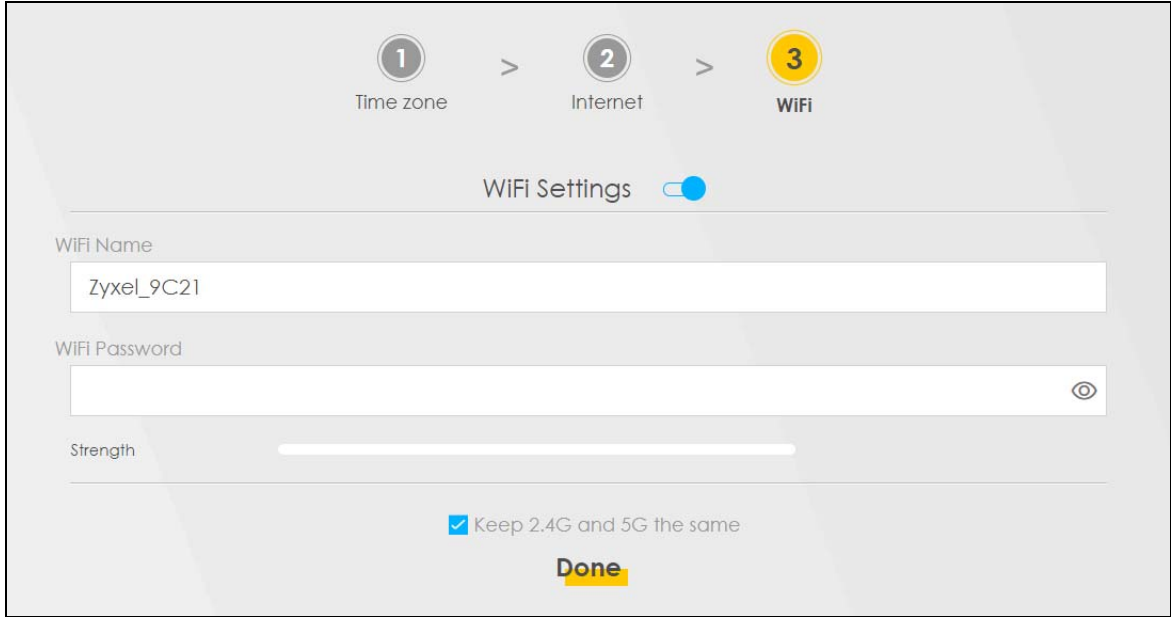
### 3.2.3 WiFi

Turn WiFi on or off. If you keep it on, record the security settings so you can configure your wireless clients to connect to the Zyxel Device.

Click the **Keep 2.4G and 5G the same** check box to use the same SSID for 2.4G and 5G wireless networks. Otherwise, deselect the check box to have two different SSIDs for 2.4G and 5G wireless networks. The screen and fields to enter may vary when you select or deselect the check box.

Click **Done** to complete the setup and close the **Wizard** screen.

Figure 38 Wizard - WiFi



# CHAPTER 4

## Tutorials

### 4.1 Overview

This chapter shows you how to use the Zyxel Device's various features.

- [Wired Network Setup](#), see page 52
- [WiFi Network Setup](#), see page 57
- [USB Applications](#), see page 73
- [Network Security](#), see page 84
- [Internet Calls](#), see page 92
- [Device Maintenance](#), see page 96

### 4.2 Wired Network Setup

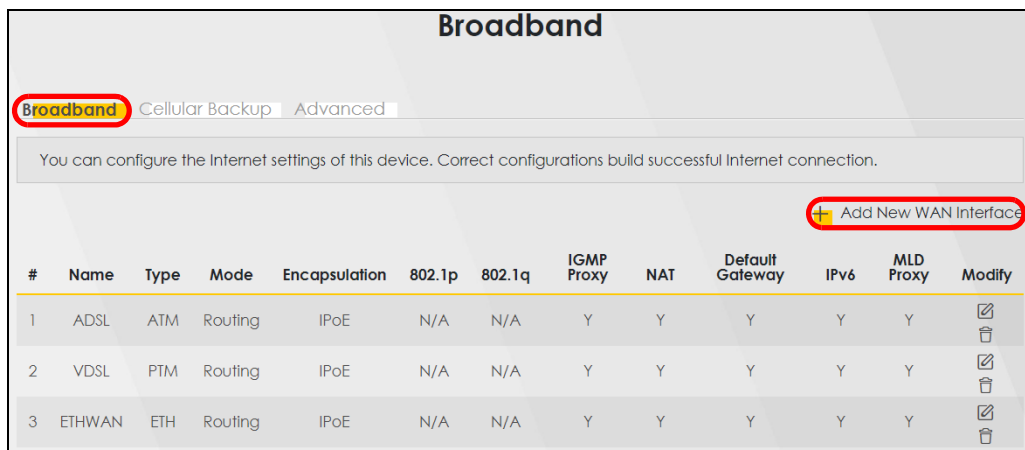
This section shows you how to set up a DSL or Ethernet connection.

#### 4.2.1 Setting Up a DSL Connection

This tutorial shows you how to set up a DSL Internet connection using the Web Configurator.

If you connect to the Internet through a DSL connection, use the information from your Internet Service Provider (ISP) to configure the **Broadband** screens.

- 1 Go to **Network Setting > Broadband** and then the following screen appears. Click **Add New WAN Interface**.



- 2 In this example, the DSL connection has the following information.

General	
Name	MyDSLConnection
Type	ADSL over ATM
Connection Mode	Routing
Encapsulation	PPPoE
IPv6/IPv4 Mode	IPv4
ATM PVC Configuration	
VPI/VCI	36/48
Encapsulation Mode	LLC/SNAP-Bridging
Service Category	UBR without PCR
Account Information	
PPP User Name	1234@DSL-Ex.com
PPP Password	ABCDEF!
Static IP Address	192.168.1.32
Gateway IP Address	192.168.1.254
Primary DNS server	192.168.5.2
Secondary DNS server	192.168.5.1
Others	Authentication Method: AUTO PPPoE Passthrough: Disabled NAT: Enabled IGMP Multicast Proxy: Enabled Apply as Default Gateway: Enabled VLAN: Disabled

- 3 Enter the **General** and **ATM PVC Configuration** settings as provided above.
- 3a** Set the **Type** to **ADSL over ATM**.
- 3b** Choose the **Encapsulation** specified by your DSL service provider. For this example, the service provider requires a username and password to establish an Internet connection. Therefore, select **PPPoE** as the WAN encapsulation type.
- 3c** Set the **IPv4/IPv6 Mode** to **IPv4 Only**.
- 4 Enter the account information provided by your DSL service provider.
- 5 Enable **Apply as Default Gateway** to use this rule as your default Internet connection. Then select **Use Following Static DNS Address** and enter the DNS server addresses provided by your DSL service provider.
- 6 For the rest of the fields, use the default settings.
- 7 Click **Apply** to save your settings.

✕

### Add New WAN Interface

<div style="text-align: right; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <b>General</b> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> </div> <p>Name: <input type="text" value="MyDSLConnection"/></p> <p>Type: <input type="text" value="ADSL over ATM"/></p> <p>Mode: <input type="text" value="Routing"/></p> <p>Encapsulation: <input type="text" value="PPPoE"/></p> <p>IPv4/IPv6 Mode: <input type="text" value="IPv4 Only"/></p>	<div style="text-align: right; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <b>PPP Information</b> </div> <p>PPP User Name: <input type="text" value="1234@DSL-Ex.com"/></p> <p>PPP Password: <input type="password" value="*****"/></p> <p>PPP Connection Trigger: <input checked="" type="radio"/> Auto Connect <input type="radio"/> On Demand</p> <p>PPPoE Passthrough: <input type="checkbox"/></p>
<div style="text-align: right; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <b>ATM PVC Configuration</b> </div> <p>VPI [0-255]: <input type="text" value="36"/></p> <p>VCI [32-65535]: <input type="text" value="48"/></p> <p>Encapsulation: <input type="text" value="LLC/SNAP-BRIDGING"/></p> <p>Service Category: <input type="text" value="UBR Without PCR"/></p>	<div style="text-align: right; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <b>VLAN</b> <input type="checkbox"/> </div> <p>802.1p: <input type="text" value="0"/></p> <p>802.1q: <input type="text" value=""/></p> <p style="text-align: right; font-size: small;">(1-4094)</p> <div style="text-align: right; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <b>MRU/MTU</b> </div> <p>MRU/MTU: <input type="text" value="1492"/></p>
<div style="text-align: right; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <b>IP Address</b> </div> <p><input type="radio"/> Obtain an IP Address Automatically</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Static IP Address</p> <p>IP Address: <input type="text" value="192.168.1.32"/></p> <div style="text-align: right; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <b>DNS Server</b> </div> <p><input type="radio"/> Obtain DNS info Automatically</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Use Following Static DNS Address</p> <p>Primary DNS Server: <input type="text" value="192.168.5.2"/></p> <p>Secondary DNS Server: <input type="text" value="192.168.5.1"/></p>	<div style="text-align: right; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <b>Routing Feature</b> </div> <p>NAT: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>IGMP Proxy</b>: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Apply as Default Gateway: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Fullcone NAT</b>: <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p><b>6RD</b>: <input type="checkbox"/></p>
<span style="margin-right: 50px;">Cancel</span> <span style="background-color: yellow; padding: 2px 10px;">Apply</span>	

- 8 Try to connect to a website to see if you have correctly set up your Internet connection.

**Broadband**

**Broadband** Cellular Backup Advanced

You can configure the Internet settings of this device. Correct configurations build successful Internet connection.

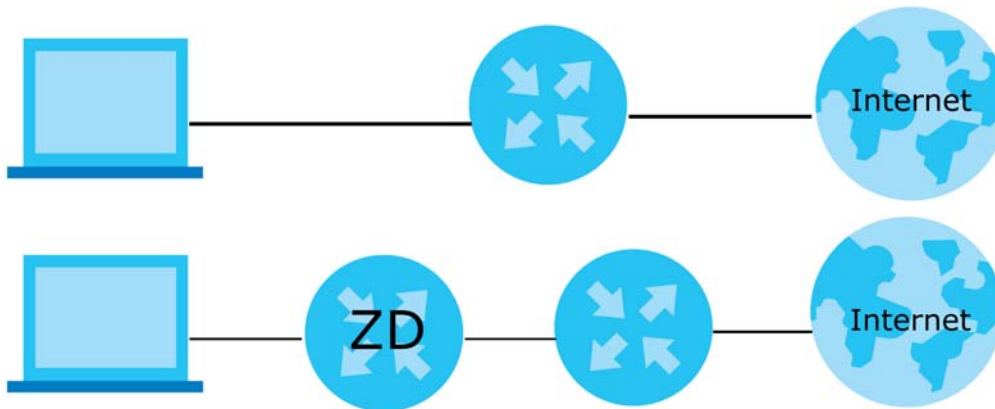
+ Add New WAN Interface

#	Name	Type	Mode	Encapsulation	802.1p	802.1q	IGMP Proxy	NAT	Default Gateway	IPv6	MLD Proxy	Modify
1	ADSL	ATM	Routing	IPoE	N/A	N/A	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	
2	VDSL	PTM	Routing	IPoE	N/A	N/A	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	
3	ETHWAN	ETH	Routing	IPoE	N/A	N/A	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	
4	MyDSLConnection	ATM	Routing	PPPoE	N/A	N/A	Y	Y	Y	N	N	

The new connection is displayed on the **Broadband** screen.

## 4.2.2 Setting Up an Ethernet Connection

If you connect to the Internet through an Ethernet connection, you need to connect a broadband modem or router with Internet access to the WAN Ethernet port on the Zyxel Device. You need to configure the Internet settings from the broadband modem or router on the Zyxel Device. First, make sure you have Internet access through the broadband modem or router by connecting directly to it.









- 1 Make sure you have the Ethernet WAN port connect to a modem or router.
- 2 Go to **Network Setting > Broadband** and then the following screen appears. Click **Add New WAN Interface** to add a WAN connection.

**Broadband**

**Broadband** Cellular Backup Advanced

You can configure the Internet settings of this device. Correct configurations build successful Internet connection.

+ Add New WAN Interface

#	Name	Type	Mode	Encapsulation	802.1p	802.1q	IGMP Proxy	NAT	Default Gateway	IPv6	MLD Proxy	Modify
1	ADSL	ATM	Routing	IPoE	N/A	N/A	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	 
2	VDSL	PTM	Routing	IPoE	N/A	N/A	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	 
3	ETHWAN	ETH	Routing	IPoE	N/A	N/A	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	 

- 3 In this example, configure the following information for the Ethernet connection.

General	
Name	My ETH Connection
Type	Ethernet
Connection Mode	Routing
Encapsulation	IPoE
IPv6/IPv4 Mode	IPv4 Only

- 4 Enter the **General** settings provided by your Internet service provider.
- 4a** Enter a **Name** to identify your WAN connection.
- 4b** Set the **Type** to **Ethernet**.
- 4c** Set your Ethernet connection **Mode** to **Routing**.
- 4d** Choose the **Encapsulation** specified by your Internet service provider. For this example, select **IPoE** or **PPPoE** as the WAN encapsulation type.
- 4e** Set the **IPv4/IPv6 Mode** to **IPv4 Only**.
- 5 Under **Routing Feature**, enable **NAT** and **Apply as Default Gateway**.
- 6 For the rest of the fields, use the default settings.
- 7 Click **Apply** to save your settings.



<
Edit WAN Interface

**General**

Name:

Type:

Mode:

Encapsulation:

IPv4/IPv6 Mode:

**VLAN**

802.1p:

802.1q:

**MTU**

MTU:

**IP Address**

Obtain an IP Address Automatically

Static IP Address

**DNS Server**

Obtain DNS Info Automatically

Use Following Static DNS Address

**Routing Feature**

NAT:  **IGMP Proxy**:

Apply as Default Gateway:  **Fullcone NAT**:

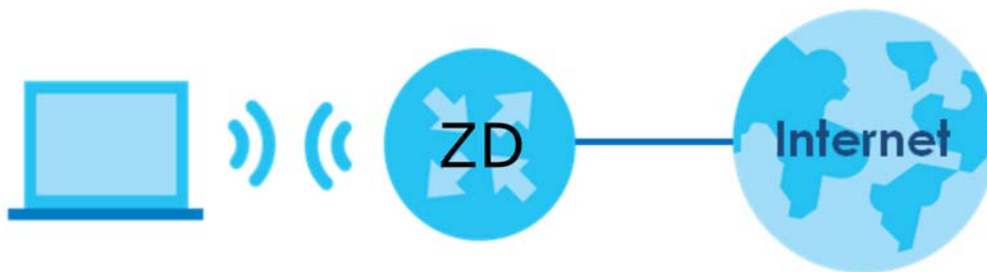
**6RD**:

- 8 Go to the **Network Setting > Broadband** screen to view the established Ethernet connection. The new connection is displayed on the **Broadband** screen.

#	Name	Type	Mode	Encapsulation	802.1p	802.1q	IGMP Proxy	NAT	Default Gateway	IPv6	MLD Proxy	Modify
1	My ETH Connecti	ETH	Routing	IPoE	N/A	N/A	N	Y	Y	N	N	

## 4.3 WiFi Network Setup

In this example, you want to set up a WiFi network so that you can use your notebook to access the Internet. In this WiFi network, the Zyxel Device is an access point (AP), and the notebook is a WiFi client. The WiFi client can access the Internet through the AP.



See the label on the Zyxel Device for the WiFi network settings and then connect manually to the Zyxel Device. See [Section 4.3.2 on page 60](#). Alternatively, you can set up a WiFi network using WPS.

### 4.3.1 Changing Security on a WiFi Network

This example changes the default security settings of a WiFi network to the following:

<b>SSID</b>	Example
<b>Security Mode</b>	WPA2-PSK
<b>Pre-Shared Key</b>	DoNotStealMyWirelessNetwork
<b>802.11 Mode</b>	802.11b/g/n Mixed

- 1 Go to the **Network Setting > Wireless > General** screen. Select **More Secure** as the security level and **WPA2-PSK** as the security mode. Configure the screen using the provided parameters. Click **Apply**.

**Wireless**

General | Guest/More AP | MAC Authentication | WPS | WMM | Others | Channel Status | MESH

A wireless network name (also known as SSID) and a security level are basic elements to start a wireless service. It is recommended to set a security level other than no security to protect your data from unauthorized access or damage via wireless network.

**Wireless**

Wireless  Keep 2.4G and 5G wireless network name the same

**Wireless Network Setup**

Band: 2.4GHz

Wireless:

Channel: Auto Current : 7 / 40 MHz

Bandwidth: 20MHz

Control Sideband: None

**Wireless Network Settings**

Wireless Network Name: Example

Max Clients: 32

Hide SSID ⓘ

Multicast Forwarding

Max. Upstream Bandwidth:

Max. Downstream Bandwidth:

Note

(1) Max. Upstream Bandwidth: This field allows you to configure the maximum bandwidth of this SSID to WAN.  
 (2) Max. Downstream Bandwidth: This field allows you to configure the maximum bandwidth of WAN to this SSID.  
 (3) If Max. Upstream/Downstream Bandwidth is empty, the CPE sets the value automatically.  
 (4) Using Max. Upstream/Downstream Bandwidth will significantly decrease the wireless performance.

BSSID: 5C:E2:8C:8A:F0:FD

**Security Level**

No Security More Secure (Recommended)

Security Mode: WPA2-PSK

Generate password automatically

Enter 8-63 ASCII characters or 64 hexadecimal digits [0-9, "A-F"].

Password: DoNotStealMyWirelessNetwork

Encryption: AES

Timer: 3600 sec

Cancel Apply

- 2 Go to the **Wireless > Others** screen. Set **802.11 Mode** to **802.11b/g/n Mixed**, and then click **Apply**.

**Wireless**

General | Guest/More AP | MAC Authentication | WPS | WMM | **Others** | Channel Status | MESH

The configurations below are the advanced wireless settings.

RTS/CTS Threshold	<input type="text" value="2347"/>	
Fragmentation Threshold	<input type="text" value="2346"/>	
Output Power	<input type="text" value="100%"/>	▼
Beacon Interval	<input type="text" value="100"/>	ms
DTIM Interval	<input type="text" value="1"/>	ms
802.11 Mode	<input type="text" value="802.11b/g/n Mixed"/>	▼
802.11 Protection	<input type="text" value="Auto"/>	▼
Preamble	<input type="text" value="Long"/>	
Protected Management Frames	<input type="text" value="Capable"/>	▼

You can now use the WPS feature to establish a WiFi connection between your notebook and the Zyxel Device (see [Section 4.3.2 on page 60](#)). Now use the new security settings to connect to the Internet through the Zyxel Device using WiFi.

## 4.3.2 Connecting to the Zyxel Device's WiFi Network Using WPS

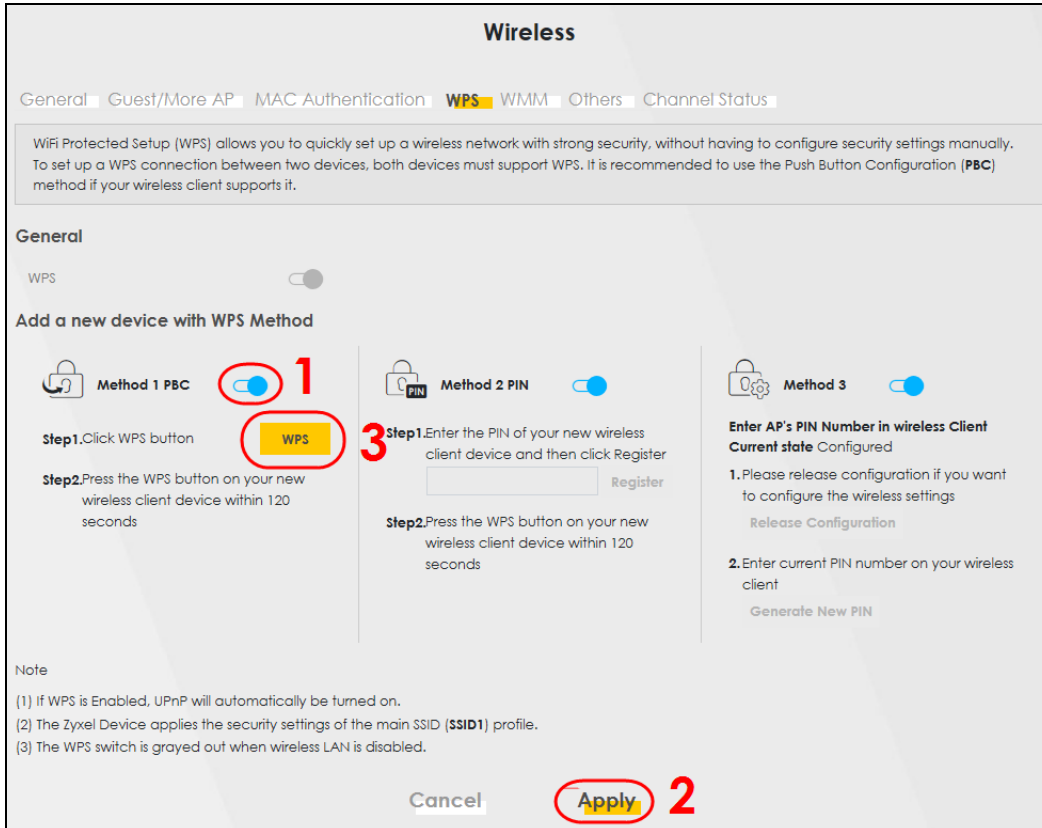
This section shows you how to connect a WiFi device to the Zyxel Device's WiFi network using WPS. WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup) is a security standard that allows devices to connect to a router securely without you having to enter a password. There are two methods:

- **Push Button Configuration (PBC)** - Connect to the WiFi network by pressing a button. See [Section 4.3.2.1 on page 60](#). This is the simplest method.
- **PIN Configuration** - Connect to the WiFi network by entering a PIN (Personal Identification Number) from a WiFi-enabled device in the Zyxel Device's Web Configurator. See [Section 4.3.2.2 on page 63](#). This is the more secure method, because one device can authenticate the other.

### 4.3.2.1 WPS Push Button Configuration (PBC)

This example shows how to connect to the Zyxel Device's WiFi network from a notebook computer running Windows 10.

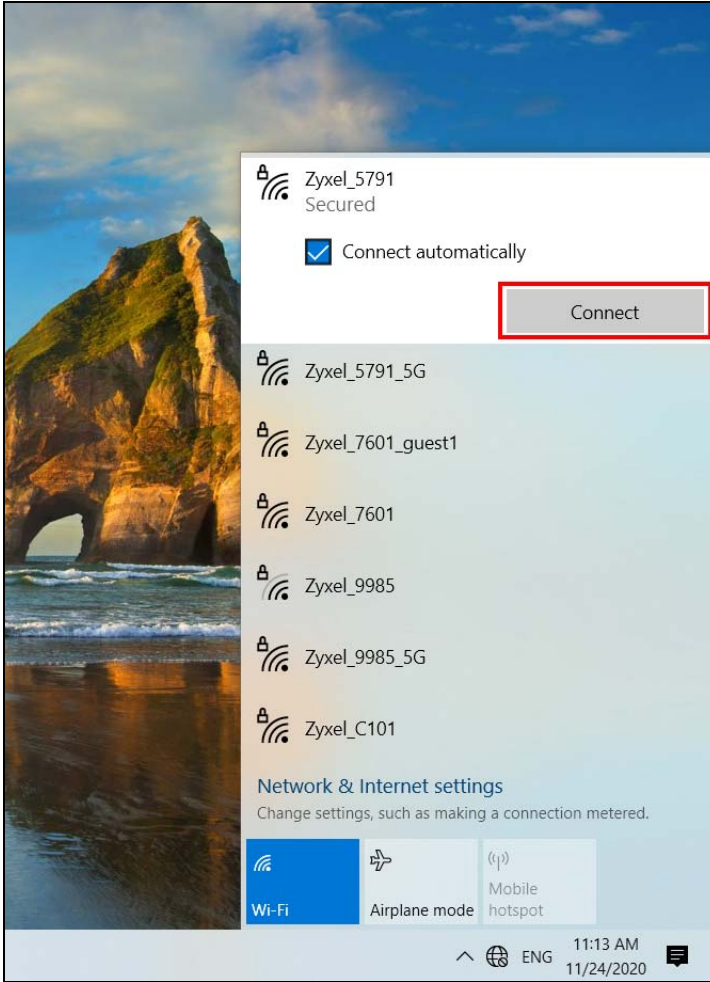
- 1 Make sure that your Zyxel Device is turned on, and your notebook is within range of the Zyxel Device's WiFi signal.
- 2 Push and hold the **WPS** button located on the Zyxel Device until the **WiFi** or **WPS** LED starts blinking slowly. Alternatively, log into the Zyxel Device's Web Configurator, and then go to the **Network Setting > Wireless > WPS** screen. Enable **WPS** and **Method 1 PBC**, click **Apply**, and then click the **WPS** button.



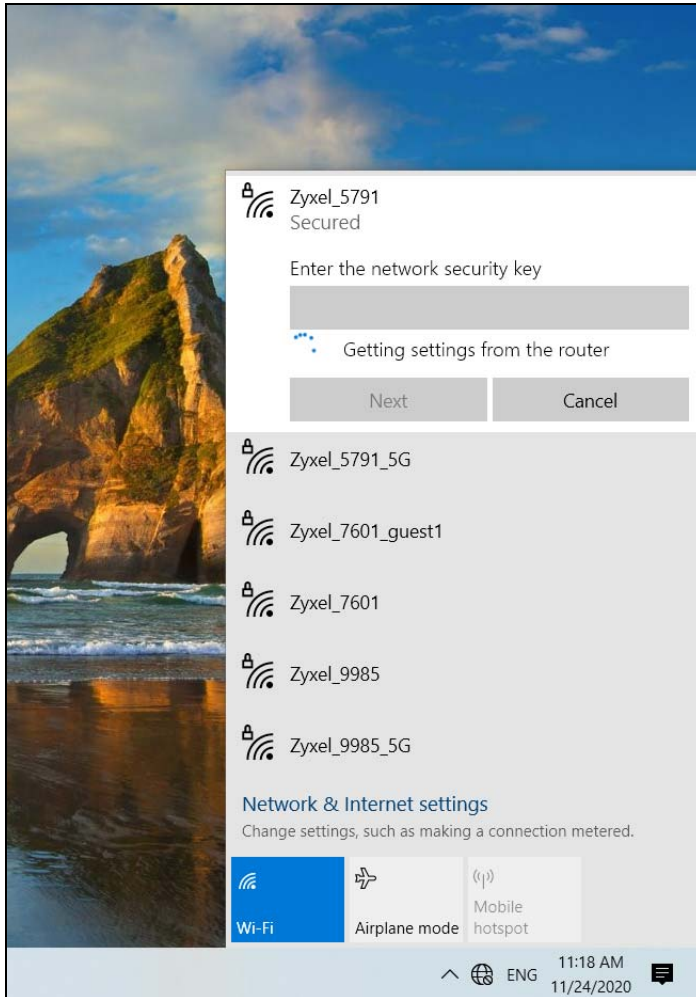
- 3 In Windows 10, click on the Network icon in the system tray to open the list of available WiFi networks.



- 4 Locate the WiFi network of the Zyxel Device. The default WiFi network name is "Zyxel\_XXXX" (2.4 GHz) or "Zyxel\_XXXX\_5G" (5 GHz). Then click **Connect**.



The Zyxel Device sends the WiFi network settings to Windows using WPS. Windows displays "Getting settings from the router".



The WiFi device is then able to connect to the WiFi network securely.

### 4.3.2.2 WPS PIN Configuration

The WPS PIN (Personal Identification Number) method is a more secure version of WPS, used by WiFi-enabled devices such as printers. To use this connection method, you need to log into the Zyxel Device's Web Configurator.

- 1 Enable WiFi on the device you want to connect to the WiFi network. Then, note down the WPS PIN in the device's WiFi settings.
- 2 Log into Zyxel Device's Web Configurator, and then go to the **Network Setting > Wireless > WPS** screen. Enable **WPS**, and then click **Apply**.
- 3 Enable **Method 2 PIN**, and then click **Apply**. Enter the PIN of the WiFi device, and then click **Register**.

WiFi Protected Setup (WPS) allows you to quickly set up a wireless network with strong security, without having to configure security settings manually. To set up a WPS connection between two devices, both devices must support WPS. It is recommended to use the Push Button Configuration (PBC) method if your wireless client supports it.

**General**

WPS

**Add a new device with WPS Method**

**Method 1 PBC**

**Step1.** Click WPS button

**Step2.** Press the WPS button on your new wireless client device within 120 seconds

**Method 2 PIN**  **1**

**Step1.** Enter the PIN of your new wireless client device and then click Register

**Register** **3**

**Step2.** Press the WPS button on your new wireless client device within 120 seconds

**Method 3**

**Enter AP's PIN Number in wireless Client**

**Current state** Configured

Please release configuration if you want to configure the wireless settings

**2** Enter current PIN number on your wireless client

Release Configuration

Generate New PIN

Note

- (1) If WPS is Enabled, UPnP will automatically be turned on.
- (2) The Zyxel Device applies the security settings of the **SSID1** profile. If you want to use the WPS feature, make sure you have set the security mode of **SSID1** to **WPA2-PSK** or **No Security**.
- (3) The WPS switch is grayed out when wireless LAN is disabled.

**Cancel** **Apply** **2**

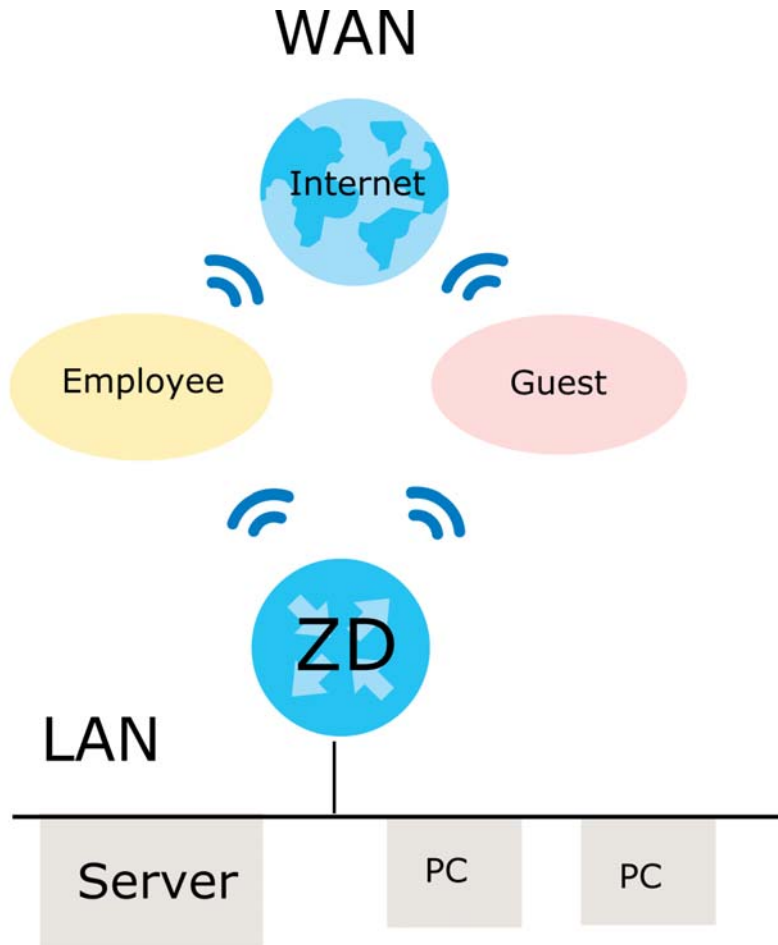
- 4 Within two minutes, enable WPS on the WiFi device.

The Zyxel Device authenticates the WiFi device using the PIN, and then sends the WiFi network settings to the device using WPS. This process may take up to two minutes. The WiFi device is then able to connect to the WiFi network securely.

### 4.3.3 Setting Up a Guest Network

A company wants to create two WiFi networks for different groups of users as shown in the following figure. Each WiFi network has its own SSID and security mode. Both networks are accessible on both 2.4GHz and 5GHz Wifi bands.





- Employees using the **General** WiFi network group will have access to the local network and the Internet.
- Visitors using the **Guest** WiFi network group with a different SSID and password will have access to the Internet only.

Use the following parameters to set up the WiFi network groups.

	GENERAL	GUEST
2.4/5GHz SSID	Employee	Guest
Security Level	More Secure	More Secure
Security Mode	WPA2-PSK	WPA2-PSK
Pre-Shared Key	ForCompanyOnly	guest123

- 1 Go to the **Network Setting > Wireless > General** screen. Use this screen to set up the company's general WiFi network group. Configure the screen using the provided parameters and click **Apply**. Note that if you have employees using 2.4 and 5G devices, enable **Keep the same settings for 2.4G and 5G wireless networks** to use the same SSID and password. Clear it if you want to configure different SSIDs and passwords for 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz bands.

**Wireless**

**General** | Guest/More AP | MAC Authentication | WPS | WMM | Others | Channel Status | MESH

Use this screen to enable the Wireless LAN, enter the SSID and select the wireless security mode. We recommend that you select **More Secure** to enable WPA2-PSK data encryption.

**Wireless**

Wireless  Keep the same settings for 2.4G and 5G wireless networks

**Wireless Network Setup**

Band: 2.4GHz

Wireless:  (circled in red)

Channel: Auto (Current: 4 / 20 MHz)

Bandwidth: 20/40MHz

Control Sideband: Upper

**Wireless Network Settings**

Wireless Network Name: Employee (circled in red)

Max Clients: 32

Hide SSID ⓘ

Multicast Forwarding

Max. Upstream Bandwidth: \_\_\_\_\_ Kbps

Max. Downstream Bandwidth: \_\_\_\_\_ Kbps

**Note**

(1) If you are configuring the Zyxel Device from a computer connected by WiFi and you change the Zyxel Device's SSID, channel or security settings, you will lose your WiFi connection when you press **Apply**. You must change the WiFi settings of your computer to match the new settings on the Zyxel Device.

(2) If upstream/downstream bandwidth is empty, the Zyxel Device sets the value automatically. Setting a maximum upstream/downstream bandwidth will significantly decrease wireless performance.

BSSID: 08:26:97:D3:47:D1

**Security Level**

No Security  | More Secure (Recommended)

Security Mode: WPA2-PSK

Generate password automatically

Enter 8-63 ASCII characters or 64 hexadecimal digits ["0-9", "A-F"].

Password: ForCompanyOnly (circled in red)


Strength: strong

Cancel **Apply**

- 2 Go to the **Network Setting > Wireless > Guest/More AP** screen. Click the **Modify** icon to configure the second WiFi network group.

General | **Guest/More AP** | MAC Authentication | WPS | WMM | Others | Channel Status | MESH

This screen allows you to configure a guest wireless network that allows access to the Internet only through the Zyxel Device.

#	Status	SSID	Security	Guest WLAN	Modify
1	🔴	Guest	WPA2-Personal	External Guest	 (circled in red)

- 3 On the **Guest/More AP** screen, click the **Modify** icon to configure the other Guest WiFi network group. Configure the screen using the provided parameters and click **OK**.

✕

### More AP Edit

Wireless security can protect the data from unauthorized access or damage via wireless network. You need a wireless network name (also known as SSID) and security mode to set up the wireless security.

**Wireless Network Setup**

Wireless

**Security Level**

Wireless Network Name

Hide SSID

Guest WLAN

Access Scenario

Max. Upstream Bandwidth

Max. Downstream Bandwidth

**Note**

(1) Max. Upstream Bandwidth: This field allows you to configure the maximum bandwidth of this SSID to WAN.

(2) Max. Downstream Bandwidth: This field allows you to configure the maximum bandwidth of WAN to this SSID.

(3) If Max. Upstream/Downstream Bandwidth is empty, the CPE sets the value automatically.

(4) Using Max. Upstream/Downstream Bandwidth will significantly decrease the wireless performance.

BSSID

SSID Subnet

**Security Level**

No Security
More Secure  
(Recommended)

Security Mode

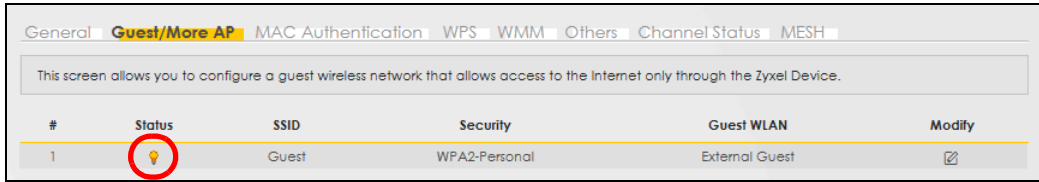
Generate password automatically

Enter 8-63 ASCII characters or 64 hexadecimal digits ("0-9", "A-F").

Password

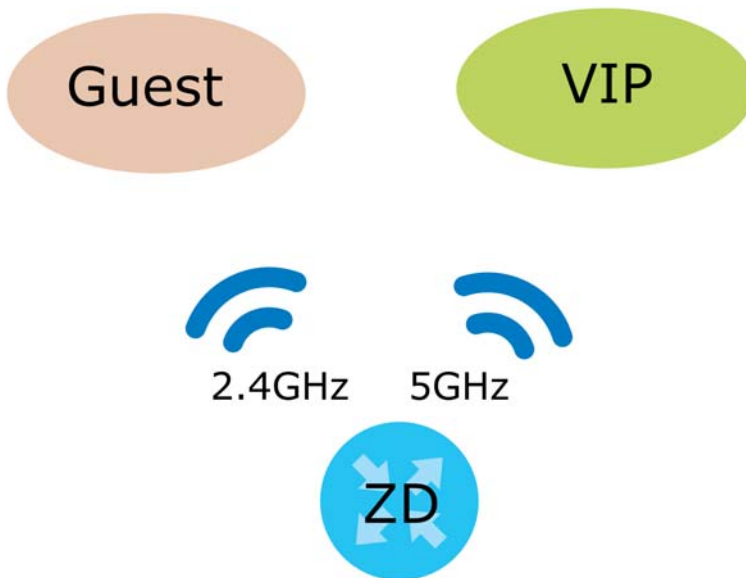
Cancel
OK

- 4 Check the status of **Guest** in the **Guest/More AP** screen. A yellow bulb under **Status** means the SSID is active and ready for WiFi access.



### 4.3.4 Setting Up Two Guest WiFi Networks on Different WiFi Bands

In this example, a company wants to create two Guest WiFi networks: one for the **Guest** group and the other for the **VIP** group as shown in the following figure. Each network will have its SSID and security mode to access the internet.



- The **Guest** group will use the 2.4 GHz band.
- The **VIP** group will use the 5 GHz band.

The Company will use the following parameters to set up the WiFi network groups.

Table 10 WiFi Settings Parameters Example

BAND	2.4G	5G
SSID	Guest	VIP
Security Mode	WPA2-PSK	WPA2-PSK
Pre-Shared Key	guest123	123456789

- 1 Go to the **Wireless > General** screen and set **Band** to **2.4GHz** to configure 2.4 GHz Guest WiFi settings for **Guest**. Click **Apply**.

Note: You will not be able to configure the 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz Guest WiFi settings separately if **Keep the same settings for 2.4G and 5G wireless network** is enabled.

**Wireless**

General Guest/More AP MAC Authentication WPS WMM Others Channel Status

Use this screen to enable the Wireless LAN, enter the SSID and select the wireless security mode. We recommend that you select **More Secure** to enable **WPA2-PSK** data encryption.

**Wireless**

Keep the same settings for 2.4G and 5G wireless networks

**Wireless Network Setup**

Band 2.4GHz

Wireless

Channel Auto Current: 3 / 20 MHz

Bandwidth 20/40MHz

Control Sideband Lower

**Wireless Network Settings**

Wireless Network Name Zyxel\_7601

Max Clients 32

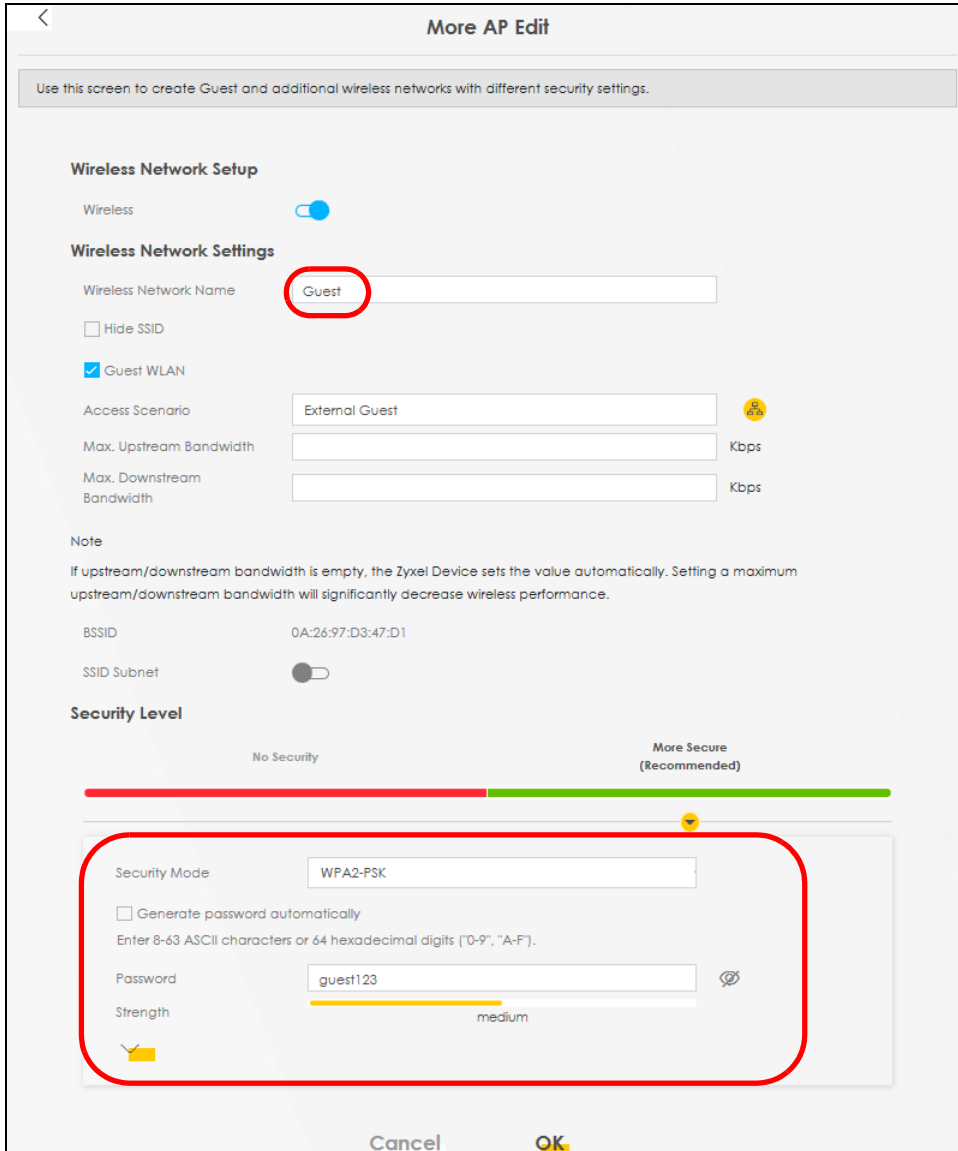
Hide SSID ⓘ

Multicast Forwarding

Max. Upstream Bandwidth Kbps

Max. Downstream Bandwidth Kbps

- 2 Go to the **Wireless > Guest/More AP** screen and click the **Modify** icon. The following screen appears. Configure the **Security Mode** and **Password** using the provided parameters and click **OK**.



The 2.4 GHz **Guest** WiFi network is now configured.



- Go to the **Wireless > General** screen and set **Band** to **5GHz** to configure the 5G Guest WiFi settings for **VIP**. Click **OK**.

**Wireless**

**General** Guest/More AP MAC Authentication WPS WMM Others Channel Status

Use this screen to enable the Wireless LAN, enter the SSID and select the wireless security mode. We recommend that you select **More Secure** to enable **WPA2-PSK** data encryption.

**Wireless**

Keep the same settings for 2.4G and 5G wireless networks

**Wireless Network Setup**

Band

Wireless

Channel  Current: 60 / 160 MHz

Bandwidth

Control Sideband

**Wireless Network Settings**

Wireless Network Name

Max Clients

Hide SSID ⓘ

Multicast Forwarding

Max. Upstream Bandwidth  Kbps

Max. Downstream Bandwidth  Kbps

- 4 Go to the **Wireless > Guest/More AP** screen and click the **Modify** icon. The following screen appears. Configure the **Security Mode** and **Password** using the provided parameters and click **OK**.

**More AP Edit**

Use this screen to create Guest and additional wireless networks with different security settings.

**Wireless Network Setup**

Wireless

**Wireless Network Settings**

Wireless Network Name

Hide SSID

Guest WLAN

Access Scenario

Max. Upstream Bandwidth  Kbps

Max. Downstream Bandwidth  Kbps

**Note**  
If upstream/downstream bandwidth is empty, the Zyxel Device sets the value automatically. Setting a maximum upstream/downstream bandwidth will significantly decrease wireless performance.

BSSID 0A:26:97:D3:47:D2

SSID Subnet

**Security Level**

No Security More Secure (Recommended)

Security Mode

Generate password automatically  
Enter 8-63 ASCII characters or 64 hexadecimal digits ["0-9", "A-F"].

Password

Strength  medium

The 5 GHz **VIP** WiFi network is now configured.

**Wireless**

General **Guest/More AP** MAC Authentication WPS WMM Others Channel Status MESH

This screen allows you to configure a guest wireless network that allows access to the Internet only through the Zyxel Device.

#	Status	SSID	Security	Guest WLAN	Modify
1		VIP	WPA2-Personal	External Guest	



## 4.4 USB Applications

This section shows you how to set up a cellular backup network, access shared folders and play files through Window Media using a USB device.

### 4.4.1 Setting up a Cellular Network Connection

You can connect to the Internet through a cellular network connection with a cellular dongle, using the information from your Internet Service Provider (ISP) to configure the Zyxel Device.

- 1 Connect a cellular dongle to the USB port on the Zyxel Device.
- 2 Go to the **Network Setting > Broadband > Cellular Backup** screen to configure your cellular settings.
- 3 Enable **Cellular Backup**, and then enter **Cellular Connection Settings** from your cellular service provider. For more information, please see [Section 6.4 on page 134](#).

## Broadband

Broadband Cellular Backup Advanced

Whenever the WAN connection is down, Cellular Backup takes over the job and keeps you online. It is valid when a Cellular USB dongle is attached to the device and proper settings are configured. You may consult your Cellular service provider for the following settings.

**General**

Cellular Backup

Ping Check

Check Cycle Every  (20-180 Sec)

Consecutive Fail  (2-5 times)

Ping Default Gateway

Ping Host  (Host name or IP address)

**Note**

Primary WAN is not in service when ping failed after consecutive times.

**Cellular Connection Settings**

Card Description N/A

Username  (Optional)

Password  (Optional)

Authentication  ▼

PIN  (Optional) (Only for unlock PIN next time)

(PIN remaining authentication times: N/A)

Dial String

APN

Connection  ▼

Obtain an IP Address Automatically

Use the Following Static IP Address

Obtain DNS Info Dynamically

Use the Following Static DNS IP Address

## 4.4.2 File Sharing

This section shows you how to create a shared folder on your Zyxel Device through a USB device and allow others to access the shared folder with File Sharing services.

### 4.4.2.1 Setting up File Sharing on Your Zyxel Device

- 1 Before enabling file sharing in the Zyxel Device, please set up your shared folders beforehand in your USB device.
- 2 Connect your USB device to the USB port of the Zyxel Device.

- Go to the **Network Setting > USB Service > File Sharing** screen. Enable **File Sharing Services** and click **Apply** to activate the file sharing function. The Zyxel Device automatically adds your USB device to the **Information** table.

**USB Service**

FileSharing > MediaServer

The device can share Files from your USB flash drive or disk when you attach it to the USB port. You may Start from deciding which folders in the USB disks to share and which users can access the shared folders.

**Information**

Volume	Capacity	Used Space
usb1_sda1	0 MB	0 MB

**Server Configuration**

File Sharing Services

**Share Directory List**

+ Add New Share

Active	Status	Share Name	Share Path	Share Description	Modify
--------	--------	------------	------------	-------------------	--------

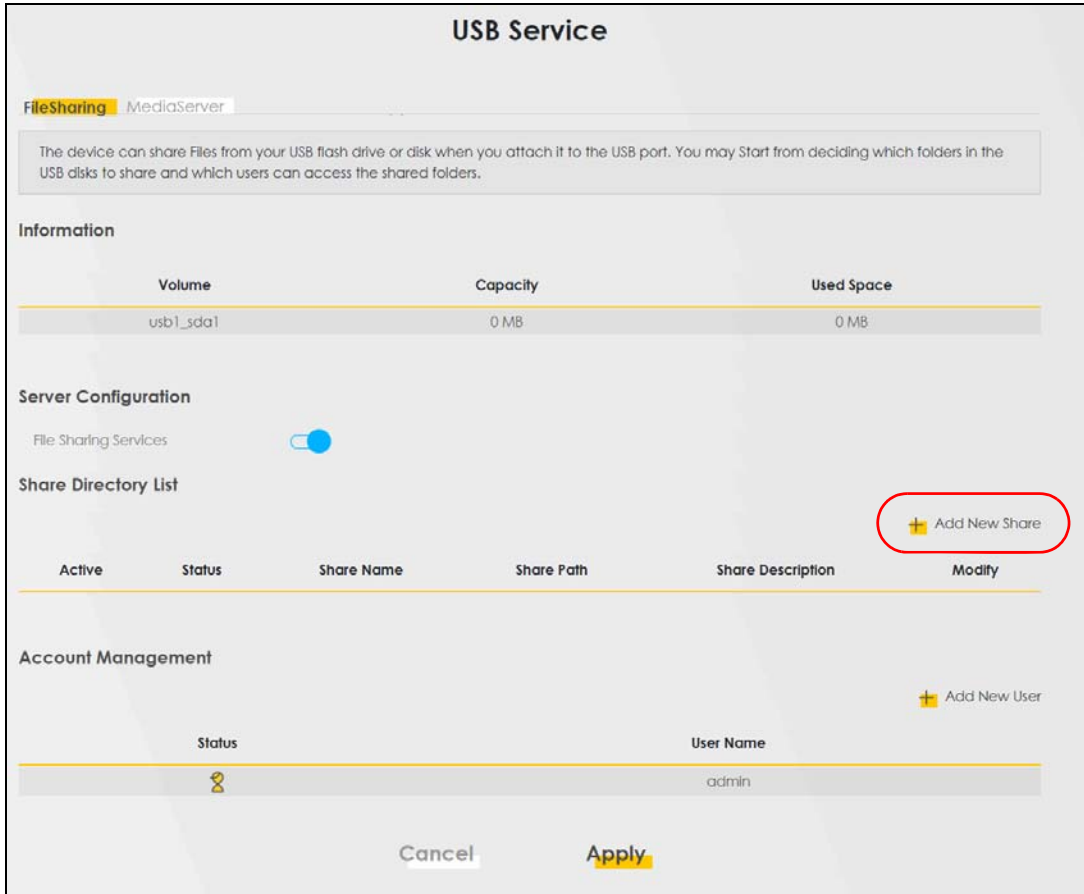
**Account Management**

+ Add New User

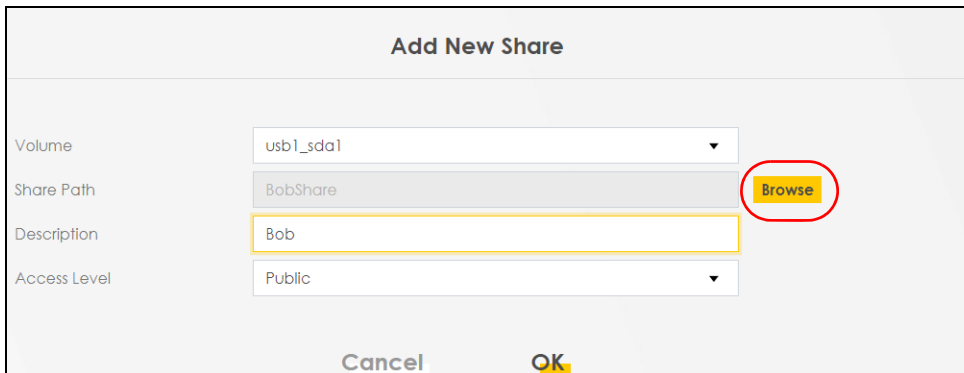
Status	User Name
	admin

Cancel Apply

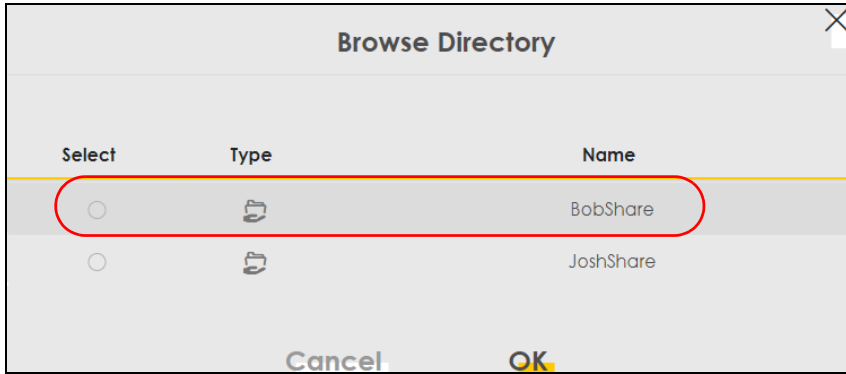
- Click **Add New Share** to add a new share.



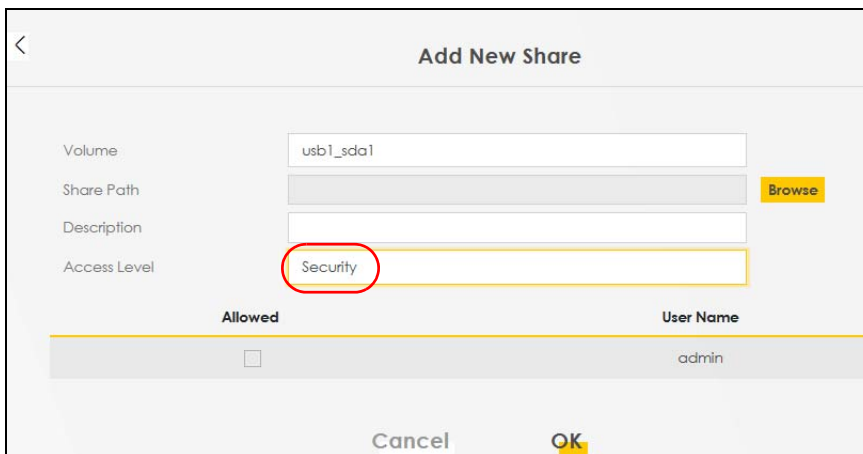
- 5 The **Add New Share** screen appears.
  - 5a Select your USB device from the **Volume** drop-down list box.
  - 5b Enter a **Description** name for the added share to identify the device.
  - 5c Click **Browse** and the **Browse Directory** screen appears.



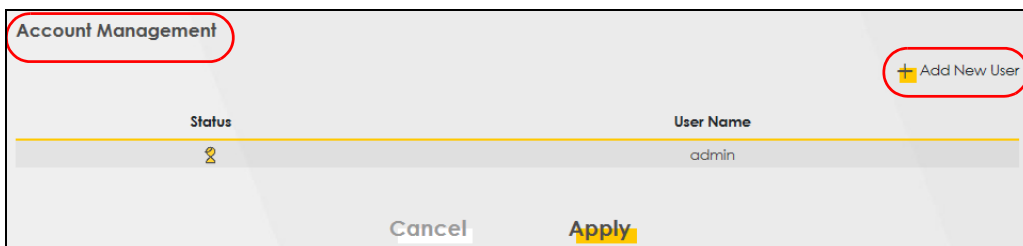
- 5d On the **Browse Directory** screen, select the folder that you want to add as a share. In this example, select **BobShare** and then click **OK**.



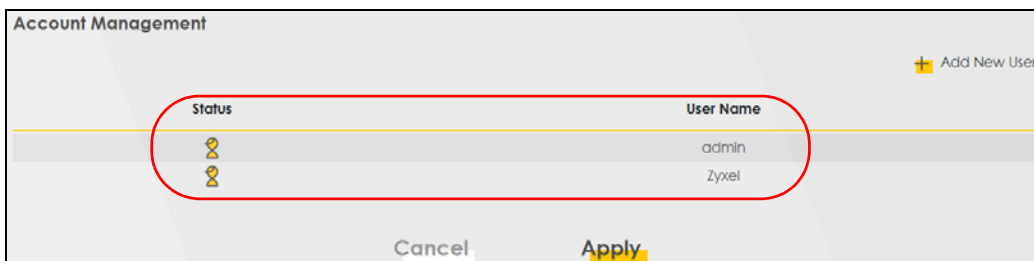
5e In **Access Level**, select **Public** to let the share to be accessed by all users connected to the Zyxel Device. Otherwise, select **Security** to let the share to be accessed by specific users to access only. Click **OK** to save the settings.



6 To set **Access level** to **Security**, you need to create one or more users accounts. Under **Account Management**, click **Add New User** to open the User Account screen. For information about the **User Account** screen, see [Section 34.2 on page 361](#).



7 After you create a new user account, the screen looks like the following.



- 8 File sharing is now configured. You can see the USB storage device listed in the table below.

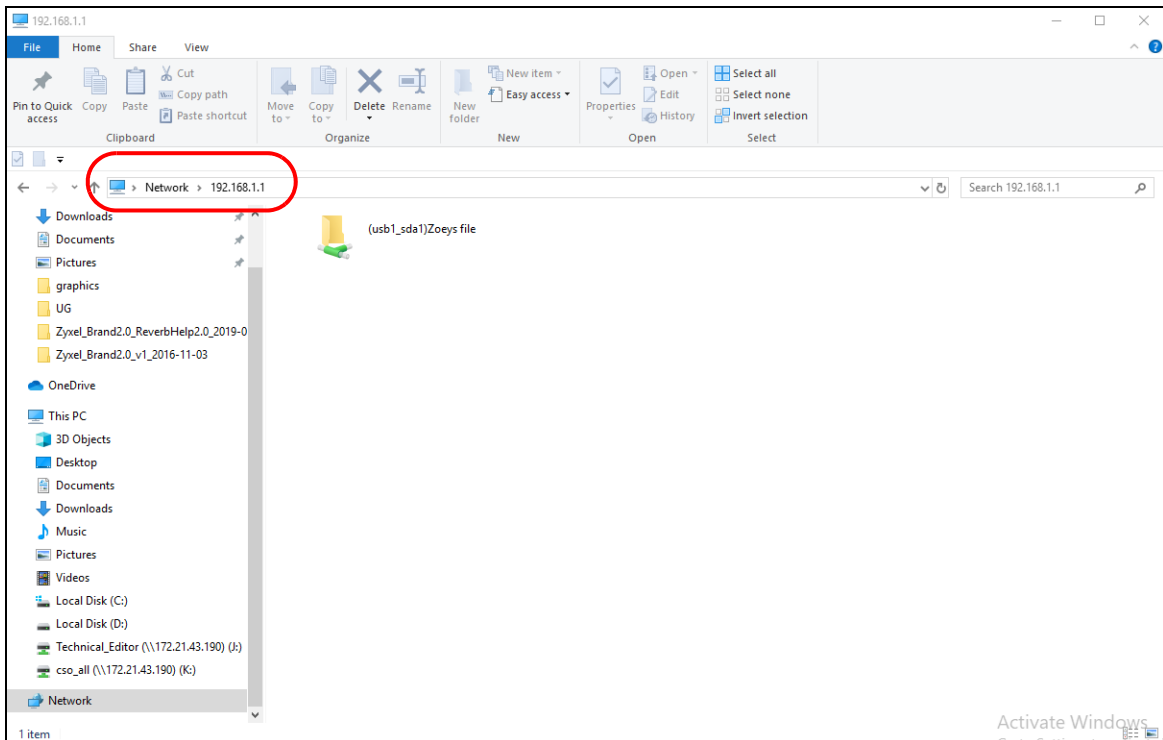
Share Directory List						
Active	Status	Share Name	Share Path	Share Description	Modify	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		BobShare	/mnt/usb1_sda1/BobShare	Bob		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		JoshShare	/mnt/usb1_sda1/JoshShare	Josh		

#### 4.4.2.2 Accessing Your Shared Files From a Computer

You can use Windows Explorer to access the USB storage devices connected to the Zyxel Device.

Note: This example shows you how to use Microsoft Windows 10 to browse shared files in a share called (usb1\_sda)Zoey's file. Refer to your operating system's documentation for how to browse your file structure.

- 1 Open Windows Explorer.
- 2 In the Windows Explorer's address bar, enter a double backslash "\\\" followed by the IP address of the Zyxel Device (the default IP address of the Zyxel Device is 192.168.1.1), and then press [ENTER]. The shared folder is visible.



- 3 Double-click on **(usb1\_sda)Zoey's file**, and then enter the share's username and password if prompted.
- 4 After you access **(usb1\_sda)Zoey's file** through your Zyxel Device, you do not have to log in again unless you restart your computer.

## 4.4.3 Media Server

Use the media server feature to play files on a computer or on your television.

This section shows you how the media server feature works using the following:

- Microsoft (MS) Windows Media Player  
Media Server works with Windows 10. Make sure your computer is able to play media files (music, videos and pictures).
- A digital media adapter  
You need to set up the media adapter to work with your television (TV).

Before you begin, connect the USB storage device containing the media files you want to play to the USB port of your Zyxel Device.

### 4.4.3.1 Configuring the Zyxel Device

To use your Zyxel Device as a media server, follow the steps below.

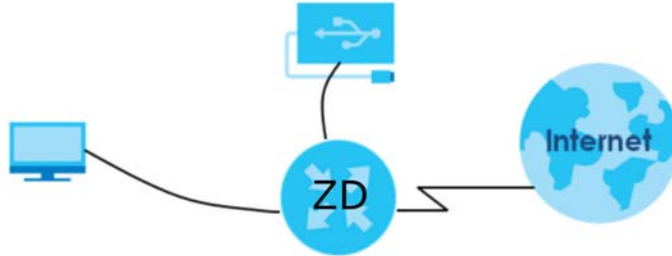
- 1 Go to the **Network Setting > USB Service > Media Server** screen.

- 2 Enable **Media Server**, and then select an interface on which you want to enable the media server function.
- 3 Enter the path clients use to access the media files on a USB storage device connected to the Zyxel Device, and click **Apply**.

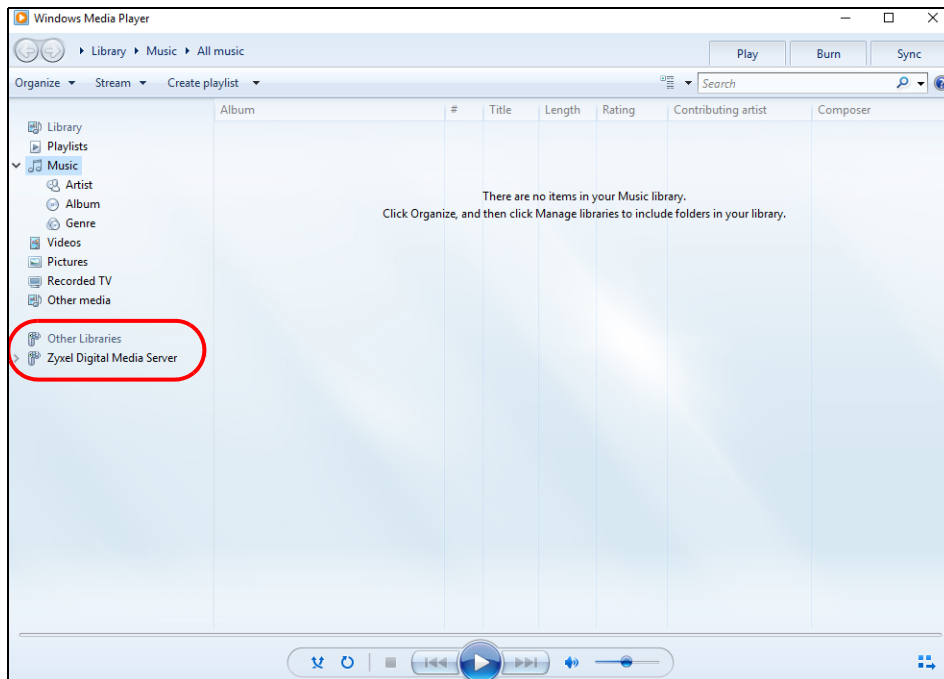
This enables DLNA-compliant media clients to play the video, music and image files in your USB storage device.

### 4.4.3.2 Playing Media Using Windows Media Player on Windows 10

This section shows you how to play the media files on the USB storage device connected to your Zyxel Device using Windows Media Player.

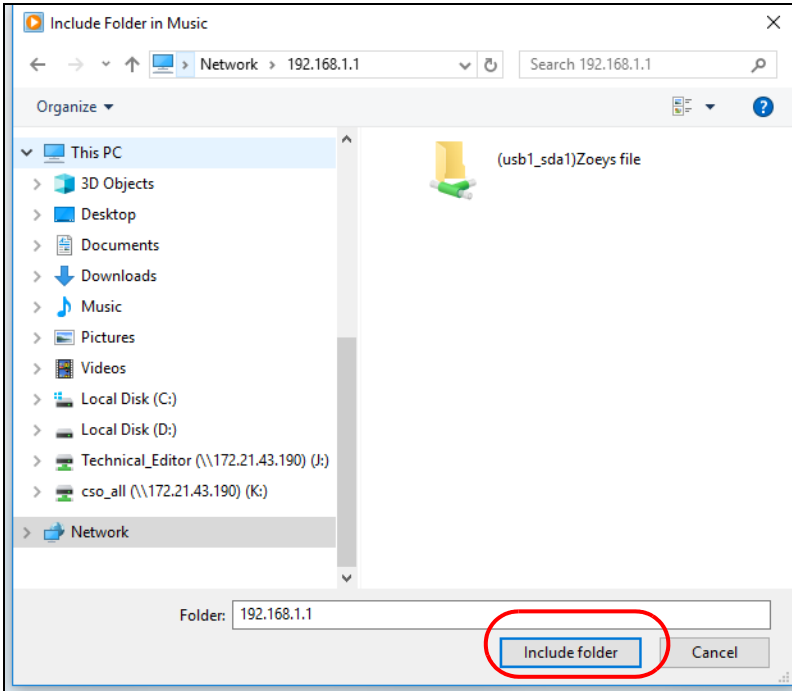


- 1 Open Windows Media Player. It automatically detects the Zyxel Device.

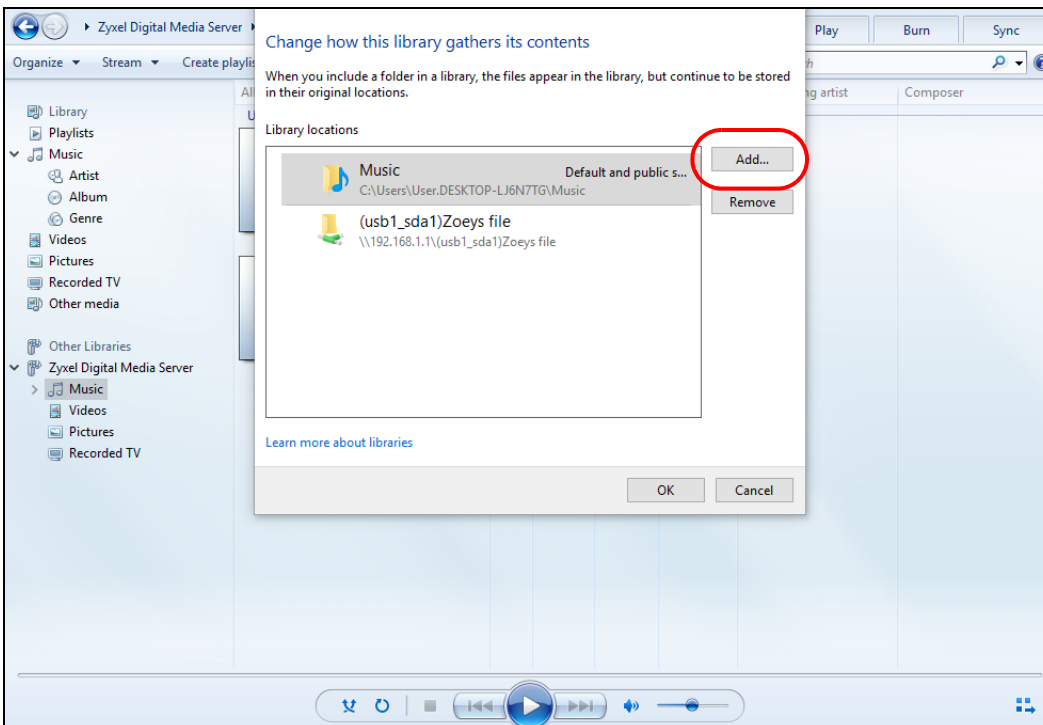


- 2 If you cannot see the Zyxel Device in the left panel as shown above, go to **Organize > Manage Libraries > Music > Add** on the Windows Media Player Home screen. In the Windows Explorer's address bar, enter `\\192.168.1.1`. The following screen appears. Select the folder containing the media you wish to upload to Windows Media Player, and then click **Include Folder**.

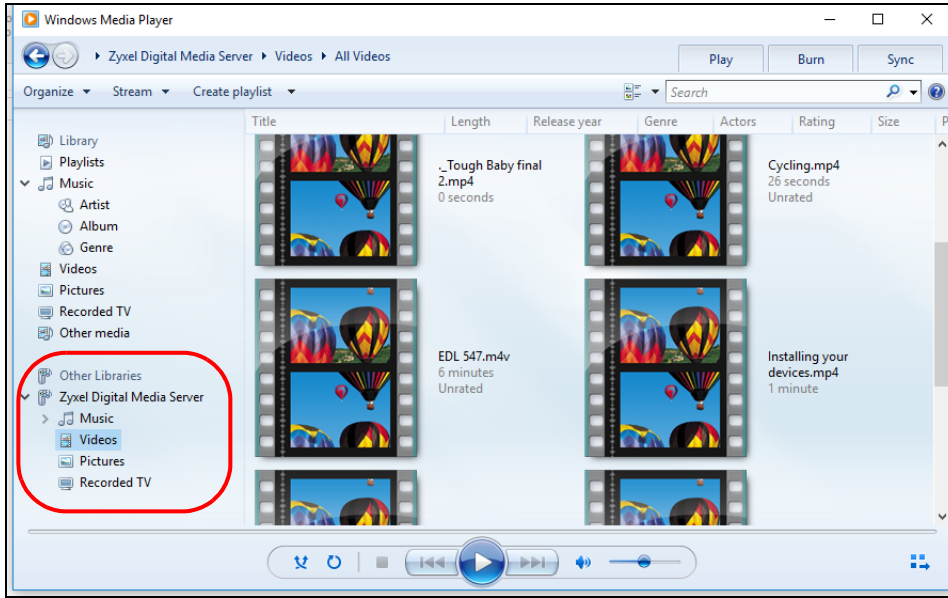




- 3 Select the shared folder, and then click **Add** to add it to your Media Library. Click **OK** to save the settings.



- 4 In the right panel, you can browse and play the files available in the USB storage device based on the category (**Music**, **Video**, **Pictures**, **Recorded TV**) you selected.

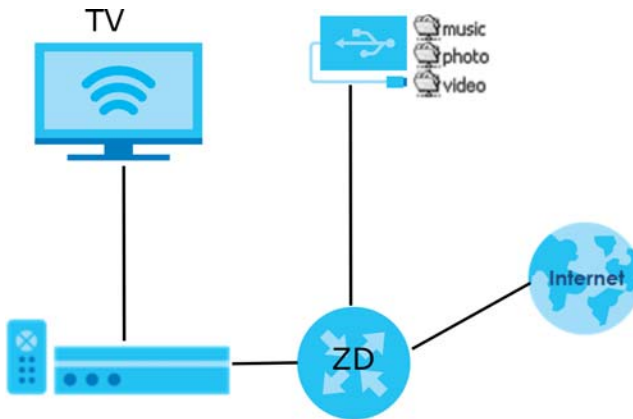


#### 4.4.3.3 Using a Digital Media Player

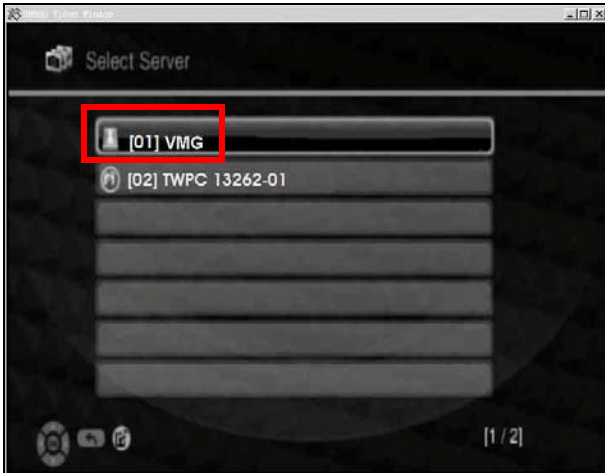
This section shows you how you can use the Zyxel Device with a hardware digital media player to play media files stored in the USB storage device on your TV screen.

Note: For this tutorial, your digital media player is already connected to the TV.

- 1 Connect the digital media player to an available LAN port on your Zyxel Device.



- 2 Turn on the TV and wait for the digital media player **Home** screen to appear. Select the Zyxel Device as your media server.



- 3 The screen shows you the list of available media files in the USB storage device. Select the file you want to open and push the **Play** button on the remote control.

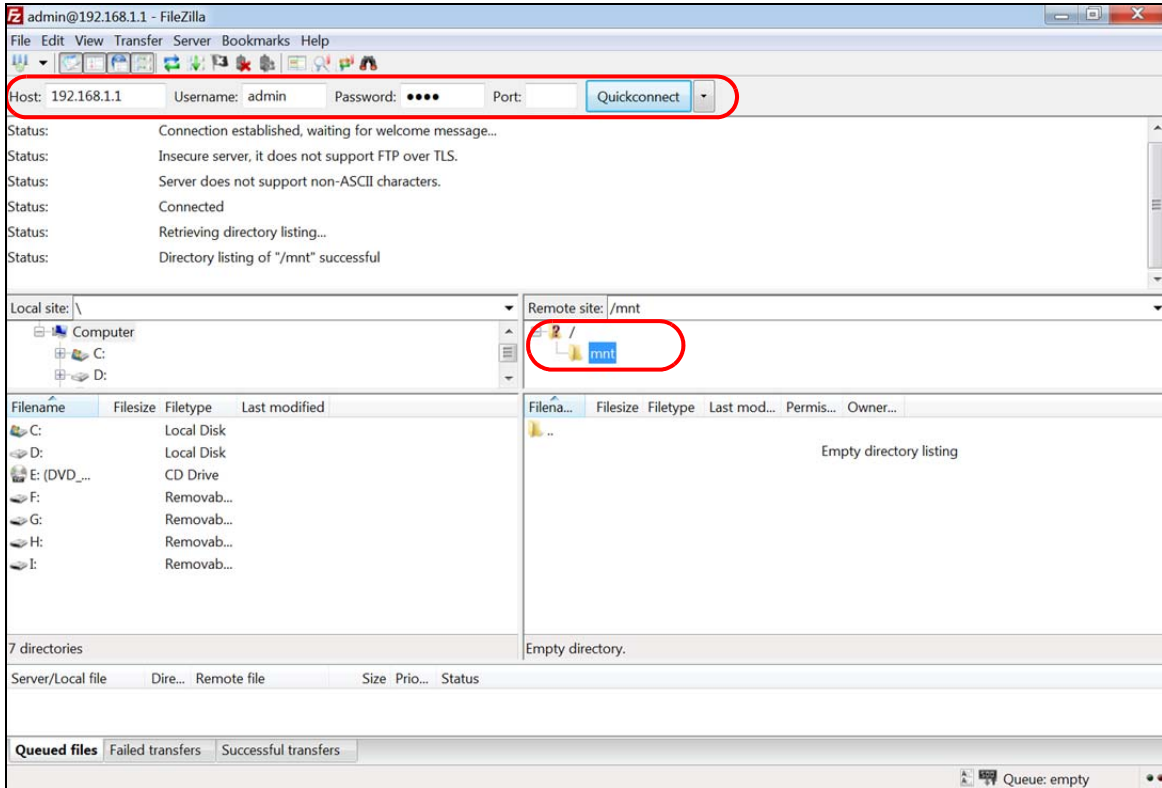


#### 4.4.4 Using FTP

This section shows how to use an FTP program to access files on an USB storage device connected to the Zyxel Device.

Note: This example uses the FileZilla FTP program to browse your shared files.

- 1 In FileZilla, enter the IP address of the Zyxel Device (The default IP is **192.168.1.1**), your account's **Username**, **Password** and **Port** number, and then click **Quickconnect**. A screen asking for password authentication appears.



- 2 After you log in, the **mnt** folder is displayed as shown.

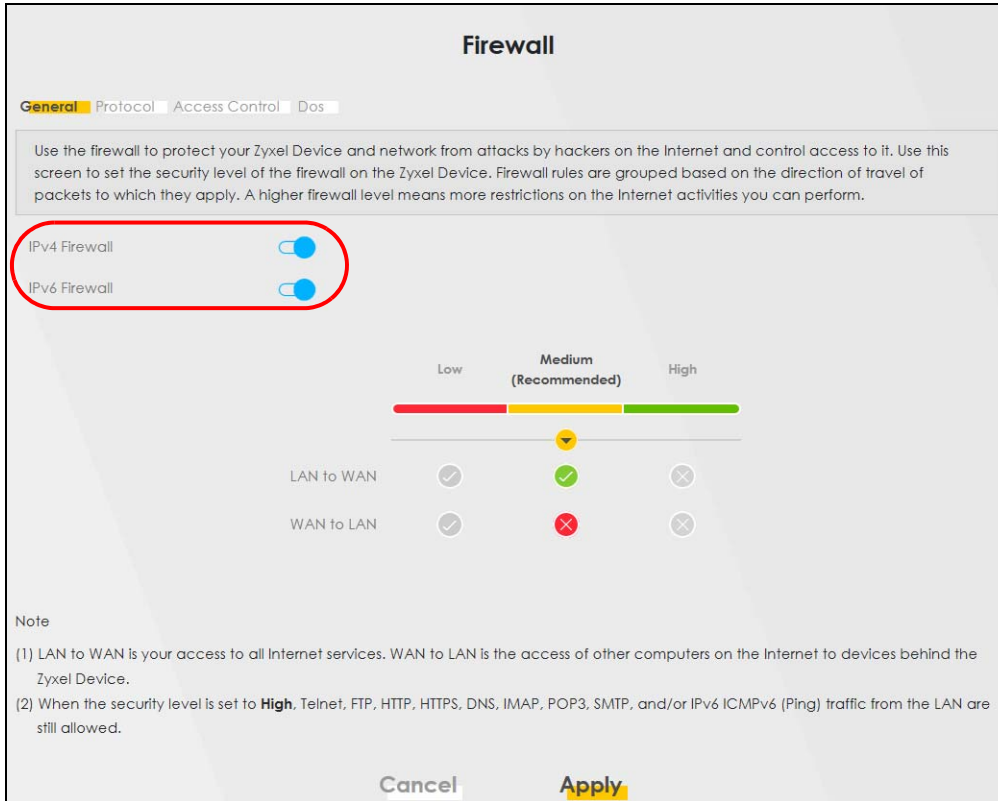
## 4.5 Network Security

This section shows you how to configure a Firewall rule, Parental Control rule, or MAC Filter rule.

### 4.5.1 Configuring a Firewall Rule

You can enable the firewall to protect your LAN computers from malicious attacks from the Internet.

- 1 Go to the **Security > Firewall > General** screen.
- 2 Select **IPv4 Firewall/IPv6 Firewall** to enable the firewall, and then click **Apply**.



- 3 Open the **Access Control** screen to create a rule.

The screenshot shows the 'Add New ACL Rule' configuration interface. It includes the following fields and options:

- Active:** A toggle switch that is currently turned on (blue).
- Filter Name:** A text input field.
- Order:** A text input field containing the number '1'.
- Select Source IP Address:** A dropdown menu with 'Specific IP Address' selected.
- Source IP Address:** A text input field with a placeholder '[]/prefix length'.
- Select Destination Device:** A dropdown menu with 'Specific IP Address' selected.
- Destination IP Address:** A text input field with a placeholder '[]/prefix length'.
- MAC Address:** A text input field with dashes as a placeholder.
- IP Type:** A dropdown menu with 'IPv4' selected.
- Select Service:** A dropdown menu with 'Specific Service' selected.
- Protocol:** A dropdown menu with 'ALL' selected.
- Custom Source Port:** A range selector with 'Range' and two input fields containing '1' and '1'.
- Custom Destination Port:** A range selector with 'Range' and two input fields containing '1' and '1'.
- Policy:** A dropdown menu with 'ACCEPT' selected.
- Direction:** A dropdown menu with 'WAN to LAN' selected.
- Enable Rate Limit:** A toggle switch that is currently turned off (grey).
- Rate Limit:** A section with a text input field, the label 'packet(s) per', another text input field, the label 'Minute', and a range '(1-512)'.
- Scheduler Rules:** A dropdown menu with a downward arrow and a yellow 'Add New Rule' button.

At the bottom of the screen, there are 'Cancel' and 'OK' buttons.

- 4 Click **Add New ACL Rule** to set up a rule.
  - 4a **Filter Name:** Enter a name to identify the firewall rule.
  - 4b **Source IP Address:** Enter the IP address of the computer that initializes traffic for the application or service.
  - 4c **Destination IP Address:** Enter the IP address of the computer to which traffic for the application or service is entering.
  - 4d **Protocol:** Select the protocol (**ALL**, **TCP/UDP**, **TCP**, **UDP**, **ICMP** or **ICMPv6**) used to transport the packets.
  - 4e **Policy:** Select whether to (**ACCEPT**, **DROP**, or **REJECT**) the packets.
  - 4f **Direction:** Select the direction (**WAN to LAN**, **LAN to WAN**, **WAN to ROUTER**, or **LAN to ROUTER**) of the traffic to which this rule applies.
- 5 Select **Enable Rate Limit** to activate the rules you created. Click **OK**.

## 4.5.2 Parental Control

This section shows you how to configure rules for accessing the Internet using parental control.

The style and features of your parental control vary depending on the Zyxel Device you are using, see [Section 4.5.2.1 on page 87](#) and [Section 4.5.2.2 on page 89](#) for more information.

### 4.5.2.1 Configuring Parental Control Schedule and Filter

Parental Control Profile (PCP) allows you to set up a rule for:

- Internet usage scheduling.
- Websites and URL keyword blocking.

Use this feature to:

- Limit the days and times a user can access the Internet.
- Limit the websites a user can access on the Internet.

This example shows you how to block a user from accessing the Internet during time for studying. It also shows you how to stop a user from accessing specific websites.

Use the parameter below to configure a schedule rule and a URL keyword blocking rule.

PROFILE NAME	INTERNET ACCESS SCHEDULE	NETWORK SERVICE	SITE/ URL KEYWORD
Study	<b>Day:</b> Monday to Friday	<b>Network Service Setting:</b> Block	<b>Block or Allow the Web Site:</b> Block the web URLs
	<b>Time:</b> 8:00 to 11:00 13:00 to 17:00	<b>Service Name:</b> HTTP	<b>Website:</b> gambling
		<b>Protocol:</b> TCP	
		<b>Port:</b> 80	

### Parental Control Screen

- 1 Select **Enable** under **General** to enable parental control. Then click **Add New PCP** to add a rule.

## Parental Control

Parental control allows you to limit the time a user can access the Internet and prevent users from viewing inappropriate content or participating in specified online activities.

Use this screen to enable parental control and view parental control rules and schedules. You can limit the time a user can access the Internet and prevent users from viewing inappropriate content or participating in specified online activities. These rules are defined in a Parental Control Profile (PCP).

**General**

Parental Control  Enable  Disable (Settings are invalid when disable)

Parental Control Profile(PCP) + Add New PCP

#	Status	PCP Name	Home Network User MAC	Internet Access Schedule	Network Service	Website Blocked	Modify
<span>Cancel</span> <span style="margin-left: 100px;">Apply</span>							

### Add New PCP Screen

- 1 Under **General**:
  - 1a Select **Enable** to enable the rule you are configuring.
  - 1b Enter the **Parental Control Profile Name** given in the above parameter.
  - 1c Select an user this rule applies to in **Home Network User**, then click **Add**. You will see the MAC address of the user you just select in **Rule List**.

**General**

Active  Enable  Disable (Settings are invalid when disable)

Parental Control Profile Name

Home Network User  Add

---

**Rule List**

User MAC Address	Delete
DC-4A-3E-40-EC-67	Delete

- 2 Under **Internet Access Schedule**:
  - 2a Click **Add New Time** to add a second schedule.



**2b** Use the parameter give above to configure the time settings of your schedule.

**3** Under **Network Service**:

**3a** In **Network Service Setting**, select **Block**.

**3b** Click **Add New Service**, then use the parameter given above to configure settings for the Internet service you are blocking.

#	Service Name	Protocol:Port	Modify
1	http	TCP:80	

**4** Under **Site/ URL Keyword**:

**4a** Select **Block the web URLs** in **Block or Allow the Web Site**.

**4b** Click **Add**, then use the parameter given above to configure settings for the URL keyword you are blocking.

**4c** Select **Redirect blocked site to Zyxel Family Safety page** to redirect the web browser to the Zyxel Family Safety page if he or she tries to access a website with the blocked URL keyword.

#	Website	Modify
1	gambling	

Redirect blocked site to Zyxel Family Safety page Zyxel Family Safety page will replace any sites from the above list in the browser.

**5** Click **OK** to save your settings.

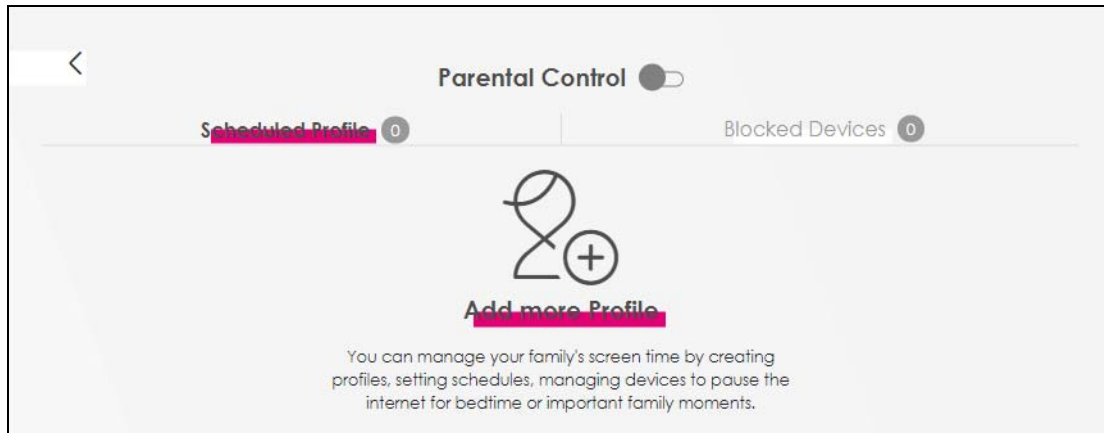
#### 4.5.2.2 Configuring a Parental Control Schedule

Parental Control Profile allows you to set up a schedule rule for Internet usage. Use this feature to limit the days and times a user can access the Internet.

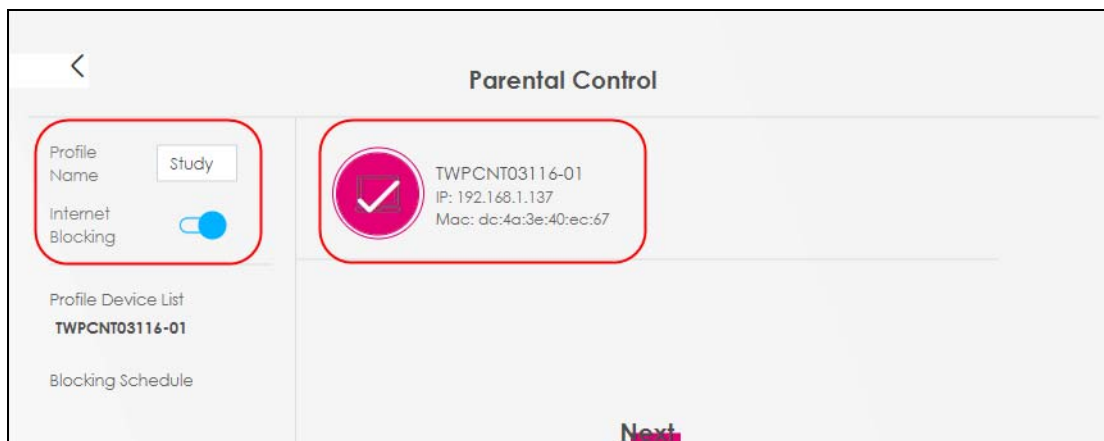
This example shows you how to block an user from accessing the Internet during time for studying. Use the parameter below to configure a schedule rule.

PROFILE NAME	START BLOCKING	END BLOCKING	REPEAT ON
Study	8:00 am	11:00 am	from Monday to Friday
	1:00 pm	5:00 pm	from Monday to Friday

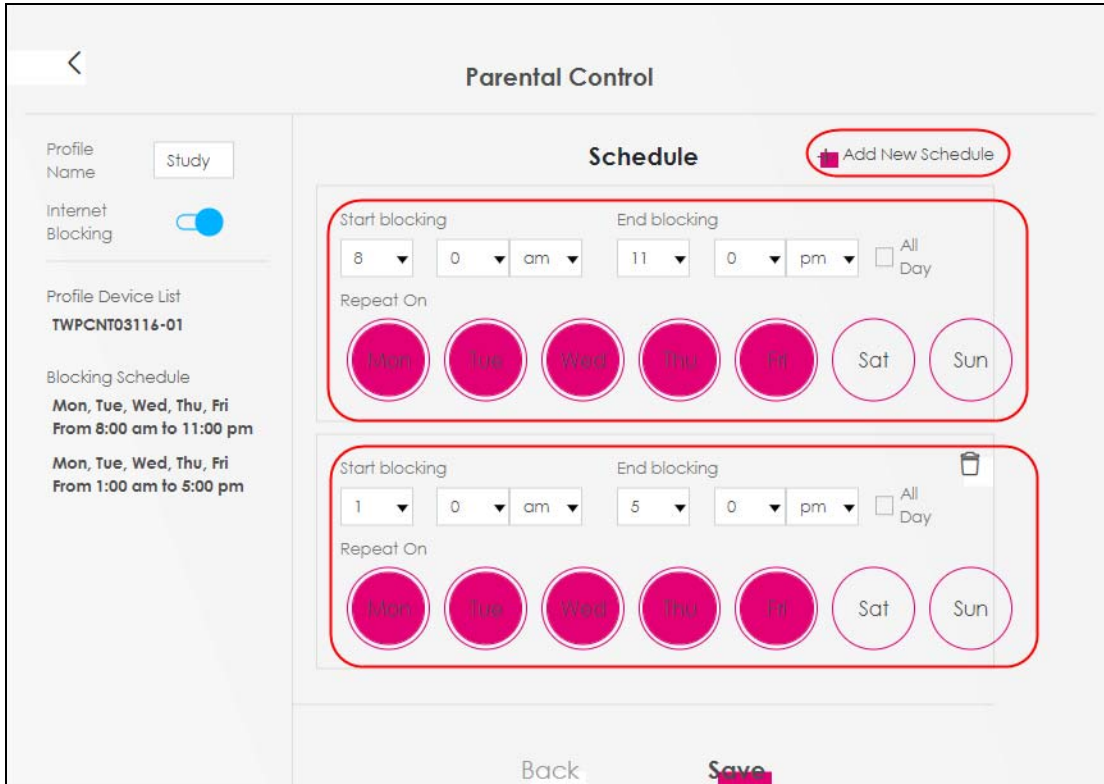
- 1 Click **Add more Profile** to open the **Parental Control** screen.



- 2 Use this screen to add a Parental Control rule.
  - 2a Enter the **Profile Name** given in the above parameter.
  - 2b Click on the switch to enable **Internet Blocking**.
  - 2c Select a device, and then click **Next** to proceed.



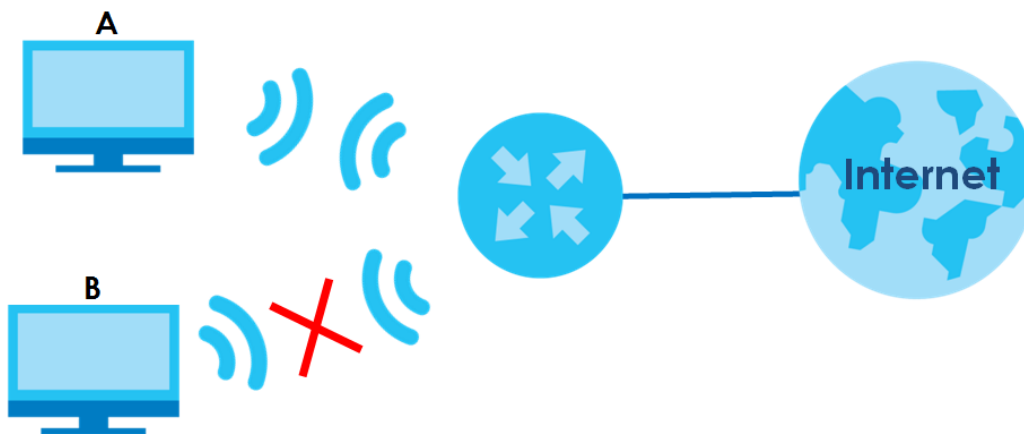
- 3 Use this screen to edit the Parental Control schedule.
  - 3a Click **Add New Schedule** to add a second schedule.
  - 3b Use the parameter given above to configure the time settings of your schedules.
  - 3c Click **Save** to save the settings.



### 4.5.3 Configuring a MAC Address Filter

You can use a MAC address filter to exclusively allow or permanently block someone from the WiFi network.

This example shows that computer B is not allowed access to the WiFi network.



- 1 Go to the **Security > MAC Filter > MAC Filter** screen. Under **MAC Address Filter**, select **Enable**.
- 2 Click **Add New Rule** to add a new entry. Select **Active**, and then enter the **Host Name** and **MAC Address** of computer B. Click **Apply**.

MAC Address Filter  Enable  Disable (Settings are invalid when disable)

MAC Restrict Mode  Allow  Deny

[+ Add New Rule](#)

Set	Active	Host Name	MAC Address	Delete
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	B	00 - 24 - 21 - AB - 1F - 00	

[Cancel](#) [Apply](#)

## 4.6 Internet Calls

This section shows you how to make Internet calls.

### 4.6.1 Configuring VoIP

To make voice calls over the Internet, you must set up a Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) provider and SIP account on the Zyxel Device. You should have an account with a SIP service provider already set up.

### 4.6.2 Adding a SIP Service Provider

Follow the steps below to add a SIP service provider.

- 1 Make sure your Zyxel Device is connected to the Internet.
- 2 Open the Web Configurator.
- 3 Go to the **VoIP > SIP > SIP Service Provider** screen. Click the **Add New Provider** button to add the SIP Service Provider.

**Figure 39** VoIP > SIP > SIP Service Provider

SIP Account **SIP Service Provider**

Use this screen to view the SIP service provider information on the Zyxel Device. A SIP provider offers Internet call services using VoIP technology. You may need to consult your SIP service provider for the following settings.

[+ Add New Provider](#)

#	SIP Service Provider Name	SIP Proxy Server Address	REGISTER Server Address	SIP Service Domain	Modify
1	Verizon	sip.infostrada.it	sip.infostrada.it	sip.infostrada.it	

- 4 On the **Add New Provider** screen, select **Enable SIP Service Provider**.
- 5 Enter **SIP Service Provider Name** of up to 64 ASCII printable characters.
- 6 Enter **SIP Proxy Server Address**, **SIP REGISTRAR Server Address**, and **SIP Service Domain** provided by your SIP service provider. Click **OK** to save your settings.

Figure 40 VoIP &gt; SIP &gt; SIP Service Provider &gt; Add New Provider

**Add New Provider**

SIP Service Provider Selection  
Service Provider Selection    ADD\_NEW

**General**

SIP Service Provider     Enable SIP Service Provider

SIP Service Provider Name    Verizon

SIP Local Port    5060    (1025~65535)

SIP Proxy Server Address    sip.infostrada.it

SIP Proxy Server Port    5060    (1025~65535)

SIP REGISTRAR Server Address    sip.infostrada.it

SIP REGISTRAR Server Port    5060    (1025~65535)

SIP Service Domain    sip.infostrada.it

Cancel    OK

### 4.6.3 Adding a SIP Account

The SIP account must be associated with the SIP service provider configured above. You may configure several SIP accounts for the same service provider. Follow the steps below to set up your SIP account:

- 1 Make sure your Zyxel Device is connected to the Internet.
- 2 Open the Web Configurator.
- 3 Go to the **VoIP > SIP > SIP Account** screen.
- 4 Click the **Add New Account** button on the **SIP Account** screen to add a SIP account and map it to a phone port.

Figure 41 VoIP &gt; SIP &gt; SIP Account

**SIP Account** SIP Service Provider

You can make calls over the Internet using VoIP technology. For this, you first need to set up a SIP account with a SIP service provider.

The Zyxel Device uses a SIP account to make outgoing VoIP calls and check if an incoming call's destination number matches your SIP account's VoIP number. In order to make or receive a VoIP call, you need to enable and configure a SIP account and map it to a phone port. The SIP account contains information that allows your Zyxel Device to connect to your VoIP service provider.

**+ Add New Account**

#	Enable	SIP Account	Service Provider	Account Number	Modify
1	Enabled	SIP1	Verizon	Account1	
2	Enabled	SIP2	Verizon	Account2	
3	Disabled	SIP3	Verizon	Account3	

- 5 Under **General**, select **Enable SIP Account**, and then enter the **SIP Account Number**.
- 6 Under **Authentication**, enter **Username** and **Password**. Leave the other settings as default. Click **OK** to save your settings.

Figure 42 VoIP &gt; SIP &gt; SIP Account &gt; Add New Account/Edit

**SIP Account Entry Edit**

**SIP Account Selection**  
SIP Account Selection: SIP1

**SIP Service Provider Association**  
SIP Account Associated with: Verizon

**General**

Enable SIP Account

SIP Account Number: Account1

**Authentication**

Username: User1

Password: \*\*\*\*\*

**URL Type**

URL Type: SIP



## 4.6.4 Configuring a Phone

You must now configure the phone port to use the SIP account you just configured.

- 1 Go to the **VoIP > Phone > Phone Device** screen.

- Click the **Modify** icon of **PHONE1** to configure PHONE1 on your Zyxel Device. The following screen appears.

**Figure 43** VoIP > Phone > Phone Device

#	Phone ID	Internal Number	Incoming SIP Number	Outgoing SIP Number	Modify
1	PHONE1	**11	Account1	Account1	
2	PHONE2	**12	Account2	Account2	

- Under **SIP1 SIP Account to Make Outgoing Call**, select **SIP1** to have the phone connected to the first phone port use the registered SIP1 account to make outgoing calls.
- Under **SIP Account(s) to Receive Incoming Call**, select **SIP1** to have the phone connected to the first phone port receive phone calls for the SIP1 account. Click **OK** to save your changes.

**Figure 44** VoIP > Phone > Phone Device > Edit

**Phone Device Edit**

**SIP Account to Make Outgoing Call**

SIP Account:  SIP1  SIP2

SIP Number: ChangeMe ChangeMe

**SIP Account(s) to Receive Incoming Call**

SIP Account:  SIP1  SIP2

directoryNumber: ChangeMe ChangeMe

**Immediate Dial Enable**

Immediate Dial Enable

Cancel OK

## 4.6.5 Making a VoIP Call

- Make sure you connect a telephone to the first phone port on the Zyxel Device.
- Make sure the Zyxel Device is turned on and connected to the Internet.
- Pick up the phone receiver.
- Dial the VoIP phone number you want to call.

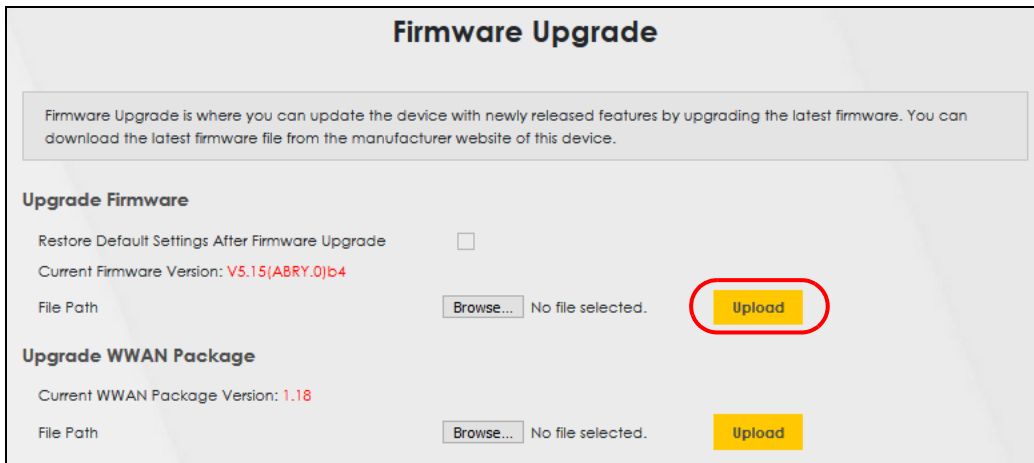
## 4.7 Device Maintenance

This section shows you how to upgrade device firmware, back up the device configuration and restore the device to its previous or default settings.

### 4.7.1 Upgrading the Firmware

Upload the router firmware to the Zyxel Device for feature enhancements.

- 1 Download the correct firmware file from the download library at the Zyxel website. The model code for the Zyxel Device in this example is ABLZ. Note the model code for your device. Unzip the file.
- 2 Go to the **Maintenance > Firmware Upgrade** screen.
- 3 Click **Browse/Choose File** and select the file with a ".bin" extension to upload. Click **Upload**.



The screenshot shows the 'Firmware Upgrade' screen. At the top, there is a title 'Firmware Upgrade' and a descriptive paragraph: 'Firmware Upgrade is where you can update the device with newly released features by upgrading the latest firmware. You can download the latest firmware file from the manufacturer website of this device.' Below this, there are two sections: 'Upgrade Firmware' and 'Upgrade WWAN Package'. The 'Upgrade Firmware' section includes a checkbox for 'Restore Default Settings After Firmware Upgrade', the current firmware version 'V5.15(ABRY.0)b4', a 'File Path' field with a 'Browse...' button and 'No file selected.' text, and a yellow 'Upload' button circled in red. The 'Upgrade WWAN Package' section includes the current WWAN package version '1.18', a 'File Path' field with a 'Browse...' button and 'No file selected.' text, and a yellow 'Upload' button.

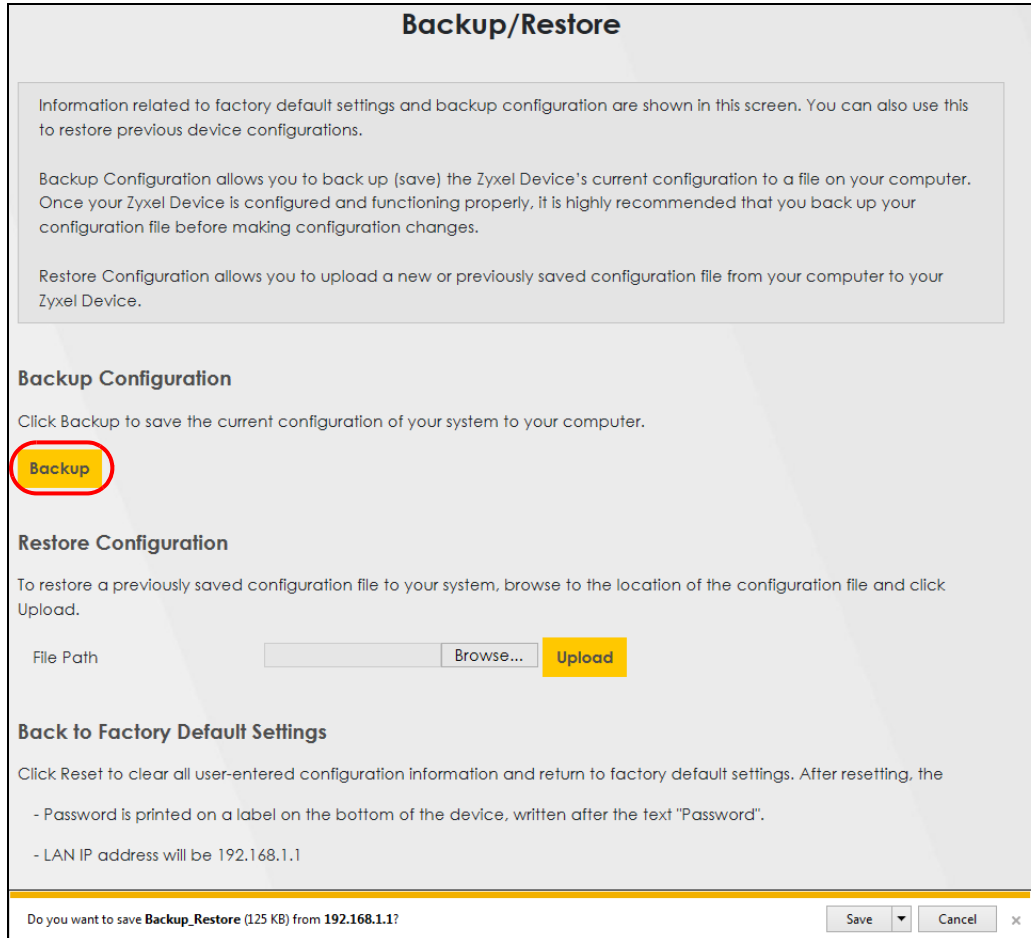
- 4 This process may take up to two minutes to finish. After two minutes, log in again and check your new firmware version in the **Status** screen.

### 4.7.2 Backing up the Device Configuration

Back up a configuration file allows you to return to your previous settings.

- 1 Go to the **Maintenance > Backup/Restore** screen.
- 2 Under **Backup Configuration**, click **Backup**. A configuration file is saved to your computer. In this case, the **Backup\_Restore** file is saved.





### 4.7.3 Restoring the Device Configuration

This section shows you how to restore a previously-saved configuration file from your computer to your Zyxel Device.

- 1 Go to the **Maintenance > Backup/Restore** screen.
- 2 Under **Restore Configuration**, click **Browse/Choose File**, and then select the configuration file that you want to upload. Click **Upload**.

## Backup/Restore

Information related to factory default settings and backup configuration are shown in this screen. You can also use this to restore previous device configurations.

Backup Configuration allows you to back up (save) the Zyxel Device's current configuration to a file on your computer. Once your Zyxel Device is configured and functioning properly, it is highly recommended that you back up your configuration file before making configuration changes.

Restore Configuration allows you to upload a new or previously saved configuration file from your computer to your Zyxel Device.

### Backup Configuration

Click Backup to save the current configuration of your system to your computer.

**Backup**

### Restore Configuration

To restore a previously saved configuration file to your system, browse to the location of the configuration file and click Upload.

File Path

### Back to Factory Default Settings

Click Reset to clear all user-entered configuration information and return to factory default settings. After resetting, the

- Password is printed on a label on the bottom of the device, written after the text "Password".
- LAN IP address will be 192.168.1.1
- DHCP will be reset to default setting

**Reset**

- 3 The Zyxel Device automatically restarts after the configuration file is successfully uploaded. Wait for one minute before logging into the Zyxel Device again. Go to the **Connection Status** page to check the firmware version after the reboot.

---

# PART II

## Technical Reference

---

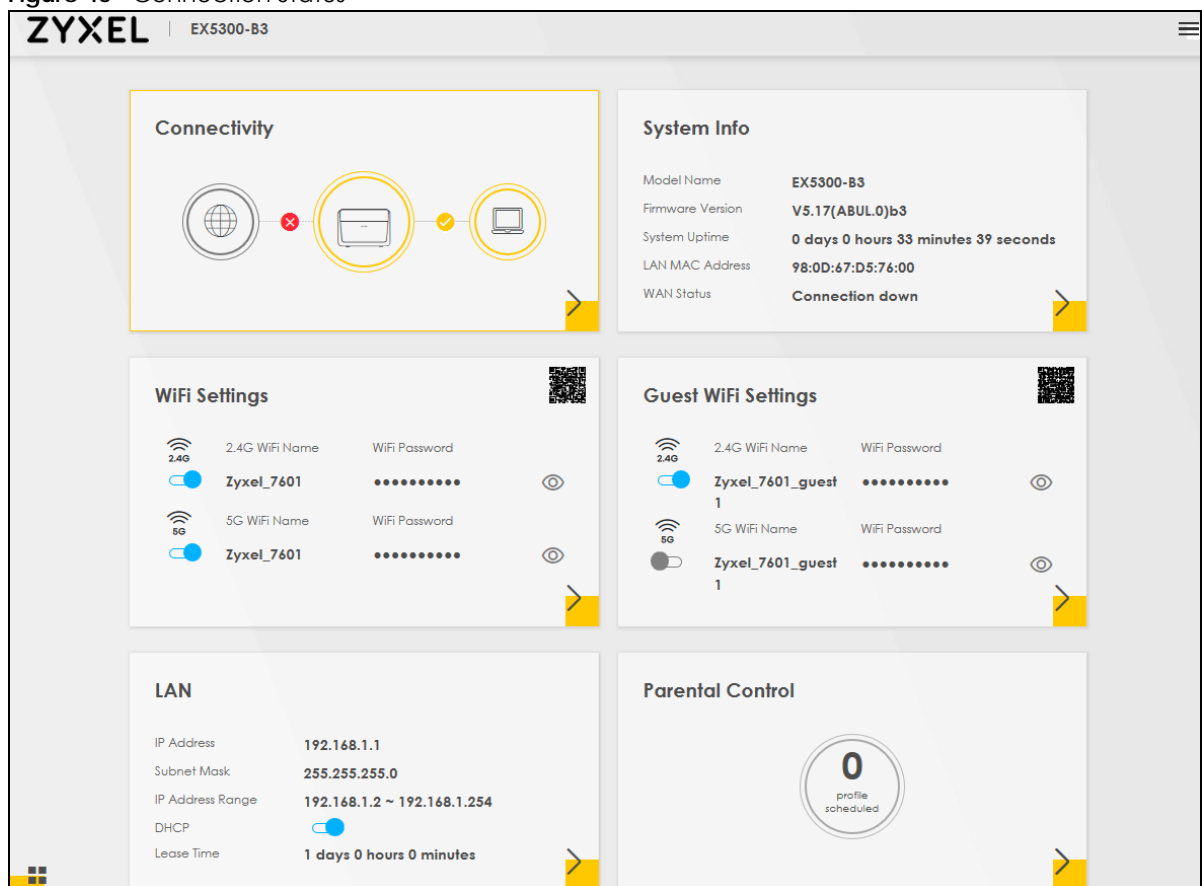
# CHAPTER 5

## Connection Status



### 5.1 Overview

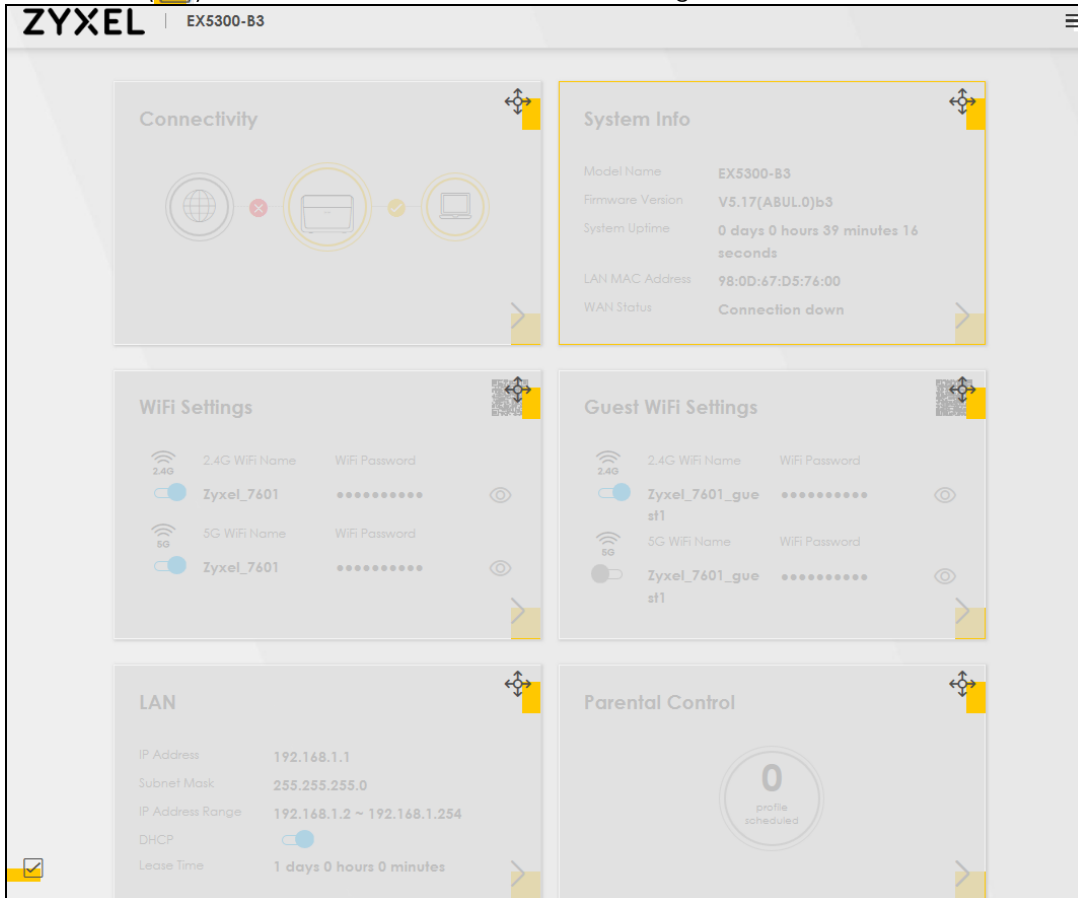
After you log into the Web Configurator, the **Connection Status** screen appears. You can configure basic Internet access, wireless settings, and parental control settings in this screen. It also shows the network status of the Zyxel Device and computers/devices connected to it.

Figure 45 Connection Status



## 5.1.1 Layout Icon

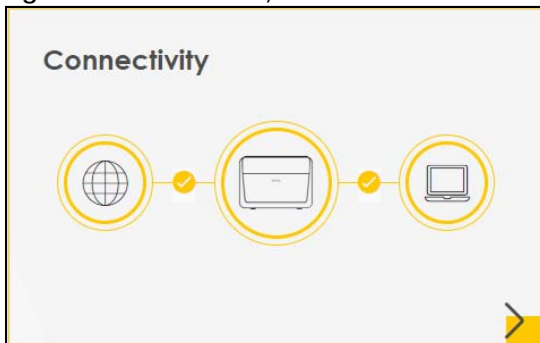
Click this icon (  ) to arrange the screen order. Select a block and hold it to move around. Click the Check icon (  ) in the lower left corner to save the changes.




## 5.1.2 Connectivity

Use this screen to view the network connection status of the Zyxel Device and its clients.

**Figure 46** Connectivity



Click the Arrow icon (  ) to open the following screen. Use this screen to view IP addresses and MAC addresses of the wireless and wired devices connected to the Zyxel Device.

Place your mouse within the device block, and an Edit icon (✎) will appear. Click the Edit icon to change the icon and name of a connected device.

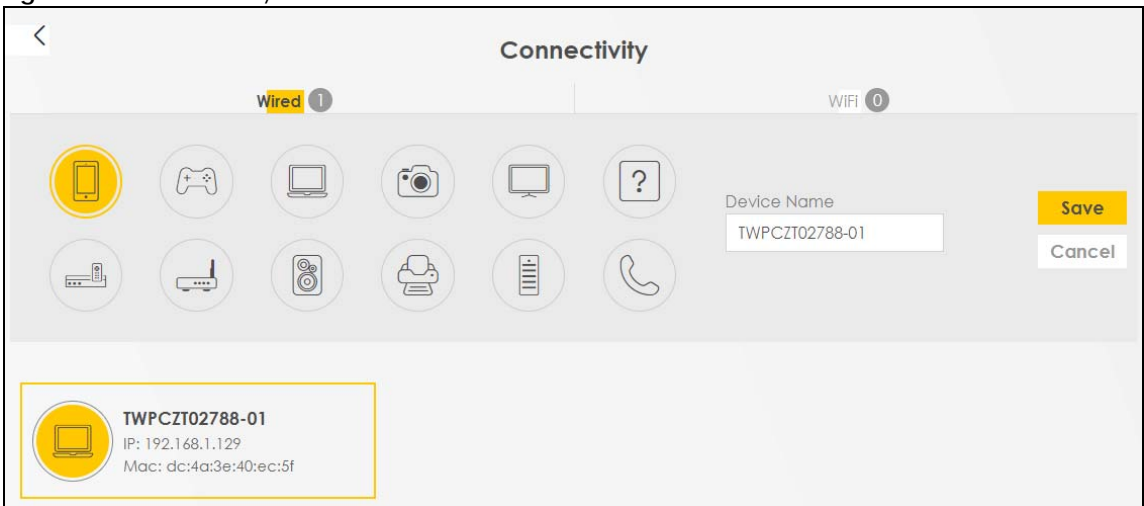
**Figure 47** Connectivity: Connected Devices



## Icon and Device Name

You can change the icon and name of a connected device by clicking the device's Edit icon. Select an icon and/or enter a name in the **Device Name** field for a connected device. Click **Save** to save your changes.

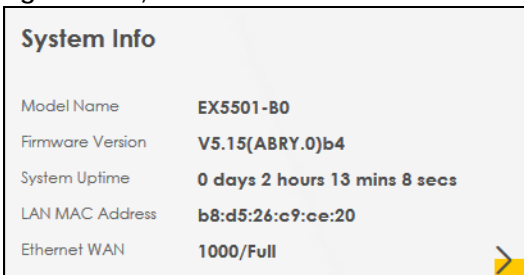
**Figure 48** Connectivity: Edit




## 5.1.3 System Info

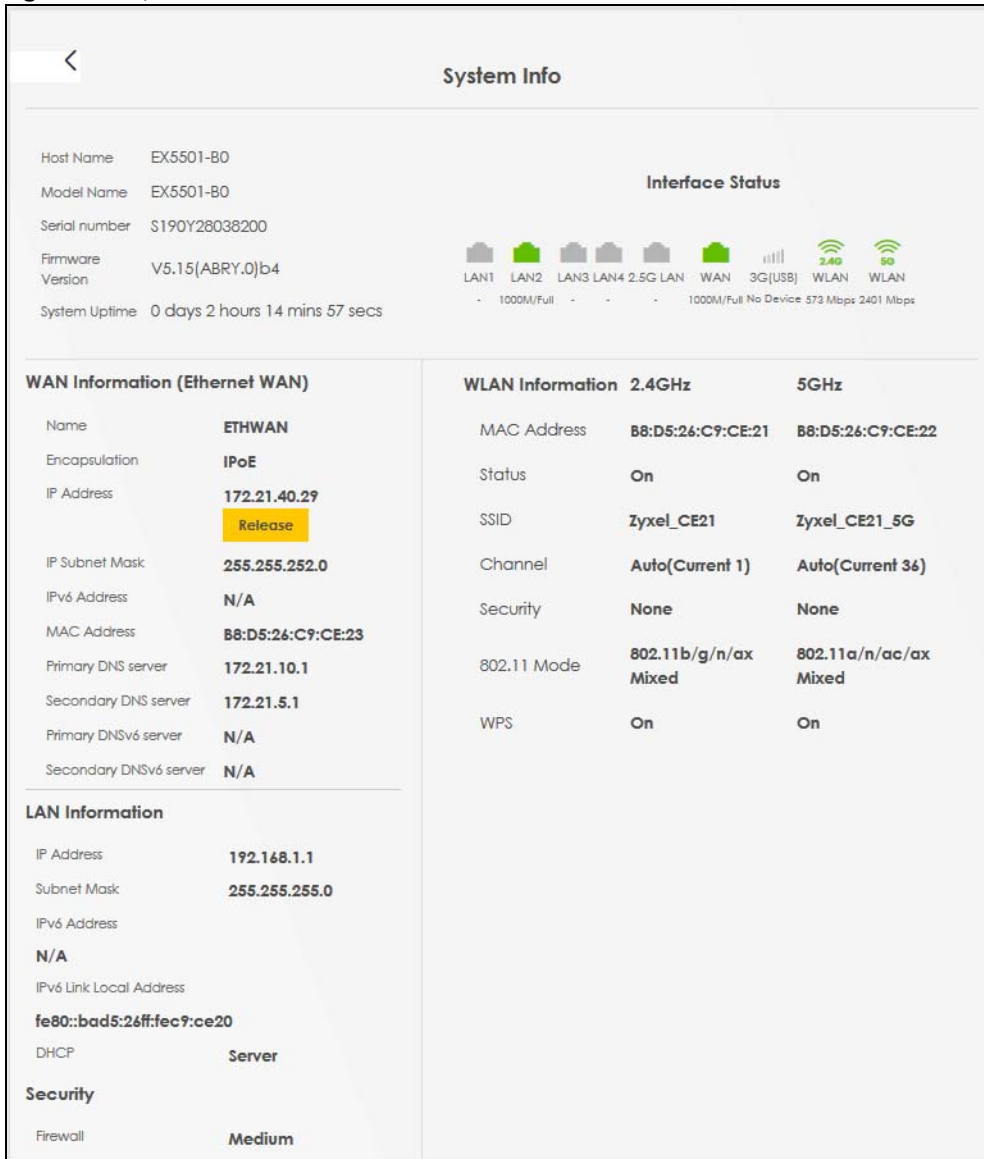
Use this screen to view the basic system information of the Zyxel Device.

**Figure 49** System Info



Click the Arrow icon (  ) to open the following screen. Use this screen to view more information on the status of your firewall and interfaces (WAN, LAN, and WiFi).

**Figure 50** System Info: Detailed Information



Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 11** System Info: Detailed Information

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Host Name	This field displays the Zyxel Device system name. It is used for identification.
Model Name	This shows the model number of your Zyxel Device.
Serial Number	This field displays the serial number of the Zyxel Device.
Firmware Version	This is the current version of the firmware on the Zyxel Device.
System Uptime	This field displays how long the Zyxel Device has been running since it last started up. The Zyxel Device starts up when you plug it in, when you restart it ( <b>Maintenance &gt; Reboot</b> ), or when you reset it.

Table 11 System Info: Detailed Information (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Interface Status	
Virtual ports are shown here. You can see whether the ports are in use and their transmission rate.	
WAN Information (Ethernet WAN) These fields display when you have an Internet connection.	
Names	This field displays the name given to the Internet connection.
Encapsulation	This field displays the current encapsulation method.
IP Address	This field displays the current IPv4 address of the Zyxel Device. Click the <b>Release</b> button to release the IP address provided by a DHCP server.
IP Subnet Mask	This field displays the current subnet mask in the WAN.
IPv6 Address	This field displays the current IPv6 address of the Zyxel Device.
MAC Address	This field displays the WAN Ethernet adapter MAC (Media Access Control) address of your Zyxel Device.
Primary DNS server	This field displays the first DNS server address assigned by the ISP.
Secondary DNS server	This field displays the second DNS server address assigned by the ISP.
Primary DNSv6 server	This field displays the first DNS server IPv6 address assigned by the ISP.
Secondary DNSv6 server	This field displays the second DNS server IPv6 address assigned by the ISP.
LAN Information (These fields display information about the LAN ports.)	
IP Address	This is the current IPv4 address of the Zyxel Device in the LAN.
Subnet Mask	This is the current subnet mask in the LAN.
IPv6 Address	This field displays the current IPv6 address of the Zyxel Device in the LAN.
IPv6 Link Local Address	This field displays the current link-local address of the Zyxel Device for the LAN interface.
DHCP	This field displays what DHCP services the Zyxel Device is providing to the LAN. The possible values are:  <b>Server</b> - The Zyxel Device is a DHCP server in the LAN. It assigns IP addresses to other computers in the LAN.  <b>Relay</b> - The Zyxel Device acts as a surrogate DHCP server and relays DHCP requests and responses between the remote server and the clients.  <b>None</b> - The Zyxel Device is not providing any DHCP services to the LAN.
Security	
Firewall	This displays the firewall's current security level.
WLAN Information 2.4GHz / 5GHz	
MAC Address	This shows the wireless adapter MAC (Media Access Control) address of the wireless interface.
Status	This displays whether WiFi is activated.
SSID	This is the descriptive name used to identify the Zyxel Device in a wireless LAN.
Channel	This is the channel number used by the wireless interface now.
Security	This displays the type of security mode the wireless interface is using in the wireless LAN.
802.11 Mode	This displays the type of 802.11 mode the wireless interface is using in the wireless LAN.
WPS	This displays whether WPS is activated on the wireless interface.



## 5.2 WiFi Settings



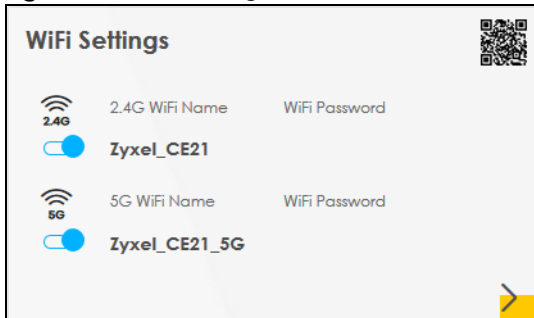
Use this screen to enable or disable the main 2.4G and/or 5G wireless networks. When the switch goes to the right (  ), the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not. You can use this screen or the QR code on the upper right corner to check the SSIDs (WiFi network name) and passwords of the main wireless networks. If you want to show or hide your WiFi passwords, click the Eye icon (  ).

Figure 51 WiFi Settings




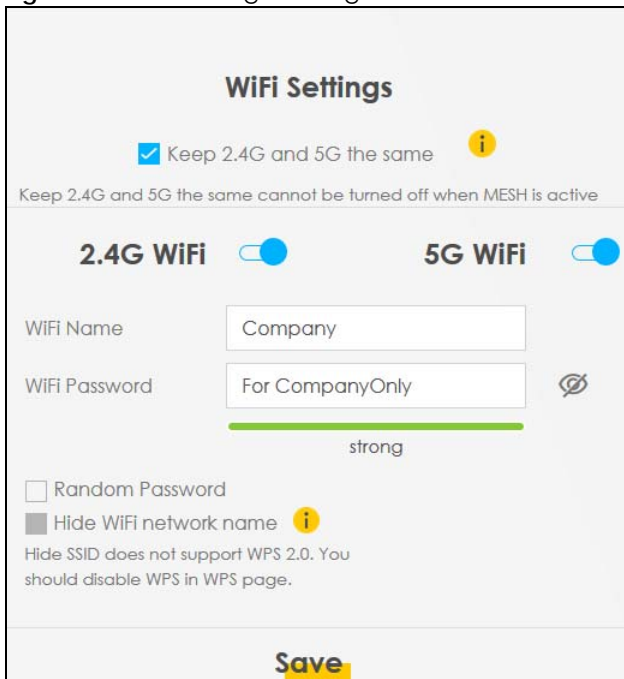


Click the Arrow icon (  ) to open the following screen. Use this screen to configure the SSIDs and/or passwords for your main wireless networks. Select **Keep 2.4G and 5G the same** to use the same SSID for 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz bands.

Figure 52 WiFi Settings: Configuration



Each field is described in the following table.

Table 12 WiFi Settings: Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Keep 2.4G and 5G the same	Select this and the 2.4G and 5G wireless networks will use the same SSID. If you deselect this, the screen will change. You need to assign different SSIDs for the 2.4G and 5G wireless networks.
2.4G/5G WiFi	Click this switch to enable or disable the 2.4G and/or 5G wireless networks. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
WiFi Name	The SSID (Service Set IDentity) identifies the service set with which a wireless device is associated. Wireless devices associating to the access point (AP) must have the same SSID. Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 English keyboard characters) for WiFi.
WiFi Password	If you selected <b>Random Password</b> , this field displays a pre-shared key generated by the Zyxel Device. If you did not select <b>Random Password</b> , you can manually type a pre-shared key from 8 to 64 case-sensitive keyboard characters.
	Click the Eye icon to show or hide the password for your wireless network. When the Eye icon is slashed  , you'll see the password in plain text. Otherwise, it is hidden.
Random Password	Select this option to have the Zyxel Device automatically generate a password. The <b>WiFi Password</b> field will not be configurable when you select this option.
Hide WiFi Name	Select this check box to hide the SSID in the outgoing beacon frame so a station cannot obtain the SSID through scanning using a site survey tool.  Note: Disable WPS in the <b>Network Setting &gt; Wireless &gt; WPS</b> screen to hide the SSID.
Save	Click <b>Save</b> to save your changes.

## 5.3 Guest WiFi Settings


Use this screen to enable or disable the guest 2.4G and/or 5G wireless networks. When the switch goes to the right () , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not. You can check their SSIDs (WiFi network name) and passwords from this screen. If you want to show or hide your WiFi passwords, click the Eye icon.

Figure 53 Guest WiFi Settings




Click the Arrow icon () to open the following screen. Use this screen to configure the SSIDs and/or passwords for your guest wireless networks.

Figure 54 Guest WiFi Settings: Configuration

**Guest WiFi Settings**

**WiFi**

WiFi Name: Zyxel08787\_guest

WiFi Password: ForGuestOnly 👁

strong

Random Password

Hide WiFi network name i

Hide SSID does not support WPS 2.0.  
You should disable WPS in WPS page.

**Save**

To assign different SSIDs to the 2.4G and 5G guest wireless networks, clear the **Keep 2.4G and 5G the same** check box in the **WiFi Settings** screen, and the **Guest WiFi Settings** screen will change.

Figure 55 Guest WiFi Settings: Different SSIDs

**Guest WiFi Settings**

**2.4G WiFi**

WiFi Name: Zyxel\_8760\_guest1

WiFi Password: \*\*\*\*\* 👁

medium

Random Password

Hide WiFi network name i

Hide SSID does not support WPS 2.0.  
You should disable WPS in WPS page.

**5G WiFi**

WiFi Name: Zyxel\_8760\_guest1

WiFi Password: \*\*\*\*\* 👁

medium

Random Password

Hide WiFi network name i

Hide SSID does not support WPS 2.0.  
You should disable WPS in WPS page.


**Save**

Each field is described in the following table.

Table 13 WiFi Settings: Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
WiFi 2.4G/5G WiFi	Click this switch to enable or disable the 2.4G and/or 5G wireless networks. When the switch goes to the right <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
WiFi Name	The SSID (Service Set IDentity) identifies the service set with which a wireless device is associated. Wireless devices associating to the access point (AP) must have the same SSID. Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 English keyboard characters) for WiFi.

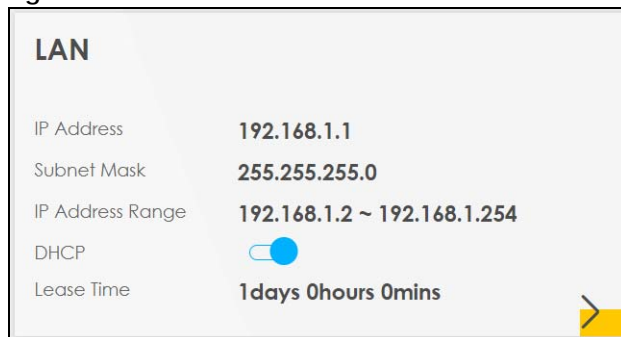
Table 13 WiFi Settings: Configuration (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
WiFi Password	If you selected <b>Random Password</b> , this field displays a pre-shared key generated by the Zyxel Device.  If you did not select <b>Random Password</b> , you can manually type a pre-shared key from 8 to 64 case-sensitive keyboard characters.
	Click the Eye icon to show or hide the password of your wireless network. When the Eye icon is slashed  , you'll see the password in plain text. Otherwise, it is hidden.
Random Password	Select this option to have the Zyxel Device automatically generate a password. The <b>WiFi Password</b> field will not be configurable when you select this option.
Hide WiFi Name	Select this check box to hide the SSID in the outgoing beacon frame so a station cannot obtain the SSID through scanning using a site survey tool.  Note: Disable WPS in the <b>Network Setting &gt; Wireless &gt; WPS</b> screen to hide the SSID.
Save	Click <b>Save</b> to save your changes.

## 5.4 LAN Settings

Use this screen to view the LAN IP address, subnet mask, and DHCP settings of your Zyxel Device.

Figure 56 LAN




Click the Arrow icon () to open the following screen. Use this screen to configure the LAN IP address and DHCP setting for your Zyxel Device.

Figure 57 LAN Setup

Each field is described in the following table.

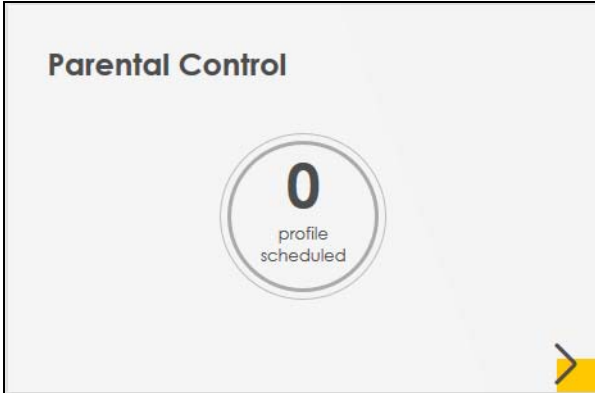
Table 14 Status Screen

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
LAN IP Setup	
IP Address	Enter the LAN IPv4 address you want to assign to your Zyxel Device in dotted decimal notation, for example, 192.168.1.1 (factory default).
Subnet Mask	Type the subnet mask of your network in dotted decimal notation, for example 255.255.255.0 (factory default). Your Zyxel Device automatically computes the subnet mask based on the IP address you enter, so do not change this field unless you are instructed to do so.
IP Addressing Values	
Beginning IP Address	This field specifies the first of the contiguous addresses in the IP address pool.
Ending IP Address	This field specifies the last of the contiguous addresses in the IP address pool.
DHCP Server State	
DHCP Server Lease Time	This is the period of time DHCP-assigned addresses is used. DHCP automatically assigns IP addresses to clients when they log in. DHCP centralizes IP address management on central computers that run the DHCP server program. DHCP leases addresses, for a period of time, which means that past addresses are "recycled" and made available for future reassignment to other systems.
Days/Hours/Minutes	Enter the lease time of the DHCP server.
Save	Click <b>Save</b> to save your changes.

## 5.5 Parental Control

Use this screen to view the number of profiles that were created for parental control.

Figure 58 Parental Control



Click the Arrow icon (➤) to open the following screen. Use this screen to enable parental control and add more profiles. Add a profile to create restricted access schedules. Go to the **Security > Parental Control > Add New PCP/Edit** screen to configure URL filtering settings to block the users on your network from accessing certain web sites.

Figure 59 Parental Control: Scheduled Profile (no profile)

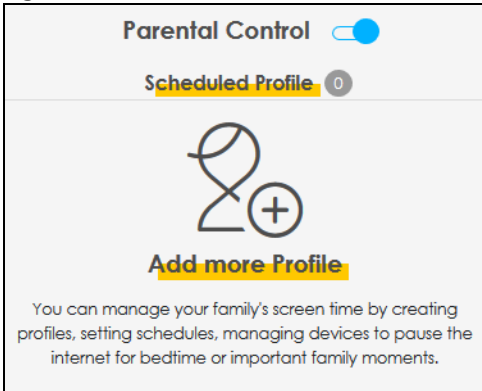
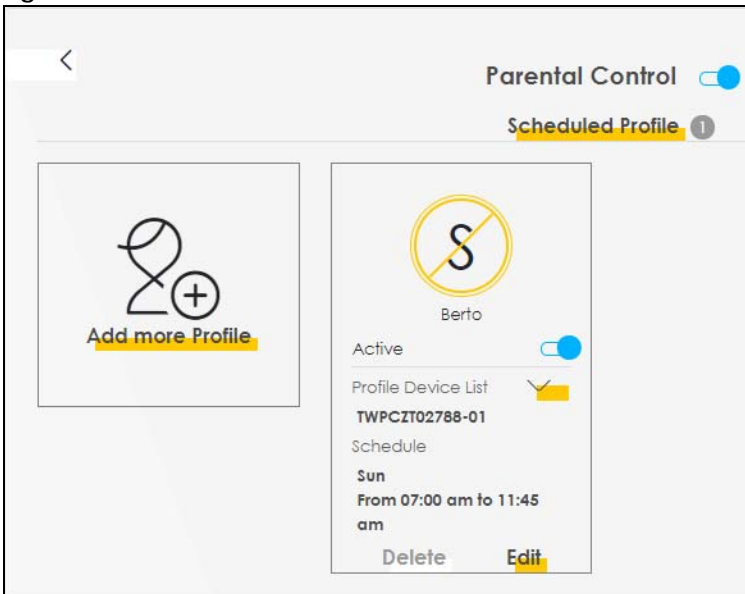





Figure 60 Parental Control: Scheduled Profile



Each field is described in the following table.

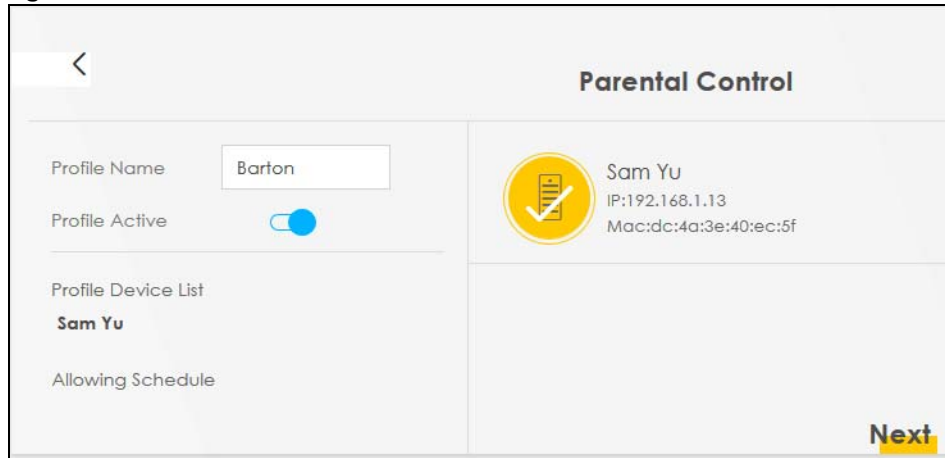
Table 15 Parental Control: Schedule

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Parental Control	Click this switch to enable or disable parental control. When the switch goes to the right (  ), the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
Active	Click this switch to enable or disable a created profile. When the switch goes to the right (  ), this profile is active. Otherwise, it is not.
Scheduled Profile	This screen shows all the created profile(s).  Click  beside <b>Profile Device List</b> to view more information about the profile. You can click <b>Delete</b> to remove the profile or click <b>Edit</b> to change the profile settings.  Only the <b>Add more Profile</b> button displays if there is no profile created.
Add more Profile	Click this button to create a new profile.

## 5.5.1 Create/Edit a Parental Control Profile


Click **Add more Profile** to create a profile or click **Edit** of an existing profile to change its settings. Use this screen to add a device(s) in a profile and block Internet access on the profile device(s).

Figure 61 Parental Control: Select Device



Each field is described in the following table.

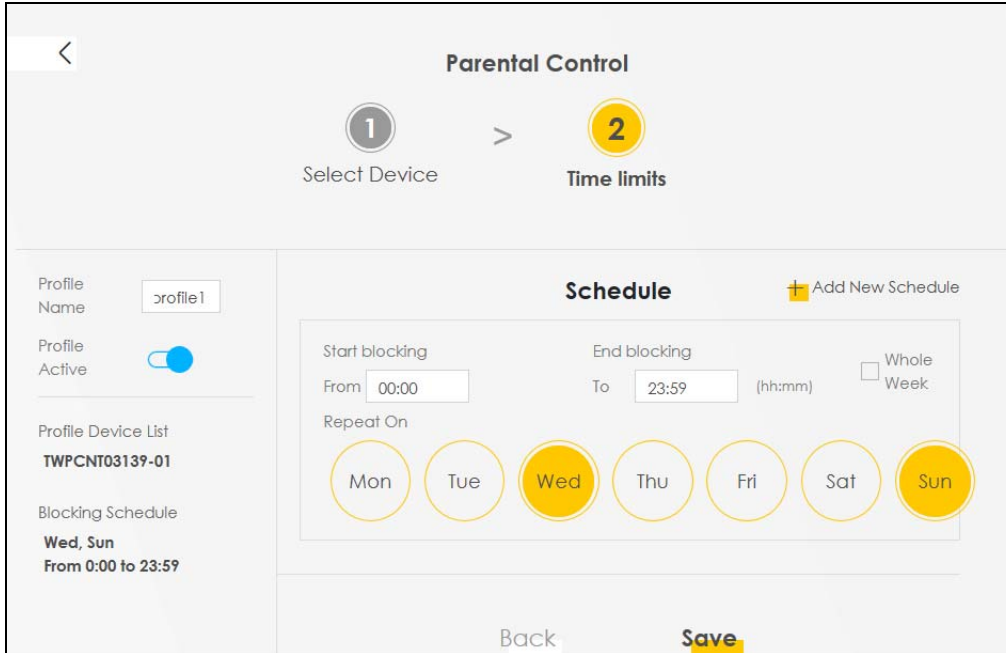
Table 16 Parental Control: Select Device

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Profile Name	Enter a descriptive name for the profile.
Profile Active	Click this switch to enable or disable the profile. When the switch goes to the right (  ), the profile is enabled. Otherwise, it is disabled.
Profile Device List	This field shows the devices selected on the right for this profile.
Allowing Schedule	This field shows the time during which Internet access is blocked on the profile device(s).
	Select the device(s) on your network for this profile and click <b>Next</b> .

## 5.5.2 Define a Schedule


This screen allows you to define time periods and days during which Internet access is blocked on the profile device(s).

**Figure 62** Parental Control > Add More Profile: Schedule



Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 17** Parental Control: Time Limit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Profile Name	Enter a descriptive name for the profile.
Active	Click this switch to enable or disable the profile. When the switch goes to the right  , the profile is enabled. Otherwise, it is disabled.
Profile Device List	This field shows the devices selected on the right for this profile.
Allowing Schedule	This field shows the time during which Internet access is blocked on the profile device(s).
Schedule	
Add New Schedule	Click this to add a new block for scheduling.
Start/End blocking	Select the time period when Internet access is blocked on the profile device(s). Select <b>Whole Day</b> and the scheduler rule will be activated every hour of the day. Select <b>Whole Week</b> and the scheduler rule will be activated everyday of the week.
Repeat On	Select the days when Internet access is blocked on the profile device(s).
Back	Click <b>Back</b> to return to the previous screen.
Save	Click <b>Save</b> to save your changes.



# CHAPTER 6

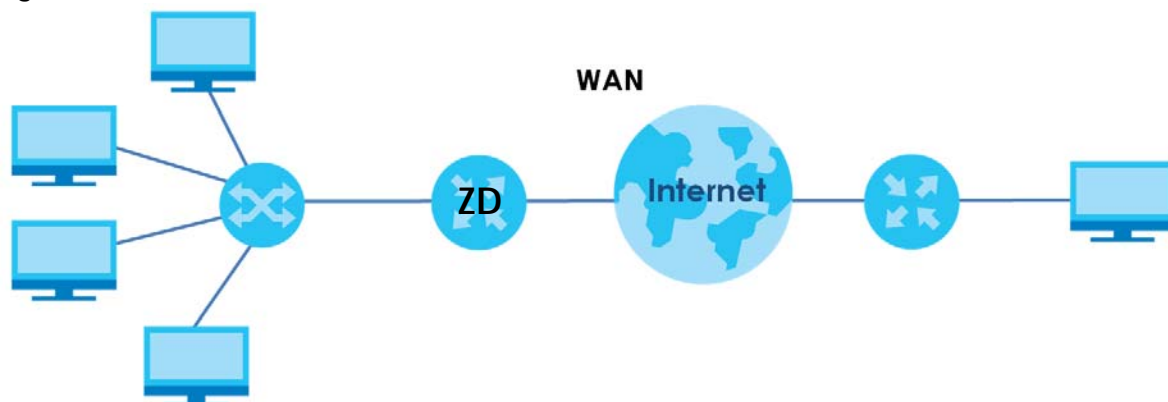
## Broadband

### 6.1 Overview

This chapter discusses the Zyxel Device's **Broadband** screens. Use these screens to configure your Zyxel Device for Internet access.

A WAN (Wide Area Network) connection is an outside connection to another network or the Internet. It connects your private networks, such as a LAN (Local Area Network) and other networks, so that a computer in one location can communicate with computers in other locations.

**Figure 63** LAN and WAN



#### 6.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- Use **Broadband** screens to view, remove or add a WAN interface. You can also configure the WAN settings on the Zyxel Device for Internet access.  
For DX5301-B2/B3 and DX5401-B0, see [Section 6.2 on page 117](#). For EX5501, EX5300, EX5301, EX5401-B0 AX7501 or PX7501, see [Section 6.3 on page 125](#).
- Use the **Cellular Backup** screen to configure cellular WAN connection ([Section 6.4 on page 134](#)).

- Use the **Advanced** screen to enable or disable PTM over ADSL, Annex M/Annex J, and DSL PhyR functions ([Section 6.5 on page 140](#)).

Table 18 WAN Setup Overview

LAYER-2 INTERFACE	INTERNET CONNECTION		
CONNECTION	MODE	ENCAPSULATION	CONNECTION SETTINGS
Ethernet	Routing	PPPoE	PPP user name and password, WAN IPv4/IPv6 IP address, routing feature, DNS server, VLAN, QoS, and MTU
		IPoE	WAN IPv4/IPv6 IP address, NAT, DNS server and routing feature
	Bridge	N/A	VLAN

Note: This table is for EX5501, EX5300, EX5301, EX5401-B0, AX7501 and PX7501.

Table 19 WAN Setup Overview

LAYER-2 INTERFACE	INTERNET CONNECTION			
CONNECTION	DSL LINK TYPE	MODE	ENCAPSULATION	CONNECTION SETTINGS
ADSL/VDSL over PTM	N/A	Routing	PPPoE	PPP information, IPv4/IPv6 IP address, routing feature, DNS server, VLAN, QoS, and MTU
			IPoE	IPv4/IPv6 IP address, routing feature, DNS server, VLAN, QoS, and MTU
		Bridge	N/A	VLAN and QoS
ADSL over ATM	EoA	Routing	PPPoE/PPPoA	ATM PVC configuration, PPP information, IPv4/IPv6 IP address, routing feature, DNS server, VLAN, QoS, and MTU
			IPoE/IPoA	ATM PVC configuration, IPv4/IPv6 IP address, routing feature, DNS server, VLAN, QoS, and MTU
		Bridge	N/A	ATM PVC configuration, and QoS
Ethernet	N/A	Routing	PPPoE	PPP user name and password, WAN IPv4/IPv6 IP address, routing feature, DNS server, VLAN, QoS, and MTU
			IPoE	WAN IPv4/IPv6 IP address, NAT, DNS server and routing feature
		Bridge	N/A	VLAN and QoS

Note: This table is for DX5301-B2/B3 and DX5401-B0.

## 6.1.2 What You Need to Know

The following terms and concepts may help as you read this chapter.

### WAN IP Address

The WAN IP address is an IP address for the Zyxel Device, which makes it accessible from an outside network. It is used by the Zyxel Device to communicate with other devices in other networks. It can be static (fixed) or dynamically assigned by the ISP each time the Zyxel Device tries to access the Internet.

If your ISP assigns you a static WAN IP address, they should also assign you the subnet mask and DNS server IP address(es).

## ATM

Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM) is a WAN networking technology that provides high-speed data transfer. ATM uses fixed-size packets of information called cells. With ATM, a high QoS (Quality of Service) can be guaranteed. ATM uses a connection-oriented model and establishes a virtual circuit (VC).

## PTM

Packet Transfer Mode (PTM) is packet-oriented and supported by the VDSL2 standard. In PTM, packets are encapsulated directly in the High-level Data Link Control (HDLC) frames. It is designed to provide a low-overhead, transparent way of transporting packets over DSL links, as an alternative to ATM.

## IPv6 Introduction

IPv6 (Internet Protocol version 6), is designed to enhance IP address size and features. The increase in IPv6 address size to 128 bits (from the 32-bit IPv4 address) allows up to  $3.4 \times 10^{38}$  IP addresses. The Zyxel Device can use IPv4/IPv6 dual stack to connect to IPv4 and IPv6 networks, and supports IPv6 rapid deployment (6RD).

## IPv6 Addressing

The 128-bit IPv6 address is written as eight 16-bit hexadecimal blocks separated by colons (:). This is an example IPv6 address `2001:0db8:1a2b:0015:0000:0000:1a2f:0000`.

IPv6 addresses can be abbreviated in two ways:

- Leading zeros in a block can be omitted. So `2001:0db8:1a2b:0015:0000:0000:1a2f:0000` can be written as `2001:db8:1a2b:15:0:0:1a2f:0`.
- Any number of consecutive blocks of zeros can be replaced by a double colon. A double colon can only appear once in an IPv6 address. So `2001:0db8:0000:0000:1a2f:0000:0000:0015` can be written as `2001:0db8::1a2f:0000:0000:0015`, `2001:0db8:0000:0000:1a2f::0015`, `2001:db8::1a2f:0:0:15` Or `2001:db8:0:0:1a2f::15`.

## IPv6 Prefix and Prefix Length

Similar to an IPv4 subnet mask, IPv6 uses an address prefix to represent the network address. An IPv6 prefix length specifies how many most significant bits (start from the left) in the address compose the network address. The prefix length is written as "/x" where x is a number. For example,

```
2001:db8:1a2b:15::1a2f:0/32
```

means that the first 32 bits (`2001:db8`) is the subnet prefix.

## IPv6 Subnet Masking

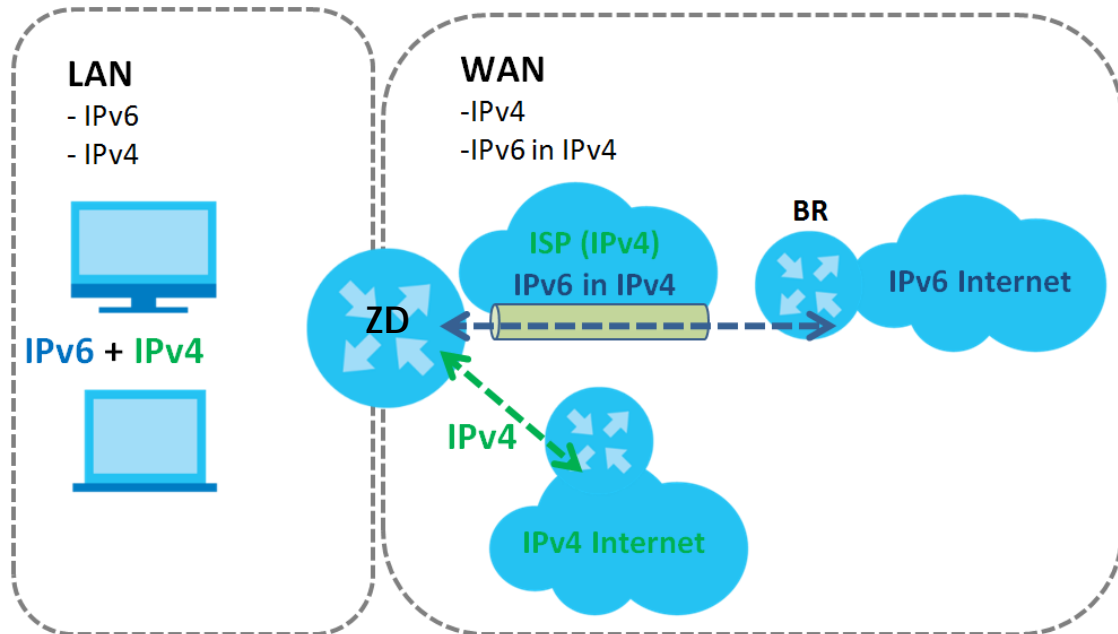
Both an IPv6 address and IPv6 subnet mask compose of 128-bit binary digits, which are divided into eight 16-bit blocks and written in hexadecimal notation. Hexadecimal uses four bits for each character (1 ~ 10, A ~ F). Each block's 16 bits are then represented by four hexadecimal characters. For example, `FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FC00:0000:0000:0000`.

## IPv6 Rapid Deployment

Use IPv6 Rapid Deployment (6rd) when the local network uses IPv6 and the ISP has an IPv4 network. When the Zyxel Device has an IPv4 WAN address and you set **IPv6/IPv4 Mode** to **IPv4 Only**, you can enable 6rd to encapsulate IPv6 packets in IPv4 packets to cross the ISP's IPv4 network.

The Zyxel Device generates a global IPv6 prefix from its IPv4 WAN address and tunnels IPv6 traffic to the ISP's Border Relay router (BR in the figure) to connect to the native IPv6 Internet. The local network can also use IPv4 services. The Zyxel Device uses its configured IPv4 WAN IP to route IPv4 traffic to the IPv4 Internet.

Figure 64 IPv6 Rapid Deployment

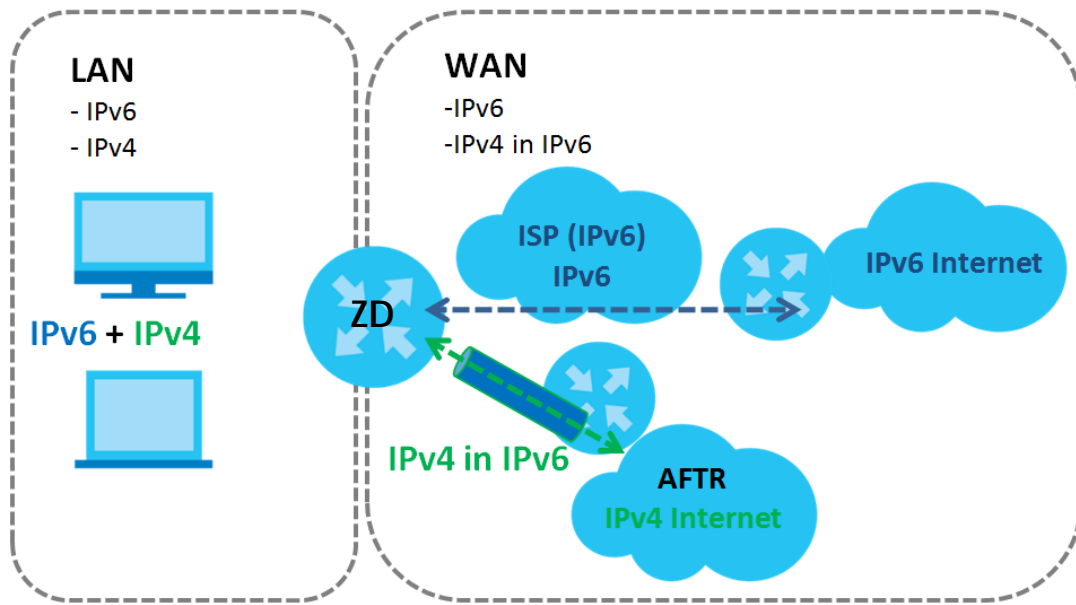


## Dual Stack Lite

Use Dual Stack Lite when local network computers use IPv4 and the ISP has an IPv6 network. When the Zyxel Device has an IPv6 WAN address and you set **IPv6/IPv4 Mode** to **IPv6 Only**, you can enable Dual Stack Lite to use IPv4 computers and services.

The Zyxel Device tunnels IPv4 packets inside IPv6 encapsulation packets to the ISP's Address Family Transition Router (AFTR in the graphic) to connect to the IPv4 Internet. The local network can also use IPv6 services. The Zyxel Device uses its configured IPv6 WAN IP to route IPv6 traffic to the IPv6 Internet.

Figure 65 Dual Stack Lite



### 6.1.3 Before You Begin

You need to know your Internet access settings such as encapsulation and WAN IP address. Get this information from your ISP.

## 6.2 Broadband Settings for DX5301-B2/B3 and DX5401-B0

Use this screen to change your Zyxel Device's Internet access settings. The summary table shows you the configured WAN services (connections) on the Zyxel Device. Use information provided by your ISP to configure WAN settings.

Click **Network Setting > Broadband** to access this screen.

Figure 66 Network Setting > Broadband

Broadband												
<span style="background-color: #FFD700;">Broadband</span> Cellular Backup Advanced												
Use this screen to change your Zyxel Device's Internet access settings. The summary table shows you the configured WAN services (connections) on the Zyxel Device. Use information provided by your ISP to configure WAN settings.												
												<span style="color: #FFD700;">+</span> Add New WAN Interface
#	Name	Type	Mode	Encapsulation	802.1p	802.1q	IGMP Proxy	NAT	Default Gateway	IPv6	MLD Proxy	Modify
1	ADSL	ATM	Routing	IPoE	N/A	N/A	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	
2	VDSL	PTM	Routing	IPoE	N/A	N/A	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	
3	ETHWAN	ETH	Routing	IPoE	N/A	N/A	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	
4	SFPWAN	SFP	Routing	IPoE	N/A	N/A	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Note: This table is for DX5301-B2/B3 and DX5401-B0.

Table 20 Network Setting > Broadband

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New WAN Interface	Click this button to create a new connection.
#	This is the index number of the entry.
Name	This is the service name of the connection.  Note: DX5301-B3 does not have <b>SFPWAN</b> .
Type	This shows types of connections the DX5301-B2/B3 has.  Note: DX5301-B3 does not have <b>SFP</b> .
Mode	This shows whether the connection is in routing or bridge mode.
Encapsulation	This is the method of encapsulation used by this connection.
802.1p	This indicates the 802.1p priority level assigned to traffic sent through this connection. This displays <b>N/A</b> when there is no priority level assigned.
802.1q	This indicates the VLAN ID number assigned to traffic sent through this connection. This displays <b>N/A</b> when there is no VLAN ID number assigned.
IGMP Proxy	This shows whether the Zyxel Device act as an IGMP proxy on this connection.
NAT	This shows whether NAT is activated or not for this connection.
Default Gateway	This shows whether the Zyxel Device use the WAN interface of this connection as the system default gateway.
IPv6	This shows whether IPv6 is activated or not for this connection. IPv6 is not available when the connection uses the bridging service.
MLD Proxy	This shows whether Multicast Listener Discovery (MLD) is activated or not for this connection. MLD is not available when the connection uses the bridging service.
Modify	Click the <b>Edit</b> icon to configure the WAN connection.  Click the <b>Delete</b> icon to remove the WAN connection.

## 6.2.1 Add/Edit Internet Connection

Click **Add New WAN Interface** in the **Broadband** screen or the Edit icon next to an existing WAN interface to open the following screen. Use this screen to configure a WAN connection. The screen varies depending on the mode, encapsulation, and IPv6/IPv4 mode you select.

### Routing Mode

Use **Routing** mode if your ISP give you one IP address only and you want multiple computers to share an Internet account.

The following example screen displays when you select the **Routing** mode and **PPPoE** encapsulation. The screen varies when you select other encapsulation and IPv6/IPv4 mode.

Figure 67 Network Setting > Broadband > Add/Edit New WAN Interface (Routing Mode)

<

### Edit WAN Interface

---

#### General

Name:

Type:

Mode:

Encapsulation:

IPv4/IPv6 Mode:

#### PPP Information

PPP User Name:

PPP Password:  👁

PPP Connection Trigger:  Auto Connect  On Demand

PPPoE Passthrough:

---

#### ATM PVC Configuration

VPI [0-255]:

VCI [32-65535]:

Encapsulation:

Service Category:

#### VLAN

802.1p:

802.1q:  (1~4094)

#### MTU

MTU:

---

#### IP Address

Obtain an IP Address Automatically

Static IP Address

#### DNS Server

Obtain DNS Info Automatically

Use Following Static DNS Address

#### Routing Feature

NAT:       IGMP Proxy:

Apply as Default Gateway:       Fullcone NAT:

---

#### IPv6 Address

Obtain an IPv6 Address Automatically

Static IPv6 Address

#### IPv6 DNS Server

Obtain IPv6 DNS Info Automatically

Use Following Static IPv6 DNS Address

#### IPv6 Routing Feature

MLD Proxy:       Apply as Default Gateway:

---

Cancel
Apply

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 21 Network Setting > Broadband > Add/Edit New WAN Interface (Routing Mode)



LABEL	DESCRIPTION
General	Click this switch to enable or disable the interface. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
Name	Specify a descriptive name for this connection. This field is read-only if you are editing the WAN interface.
Type	This field shows the types of available connections. This field is read-only if you are editing the WAN interface.
Mode	Select <b>Routing</b> if your ISP give you one IP address only and you want multiple computers to share an Internet account.
Encapsulation	Select the method of encapsulation used by your ISP from the drop-down list box. This option is available only when you select <b>Routing</b> in the <b>Mode</b> field.  When you select <b>ADSL/VDSL over ATM</b> or <b>Ethernet</b> , the choices are <b>PPPoE</b> and <b>IPoE</b> .  When you select <b>ADSL over ATM</b> , the choices are <b>PPPoE</b> , <b>IPoE</b> , <b>PPPoA</b> and <b>IPoA</b> .
IPv4/IPv6 Mode	Select <b>IPv4 Only</b> if you want the Zyxel Device to run IPv4 only.  Select <b>IPv4 IPv6 DualStack</b> to allow the Zyxel Device to run IPv4 and IPv6 at the same time.  Select <b>IPv6 Only</b> if you want the Zyxel Device to run IPv6 only.
PPP Information (This is available only when you select <b>Routing</b> in the <b>Mode</b> field and <b>PPPoE</b> or <b>PPPoA</b> in the <b>Encapsulation</b> field.)	
PPP User Name	Enter the user name exactly as your ISP assigned. If assigned a name in the form user@domain where domain identifies a service name, then enter both components exactly as given.
PPP Password	Enter the password associated with the user name above. Select <b>password unmask</b> to show your entered password in plain text.
PPP Connection Trigger	Select when to have the Zyxel Device establish the PPP connection.  <b>Auto Connect</b> - select this to not let the connection time out.  <b>On Demand</b> - select this to automatically bring up the connection when the Zyxel Device receives packets destined for the Internet.
Idle Timeout	This value specifies the time in minutes that elapses before the router automatically disconnects from the PPPoE server.  This field is not available if you select <b>Auto Connect</b> in the <b>PPP Connection Trigger</b> field.
PPPoE Passthrough	This field is available when you select <b>PPPoE</b> encapsulation.  In addition to the Zyxel Device's built-in PPPoE client, you can enable PPPoE pass through to allow up to ten hosts on the LAN to use PPPoE client software on their computers to connect to the ISP via the Zyxel Device. Each host can have a separate account and a public WAN IP address.  PPPoE pass through is an alternative to NAT for application where NAT is not appropriate.  Disable PPPoE pass through if you do not need to allow hosts on the LAN to use PPPoE client software on their computers to connect to the ISP.
VLAN	Click this switch to enable or disable VLAN on this WAN interface. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.  This field is not available if you select <b>ADSL over ATM</b> in the <b>Type</b> field and <b>PPPoA</b> or <b>IPoA</b> in the <b>Encapsulation</b> field.



Table 21 Network Setting &gt; Broadband &gt; Add/Edit New WAN Interface (Routing Mode) (continued)





LABEL	DESCRIPTION
802.1p	IEEE 802.1p defines up to 8 separate traffic types by inserting a tag into a MAC-layer frame that contains bits to define class of service.  Select the IEEE 802.1p priority level (from 0 to 7) to add to traffic through this connection. The greater the number, the higher the priority level.
802.1q	Type the VLAN ID number (from 1 to 4094) for traffic through this connection.
MTU (This is not available if you select <b>ADSL over ATM</b> in the <b>Type</b> field and <b>PPPoA</b> or <b>IPoA</b> in the <b>Encapsulation</b> field.)	
MTU	Enter the MTU (Maximum Transfer Unit) size for traffic through this connection.
IP Address (This is available only when you select <b>IPv4 Only</b> or <b>IPv4 IPv6 DualStack</b> in the <b>IPv4/IPv6 Mode</b> field.)	
Obtain an IP Address Automatically	A static IP address is a fixed IP that your ISP gives you. A dynamic IP address is not fixed; the ISP assigns you a different one each time you connect to the Internet. Select this if you have a dynamic IP address.
Static IP Address	Select this option if the ISP assigned a fixed IP address.
IP Address	Enter the static IP address provided by your ISP.
Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask provided by your ISP.  This is available only when you set the <b>Encapsulation</b> to <b>IPoE</b> .
Gateway IP Address	Enter the gateway IP address provided by your ISP.  This is available only when you set the <b>Encapsulation</b> to <b>IPoE</b> .
DNS Server (This is available only when you select <b>IPv4 Only</b> or <b>IPv4 IPv6 DualStack</b> in the <b>IPv4/IPv6 Mode</b> field.)	
Obtain DNS Info Automatically	Select <b>Obtain DNS Info Automatically</b> if you want the Zyxel Device to use the DNS server addresses assigned by your ISP.
Use Following Static DNS Address	Select <b>Use Following Static DNS Address</b> if you want the Zyxel Device to use the DNS server addresses you configure manually.
Primary DNS Server	Enter the first DNS server address assigned by the ISP.
Secondary DNS Server	Enter the second DNS server address assigned by the ISP.
Routing Feature (This is available only when you select <b>IPv4 Only</b> or <b>IPv4 IPv6 DualStack</b> in the <b>IPv4/IPv6 Mode</b> field.)	
NAT	Click this switch to activate or deactivate NAT on this connection. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
IGMP Proxy	Internet Group Multicast Protocol (IGMP) is a network-layer protocol used to establish membership in a Multicast group - it is not used to carry user data.  Click this switch to have the Zyxel Device act as an IGMP proxy on this connection. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.  This allows the Zyxel Device to get subscribing information and maintain a joined member list for each multicast group. It can reduce multicast traffic significantly.
Apply as Default Gateway	Click this switch to have the Zyxel Device use the WAN interface of this connection as the system default gateway. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
Fullcone NAT Enable	Click this switch to enable or disable full cone NAT on this connection. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.  This field is available only when you activate <b>NAT</b> .  In full cone NAT, the Zyxel Device maps all outgoing packets from an internal IP address and port to a single IP address and port on the external network. The Zyxel Device also maps packets coming to that external IP address and port to the internal IP address and port.

Table 21 Network Setting &gt; Broadband &gt; Add/Edit New WAN Interface (Routing Mode) (continued)



LABEL	DESCRIPTION
6RD	The 6RD (IPv6 rapid deployment) fields display when you set the <b>IPv6/IPv4 Mode</b> field to <b>IPv4 Only</b> . See <a href="#">IPv6 Rapid Deployment on page 116</a> for more information.  Click this switch to tunnel IPv6 traffic from the local network through the ISP's IPv4 network. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
Automatically configured by DHCP	The <b>Automatically configured by DHCP</b> option is configurable only when you set the method of encapsulation to <b>IPoE</b> .
Manually Configured	Select <b>Manually Configured</b> if you have the IPv4 address of the relay server. Otherwise, select <b>Automatically configured by DHCP</b> to have the Zyxel Device detect it automatically through DHCP.
Service Provider IPv6 Prefix	Enter an IPv6 prefix for tunneling IPv6 traffic to the ISP's border relay router and connecting to the native IPv6 Internet.
IPv4 Mask Length	Enter the subnet mask number (1~32) for the IPv4 network.
DHCP Options (This is available only when you select <b>IPv4 Only</b> or <b>IPv4 IPv6 DualStack</b> in the <b>IPv4/IPv6 Mode</b> field and <b>IPoE</b> in the <b>Encapsulation</b> field.)	
Request Options	Select <b>Option 43</b> to have the Zyxel Device automatically add vendor specific information in the DHCP packets to request the vendor specific options from the DHCP server.  Select <b>Option 121</b> to have the Zyxel Device push static routes to clients.
Sent Options	
option 60	Select this and enter the device identity you want the Zyxel Device to add in the DHCP discovery packets that go to the DHCP server.
Vendor ID	Enter the Vendor Class Identifier, such as the type of the hardware or firmware.
option 61	Select this and enter any string that identifies the device.
IAID	Enter the Identity Association Identifier (IAID) of the device, for example, the WAN connection index number.
DUID	Enter the hardware type, a time value and the MAC address of the device.
option 125	Select this to have the Zyxel Device automatically generate and add vendor specific parameters in the DHCP discovery packets that go to the DHCP server.
IPv6 Address (This is available only when you select <b>IPv4 IPv6 DualStack</b> or <b>IPv6 Only</b> in the <b>IPv4/IPv6 Mode</b> field.)	
Obtain an IPv6 Address Automatically	Select <b>Obtain an IPv6 Address Automatically</b> if you want to have the Zyxel Device use the IPv6 prefix from the connected router's Router Advertisement (RA) to generate an IPv6 address.
Static IPv6 Address	Select <b>Static IPv6 Address</b> if you have a fixed IPv6 address assigned by your ISP. When you select this, the following fields appear.
IPv6 Address	Enter an IPv6 IP address that your ISP gave to you for this WAN interface.
Prefix Length	Enter the address prefix length to specify how many most significant bits in an IPv6 address compose the network address.
IPv6 Default Gateway	Enter the IP address of the next-hop gateway. The gateway is a router or switch on the same segment as your Zyxel Device's interface(s). The gateway helps forward packets to their destinations.
IPv6 DNS Server (This is available only when you select <b>IPv4 IPv6 DualStack</b> or <b>IPv6 Only</b> in the <b>IPv4/IPv6 Mode</b> field. Configure the IPv6 DNS server in the following section.)	
Obtain IPv6 DNS Info Automatically	Select <b>Obtain IPv6 DNS Info Automatically</b> to have the Zyxel Device get the IPv6 DNS server addresses from the ISP automatically.
Use Following Static IPv6 DNS Address	Select <b>Use Following Static IPv6 DNS Address</b> to have the Zyxel Device use the IPv6 DNS server addresses you configure manually.

Table 21 Network Setting &gt; Broadband &gt; Add/Edit New WAN Interface (Routing Mode) (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Primary DNS Server	Enter the first IPv6 DNS server address assigned by the ISP.
Secondary DNS Server	Enter the second IPv6 DNS server address assigned by the ISP.
IPv6 Routing Feature (This is available only when you select <b>IPv4 IPv6 DualStack</b> or <b>IPv6 Only</b> in the <b>IPv4/IPv6 Mode</b> field. You can enable IPv6 routing features in the following section.)	
MLD Proxy Enable	Select this check box to have the Zyxel Device act as an MLD proxy on this connection. This allows the Zyxel Device to get subscription information and maintain a joined member list for each multicast group. It can reduce multicast traffic significantly.
Apply as Default Gateway	Select this option to have the Zyxel Device use the WAN interface of this connection as the system default gateway.
DS-Lite	This is available only when you select <b>IPv6 Only</b> in the <b>IPv4/IPv6 Mode</b> field. Enable Dual Stack Lite to let local computers use IPv4 through an ISP's IPv6 network. See <a href="#">Dual Stack Lite on page 116</a> for more information.  Click this switch to let local computers use IPv4 through an ISP's IPv6 network. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
DS-Lite Relay Server IP	Specify the transition router's IPv6 address.
ATM PVC Configuration (This is available only when you select <b>ADSL over ATM</b> in the <b>Type</b> field.)	
VPI [0-255]	The valid range for the VPI is 0 to 255. Enter the VPI assigned to you.
VCI [32-65535]	The valid range for the VCI is 32 to 65535 (0 to 31 is reserved for local management of ATM traffic). Enter the VCI assigned to you.
Encapsulation	Select the method of multiplexing used by your ISP from the drop-down list box. Choices are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>LLC/SNAP-BRIDGING:</b> In LCC encapsulation, bridged PDUs are encapsulated by identifying the type of the bridged media in the SNAP header. This is available only when you select <b>IPoE</b> or <b>PPPoE</b> in the <b>Select DSL Link Type</b> field.</li> <li><b>VC/MUX:</b> In VC multiplexing, each protocol is carried on a single ATM virtual circuit (VC). To transport multiple protocols, the Zyxel Device needs separate VCs. There is a binding between a VC and the type of the network protocol carried on the VC. This reduces payload overhead since there is no need to carry protocol information in each Protocol Data Unit (PDU) payload.</li> </ul>
Service Category	Select <b>UBR Without PCR</b> for applications that are non-time sensitive, such as email.  Select <b>CBR</b> (Continuous Bit Rate) to specify fixed (always-on) bandwidth for voice or data traffic.  Select <b>Non Realtime VBR</b> (non real-time Variable Bit Rate) for connections that do not require closely controlled delay and delay variation.  Select <b>Realtime VBR</b> (real-time Variable Bit Rate) for applications with bursty connections that require closely controlled delay and delay variation.
Peak Cell Rate [cells/s]	Divide the DSL line rate (bps) by 424 (the size of an ATM cell) to find the Peak Cell Rate (PCR). This is the maximum rate at which the sender can send cells. Type the PCR here.
Sustainable Cell Rate	The Sustain Cell Rate (SCR) sets the average cell rate (long-term) that can be transmitted. Type the SCR, which must be less than the PCR. Note that system default is 0 cells/sec.
Maximum Burst Size [cells]	Maximum Burst Size (MBS) refers to the maximum number of cells that can be sent at the peak rate. Type the MBS, which is less than 65535.
MAC Address	Enter the MAC address you want to use.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to restore your previously saved settings.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.

## Bridge Mode

Click the **Add new WAN Interface** in the **Network Setting > Broadband** screen or the **Edit** icon next to the connection you want to configure. The following example screen displays when you select **Bridge** mode.

**Figure 68** Network Setting > Broadband > Add/Edit New WAN Interface (Bridge Mode)

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

**Table 22** Network Setting > Broadband > Add/Edit New WAN Interface (Bridge Mode)



LABEL	DESCRIPTION
General	Click this switch to enable or disable the interface. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
Name	Enter a service name of the connection. This field is read-only is you are editing the WAN interface.
Type	This field shows an <b>Ethernet</b> connection. This field is read-only is you are editing the WAN interface.
Mode	Select <b>Bridge</b> when your ISP provides you more than one IP address and you want the connected computers to get individual IP address from ISP's DHCP server directly. If you select <b>Bridge</b> , you cannot use routing functions, such as QoS, Firewall, DHCP server and NAT on traffic from the selected LAN port(s).
VLAN	Click this switch to enable or disable VLAN on this WAN interface. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
802.1p	IEEE 802.1p defines up to 8 separate traffic types by inserting a tag into a MAC-layer frame that contains bits to define class of service. Select the IEEE 802.1p priority level (from 0 to 7) to add to traffic through this connection. The greater the number, the higher the priority level.
802.1q	Type the VLAN ID number (from 0 to 4094) for traffic through this connection.

Table 22 Network Setting &gt; Broadband &gt; Add/Edit New WAN Interface (Bridge Mode) (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
ATM PVC Configuration (This is available only when it shows <b>ADSL over ATM</b> in the <b>Type</b> field.)	
VPI [0-255]	The valid range for the VPI is 0 to 255. Enter the VPI assigned to you.
VCI [32-65535]	The valid range for the VCI is 32 to 65535 (0 to 31 is reserved for local management of ATM traffic). Enter the VCI assigned to you.
Encapsulation	Select the method of multiplexing used by your ISP from the drop-down list box. Choices are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>LLC/SNAP-BRIDGING:</b> In LLC encapsulation, bridged PDUs are encapsulated by identifying the type of the bridged media in the SNAP header. This is available only when you select <b>IPoE</b> or <b>PPPoE</b> in the <b>Select DSL Link Type</b> field.</li> <li><b>VC/MUX:</b> In VC multiplexing, each protocol is carried on a single ATM virtual circuit (VC). To transport multiple protocols, the Zyxel Device needs separate VCs. There is a binding between a VC and the type of the network protocol carried on the VC. This reduces payload overhead since there is no need to carry protocol information in each Protocol Data Unit (PDU) payload.</li> </ul>
Service Category	Select <b>UBR Without PCR</b> for applications that are non-time sensitive, such as email. Select <b>CBR</b> (Continuous Bit Rate) to specify fixed (always-on) bandwidth for voice or data traffic. Select <b>Non Realtime VBR</b> (non real-time Variable Bit Rate) for connections that do not require closely controlled delay and delay variation. Select <b>Realtime VBR</b> (real-time Variable Bit Rate) for applications with bursty connections that require closely controlled delay and delay variation.
Peak Cell Rate [cells/s]	Divide the DSL line rate (bps) by 424 (the size of an ATM cell) to find the Peak Cell Rate (PCR). This is the maximum rate at which the sender can send cells. Type the PCR here.
Sustainable Cell Rate	The Sustain Cell Rate (SCR) sets the average cell rate (long-term) that can be transmitted. Type the SCR, which must be less than the PCR. Note that system default is 0 cells/sec.
Maximum Burst Size [cells]	Maximum Burst Size (MBS) refers to the maximum number of cells that can be sent at the peak rate. Type the MBS, which is less than 65535.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to exit this screen without saving any changes.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.

## 6.3 Broadband Settings for EX5300, EX5301, EX5401-B0, EX5501, AX7501 and PX7501

Use this screen to change your Zyxel Device's Internet access settings. The summary table shows you the configured WAN services (connections) on the Zyxel Device. Use information provided by your ISP to configure WAN settings.

Note: The difference of the broadband screens between EX5300-B3/EX5301/EX5401/EX5501 and AX7501/PX7501 is the type of connection available. EX5300-B3/EX5301-B3/EX5501-B0 have Ethernet connections. EX5401-B0 has Ethernet and SFP connections. AX7501 and PX7501 have AON or PON connection.

Click **Network Setting > Broadband** to access this screen.

Figure 69 Network Setting &gt; Broadband (EX5300, EX5301, EX5401 and EX5501)

#	Name	Type	Mode	Encapsulation	802.1p	802.1q	IGMP Proxy	NAT	Default Gateway	IPv6	MLD Proxy	Modify
1	ETHWAN	ETH	Routing	IPoE	N/A	N/A	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	

Figure 70 Network Setting &gt; Broadband (AX7501 and PX7501)

#	Name	Type	Mode	Encapsulation	802.1p	802.1q	IGMP Proxy	NAT	Default Gateway	IPv6	MLD Proxy	Modify
1	GPON	PON	Routing	IPoE	N/A	N/A	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	

The following table describes the labels in this screen

Note: This table is for EX5300, EX5301, EX5401, EX5501, AX7501 and PX7501.

Table 23 Network Setting &gt; Broadband

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New WAN Interface	Click this button to create a new connection.
#	This is the index number of the entry.
Name	This is the service name of the connection.
Type	This indicates it is an Ethernet.
Mode	This shows whether the connection is in routing or bridge mode.
Encapsulation	This is the method of encapsulation used by this connection.
802.1p	This indicates the 802.1p priority level assigned to traffic sent through this connection. This displays <b>N/A</b> when there is no priority level assigned.
802.1q	This indicates the VLAN ID number assigned to traffic sent through this connection. This displays <b>N/A</b> when there is no VLAN ID number assigned.
IGMP Proxy	This shows whether the Zyxel Device act as an IGMP proxy on this connection.
NAT	This shows whether NAT is activated or not for this connection.
Default Gateway	This shows whether the Zyxel Device use the WAN interface of this connection as the system default gateway.
IPv6	This shows whether IPv6 is activated or not for this connection. IPv6 is not available when the connection uses the bridging service.

Table 23 Network Setting &gt; Broadband (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
MLD Proxy	This shows whether Multicast Listener Discovery (MLD) is activated or not for this connection. MLD is not available when the connection uses the bridging service.
Modify	Click the <b>Edit</b> icon to configure the WAN connection. Click the <b>Delete</b> icon to remove the WAN connection.

### 6.3.1 Add/Edit Internet Connection

Click **Add New WAN Interface** in the **Broadband** screen or the Edit icon next to an existing WAN interface to open the following screen. Use this screen to configure a WAN connection. The screen varies depending on the mode, encapsulation, and IPv6/IPv4 mode you select.

#### Routing Mode

Use **Routing** mode if your ISP give you one IP address only and you want multiple computers to share an Internet account.

The following example screen displays when you select the **Routing** mode and **PPPoE** encapsulation. The screen varies when you select other encapsulation and IPv6/IPv4 mode.

**Figure 71** Network Setting > Broadband > Add/Edit New WAN Interface (EX5300, EX5301, EX5401-B0 and EX5501)(Routing Mode)

<
**Add New WAN Interface**

<div style="text-align: center; border-bottom: 1px solid black; margin-bottom: 10px;"><b>General</b> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></div> <p>Name <input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/></p> <p>Type <input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="Ethernet"/></p> <p>Mode <input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="Routing"/></p> <p>Encapsulation <input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="PPPoE"/></p> <p>IPv4/IPv6 Mode <input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="IPv4 IPv6 DualStack"/></p>	<div style="text-align: center; border-bottom: 1px solid black; margin-bottom: 10px;"><b>PPP Information</b></div> <p>PPP User Name <input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="admin"/></p> <p>PPP Password <input style="width: 100%;" type="password" value="****"/> <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>PPP Connection Trigger <input checked="" type="radio"/> Auto Connect <input type="radio"/> On Demand</p> <p>PPPoE Passthrough <input type="checkbox"/></p>
<div style="text-align: center; border-bottom: 1px solid black; margin-bottom: 10px;"><b>VLAN</b> <input type="checkbox"/></div> <p>802.1p <input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="0"/></p> <p>802.1q <input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value=""/> [1~4094]</p> <div style="text-align: center; border-bottom: 1px solid black; margin-bottom: 10px;"><b>MTU</b></div> <p>MTU <input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="1500"/></p>	<div style="text-align: center; border-bottom: 1px solid black; margin-bottom: 10px;"><b>IP Address</b></div> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Obtain an IP Address Automatically</p> <p><input type="radio"/> Static IP Address</p> <div style="text-align: center; border-bottom: 1px solid black; margin-bottom: 10px;"><b>DNS Server</b></div> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Obtain DNS Info Automatically</p> <p><input type="radio"/> Use Following Static DNS Address</p>
<div style="text-align: center; border-bottom: 1px solid black; margin-bottom: 10px;"><b>Routing Feature</b></div> <p>NAT <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IGMP Proxy <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Apply as Default Gateway <input type="checkbox"/> Fullcone NAT <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<div style="text-align: center; border-bottom: 1px solid black; margin-bottom: 10px;"><b>IPv6 Address</b></div> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Obtain an IPv6 Address Automatically</p> <p><input type="radio"/> Static IPv6 Address</p> <div style="text-align: center; border-bottom: 1px solid black; margin-bottom: 10px;"><b>IPv6 DNS Server</b></div> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Obtain IPv6 DNS Info Automatically</p> <p><input type="radio"/> Use Following Static IPv6 DNS Address</p>
<div style="text-align: center; border-bottom: 1px solid black; margin-bottom: 10px;"><b>IPv6 Routing Feature</b></div> <p>MLD Proxy <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Apply as Default Gateway <input type="checkbox"/></p>	

Cancel
Apply



Figure 72 Network Setting > Broadband > Add/Edit New WAN Interface (AX7501 and PX7501)(Routing Mode)

<
**Edit WAN Interface**

---

### General

Name:

Type:

Mode:

Encapsulation:

IPv4/IPv6 Mode:

### PPP Information

PPP User Name:

PPP Password:  👁

PPP Connection Trigger:  Auto Connect  On Demand

PPPoE Passthrough:

---

### VLAN

802.1p:

802.1q:  (1~4094)

### MTU

MTU:

### IP Address

Obtain an IP Address Automatically

Static IP Address

### DNS Server

Obtain DNS Info Automatically

Use Following Static DNS Address

---

### Routing Feature

NAT:  IGMP Proxy:

Apply as Default Gateway:  Fullcone NAT:

### IPv6 Address

Obtain an IPv6 Address Automatically

Static IPv6 Address

IPv6 Address:

Prefix Length:

### IPv6 DNS Server

Obtain IPv6 DNS Info Automatically

Use Following Static IPv6 DNS Address

Primary DNS Server:

Secondary DNS Server:

---

### IPv6 Routing Feature

MLD Proxy:  Apply as Default Gateway:

Cancel
Apply

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 24 Network Setting > Broadband > Add/Edit New WAN Interface (Routing Mode)



LABEL	DESCRIPTION
General	Click this switch to enable or disable the interface. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
Name	Specify a descriptive name for this connection. This field is read-only is you are editing the WAN interface.
Type	This field shows <b>Ethernet</b> and indicates an Ethernet connection. This field is read-only is you are editing the WAN interface.
Mode	Select <b>Routing</b> if your ISP give you one IP address only and you want multiple computers to share an Internet account.
Encapsulation	Select the method of encapsulation used by your ISP from the drop-down list box. This option is available only when you select <b>Routing</b> in the <b>Mode</b> field. The choices are <b>PPPoE</b> and <b>IPoE</b> .
IPv4/IPv6 Mode	Select <b>IPv4 Only</b> if you want the Zyxel Device to run IPv4 only. Select <b>IPv4 IPv6 DualStack</b> to allow the Zyxel Device to run IPv4 and IPv6 at the same time. Select <b>IPv6 Only</b> if you want the Zyxel Device to run IPv6 only.
PPP Information (This is available only when you select <b>Routing</b> in the <b>Mode</b> field.)	
PPP User Name	Enter the user name exactly as your ISP assigned. If assigned a name in the form user@domain where domain identifies a service name, then enter both components exactly as given.
PPP Password	Enter the password associated with the user name above. Select <b>password unmask</b> to show your entered password in plain text.
PPP Connection Trigger	Select when to have the Zyxel Device establish the PPP connection. <b>Auto Connect</b> - select this to not let the connection time out. <b>On Demand</b> - select this to automatically bring up the connection when the Zyxel Device receives packets destined for the Internet.
Idle Timeout	This value specifies the time in minutes that elapses before the router automatically disconnects from the PPPoE server. This field is not available if you select <b>Auto Connect</b> in the <b>PPP Connection Trigger</b> field.
PPPoE Passthrough	This field is available when you select <b>PPPoE</b> encapsulation. In addition to the Zyxel Device's built-in PPPoE client, you can enable PPPoE pass through to allow up to ten hosts on the LAN to use PPPoE client software on their computers to connect to the ISP via the Zyxel Device. Each host can have a separate account and a public WAN IP address. PPPoE pass through is an alternative to NAT for application where NAT is not appropriate. Disable PPPoE pass through if you do not need to allow hosts on the LAN to use PPPoE client software on their computers to connect to the ISP.
VLAN	Click this switch to enable or disable VLAN on this WAN interface. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
802.1p	IEEE 802.1p defines up to 8 separate traffic types by inserting a tag into a MAC-layer frame that contains bits to define class of service. Select the IEEE 802.1p priority level (from 0 to 7) to add to traffic through this connection. The greater the number, the higher the priority level.
802.1q	Type the VLAN ID number (from 1 to 4094) for traffic through this connection.
MTU	
MTU	Enter the MTU (Maximum Transfer Unit) size for traffic through this connection.

Table 24 Network Setting &gt; Broadband &gt; Add/Edit New WAN Interface (Routing Mode) (continued)





LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IP Address (This is available only when you select <b>IPv4 Only</b> or <b>IPv4 IPv6 DualStack</b> in the <b>IPv4/IPv6 Mode</b> field.)	
Obtain an IP Address Automatically	A static IP address is a fixed IP that your ISP gives you. A dynamic IP address is not fixed; the ISP assigns you a different one each time you connect to the Internet. Select this if you have a dynamic IP address.
Static IP Address	Select this option if the ISP assigned a fixed IP address.
IP Address	Enter the static IP address provided by your ISP.
Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask provided by your ISP.  This is available only when you set the <b>Encapsulation</b> to <b>IPoE</b> .
Gateway IP Address	Enter the gateway IP address provided by your ISP.  This is available only when you set the <b>Encapsulation</b> to <b>IPoE</b> .
DNS Server (This is available only when you select <b>IPv4 Only</b> or <b>IPv4 IPv6 DualStack</b> in the <b>IPv4/IPv6 Mode</b> field.)	
	Select <b>Obtain DNS Info Automatically</b> if you want the Zyxel Device to use the DNS server addresses assigned by your ISP.  Select <b>Use Following Static DNS Address</b> if you want the Zyxel Device to use the DNS server addresses you configure manually.
Primary DNS Server	Enter the first DNS server address assigned by the ISP.
Secondary DNS Server	Enter the second DNS server address assigned by the ISP.
Routing Feature (This is available only when you select <b>IPv4 Only</b> or <b>IPv4 IPv6 DualStack</b> in the <b>IPv4/IPv6 Mode</b> field.)	
NAT	Click this switch to activate or deactivate NAT on this connection. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
IGMP Proxy	Internet Group Multicast Protocol (IGMP) is a network-layer protocol used to establish membership in a Multicast group - it is not used to carry user data.  Click this switch to have the Zyxel Device act as an IGMP proxy on this connection. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.  This allows the Zyxel Device to get subscribing information and maintain a joined member list for each multicast group. It can reduce multicast traffic significantly.
Apply as Default Gateway	Click this switch to have the Zyxel Device use the WAN interface of this connection as the system default gateway. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
Fullcone NAT Enable	Click this switch to enable or disable full cone NAT on this connection. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.  This field is available only when you activate <b>NAT</b> .  In full cone NAT, the Zyxel Device maps all outgoing packets from an internal IP address and port to a single IP address and port on the external network. The Zyxel Device also maps packets coming to that external IP address and port to the internal IP address and port.
DHCP Options (This is available only when you set the <b>Encapsulation</b> to <b>IPoE</b> and select <b>IPv4 Only</b> or <b>IPv4 IPv6 DualStack</b> in the <b>IPv4/IPv6 Mode</b> field.)	
Request Options	Select <b>Option 43</b> to have the Zyxel Device automatically add vendor specific information in the DHCP packets to request the vendor specific options from the DHCP server.  Select <b>Option 121</b> to have the Zyxel Device push static routes to clients.
Sent Options	
option 60	Select this and enter the device identity you want the Zyxel Device to add in the DHCP discovery packets that go to the DHCP server.
Vendor ID	Enter the Vendor Class Identifier, such as the type of the hardware or firmware.

Table 24 Network Setting &gt; Broadband &gt; Add/Edit New WAN Interface (Routing Mode) (continued)



LABEL	DESCRIPTION
option 61	Select this and enter any string that identifies the device.
IAID	Enter the Identity Association Identifier (IAID) of the device, for example, the WAN connection index number.
DUID	Enter the hardware type, a time value and the MAC address of the device.
option 125	Select this to have the Zyxel Device automatically generate and add vendor specific parameters in the DHCP discovery packets that go to the DHCP server.
IPv6 Address (This is available only when you select <b>IPv4 IPv6 DualStack</b> or <b>IPv6 Only</b> in the <b>IPv4/IPv6 Mode</b> field.)	
Obtain an IPv6 Address Automatically	Select <b>Obtain an IPv6 Address Automatically</b> if you want to have the Zyxel Device use the IPv6 prefix from the connected router's Router Advertisement (RA) to generate an IPv6 address.
Static IPv6 Address	Select <b>Static IPv6 Address</b> if you have a fixed IPv6 address assigned by your ISP. When you select this, the following fields appear.
IPv6 Address	Enter an IPv6 IP address that your ISP gave to you for this WAN interface.
Prefix Length	Enter the address prefix length to specify how many most significant bits in an IPv6 address compose the network address.
IPv6 Default Gateway	Enter the IP address of the next-hop gateway. The gateway is a router or switch on the same segment as your Zyxel Device's interface(s). The gateway helps forward packets to their destinations.
IPv6 DNS Server (This is available only when you select <b>IPv4 IPv6 DualStack</b> or <b>IPv6 Only</b> in the <b>IPv4/IPv6 Mode</b> field. Configure the IPv6 DNS server in the following section.)	
Obtain IPv6 DNS Info Automatically	Select <b>Obtain IPv6 DNS Info Automatically</b> to have the Zyxel Device get the IPv6 DNS server addresses from the ISP automatically.
Use Following Static IPv6 DNS Address	Select <b>Use Following Static IPv6 DNS Address</b> to have the Zyxel Device use the IPv6 DNS server addresses you configure manually.
Primary DNS Server	Enter the first IPv6 DNS server address assigned by the ISP.
Secondary DNS Server	Enter the second IPv6 DNS server address assigned by the ISP.
IPv6 Routing Feature (This is available only when you select <b>IPv4 IPv6 DualStack</b> or <b>IPv6 Only</b> in the <b>IPv4/IPv6 Mode</b> field. You can enable IPv6 routing features in the following section.)	
MLD Proxy Enable	Select this check box to have the Zyxel Device act as an MLD proxy on this connection. This allows the Zyxel Device to get subscription information and maintain a joined member list for each multicast group. It can reduce multicast traffic significantly.
Apply as Default Gateway	Select this option to have the Zyxel Device use the WAN interface of this connection as the system default gateway.
DS-Lite	This is available only when you select <b>IPv6 Only</b> in the <b>IPv4/IPv6 Mode</b> field. Enable Dual Stack Lite to let local computers use IPv4 through an ISP's IPv6 network. See <a href="#">Dual Stack Lite on page 116</a> for more information.  Click this switch to let local computers use IPv4 through an ISP's IPv6 network. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
DS-Lite Relay Server IP	Specify the transition router's IPv6 address.
6RD	The 6RD (IPv6 rapid deployment) fields display when you set the <b>IPv6/IPv4 Mode</b> field to <b>IPv4 Only</b> . See <a href="#">IPv6 Rapid Deployment on page 116</a> for more information.  Click this switch to tunnel IPv6 traffic from the local network through the ISP's IPv4 network. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.

Table 24 Network Setting &gt; Broadband &gt; Add/Edit New WAN Interface (Routing Mode) (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
	Select <b>Manually Configured</b> if you have the IPv4 address of the relay server. Otherwise, select <b>Automatically configured by DHCP</b> to have the Zyxel Device detect it automatically through DHCP.  The <b>Automatically configured by DHCP</b> option is configurable only when you set the method of encapsulation to <b>IPoE</b> .
Service Provider IPv6 Prefix	Enter an IPv6 prefix for tunneling IPv6 traffic to the ISP's border relay router and connecting to the native IPv6 Internet.
IPv4 Mask Length	Enter the subnet mask number (1~32) for the IPv4 network.
Border Relay IPv4 Address	When you select <b>Manually Configured</b> , specify the relay server's IPv4 address in this field.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to restore your previously saved settings.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.

## Bridge Mode

Click the **Add new WAN Interface** in the **Network Setting > Broadband** screen or the **Edit** icon next to the connection you want to configure. The following example screen displays when you select **Bridge** mode.

Figure 73 Network Setting &gt; Broadband &gt; Add/Edit New WAN Interface (Bridge Mode)

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 25 Network Setting &gt; Broadband &gt; Add/Edit New WAN Interface (Bridge Mode)



LABEL	DESCRIPTION
General	Click this switch to enable or disable the interface. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
Name	Enter a service name of the connection.  This field is read-only is you are editing the WAN interface.
Type	This field shows <b>Ethernet</b> and indicates an Ethernet connection.  This field is read-only is you are editing the WAN interface.
Mode	Select <b>Bridge</b> when your ISP provides you more than one IP address and you want the connected computers to get individual IP address from ISP's DHCP server directly. If you select <b>Bridge</b> , you cannot use routing functions, such as QoS, Firewall, DHCP server and NAT on traffic from the selected LAN port(s).

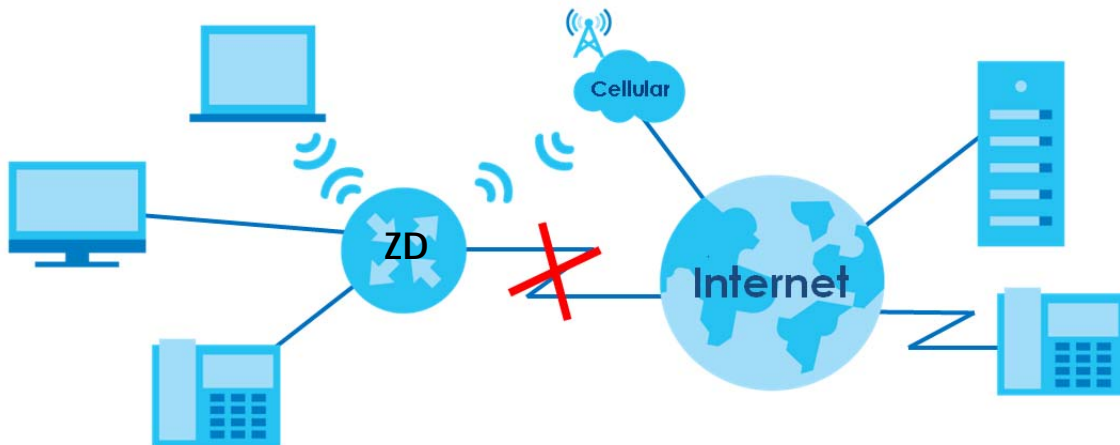
Table 25 Network Setting &gt; Broadband &gt; Add/Edit New WAN Interface (Bridge Mode) (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VLAN	Click this switch to enable or disable VLAN on this WAN interface. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
802.1p	IEEE 802.1p defines up to 8 separate traffic types by inserting a tag into a MAC-layer frame that contains bits to define class of service.  Select the IEEE 802.1p priority level (from 0 to 7) to add to traffic through this connection. The greater the number, the higher the priority level.
802.1q	Type the VLAN ID number (from 0 to 4094) for traffic through this connection.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to exit this screen without saving any changes.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.

## 6.4 Cellular Backup

The USB port of the Zyxel Device allows you to attach a cellular dongle to wirelessly connect to a cellular network for Internet access. You can have the Zyxel Device use the cellular WAN connection as a backup to keep you online if the primary WAN connection fails for **Consecutive Fail** times. Consult your cellular service provider to configure the settings in this screen. Disconnect the Fiber port to use the cellular dongle as your primary WAN connection, as the Zyxel Device automatically uses a wired WAN connection when available.

Figure 74 Internet Access Application: Cellular WAN



Use this screen to configure your cellular settings. Click **Network Setting > Broadband > Cellular Backup**.

The actual data rate you obtain varies depending on the cellular card you use, the signal strength to the service provider's base station, and so on.

Note: Entering a wrong PIN code three times will lock the SIM card in your cellular dongle.

Note: If you select **Drop** in the **Current Cellular Connection** field, the Zyxel Device will drop the cellular WAN connection when the **Time Budget** or **Data Budget** is reached. It may take some time for the cellular WAN connection to be disconnected when the **Time Budget** or **Data Budget** is reached.

Figure 75 Network Setting &gt; Broadband &gt; Cellular Backup (General &amp; Cellular Connection Settings)

## Broadband

Broadband **Cellular Backup** Advanced

Whenever the WAN connection is down, Cellular Backup takes over the job and keeps you online. It is valid when a Cellular USB dongle is attached to the device and proper settings are configured. You may consult your Cellular service provider for the following settings.

### General

Cellular Backup

Ping Check

Check Cycle Every  (20~180 Sec)

Consecutive Fail  (2~5 times)

Ping Default Gateway

Ping Host  (Host name or IP address)

**Note**  
Primary WAN is not in service when ping failed after consecutive times.

### Cellular Connection Settings

Card Description N/A

Username  (Optional)

Password  (Optional)

Authentication  ▼

PIN  (Optional) (Only for unlock PIN next time)  
(PIN remaining authentication times: N/A)

Dial String

APN

Connection  ▼

Obtain an IP Address Automatically

Use the Following Static IP Address

Obtain DNS Info Dynamically

Use the Following Static DNS IP Address

Enable E-mail Notification

**Note**  
Entering the wrong PIN code 3 times will lock SIM card.



**Figure 76** Network > Broadband > Cellular Backup (Budget Setup)

**Budget Setup**

Enable Budget Control

Time Budget  hours per month

Data Budget  Mbytes  per month

Data Budget  kPackets  per month

Reset all budget counters on  day of the month

**Reset time and data budget counters**

Actions before over budget

Data Budget  % of time budget

Data Budget  % of data budget (Mbytes)

Data Budget  % of data budget (Packets)

Actions when over budget

Current Cellular Connection

Actions

Enable e-mail Notification

Mail Account

Cellular Backup e-mail Title

Send Notification to E-mail

Enable Log: Interval  minutes

Note

If you select **Drop** in the **Current Cellular Connection** field, the will drop the Zyxel Device cellular WAN connection when the **Time Budget** or **Data Budget** is reached. It may take some time for the cellular WAN connection to be disconnected when the **Time Budget** or **Data Budget** is reached.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 26** Network Setting > Broadband > Cellular Backup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
General	
Cellular Backup	Click this switch to have the Zyxel Device use the cellular connection as your WAN or a backup when the wired WAN connection fails. When the switch goes to the right <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.

Table 26 Network Setting &gt; Broadband &gt; Cellular Backup (continued)


LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Ping Check	Click this switch to ping check the connection status of your WAN. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.  You can configure the frequency of the ping check and number of consecutive failures before triggering cellular backup.
Check Cycle	Enter the frequency of the ping check in this field.
Consecutive Fail	Enter how many consecutive failures are required before cellular backup is triggered.
Ping Default Gateway	Select this to have the Zyxel Device ping the WAN interface's default gateway IP address.
Ping the Host	Select this to have the Zyxel Device ping the particular host name or IP address you typed in this field.
Cellular Connection Settings	
Card description	This field displays the manufacturer and model name of your cellular card if you inserted one in the Zyxel Device. Otherwise, it displays <b>N/A</b> .
Username	Type the user name (of up to 64 ASCII printable characters) given to you by your service provider.
Password	Type the password (of up to 64 ASCII printable characters) associated with the user name above.
PIN	A PIN (Personal Identification Number) code is a key to a cellular card. Without the PIN code, you cannot use the cellular card.  If your ISP enabled PIN code authentication, enter the 4-digit PIN code (0000 for example) provided by your ISP. If you enter the PIN code incorrectly, the cellular card may be blocked by your ISP and you cannot use the account to access the Internet.  If your ISP disabled PIN code authentication, leave this field blank.
Dial string	Enter the phone number (dial string) used to dial up a connection to your service provider's base station. Your ISP should provide the phone number.  For example, *99# is the dial string to establish a GPRS or cellular connection in Taiwan.
APN	Enter the APN (Access Point Name) provided by your service provider. Connections with different APNs may provide different services (such as Internet access or MMS (Multi-Media Messaging Service)) and charge method.  You can enter up to 32 ASCII printable characters. Spaces are allowed.
Connection	Select <b>Nailed UP</b> if you do not want the connection to time out.  Select <b>on Demand</b> if you do not want the connection up all the time and specify an idle time-out in the <b>Max Idle Timeout</b> field.
Max Idle Timeout	This value specifies the time in minutes that elapses before the Zyxel Device automatically disconnects from the ISP.
Obtain an IP Address Automatically	Select this option if your ISP did not assign you a fixed IP address.
Use the following static IP address	Select this option if the ISP assigned a fixed IP address.
IP Address	Enter your WAN IP address in this field if you selected <b>Use the following static IP address</b> .
Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask of the IP address.
Obtain DNS info dynamically	Select this to have the Zyxel Device get the DNS server addresses from the ISP automatically.

Table 26 Network Setting &gt; Broadband &gt; Cellular Backup (continued)




LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Use the following static DNS IP address	Select this to have the Zyxel Device use the DNS server addresses you configure manually.
Primary DNS server	Enter the first DNS server address assigned by the ISP.
Secondary DNS server	Enter the second DNS server address assigned by the ISP.
Enable E-mail Notification	Select this to enable the e-mail notification function. The Zyxel Device will e-mail you a notification when the cellular connection is up.
Mail Account	Select an e-mail address you have configured in <b>Maintenance &gt; E-mail Notification</b> . The Zyxel Device uses the corresponding mail server to send notifications.  You must have configured a mail server already in the <b>Maintenance &gt; E-mail Notification</b> screen.
Cellular backup E-mail Title	Type a title that you want to be in the subject line of the e-mail notifications that the Zyxel Device sends.
Send Notification to E-mail	Notifications are sent to the e-mail address specified in this field. If this field is left blank, notifications cannot be sent via e-mail.
	Click this  to show the advanced cellular backup settings.
Budget Setup	
Enable Budget Control	Click this switch to set a monthly limit for the user account of the installed cellular card. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.  You can set a limit on the total traffic and/or call time. The Zyxel Device takes the actions you specified when a limit is exceeded during the month.
Time Budget	Select this and specify the amount of time (in hours) that the cellular connection can be used within one month. If you change the value after you configure and enable budget control, the Zyxel Device resets the statistics.
Data Budget (Mbytes)	Select this and specify how much downstream and/or upstream data (in Mega bytes) can be transmitted via the cellular connection within one month.  Select <b>Download/Upload</b> to set a limit on the total traffic in both directions.  Select <b>Download</b> to set a limit on the downstream traffic (from the ISP to the Zyxel Device).  Select <b>Upload</b> to set a limit on the upstream traffic (from the Zyxel Device to the ISP).  If you change the value after you configure and enable budget control, the Zyxel Device resets the statistics.
Data Budget (kPackets)	Select this and specify how much downstream and/or upstream data (in k Packets) can be transmitted via the cellular connection within one month.  Select <b>Download/Upload</b> to set a limit on the total traffic in both directions.  Select <b>Download</b> to set a limit on the downstream traffic (from the ISP to the Zyxel Device).  Select <b>Upload</b> to set a limit on the upstream traffic (from the Zyxel Device to the ISP).  If you change the value after you configure and enable budget control, the Zyxel Device resets the statistics.
Reset all budget counters on	Select the date on which the Zyxel Device resets the budget every month. Select <b>last</b> if you want the Zyxel Device to reset the budget on the last day of the month. Select <b>specific</b> and enter the number of the date you want the Zyxel Device to reset the budget.
Reset time and data budget counters	Click this button to reset the time and data budgets immediately. The count starts over with the cellular connection's full configured monthly time and data budgets. This does not affect the normal monthly budget restart; so if you configured the time and data budget counters to reset on the second day of the month and you use this button on the first, the time and data budget counters will still reset on the second.

Table 26 Network Setting &gt; Broadband &gt; Cellular Backup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Actions before over budget	Specify the actions the Zyxel Device takes before the time or data limit exceeds.
Data Budget % of time budget/data budget (Mbytes)/data budget (kPackets)	Select the check boxes and enter a number from 1 to 99 in the percentage fields. If you change the value after you configure and enable budget control, the Zyxel Device resets the statistics.
Actions when over budget	Specify the actions the Zyxel Device takes when the time or data limit is exceeded.
Current Cellular connection	Select <b>Keep</b> to maintain an existing cellular connection or <b>Drop</b> to disconnect it.
Actions	
Enable E-mail Notification	Click this switch to enable or disable the e-mail notification function. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.  The Zyxel Device will e-mail you a notification whenever over budget occurs.
Mail Account	Select an e-mail address you have configured in <b>Maintenance &gt; E-mail Notification</b> . The Zyxel Device uses the corresponding mail server to send notifications.  You must have configured a mail server already in the <b>Maintenance &gt; E-mail Notification</b> screen.
Cellular Backup E-mail Title	Type a title that you want to be in the subject line of the e-mail notifications that the Zyxel Device sends.
Send Notification to Email	Notifications are sent to the email address specified in this field. If this field is left blank, notifications cannot be sent via email.
Interval	Enter the interval of how many minutes you want the Zyxel Device to e-mail you.
Enable Log	Select this to activate the logging function at the interval you set in this field.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to discard any changes to the settings.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.

## 6.5 The Broadband Advanced Screen

Use the **Advanced** screen to enable or disable ADSL over PTM, Annex M, DSL PhyR, and SRA (Seamless Rate Adaptation) functions. The Zyxel Device supports the PhyR retransmission scheme. PhyR is a retransmission scheme designed to provide protection against noise on the DSL line. It improves voice, video and data transmission resilience by utilizing a retransmission buffer. It also lists ITU-T G.993.2 standard VDSL profiles you can comply with.

ITU-T G.993.2 standard defines a wide range of settings for various parameters, some of which are encompassed in profiles as shown in the next table.

Note: You can only see this screen if you are using DX5301-B2 or DX5301-B3.

Note: If the settings in the screen are changed, the Zyxel Device will re-establish the DSL connection(s).

Table 27 VDSL Profiles

PROFILE	BANDWIDTH (MHZ)	NUMBER OF DOWNSTREAM CARRIERS	CARRIER BANDWIDTH (KHZ)	POWER (DBM)	MAX. DOWNSTREAM THROUGHPUT (MBIT/S)
8a	8.832	2048	4.3125	17.5	50
8b	8.832	2048	4.3125	20.5	50
8c	8.5	1972	4.3125	11.5	50
8d	8.832	2048	4.3125	14.5	50
12a	12	2783	4.3125	14.5	68
12b	12	2783	4.3125	14.5	68
17a	17.664	4096	4.3125	14.5	100
35b	35.328	8192	4.3125	17.0	300

Click **Network Setting > Broadband > Advanced** to display the following screen.

Figure 77 Network Setting &gt; Broadband &gt; Advanced

## Broadband

Broadband | Cellular Backup | **Advanced**

Use the **Advanced** screen to enable or disable ADSL over PTM, Annex M, DSL PhyR, and SRA (Seamless Rate Adaptation) functions. The Zyxel Device supports the PhyR retransmission scheme. PhyR is a retransmission scheme designed to provide protection against noise on the DSL line. It improves voice, video and data transmission resilience by utilizing a retransmission buffer. It also lists ITU-T G.993.2 standard VDSL profiles you can comply with.

### DSL Capabilities

- PhyR US
- PhyR DS
- Bitswap
- SRA

### DSL Modulation

- PTM over ADSL
- G.dmt
- G.lite
- T1.413
- ADSL2
- Annex L
- ADSL2+
- Annex M
- VDSL2

### VDSL Profile

- 8a Enable
- 8b Enable
- 8c Enable
- 8d Enable
- 12a Enable
- 12b Enable
- 17a Enable
- 30a Enable
- 35b Enable
- US0

Cancel **Apply**

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 28 Network Setting > Broadband > Advanced

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
DSL Capabilities	
PhyR US	Enable or disable <b>PhyR US</b> (upstream) for upstream transmission to the WAN. PhyR US should be enabled if data being transmitted upstream is sensitive to noise. However, enabling PhyR US can decrease the US line rate. Enabling or disabling PhyR will require the CPE to retrain. For PhyR to function, the DSLAM must also support PhyR and have it enabled.
PhyR DS	Enable or disable <b>PhyR DS</b> (downstream) for downstream transmission from the WAN. PhyR DS should be enabled if data being transmitted downstream is sensitive to noise. However, enabling PhyR DS can decrease the DS line rate. Enabling or disabling PhyR will require the CPE to retrain. For PhyR to function, the DSLAM must also support PhyR and have it enabled.
Bitswap	Select <b>Enable</b> to allow the Zyxel Device to adapt to line changes when you are using G.dmt.  Bit-swapping is a way of keeping the line more stable by constantly monitoring and redistributing bits between channels.
SRA	Enable or disable Seamless Rate Adaption (SRA). Select <b>Enable</b> to have the Zyxel Device automatically adjust the connection's data rate according to line conditions without interrupting service.
DSL Modulation	
PTM over ADSL :	Select <b>Enable</b> to use PTM over ADSL. Since PTM has less overhead than ATM, some ISPs use this for better performance.
G.Dmt	ITU G.992.1 (better known as G.dmt) is an ITU standard for ADSL using discrete multitone modulation. G.dmt full-rate ADSL expands the usable bandwidth of existing copper telephone lines, delivering high-speed data communications at rates up to 8 Mbit/s downstream and 1.3 Mbit/s upstream.
G.lite	ITU G.992.2 (better known as G.lite) is an ITU standard for ADSL using discrete multitone modulation. G.lite does not strictly require the use of DSL filters, but like all variants of ADSL generally functions better with splitters.
T1.413	ANSI T1.413 is a technical standard that defines the requirements for the single asymmetric digital subscriber line (ADSL) for the interface between the telecommunications network and the customer installation in terms of their interaction and electrical characteristics.
ADSL2	It optionally extends the capability of basic ADSL in data rates to 12 Mbit/s downstream and, depending on Annex version, up to 3.5 Mbit/s upstream (with a mandatory capability of ADSL2 transceivers of 8 Mbit/s downstream and 800 kbit/s upstream).
Annex L	Annex L is an optional specification in the ITU-T ADSL2 recommendation G.992.3 titled Specific requirements for a Reach Extended ADSL2 (READSL2) system operating in the frequency band above POTS, therefore it is often referred to as Reach Extended ADSL2 or READSL2. The main difference between this specification and commonly deployed Annex A is the maximum distance that can be used. The power of the lower frequencies used for transmitting data is boosted up to increase the reach of this signal up to 7 kilometers (23,000 ft).
ADSL2+	ADSL2+ extends the capability of basic ADSL by doubling the number of downstream channels. The data rates can be as high as 24 Mbit/s downstream and up to 1.4 Mbit/s upstream depending on the distance from the DSLAM to the customer's premises.
Annex M	Annex M is an optional specification in ITU-T recommendations G.992.3 (ADSL2) and G.992.5 (ADSL2+), also referred to as ADSL2 M and ADSL2+ M. This specification extends the capability of commonly deployed Annex A by more than doubling the number of upstream bits. The data rates can be as high as 12 or 24 Mbit/s downstream and 3 Mbit/s upstream depending on the distance from the DSLAM to the customer's premises.
VDSL2	VDSL2 (Very High Speed Digital Subscriber Line 2) is the second generation of the VDSL standard (which is currently denoted VDSL1). VDSL2 allows a frequency band of up to 30MHz and transmission rates of up to 100 Mbps in each direction. VDSL2 is defined in G.993.2.
VDSL Profile	VDSL2 profiles differ in the width of the frequency band used to transmit the broadband signal. Profiles that use a wider frequency band can deliver higher maximum speeds.

Table 28 Network Setting &gt; Broadband &gt; Advanced (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
8a, 8b, 8c, 8d, 12a, 12b, 17a, 35b US0	The G.993.2 VDSL standard defines a wide range of profiles that can be used in different VDSL deployment settings, such as in a central office, a street cabinet or a building.  The Zyxel Device must comply with at least one profile specified in G.993.2. but compliance with more than one profile is allowed.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to return to the previous configuration.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device.

## 6.6 Technical Reference

The following section contains additional technical information about the Zyxel Device features described in this chapter.

### Encapsulation

Be sure to use the encapsulation method required by your ISP. The Zyxel Device can work in bridge mode or routing mode. When the Zyxel Device is in routing mode, it supports the following methods.

### IP over Ethernet

IP over Ethernet (IPoE) is an alternative to PPPoE. IP packets are being delivered across an Ethernet network, without using PPP encapsulation. They are routed between the Ethernet interface and the WAN interface and then formatted so that they can be understood in a bridged environment. For instance, it encapsulates routed Ethernet frames into bridged Ethernet cells.

### PPP over ATM (PPPoA)

PPPoA stands for Point to Point Protocol over ATM Adaptation Layer 5 (AAL5). A PPPoA connection functions like a dial-up Internet connection. The Zyxel Device encapsulates the PPP session based on RFC1483 and sends it through an ATM PVC (Permanent Virtual Circuit) to the Internet Service Provider's (ISP) DSLAM (digital access multiplexer). Please refer to RFC 2364 for more information on PPPoA. Refer to RFC 1661 for more information on PPP.

### PPP over Ethernet (PPPoE)

Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet (PPPoE) provides access control and billing functionality in a manner similar to dial-up services using PPP. PPPoE is an IETF standard (RFC 2516) specifying how a personal computer (PC) interacts with a broadband modem (DSL, cable, wireless, and so on) connection.

For the service provider, PPPoE offers an access and authentication method that works with existing access control systems (for example RADIUS).

One of the benefits of PPPoE is the ability to let you access one of multiple network services, a function known as dynamic service selection. This enables the service provider to easily create and offer new IP services for individuals.



Operationally, PPPoE saves significant effort for both you and the ISP or carrier, as it requires no specific configuration of the broadband modem at the customer site.

By implementing PPPoE directly on the Zyxel Device (rather than individual computers), the computers on the LAN do not need PPPoE software installed, since the Zyxel Device does that part of the task. Furthermore, with NAT, all of the LANs' computers will have access.

## RFC 1483

RFC 1483 describes two methods for Multiprotocol Encapsulation over ATM Adaptation Layer 5 (AAL5). The first method allows multiplexing of multiple protocols over a single ATM virtual circuit (LLC-based multiplexing) and the second method assumes that each protocol is carried over a separate ATM virtual circuit (VC-based multiplexing). Please refer to RFC 1483 for more detailed information.

## Multiplexing

There are two conventions to identify what protocols the virtual circuit (VC) is carrying. Be sure to use the multiplexing method required by your ISP.

### VC-based Multiplexing

In this case, by prior mutual agreement, each protocol is assigned to a specific virtual circuit; for example, VC1 carries IP, etc. VC-based multiplexing may be dominant in environments where dynamic creation of large numbers of ATM VCs is fast and economical.

### LLC-based Multiplexing

In this case one VC carries multiple protocols with protocol identifying information being contained in each packet header. Despite the extra bandwidth and processing overhead, this method may be advantageous if it is not practical to have a separate VC for each carried protocol, for example, if charging heavily depends on the number of simultaneous VCs.

## Traffic Shaping

Traffic Shaping is an agreement between the carrier and the subscriber to regulate the average rate and fluctuations of data transmission over an ATM network. This agreement helps eliminate congestion, which is important for transmission of real time data such as audio and video connections.

Peak Cell Rate (PCR) is the maximum rate at which the sender can send cells. This parameter may be lower (but not higher) than the maximum line speed. 1 ATM cell is 53 bytes (424 bits), so a maximum speed of 832Kbps gives a maximum PCR of 1962 cells/sec. This rate is not guaranteed because it is dependent on the line speed.

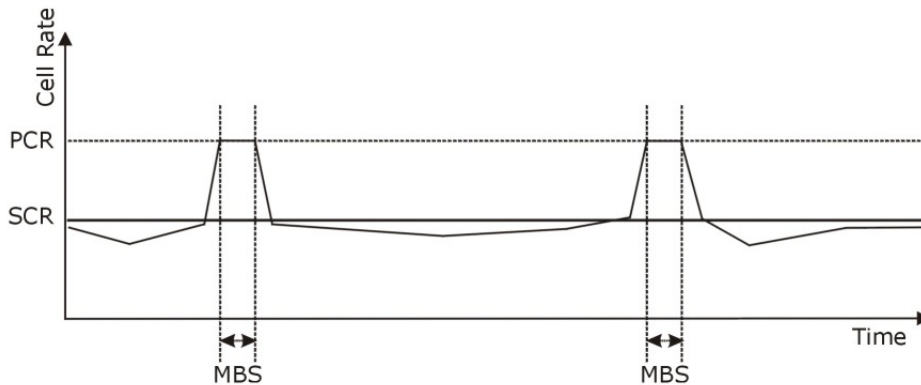
Sustained Cell Rate (SCR) is the mean cell rate of each bursty traffic source. It specifies the maximum average rate at which cells can be sent over the virtual connection. SCR may not be greater than the PCR.

Maximum Burst Size (MBS) is the maximum number of cells that can be sent at the PCR. After MBS is reached, cell rates fall below SCR until cell rate averages to the SCR again. At this time, more cells (up to the MBS) can be sent at the PCR again.

If the PCR, SCR or MBS is set to the default of "0", the system will assign a maximum value that correlates to your upstream line rate.

The following figure illustrates the relationship between PCR, SCR and MBS.

**Figure 78** Example of Traffic Shaping



## ATM Traffic Classes

These are the basic ATM traffic classes defined by the ATM Forum Traffic Management 4.0 Specification.

### Constant Bit Rate (CBR)

Constant Bit Rate (CBR) provides fixed bandwidth that is always available even if no data is being sent. CBR traffic is generally time-sensitive (doesn't tolerate delay). CBR is used for connections that continuously require a specific amount of bandwidth. A PCR is specified and if traffic exceeds this rate, cells may be dropped. Examples of connections that need CBR would be high-resolution video and voice.

### Variable Bit Rate (VBR)

The Variable Bit Rate (VBR) ATM traffic class is used with bursty connections. Connections that use the Variable Bit Rate (VBR) traffic class can be grouped into real time (VBR-RT) or non-real time (VBR-nRT) connections.

The VBR-RT (real-time Variable Bit Rate) type is used with bursty connections that require closely controlled delay and delay variation. It also provides a fixed amount of bandwidth (a PCR is specified) but is only available when data is being sent. An example of an VBR-RT connection would be video conferencing. Video conferencing requires real-time data transfers and the bandwidth requirement varies in proportion to the video image's changing dynamics.

The VBR-nRT (non real-time Variable Bit Rate) type is used with bursty connections that do not require closely controlled delay and delay variation. It is commonly used for "bursty" traffic typical on LANs. PCR and MBS define the burst levels, SCR defines the minimum level. An example of an VBR-nRT connection would be non-time sensitive data file transfers.

### Unspecified Bit Rate (UBR)

The Unspecified Bit Rate (UBR) ATM traffic class is for bursty data transfers. However, UBR doesn't guarantee any bandwidth and only delivers traffic when the network has spare bandwidth. An example application is background file transfer.

## IP Address Assignment

A static IP is a fixed IP that your ISP gives you. A dynamic IP is not fixed; the ISP assigns you a different one each time. The Single User Account feature can be enabled or disabled if you have either a dynamic or static IP. However, the encapsulation method assigned influences your choices for IP address and default gateway.

## Introduction to VLANs

A Virtual Local Area Network (VLAN) allows a physical network to be partitioned into multiple logical networks. Devices on a logical network belong to one group. A device can belong to more than one group. With VLAN, a device cannot directly talk to or hear from devices that are not in the same group(s); the traffic must first go through a router.

In Multi-Tenant Unit (MTU) applications, VLAN is vital in providing isolation and security among the subscribers. When properly configured, VLAN prevents one subscriber from accessing the network resources of another on the same LAN, thus a user will not see the printers and hard disks of another user in the same building.

VLAN also increases network performance by limiting broadcasts to a smaller and more manageable logical broadcast domain. In traditional switched environments, all broadcast packets go to each and every individual port. With VLAN, all broadcasts are confined to a specific broadcast domain.

## Introduction to IEEE 802.1Q Tagged VLAN

A tagged VLAN uses an explicit tag (VLAN ID) in the MAC header to identify the VLAN membership of a frame across bridges - they are not confined to the switch on which they were created. The VLANs can be created statically by hand or dynamically through GVRP. The VLAN ID associates a frame with a specific VLAN and provides the information that switches need to process the frame across the network. A tagged frame is four bytes longer than an untagged frame and contains two bytes of TPID (Tag Protocol Identifier, residing within the type/length field of the Ethernet frame) and two bytes of TCI (Tag Control Information, starts after the source address field of the Ethernet frame).

The CFI (Canonical Format Indicator) is a single-bit flag, always set to zero for Ethernet switches. If a frame received at an Ethernet port has a CFI set to 1, then that frame should not be forwarded as it is to an untagged port. The remaining twelve bits define the VLAN ID, giving a possible maximum number of 4,096 VLANs. Note that user priority and VLAN ID are independent of each other. A frame with VID (VLAN Identifier) of null (0) is called a priority frame, meaning that only the priority level is significant and the default VID of the ingress port is given as the VID of the frame. Of the 4096 possible VIDs, a VID of 0 is used to identify priority frames and value 4095 (FFF) is reserved, so the maximum possible VLAN configurations are 4,094.

TPID	User Priority	CFI	VLAN ID
2 Bytes	3 Bits	1 Bit	12 Bits

## Multicast

IP packets are transmitted in either one of two ways - Unicast (1 sender - 1 recipient) or Broadcast (1 sender - everybody on the network). Multicast delivers IP packets to a group of hosts on the network - not everybody and not just 1.

Internet Group Multicast Protocol (IGMP) is a network-layer protocol used to establish membership in a Multicast group - it is not used to carry user data. IGMP version 2 (RFC 2236) is an improvement over version 1 (RFC 1112) but IGMP version 1 is still in wide use. If you would like to read more detailed information about interoperability between IGMP version 2 and version 1, please see sections 4 and 5 of RFC 2236. The class D IP address is used to identify host groups and can be in the range 224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255. The address 224.0.0.0 is not assigned to any group and is used by IP multicast computers. The address 224.0.0.1 is used for query messages and is assigned to the permanent group of all IP hosts (including gateways). All hosts must join the 224.0.0.1 group in order to participate in IGMP. The address 224.0.0.2 is assigned to the multicast routers group.

At start up, the Zyxel Device queries all directly connected networks to gather group membership. After that, the Zyxel Device periodically updates this information.

## DNS Server Address Assignment

Use Domain Name System (DNS) to map a domain name to its corresponding IP address and vice versa, for instance, the IP address of `www.zyxel.com` is `204.217.0.2`. The DNS server is extremely important because without it, you must know the IP address of a computer before you can access it.

The Zyxel Device can get the DNS server addresses in the following ways.

- 1 The ISP tells you the DNS server addresses, usually in the form of an information sheet, when you sign up. If your ISP gives you DNS server addresses, manually enter them in the DNS server fields.
- 2 If your ISP dynamically assigns the DNS server IP addresses (along with the Zyxel Device's WAN IP address), set the DNS server fields to get the DNS server address from the ISP.

## IPv6 Addressing

The 128-bit IPv6 address is written as eight 16-bit hexadecimal blocks separated by colons (:). This is an example IPv6 address `2001:0db8:1a2b:0015:0000:0000:1a2f:0000`.

IPv6 addresses can be abbreviated in two ways:

- Leading zeros in a block can be omitted. So `2001:0db8:1a2b:0015:0000:0000:1a2f:0000` can be written as `2001:db8:1a2b:15:0:0:1a2f:0`.
- Any number of consecutive blocks of zeros can be replaced by a double colon. A double colon can only appear once in an IPv6 address. So `2001:0db8:0000:0000:1a2f:0000:0000:0015` can be written as `2001:0db8::1a2f:0000:0000:0015`, `2001:0db8:0000:0000:1a2f::0015`, `2001:db8::1a2f:0:0:15` or `2001:db8:0:0:1a2f::15`.

## IPv6 Prefix and Prefix Length

Similar to an IPv4 subnet mask, IPv6 uses an address prefix to represent the network address. An IPv6 prefix length specifies how many most significant bits (start from the left) in the address compose the network address. The prefix length is written as "/x" where x is a number. For example,

```
2001:db8:1a2b:15::1a2f:0/32
```

means that the first 32 bits (`2001:db8`) is the subnet prefix.

# CHAPTER 7

## Wireless

### 7.1 Wireless Overview

This chapter describes the Zyxel Device's **Network Setting > Wireless** screens. Use these screens to set up your Zyxel Device's WiFi connection and security settings.

#### 7.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

This section describes the Zyxel Device's **Wireless** screens. Use these screens to set up your Zyxel Device's wireless connection.

- Use the **General** screen to enable WiFi, enter the SSID and select the wireless security mode ([Section 7.2 on page 150](#)).
- Use the **Guest/More AP** screen to set up multiple wireless networks on your Zyxel Device ([Section 7.3 on page 154](#)).
- Use the **MAC Authentication** screen to allow or deny wireless clients based on their MAC addresses from connecting to the Zyxel Device ([Section 7.4 on page 159](#)).
- Use the **WPS** screen to enable or disable WPS, view or generate a security PIN (Personal Identification Number) ([Section 7.5 on page 161](#)).
- Use the **WMM** screen to enable WiFi MultiMedia (WMM) to ensure quality of service in wireless networks for multimedia applications ([Section 7.6 on page 163](#)).
- Use the **Others** screen to configure wireless advanced features, such as the RTS/CTS Threshold ([Section 7.7 on page 165](#)).
- Use the **Channel Status** screen to scan WiFi channel noises and view the results ([Section 7.8 on page 167](#)).
- Use the **MESH** screen to enable or disable MPro Mesh on your Zyxel Device ([Section 7.9 on page 168](#)).

#### 7.1.2 What You Need to Know

##### Wireless Basics

“Wireless” is essentially radio communication. In the same way that walkie-talkie radios send and receive information over the airwaves, wireless networking devices exchange information with one another. A wireless networking device is just like a radio that lets your computer exchange information with radios attached to other computers. Like walkie-talkies, most wireless networking devices operate at radio frequency bands that are open to the public and do not require a license to use. However, wireless networking is different from that of most traditional radio communications in that there are a number of wireless networking standards available with different methods of data encryption.

## WiFi6 / IEEE 802.11ax

WiFi6 is backwards compatible with IEEE 802.11a/b/g/n/ac and is most suitable in areas with a high concentration of users. WiFi6 devices support Target Wakeup Time (TWT) allowing them to automatically power down when they are inactive.

The following table displays the comparison of the different WiFi standards.

Table 29 WiFi Standards Comparison

WIFI STANDARD	MAXIMUM LINK RATE *	BAND	SIMULTANEOUS CONNECTIONS
802.11b	11 Mbps	2.4 GHz	1
802.11a/g	54 Mbps	2.4 GHz and 5 GHz	1
802.11n	600 Mbps	2.4 GHz and 5 GHz	1
802.11ac	6.93 Gbps	5 GHz	4
802.11ax	2.4 Gbps	2.4 GHz	128
	9.61 Gbps	5 GHz and 6 GHz	

\* The maximum link rate is for reference under ideal conditions only.

## 7.2 Wireless General Settings

Use this screen to enable the Wireless LAN, enter the SSID and select the wireless security mode. We recommended that you select **More Secure** to enable **WPA2-PSK** data encryption.

Note: If you are configuring the Zyxel Device from a computer connected by WiFi and you change the Zyxel Device's SSID, channel or security settings, you will lose your wireless connection when you press **Apply**. You must then change the wireless settings of your computer to match the new settings on the Zyxel Device.

Note: If upstream/downstream bandwidth is empty, the Zyxel Device sets the value automatically.

Note: Setting a maximum upstream/downstream bandwidth will significantly decrease wireless performance.

Click **Network Setting** > **Wireless** to open the **General** screen.

Figure 79 Network Setting > Wireless > General

## Wireless

General
Guest/More AP
MAC Authentication
WPS
WMM
Others
Channel Status

Use this screen to enable the Wireless LAN, enter the SSID and select the wireless security mode. These are basic elements for starting a wireless service. It's recommended that you select **More Secure** to enable **WPA2-PSK** data encryption.

**Wireless**

Wireless  Keep the same settings for 2.4G and 5G wireless networks

**Wireless Network Setup**

Band 2.4GHz

Wireless

Channel Auto Current : 13 / 20 MHz

Bandwidth 20/40MHz

Control Sideband Lower

**Wireless Network Settings**

Wireless Network Name Zyxel\_0002

Max Clients 32

Hide SSID 
! Hide SSID does not support WPS 2.0. You should disable WPS in WPS page.

Multicast Forwarding

Max. Upstream Bandwidth  Kbps

Max. Downstream Bandwidth  Kbps

**Note**

(1) If you are configuring the Zyxel Device from a computer connected to the wireless LAN and you change the Zyxel Device's SSID, channel or security settings, you will lose your wireless connection when you press **Apply** to confirm. You must then change the wireless settings of your computer to match the Zyxel Device's new settings.

(2) If upstream/downstream bandwidth is empty, the Zyxel Device sets the value automatically. Setting a maximum upstream/downstream bandwidth will significantly decrease wireless performance.

BSSID 02:10:18:01:00:02

**Security Level**

No Security

More Secure  
(Recommended)

Security Mode WPA2-PSK

Generate password automatically

Enter 8-63 ASCII characters or 64 hexadecimal digits ("0-9", "A-F").

Password \*\*\*\*\* 👁

Strength  medium

Cancel
Apply

The following table describes the general WiFi labels in this screen.

Table 30 Network Setting > Wireless > General


LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Wireless	
Wireless	Select <b>Keep the same settings for 2.4G and 5G wireless networks</b> and the 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz wireless networks will use the same SSID and wireless security settings.
Wireless Network Setup	
Band	This shows the wireless band which this radio profile is using. <b>2.4GHz</b> is the frequency used by IEEE 802.11b/g/n/ax wireless clients while <b>5GHz</b> is used by IEEE 802.11a/n/ac/ax wireless clients.
Wireless	Click this switch to enable or disable WiFi in this field. When the switch turns blue  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
Channel	Select a channel from the drop-down list box. The options vary depending on the frequency band and the country you are in.  Use <b>Auto</b> to have the Zyxel Device automatically determine a channel to use.
Bandwidth	Select whether the Zyxel Device uses a wireless channel width of <b>20MHz</b> , <b>20/40MHz</b> , <b>20/40/80MHz</b> or <b>20/40/80/160MHz</b> .  A standard 20 MHz channel offers transfer speeds of up to 150 Mbps whereas a 40 MHz channel uses two standard channels and offers speeds of up to 300 Mbps.  40 MHz (channel bonding or dual channel) bonds two adjacent radio channels to increase throughput. The wireless clients must also support 40 MHz. It is often better to use the 20 MHz setting in a location where the environment hinders the wireless signal.  An 80 MHz channel groups adjacent 40 MHz channels into pairs to increase bandwidth even higher.  Select <b>20MHz</b> if you want to lessen radio interference with other wireless devices in your neighborhood or the wireless clients do not support channel bonding.  Because not all devices support 40 MHz and/or 160 MHz channels, select 20/40MHz or 20/40/80/160MHz to allow the Zyxel Device to adjust the channel bandwidth automatically.
Control Sideband	This is available for some regions when you select a specific channel and set the <b>Bandwidth</b> field to <b>40MHz</b> or <b>20/40MHz</b> . Set whether the control channel (set in the <b>Channel</b> field) should be in the <b>Lower</b> or <b>Upper</b> range of channel bands.
Wireless Network Settings	
Wireless Network Name	The SSID (Service Set IDentity) identifies the service set with which a wireless device is associated. Wireless devices associating to the access point (AP) must have the same SSID.  Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 English keyboard characters) for WiFi.
Max Clients	Specify the maximum number of clients that can connect to this network at the same time.
Hide SSID	Select this check box to hide the SSID in the outgoing beacon frame so a station cannot obtain the SSID through scanning using a site survey tool.  This check box is grayed out if the WPS function is enabled in the <b>Network Setting &gt; Wireless &gt; WPS</b> screen.
Multicast Forwarding	Select this check box to allow the Zyxel Device to convert wireless multicast traffic into wireless unicast traffic.
Max. Upstream Bandwidth	Max. Upstream Bandwidth allows you to specify the maximum rate for upstream wireless traffic to the WAN from this wireless LAN in kilobits per second (Kbps).
Max. Downstream Bandwidth	Max. Upstream Bandwidth allows you to specify the maximum rate for downstream wireless traffic to this wireless LAN from the WAN in kilobits per second (Kbps).
BSSID	This shows the MAC address of the wireless interface on the Zyxel Device when WiFi is enabled.
Security Level	



Table 30 Network Setting &gt; Wireless &gt; General (continued)

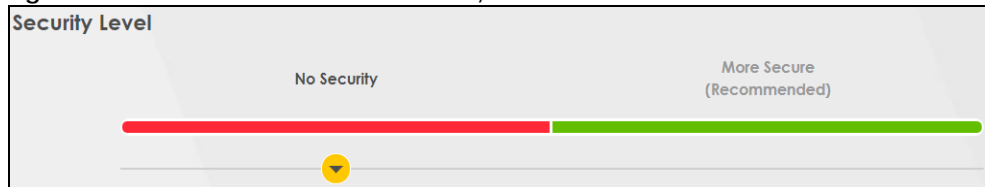
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Security Mode	Select <b>More Secure (Recommended)</b> to add security on this wireless network. The wireless clients which want to associate to this network must have same wireless security settings as the Zyxel Device. When you select to use a security, additional options appears in this screen.  Or you can select <b>No Security</b> to allow any client to associate this network without any data encryption or authentication.  See the following sections for more details about this field.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to restore your previously saved settings.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.

## 7.2.1 No Security

Select **No Security** to allow wireless stations to communicate with the Zyxel Device without any data encryption or authentication.

Note: If you do not enable any wireless security on your Zyxel Device, your network is accessible to any wireless networking device that is within range.

Figure 80 Wireless &gt; General: No Security



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 31 Wireless &gt; General: No Security

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Security Level	Choose <b>No Security</b> to allow all wireless connections without data encryption or authentication.

## 7.2.2 More Secure (Recommended)

The WPA-PSK (WiFi Protected Access-Pre-Shared Key) security mode provides both improved data encryption and user authentication over WEP. Using a pre-shared key, both the Zyxel Device and the connecting client share a common password in order to validate the connection. This type of encryption, while robust, is not as strong as WPA, WPA2 or even WPA2-PSK. The WPA2-PSK security mode is a more robust version of the WPA encryption standard. It offers slightly better security, although the use of PSK makes it less robust than it could be. The WPA3-SAE (Simultaneous Authentication of Equals handshake) security mode protects against dictionary attacks (password guessing attempts). It improves security by requiring a new encryption key every time a WPA3 connection is made. A handshake is the communication between the Zyxel Device and a connecting client at the beginning of a WiFi session.



Click **Network Setting > Wireless** to display the **General** screen. Select **More Secure** as the security level. Then select **WPA3-SAE** from the **Security Mode** list if your wireless client supports it. If you are not sure, select **WPA3-SAE**, **WPA3-SAE/WPA2-PSK** or **WPA2-PSK**.

**Figure 81** Wireless > General: More Secure: WPA2-PSK

The screenshot shows the configuration interface for WPA2-PSK security. At the top, a 'Security Level' bar indicates that 'More Secure (Recommended)' is selected over 'No Security'. Below this, the 'Security Mode' is set to 'WPA2-PSK'. A checkbox for 'Generate password automatically' is checked. The 'Password' field is masked with asterisks, and a strength indicator shows 'medium'. The 'Encryption' is set to 'AES' and the 'Timer' is set to '3600 sec'.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 32** Wireless > General: More Secure: WPA2-PSK

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Security Level	Select <b>More Secure</b> to enable WPA2-PSK data encryption.
Security Mode	Select <b>WPA2-PSK</b> from the drop-down list box.
Generate password automatically	Select this option to have the Zyxel Device automatically generate a password. The password field will not be configurable when you select this option.
Password	Select <b>Generate password automatically</b> or enter a <b>Password</b> .  The password has two uses.  1. Manual. Manually enter the same password on the Zyxel Device and the client. Enter 8-63 ASCII characters or exactly 64 hexadecimal ('0-9', 'a-f') characters.  2. WPS. When using WPS, the Zyxel Device sends this password to the client.  Click the Eye icon to show or hide the password of your wireless network. When the Eye icon is slashed  , you'll see the password in plain text. Otherwise, it is hidden.
	Click this  to show more fields in this section. Click again to hide them.
Encryption	This field shows the <b>AES</b> (Advanced Encryption Standard) type of data encryption.
Timer	The <b>Timer</b> is the rate at which the RADIUS server sends a new group key out to all clients.

## 7.3 Guest/More AP

This screen allows you to configure a guest wireless network that allows access to the Internet only through the Zyxel Device.

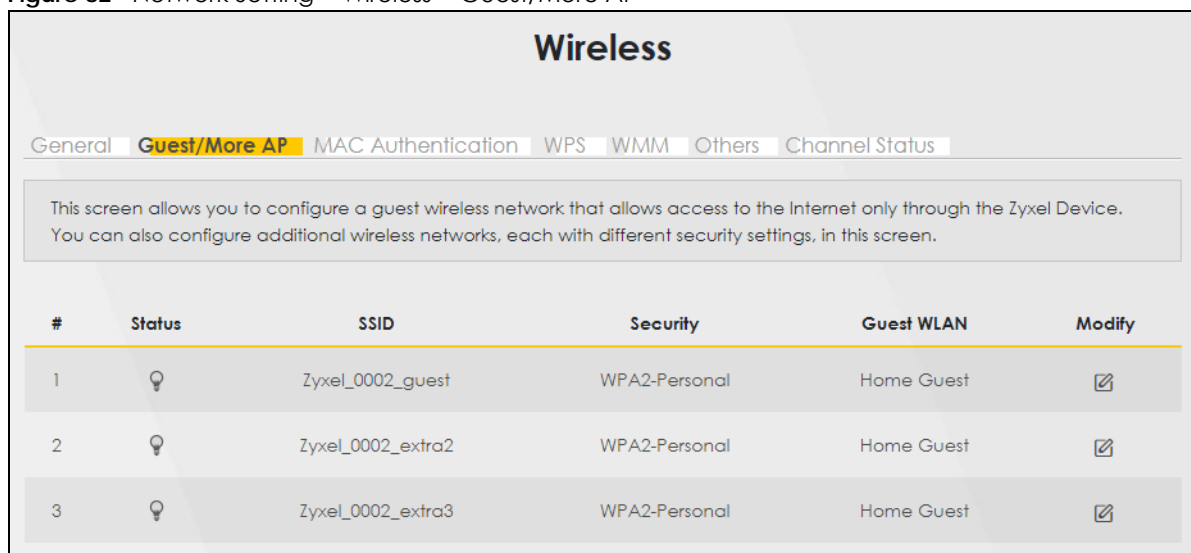
Click **Network Setting > Wireless > Guest/More AP**. The following screen displays.

The following table introduces the supported wireless networks.

Table 33 Supported Wireless Networks

WIRELESS NETWORKS	WHERE TO CONFIGURE
Main/1	Network Setting > Wireless > General screen
Guest/3	Network Setting > Wireless > Guest/More AP screen

Figure 82 Network Setting > Wireless > Guest/More AP



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 34 Network Setting > Wireless > Guest/More AP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
#	This is the index number of the entry.
Status	This field indicates whether this SSID is active. A yellow bulb signifies that this SSID is active, while a gray bulb signifies that this SSID is not active.
SSID	An SSID profile is the set of parameters relating to one of the Zyxel Device's BSSs. The SSID (Service Set Identifier) identifies the Service Set with which a wireless device is associated.  This field displays the name of the wireless profile on the network. When a wireless client scans for an AP to associate with, this is the name that is broadcast and seen in the wireless client utility.
Security	This field indicates the security mode of the SSID profile.
Guest WLAN	This displays if the guest WiFi function has been enabled for this wireless LAN.  If <b>Home Guest</b> displays, clients can connect to each other directly.  If <b>External Guest</b> displays, clients are blocked from connecting to each other directly.  <b>N/A</b> displays if guest wireless LAN is disabled.
Modify	Click the <b>Edit</b> icon to configure the SSID profile.

### 7.3.1 Edit Guest/More AP Settings

Use this screen to create Guest and additional wireless networks with different security settings.

Note: If upstream/downstream bandwidth is empty, the Zyxel Device sets the value automatically. Setting a maximum upstream/downstream bandwidth will significantly decrease wireless performance.

Click the **Edit** icon next to an SSID in the **Guest/More AP** screen. The following screen displays.

Figure 83 Network Setting &gt; Wireless &gt; Guest/More AP &gt; Edit

<

## More AP Edit

Use this screen to create Guest and additional wireless networks with different security settings.

### Wireless Network Setup

Wireless

### Security Level

Wireless Network Name

Hide SSID

Guest WLAN

Access Scenario

Max. Upstream Bandwidth  Kbps

Max. Downstream Bandwidth  Kbps

**Note**

If upstream/downstream bandwidth is empty, the Zyxel Device sets the value automatically. Setting a maximum upstream/downstream bandwidth will significantly decrease wireless performance.

BSSID

SSID Subnet

DHCP Start Address

DHCP End Address

SSID Subnet Mask

LAN IP Address

### Security Level

No Security
More Secure (Recommended)

Security Mode

Generate password automatically

Enter 8-63 ASCII characters or 64 hexadecimal digits ("0-9", "A-F").

Password

Strength  weak

Encryption

Timer  sec

Cancel
OK

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 35 Network Setting > Wireless > Guest/More AP > Edit




LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Wireless Network Setup	
Wireless	Click this switch to enable or disable WiFi in this field. When the switch turns blue  , the function is enabled; otherwise, it is not.
Security Level	
Wireless Network Name	The SSID (Service Set IDentity) identifies the service set with which a wireless device is associated. Wireless devices associating to the access point (AP) must have the same SSID. Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 English keyboard characters) for WiFi.
Hide SSID	Select this check box to hide the SSID in the outgoing beacon frame so a station cannot obtain the SSID through scanning using a site survey tool.
Guest WLAN	Select this to create Guest WiFi's for home and external clients. Select the WiFi type in the <b>Access Scenario</b> field.
Access Scenario	If you select <b>Home Guest</b> , clients can connect to each other directly. If you select <b>External Guest</b> , clients are blocked from connecting to each other directly.
Max. Upstream Bandwidth	Specify the maximum rate for upstream wireless traffic to the WAN from this wireless LAN in kilobits per second (Kbps).
Max. Downstream Bandwidth	Specify the maximum rate for downstream wireless traffic to this wireless LAN from the WAN in kilobits per second (Kbps).
BSSID	This shows the MAC address of the wireless interface on the Zyxel Device when WiFi is enabled.
SSID Subnet	Click on this switch to <b>Enable</b> this function if you want the wireless network interface to assign DHCP IP addresses to the associated wireless clients.  This option cannot be used if the WPS function is enabled in the <b>Network Setting &gt; Wireless &gt; WPS</b> screen or if the <b>Keep the same settings for 2.4G and 5G wireless networks</b> check box is selected in <b>Network Setting &gt; Wireless &gt; General</b> .
DHCP Start Address	Specify the first of the contiguous addresses in the DHCP IP address pool.  The Zyxel Device assigns IP addresses from this DHCP pool to wireless clients connecting to the SSID.
DHCP End Address	Specify the last of the contiguous addresses in the DHCP IP address pool.
SSID Subnet Mask	Specify the subnet mask of the Zyxel Device for the SSID subnet.
LAN IP Address	Specify the IP address of the Zyxel Device for the SSID subnet.
Security Level	Select <b>More Secure (Recommended)</b> to add security on this wireless network. The wireless clients which want to associate to this network must have the same wireless security settings as the Zyxel Device. After you select to use a security, additional options appears in this screen.  Or you can select <b>No Security</b> to allow any client to associate this network without any data encryption or authentication.  <a href="#">See Section 7.2.1 on page 153</a> for more details about this field.
Security Mode	Select <b>WPA2-PSK</b> from the drop-down list box.
Generate password automatically	Select this option to have the Zyxel Device automatically generate a password. The password field will not be configurable when you select this option.

Table 35 Network Setting &gt; Wireless &gt; Guest/More AP &gt; Edit (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Password	WPA2-PSK uses a simple common password, instead of user-specific credentials.  If you did not select <b>Generate password automatically</b> , you can manually type a pre-shared key from 8 to 64 case-sensitive keyboard characters.  Click the Eye icon to show or hide the password of your wireless network. When the Eye icon is slashed  , you'll see the password in plain text. Otherwise, it is hidden.
	Click this  to show more fields in this section. Click again to hide them.
Encryption	This field shows the <b>AES</b> type of data encryption.
Timer	The <b>Timer</b> is the rate at which the RADIUS server sends a new group key out to all clients.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to exit this screen without saving any changes.
OK	Click <b>OK</b> to save your changes.

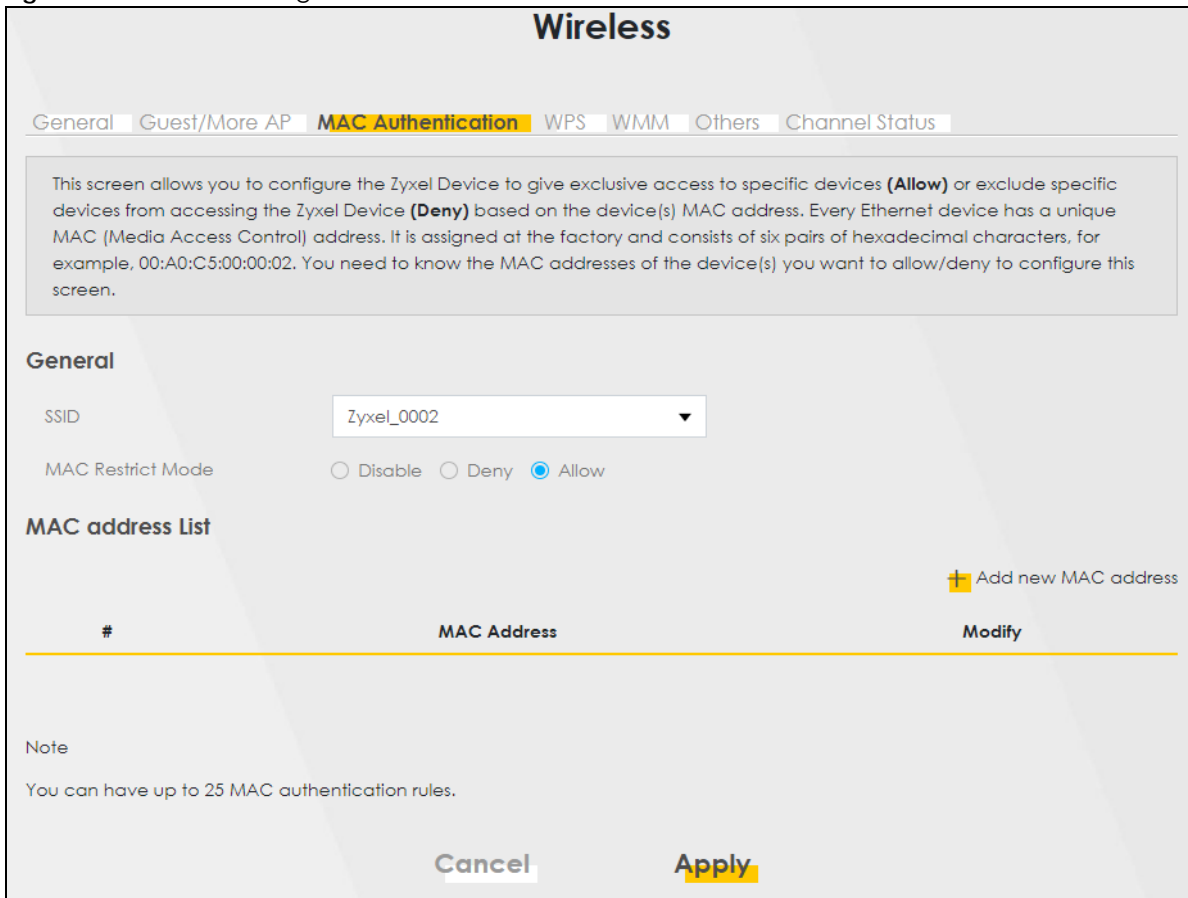
## 7.4 MAC Authentication

Use this screen to give exclusive access to specific devices (**Allow**) or exclude specific devices from accessing the Zyxel Device (**Deny**), based on the MAC address of each device. Every Ethernet device has a unique MAC (Media Access Control) address. It is assigned at the factory and consists of six pairs of hexadecimal characters; for example, 00:A0:C5:00:00:02. You need to know the MAC addresses of the device(s) you want to allow/deny to configure this screen.

Note: You can have up to 25 MAC authentication rules.

Use this screen to view your Zyxel Device's MAC filter settings and add new MAC filter rules. Click **Network Setting > Wireless > MAC Authentication**. The screen appears as shown.

**Figure 84** Network Setting> Wireless > MAC Authentication



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 36** Network Setting > Wireless > MAC Authentication

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
General	
SSID	Select the SSID for which you want to configure MAC filter settings.
MAC Restrict Mode	Define the filter action for the list of MAC addresses in the <b>MAC Address</b> table. Select <b>Disable</b> to turn off MAC filtering. Select <b>Deny</b> to block access to the Zyxel Device. MAC addresses not listed will be allowed to access the Zyxel Device. Select <b>Allow</b> to permit access to the Zyxel Device. MAC addresses not listed will be denied access to the Zyxel Device.
MAC Address List	
Add New MAC Address	This field is available when you select <b>Deny</b> or <b>Allow</b> in the <b>MAC Restrict Mode</b> field. Click this if you want to add a new MAC address entry to the MAC filter list below.
#	This is the index number of the entry.
MAC Address	This is the MAC addresses of the wireless devices that are allowed or denied access to the Zyxel Device.



Table 36 Network Setting &gt; Wireless &gt; MAC Authentication (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Modify	Click the <b>Edit</b> icon and type the MAC address of the peer device in a valid MAC address format (six hexadecimal character pairs, for example 12:34:56:78:9a:bc). Click the <b>Delete</b> icon to delete the entry.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to restore your previously saved settings.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.

## 7.4.1 Add/Edit MAC Addresses

Click **Add new MAC address** in the **Network Setting > Wireless > MAC Authentication** screen to add a new MAC address. You can also click the **Edit** icon next to a MAC authentication rule to edit the rule.

Enter the MAC addresses of the wireless devices that are allowed or denied access to the Zyxel Device in these address fields. Enter the MAC addresses in a valid MAC address format, that is, six hexadecimal character pairs, for example, 12:34:56:78:9a:bc.

Figure 85 Network Setting&gt; Wireless &gt; MAC Authentication &gt; Add/Edit

## 7.5 WPS Settings

WiFi Protected Setup (WPS) allows you to quickly set up a wireless network with strong security, without having to configure security settings manually. Select one of the WPS methods and follow the instructions to establish a WPS connection. Your device must support WPS to use this feature. We recommend using Push Button Configuration (**PBC**) if your device supports it. See [Section 7.10.8.3 on page 179](#) for more information about WPS.

Note: The Zyxel Device applies the security settings of the main SSID (**SSID1**) profile to the WPS wireless connection.

Note: If WPS is enabled, UPnP will automatically be turned on.

Note: The WPS switch is grayed out when WiFi is disabled.

Click **Network Setting > Wireless > WPS**. The following screen displays. Click this switch and makes it turn blue. Click **Apply** to activate the WPS function. Then you can configure the WPS settings in this screen.

Figure 86 Network Setting &gt; Wireless &gt; WPS

## Wireless


General Guest/More AP MAC Authentication WPS WMM Others Channel Status

WiFi Protected Setup (WPS) allows you to quickly set up a wireless network with strong security, without having to configure security settings manually. To set up a WPS connection between two devices, both devices must support WPS. It is recommended to use the Push Button Configuration (PBC) method if your wireless client supports it.

**General**

WPS


**Add a new device with WPS Method**



**Method 1 PBC**

**Step1.** Click WPS button WPS

**Step2.** Press the WPS button on your new wireless client device within 120 seconds




**Method 2 PIN**

**Step1.** Enter the PIN of your new wireless client device and then click Register

Register

**Step2.** Press the WPS button on your new wireless client device within 120 seconds



**Method 3**

**Enter AP's PIN Number in wireless Client**

**Current state** Configured

1Please release configuration if you want to configure the wireless settings

Release Configuration

2Enter current PIN number on your wireless client

Generate New PIN

Note

(1) If WPS is Enabled, UPnP will automatically be turned on.

(2) The Zyxel Device applies the security settings of the main SSID (SSID1) profile.

(3) The WPS switch is grayed out when wireless LAN is disabled.

Cancel Apply

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 37 Network Setting &gt; Wireless &gt; WPS


LABEL	DESCRIPTION
General	
WPS	Click this switch to activate or deactivate WPS on this Zyxel Device. When the switch turns blue  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
Add a new device with WPS Method	
Method 1	Use this section to set up a WPS wireless network using Push Button Configuration (PBC). Click this switch to make it turn blue. Click <b>Apply</b> to activate WPS method 1 on the Zyxel Device.

Table 37 Network Setting &gt; Wireless &gt; WPS (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
WPS	<p>Click this button to add another WPS-enabled wireless device (within wireless range of the Zyxel Device) to your wireless network. This button may either be a physical button on the outside of device, or a menu button similar to the <b>WPS</b> button on this screen.</p> <p>Note: You must press the other wireless device's WPS button within two minutes of pressing this button.</p>
Method 2	<p>Use this section to set up a WPS wireless network by entering the PIN of the client into the Zyxel Device. Click this switch and make it turn blue. Click <b>Apply</b> to activate WPS method 2 on the Zyxel Device.</p>
Register	<p>Enter the PIN of the device that you are setting up a WPS connection with and click <b>Register</b> to authenticate and add the wireless device to your wireless network.</p> <p>You can find the PIN either on the outside of the device, or by checking the device's settings.</p> <p>Note: You must also activate WPS on that device within two minutes to have it present its PIN to the Zyxel Device.</p>
Method 3	<p>Use this section to set up a WPS wireless network by entering the PIN of the Zyxel Device into the client. Click this switch and make it turn blue. Click <b>Apply</b> to activate WPS method 3 on the Zyxel Device.</p>
Release Configuration	<p>The default WPS status is configured.</p> <p>Click this button to remove all configured wireless and wireless security settings for WPS connections on the Zyxel Device.</p>
Generate New PIN	<p>If this method has been enabled, the PIN (Personal Identification Number) of the Zyxel Device is shown here. Enter this PIN in the configuration utility of the device you want to connect to using WPS.</p> <p>The PIN is not necessary when you use the WPS push-button method.</p> <p>Click the <b>Generate New PIN</b> button to have the Zyxel Device create a new PIN.</p>
Cancel	<p>Click <b>Cancel</b> to restore your previously saved settings.</p>
Apply	<p>Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.</p>

## 7.6 WMM Settings

Use this screen to enable WiFi MultiMedia (**WMM**) and **WMM Automatic Power Save (APSD)** in wireless networks for multimedia applications. **WMM** enhances data transmission quality, while **APSD** improves power management of wireless clients. This allows delay-sensitive applications, such as voice and video, to run more smoothly.

Click **Network Setting > Wireless > WMM** to display the following screen.

Figure 87 Network Setting &gt; Wireless &gt; WMM

## Wireless

[General](#) | [Guest/More AP](#) | [MAC Authentication](#) | [WPS](#) | **WMM** | [Others](#) | [Channel Status](#)

Use this screen to enable Wi-Fi MultiMedia (WMM) and WMM Automatic Power Save (APSD) in wireless networks for multimedia applications. WMM enhances data transmission quality, while APSD improves power management of wireless clients. This allows delay-sensitive applications, such as voice and videos, to run more smoothly.

WMM of SSID1

WMM of SSID2

WMM of SSID3

WMM of SSID4

WMM Automatic Power Save Delivery(APSD)

**Note**

(1) WMM cannot be disabled if 802.11 mode includes 802.11n or 802.11ac.

(2) APSD only affects SSID1. (For SSID2~4, APSD are always enabled.)

Cancel Apply

Note: WMM cannot be disabled if 802.11 mode includes 802.11n or 802.11ac.

Note: APSD only affects SSID1. For SSID2-SSID4, APSD is always enabled.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 38 Network Setting &gt; Wireless &gt; WMM

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
WMM of SSID1~4	Select <b>On</b> to have the Zyxel Device automatically give the wireless network (SSIDx) a priority level according to the ToS value in the IP header of packets it sends. WMM QoS (WiFi MultiMedia Quality of Service) gives high priority to voice and video, which makes them run more smoothly.  If the <b>802.11 Mode</b> in <b>Network Setting &gt; Wireless &gt; Others</b> is set to include 802.11n or 802.11ac, WMM cannot be disabled.
WMM Automatic Power Save Delivery (APSD)	Select this option to extend the battery life of your mobile devices (especially useful for small devices that are running multimedia applications). The Zyxel Device goes to sleep mode to save power when it is not transmitting data. The AP buffers the packets sent to the Zyxel Device until the Zyxel Device "wakes up". The Zyxel Device wakes up periodically to check for incoming data.  Note: This works only if the wireless device to which the Zyxel Device is connected also supports this feature. APSD only affects SSID1. For SSID2~4, APSD is always enabled.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to restore your previously saved settings.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.

## 7.7 Others Settings

Use this screen to configure advanced wireless settings, such as additional security settings, power saving, and data transmission settings. Click **Network Setting > Wireless > Others**. The screen appears as shown.

See [Section 7.10.2 on page 173](#) for detailed definitions of the terms listed in this screen.

**Figure 88** Network Setting > Wireless > Others

**Wireless**

General | Guest/More AP | MAC Authentication | WPS | WMM | **Others** | Channel Status

Use this screen to configure advanced wireless settings additional security settings, power saving, and data transmission settings.

RTS/CTS Threshold	2347
Fragmentation Threshold	2346
Output Power	100%
Beacon Interval	100 ms
DTIM Interval	1 ms
802.11 Mode	802.11b/g/n/ax Mixed
802.11 Protection	Auto
Preamble	Long
Protected Management Frames	Capable

Cancel      Apply

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 39** Network Setting > Wireless > Others

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
RTS/CTS Threshold	Data with its frame size larger than this value will perform the RTS (Request To Send)/CTS (Clear To Send) handshake. Enter a value between 0 and 2347.
Fragmentation Threshold	This is the maximum data fragment size that can be sent. Enter a value between 256 and 2346.
Output Power	Set the output power of the Zyxel Device. If there is a high density of APs in an area, decrease the output power to reduce interference with other APs. Select one of the following: <b>20%</b> , <b>40%</b> , <b>60%</b> , <b>80%</b> or <b>100%</b> .

Table 39 Network Setting &gt; Wireless &gt; Others (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Beacon Interval	<p>When a wirelessly networked device sends a beacon, it includes with it a beacon interval. This specifies the time period before the device sends the beacon again.</p> <p>The interval tells receiving devices on the network how long they can wait in low power mode before waking up to handle the beacon. This value can be set from 50 ms to 1000 ms. A high value helps save current consumption of the access point.</p>
DTIM Interval	<p>Delivery Traffic Indication Message (DTIM) is the time period after which broadcast and multicast packets are transmitted to mobile clients in the Power Saving mode. A high DTIM value can cause clients to lose connectivity with the network. This value can be set from 1 to 255.</p>
802.11 Mode	<p>For 2.4 GHz frequency WiFi devices:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select <b>802.11b Only</b> to allow only IEEE 802.11b compliant WiFi devices to associate with the Zyxel Device.</li> <li>• Select <b>802.11g Only</b> to allow only IEEE 802.11g compliant WiFi devices to associate with the Zyxel Device.</li> <li>• Select <b>802.11n Only</b> to allow only IEEE 802.11n compliant WiFi devices to associate with the Zyxel Device.</li> <li>• Select <b>802.11b/g Mixed</b> to allow either IEEE 802.11b or IEEE 802.11g compliant WiFi devices to associate with the Zyxel Device. The transmission rate of your Zyxel Device might be reduced.</li> <li>• Select <b>802.11b/g/n Mixed</b> to allow IEEE 802.11b, IEEE 802.11g or IEEE 802.11n compliant WiFi devices to associate with the Zyxel Device. The transmission rate of your Zyxel Device might be reduced.</li> <li>• Select <b>802.11b/g/n/ax Mixed</b> to allow IEEE 802.11b, IEEE 802.11g, IEEE 802.11n or IEEE 802.11ax compliant WiFi devices to associate with the Zyxel Device. The transmission rate of your Zyxel Device might be reduced.</li> </ul> <p>For 5 GHz frequency WiFi devices:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select <b>802.11a Only</b> to allow only IEEE 802.11a compliant WiFi devices to associate with the Zyxel Device.</li> <li>• Select <b>802.11n Only</b> to allow only IEEE 802.11n compliant WiFi devices to associate with the Zyxel Device.</li> <li>• Select <b>802.11ac Only</b> to allow only IEEE 802.11ac compliant WiFi devices to associate with the Zyxel Device.</li> <li>• Select <b>802.11a/n Mixed</b> to allow either IEEE 802.11a or IEEE 802.11n compliant WiFi devices to associate with the Zyxel Device. The transmission rate of your Zyxel Device might be reduced.</li> <li>• Select <b>802.11n/ac Mixed</b> to allow either IEEE 802.11n or IEEE 802.11ac compliant WiFi devices to associate with the Zyxel Device. The transmission rate of your Zyxel Device might be reduced.</li> <li>• Select <b>802.11a/n/ac Mixed</b> to allow IEEE 802.11a, IEEE 802.11n or IEEE 802.11ac compliant WiFi devices to associate with the Zyxel Device. The transmission rate of your Zyxel Device might be reduced.</li> <li>• Select <b>802.11a/n/ac/ax Mixed</b> to allow IEEE 802.11a, IEEE 802.11n, IEEE 802.11ac or IEEE 802.11ax compliant WiFi devices to associate with the Zyxel Device. The transmission rate of your Zyxel Device might be reduced.</li> </ul>
802.11 Protection	<p>Enabling this feature can help prevent collisions in mixed-mode networks (networks with both IEEE 802.11b and IEEE 802.11g traffic).</p> <p>Select <b>Auto</b> to have the wireless devices transmit data after a RTS/CTS handshake. This helps improve IEEE 802.11g performance.</p> <p>Select <b>Off</b> to disable 802.11 protection. The transmission rate of your Zyxel Device might be reduced in a mixed-mode network.</p> <p>This field displays <b>Off</b> and is not configurable when you set <b>802.11 Mode</b> to <b>802.11b Only</b>.</p>
Preamble	<p>Select a preamble type from the drop-down list box. Choices are <b>Long</b> or <b>Short</b>. See <a href="#">Section 7.10.7 on page 176</a> for more information.</p> <p>This field is configurable only when you set <b>802.11 Mode</b> to <b>802.11b</b> or <b>802.11b/g Mixed</b>.</p>

Table 39 Network Setting &gt; Wireless &gt; Others (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Protected Management Frames	<p>This option is only available when using <b>WPA2-PSK</b> as the <b>Security Mode</b> and <b>AES</b> Encryption in <b>Network Setting &gt; Wireless &gt; General</b>. Management frame protection (MFP) helps prevent wireless DoS attacks.</p> <p>Select <b>Disable</b> if you do not want to use MFP.</p> <p>Select <b>Capable</b> to encrypt management frames of wireless clients that support MFP. Clients that do not support MFP will still be allowed to join the wireless network, but remain unprotected.</p> <p>Select <b>Required</b> to allow only clients that support MFP to join the wireless network.</p>
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to restore your previously saved settings.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.

## 7.8 Channel Status Settings

Use this screen to scan for wireless LAN channel noise and view the results. Click **Scan** to start, and then view the results in the **Channel Scan Result** section.

Note: If the current channel is a DFS channel, the warning 'Channel scan process is denied because current channel is a DFS channel (Channel: 52~140). If you want to run channel scan, please select a non-DFS channel and try again.' appears.

Note: The value on each channel number indicates the number of Access Points (AP) using that channel.

Note: The Auto-channel-selection algorithm does not always directly follow the AP count; other factors about the channels are also considered.

Figure 89 Network Setting &gt; Wireless &gt; Channel Status



## 7.9 The MESH Screen

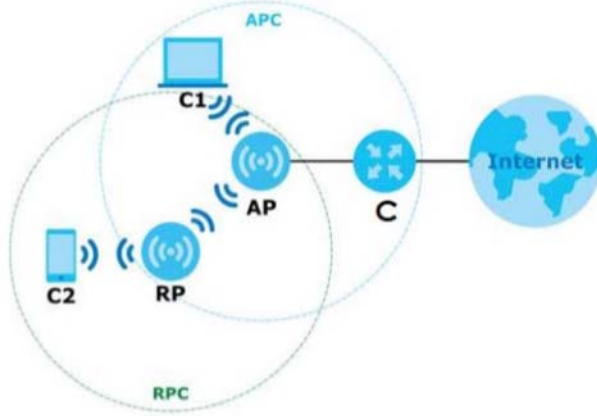
Use this screen to enable or disable MPro Mesh for MPro Mesh-supported devices. MPro Mesh is the Zyxel implantation of WiFi-Alliance Easy Mesh. It supports AP steering, band steering, auto-configuration and other advanced for your wireless network.



To set up a MPro Mesh network, you need a router or an AP that can function as a controller. A controller manages and coordinates WiFi activity in a network.

A controller also manages the SSIDs and passwords on all APs in a network (auto-configuration). For example, if you change the SSID on the controller, all the SSIDs of APs in a network will also change.

**Figure 90** Mesh Application

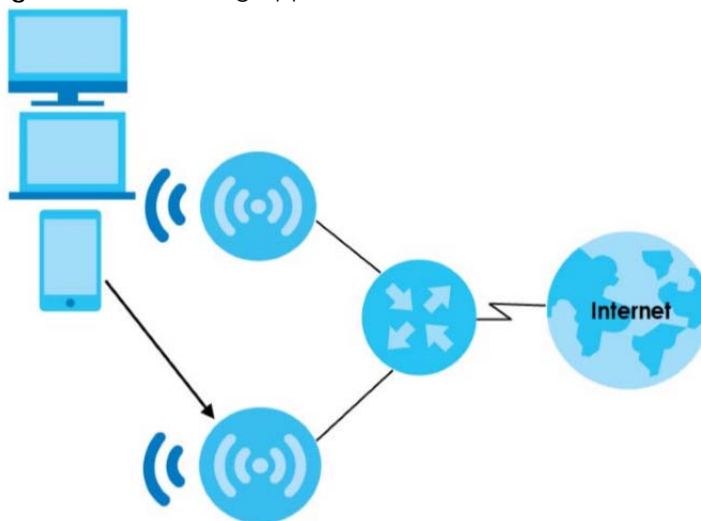


A controller can automatically configure WiFi settings on extenders in the network as well as optimize bandwidth usage. The controller optimizes bandwidth usage by directing wireless clients to an extender (AP steering) or 2.4G/ 5G band (band steering) that is less busy.

## AP Steering

AP steering allows wireless clients to roam seamlessly between Mesh supported devices in your Mesh network by using the same SSID and WiFi password. Also, AP steering helps monitor wireless clients and drop their connections to optimize bandwidth usages when the clients are idle or have a low signal. When a wireless client is dropped, it has the opportunity to reconnect to a Mesh AP supported device with a strong signal.

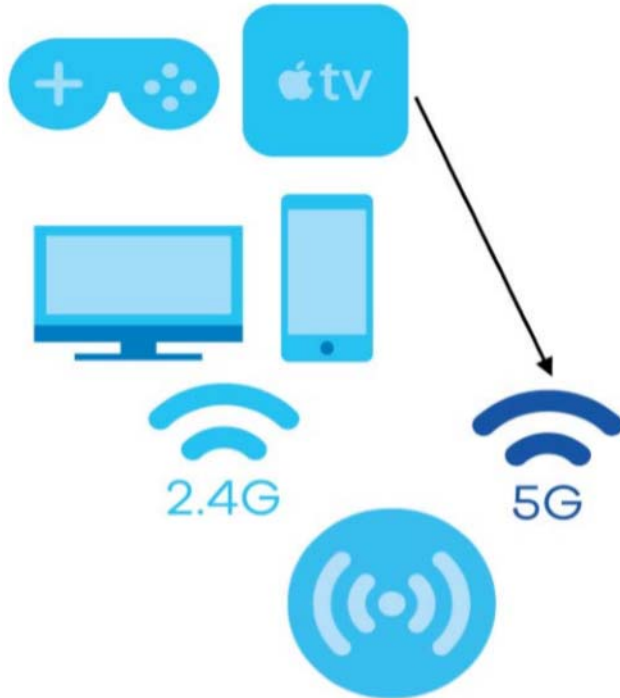
**Figure 91** AP Steering Application



## Band Steering

Band steering allows 2.4GHz/5GHz dual-band wireless clients to move from one band to another. For example, if the 2.4GHz channel is congested, wireless clients that support 5GHz can move to the 5GHz band.

**Figure 92** Band Steering Application



Note: For AP steering and band steering to work, the controller and all the APs in the network need to have the same SSID and password. Therefore, we recommend using the controller to change the SSID and password.

When MPro Mesh is enabled:

- The SSID and WiFi password of the main 2.4 GHz wireless network will be copied to the main 5 GHz wireless network.
- If users change the modes of a MPro Mesh-supported extender, users need to wait until it finishes booting before creating a MPro Mesh network with a controller.

See the steps below on how to set up a MPro Mesh network.

### Configurations on a MPro Mesh-Supported Extender(s)

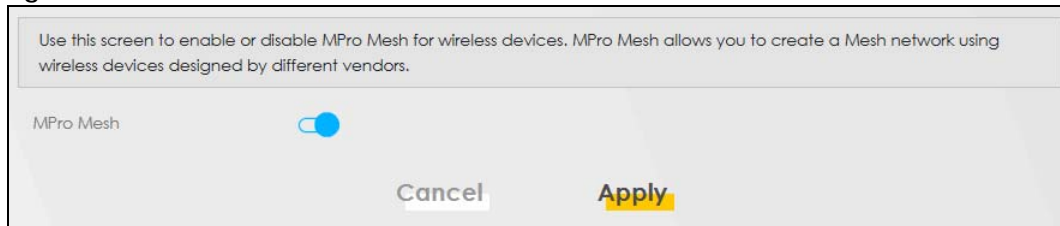
- 1 Prepare a MPro Mesh-supported extender(s) from Zyxel.
- 2 If the MPro Mesh-supported extender is in repeater mode, enable the wireless LAN. See your MPro Mesh-supported extender's UG for how to enable the wireless LAN.
- 3 If the MPro Mesh-supported extender is in AP mode, connect it to the Zyxel Device using an Ethernet cable.

- 4 Turn on the MPro Mesh-supported extender.
- 5 Enable MPro MESH in the Web Configurator. See your MPro Mesh-supported extender's UG for how to enable MPro MESH.

## Configurations on the Zyxel Device

- 1 If the MPro Mesh-supported extender is in repeater mode, enable the WiFi. See [Section 7.2 on page 150](#) or [Section 3.2.3 on page 50](#) for more information on enabling the WiFi.
- 2 Enable MPro MESH in the **Network > Wireless > MESH** screen.
- 3 Press the **WPS** button for more than five seconds on the Zyxel Device.  
Or  
Click **Add Extender** in the MPro Mesh App. Install from Google Play or the Apple App store.
- 4 Click **Network > Wireless > MESH**. The following screen displays.

**Figure 93** Network > Wireless > MESH



## 7.10 Technical Reference

This section discusses WiFi in depth. For more information, see [Appendix B on page 288](#).

### 7.10.1 Wireless Network Overview

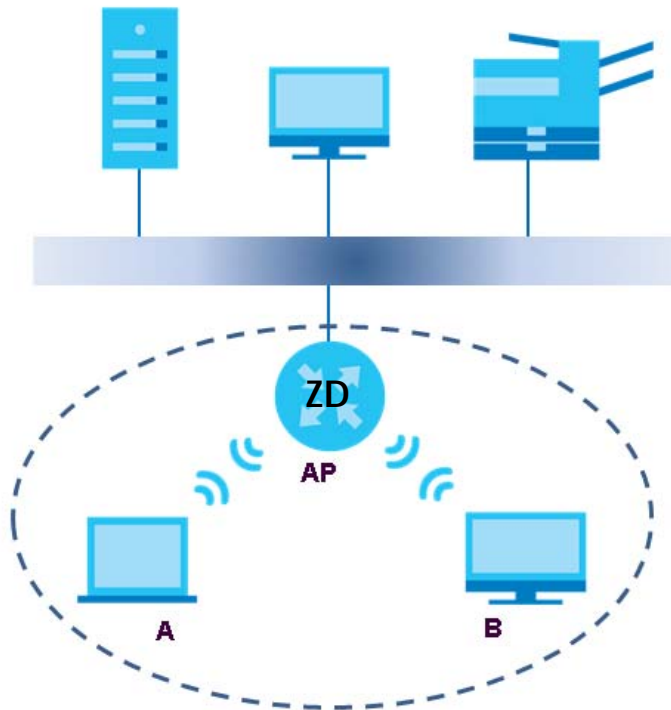
Wireless networks consist of wireless clients, access points and bridges.

- A wireless client is a radio connected to a user's computer.
- An access point is a radio with a wired connection to a network, which can connect with numerous wireless clients and let them access the network.
- A bridge is a radio that relays communications between access points and wireless clients, extending a network's range.

Traditionally, a wireless network operates in one of two ways.

- An "infrastructure" type of network has one or more access points and one or more wireless clients. The wireless clients connect to the access points.
- An "ad-hoc" type of network is one in which there is no access point. Wireless clients connect to one another in order to exchange information.

The following figure provides an example of a wireless network.

**Figure 94** Example of a Wireless Network

The wireless network is the part in the blue circle. In this wireless network, devices **A** and **B** use the access point (**AP**) to interact with the other devices (such as the printer) or with the Internet. Your Zyxel Device is the AP.

Every wireless network must follow these basic guidelines.

- Every device in the same wireless network must use the same SSID.  
The SSID is the name of the wireless network. It stands for Service Set Identifier.
- If two wireless networks overlap, they should use a different channel.  
Like radio stations or television channels, each wireless network uses a specific channel, or frequency, to send and receive information.
- Every device in the same wireless network must use security compatible with the AP.  
Security stops unauthorized devices from using the wireless network. It can also protect the information that is sent in the wireless network.

## Radio Channels

In the radio spectrum, there are certain frequency bands allocated for unlicensed, civilian use. For the purposes of wireless networking, these bands are divided into numerous channels. This allows a variety of networks to exist in the same place without interfering with one another. When you create a network, you must select a channel to use.

Since the available unlicensed spectrum varies from one country to another, the number of available channels also varies.

## 7.10.2 Additional Wireless Terms

The following table describes some wireless network terms and acronyms used in the Zyxel Device's Web Configurator.

Table 40 Additional Wireless Terms

TERM	DESCRIPTION
RTS/CTS Threshold	<p>In a wireless network which covers a large area, wireless devices are sometimes not aware of each other's presence. This may cause them to send information to the AP at the same time and result in information colliding and not getting through.</p> <p>By setting this value lower than the default value, the wireless devices must sometimes get permission to send information to the Zyxel Device. The lower the value, the more often the devices must get permission.</p> <p>If this value is greater than the fragmentation threshold value (see below), then wireless devices never have to get permission to send information to the Zyxel Device.</p>
Preamble	A preamble affects the timing in your wireless network. There are two preamble modes: long and short. If a device uses a different preamble mode than the Zyxel Device does, it cannot communicate with the Zyxel Device.
Authentication	The process of verifying whether a wireless device is allowed to use the wireless network.
Fragmentation Threshold	A small fragmentation threshold is recommended for busy networks, while a larger threshold provides faster performance if the network is not very busy.

## 7.10.3 Wireless Security Overview

By their nature, radio communications are simple to intercept. For wireless data networks, this means that anyone within range of a wireless network without security can not only read the data passing over the airwaves, but also join the network. Once an unauthorized person has access to the network, he or she can steal information or introduce malware (malicious software) intended to compromise the network. For these reasons, a variety of security systems have been developed to ensure that only authorized people can use a wireless data network, or understand the data carried on it.

These security standards do two things. First, they authenticate. This means that only people presenting the right credentials (often a username and password, or a "key" phrase) can access the network. Second, they encrypt. This means that the information sent over the air is encoded. Only people with the code key can understand the information, and only people who have been authenticated are given the code key.

These security standards vary in effectiveness. Some can be broken, such as the old Wired Equivalent Protocol (WEP). Using WEP is better than using no security at all, but it will not keep a determined attacker out. Other security standards are secure in themselves but can be broken if a user does not use them properly. For example, the WPA-PSK security standard is very secure if you use a long key which is difficult for an attacker's software to guess - for example, a twenty-letter long string of apparently random numbers and letters - but it is not very secure if you use a short key which is very easy to guess - for example, a three-letter word from the dictionary.

Because of the damage that can be done by a malicious attacker, it's not just people who have sensitive information on their network who should use security. Everybody who uses any wireless network should ensure that effective security is in place.

A good way to come up with effective security keys, passwords and so on is to use obscure information that you personally will easily remember, and to enter it in a way that appears random and does not include real words. For example, if your mother owns a 1970 Dodge Challenger and her favorite movie is

Vanishing Point (which you know was made in 1971) you could use "70dodchal71vanpoi" as your security key.

The following sections introduce different types of wireless security you can set up in the wireless network.

### 7.10.3.1 SSID

Normally, the Zyxel Device acts like a beacon and regularly broadcasts the SSID in the area. You can hide the SSID instead, in which case the Zyxel Device does not broadcast the SSID. In addition, you should change the default SSID to something that is difficult to guess.

This type of security is fairly weak, however, because there are ways for unauthorized wireless devices to get the SSID. In addition, unauthorized wireless devices can still see the information that is sent in the wireless network.

### 7.10.3.2 MAC Address Filter

Every device that can use a wireless network has a unique identification number, called a MAC address.<sup>1</sup> A MAC address is usually written using twelve hexadecimal characters<sup>2</sup>; for example, 00A0C5000002 or 00:A0:C5:00:00:02. To get the MAC address for each device in the wireless network, see the device's User's Guide or other documentation.

You can use the MAC address filter to tell the Zyxel Device which devices are allowed or not allowed to use the wireless network. If a device is allowed to use the wireless network, it still has to have the correct information (SSID, channel, and security). If a device is not allowed to use the wireless network, it does not matter if it has the correct information.

This type of security does not protect the information that is sent in the wireless network. Furthermore, there are ways for unauthorized wireless devices to get the MAC address of an authorized device. Then, they can use that MAC address to use the wireless network.

### 7.10.3.3 User Authentication

Authentication is the process of verifying whether a wireless device is allowed to use the wireless network. You can make every user log in to the wireless network before using it. However, every device in the wireless network has to support IEEE 802.1x to do this.

For wireless networks, you can store the user names and passwords for each user in a RADIUS server. This is a server used in businesses more than in homes. If you do not have a RADIUS server, you cannot set up user names and passwords for your users.

Unauthorized wireless devices can still see the information that is sent in the wireless network, even if they cannot use the wireless network. Furthermore, there are ways for unauthorized wireless users to get a valid user name and password. Then, they can use that user name and password to use the wireless network.

- 
1. Some wireless devices, such as scanners, can detect wireless networks but cannot use wireless networks. These kinds of wireless devices might not have MAC addresses.
  2. Hexadecimal characters are 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, A, B, C, D, E, and F.

### 7.10.3.4 Encryption

Wireless networks can use encryption to protect the information that is sent in the wireless network. Encryption is like a secret code. If you do not know the secret code, you cannot understand the message.

Many types of encryption use a key to protect the information in the wireless network. The longer the key, the stronger the encryption. Every device in the wireless network must have the same key.

### 7.10.4 Signal Problems

Because wireless networks are radio networks, their signals are subject to limitations of distance, interference and absorption.

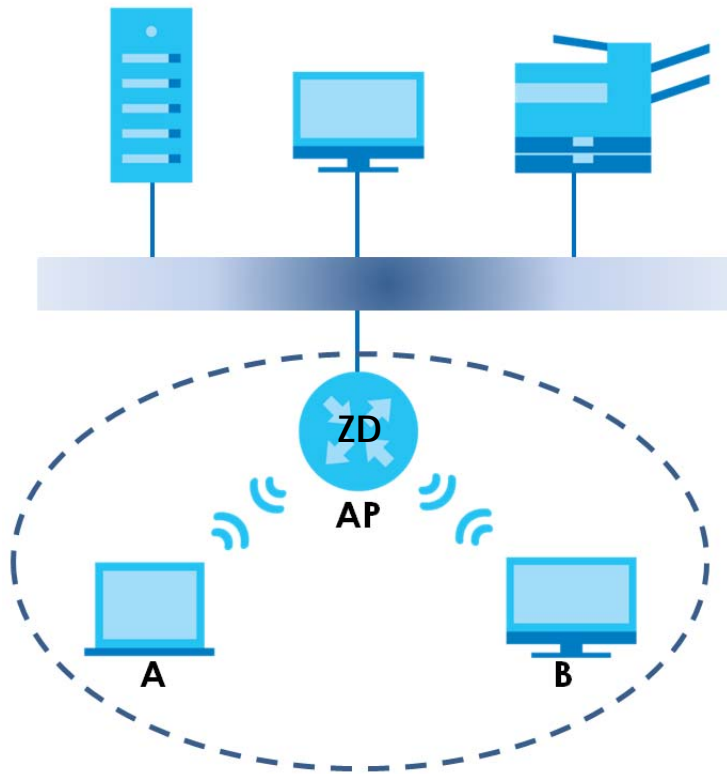
Problems with distance occur when the two radios are too far apart. Problems with interference occur when other radio waves interrupt the data signal. Interference may come from other radio transmissions, such as military or air traffic control communications, or from machines that are coincidental emitters such as electric motors or microwaves. Problems with absorption occur when physical objects (such as thick walls) are between the two radios, muffling the signal.

### 7.10.5 BSS

A Basic Service Set (BSS) exists when all communications between wireless stations or between a wireless station and a wired network client go through one access point (AP).

Intra-BSS traffic is traffic between wireless stations in the BSS. When Intra-BSS traffic blocking is disabled, wireless station A and B can access the wired network and communicate with each other. When Intra-BSS traffic blocking is enabled, wireless station A and B can still access the wired network but cannot communicate with each other.

Figure 95 Basic Service Set



## 7.10.6 MBSSID

Traditionally, you need to use different APs to configure different Basic Service Sets (BSSs). As well as the cost of buying extra APs, there is also the possibility of channel interference. The Zyxel Device's MBSSID (Multiple Basic Service Set Identifier) function allows you to use one access point to provide several BSSs simultaneously. You can then assign varying QoS priorities and/or security modes to different SSIDs.

Wireless devices can use different BSSIDs to associate with the same AP.

### 7.10.6.1 Notes on Multiple BSSs

- A maximum of eight BSSs are allowed on one AP simultaneously.
- You must use different keys for different BSSs. If two wireless devices have different BSSIDs (they are in different BSSs), but have the same keys, they may hear each other's communications (but not communicate with each other).
- MBSSID should not replace but rather be used in conjunction with 802.1x security.

## 7.10.7 Preamble Type

Preamble is used to signal that data is coming to the receiver. Short and long refer to the length of the synchronization field in a packet.

Short preamble increases performance as less time sending preamble means more time for sending data. All IEEE 802.11 compliant wireless adapters support long preamble, but not all support short preamble.



Use long preamble if you are unsure what preamble mode other wireless devices on the network support, and to provide more reliable communications in busy wireless networks.

Use short preamble if you are sure all wireless devices on the network support it, and to provide more efficient communications.

Use the dynamic setting to automatically use short preamble when all wireless devices on the network support it, otherwise the Zyxel Device uses long preamble.

Note: The wireless devices MUST use the same preamble mode in order to communicate.

## 7.10.8 WiFi Protected Setup (WPS)

Your Zyxel Device supports WiFi Protected Setup (WPS), which is an easy way to set up a secure wireless network. WPS is an industry standard specification, defined by the WiFi Alliance.

WPS allows you to quickly set up a wireless network with strong security, without having to configure security settings manually. Each WPS connection works between two devices. Both devices must support WPS (check each device's documentation to make sure).

Depending on the devices you have, you can either press a button (on the device itself, or in its configuration utility) or enter a PIN (a unique Personal Identification Number that allows one device to authenticate the other) in each of the two devices. When WPS is activated on a device, it has two minutes to find another device that also has WPS activated. Then, the two devices connect and set up a secure network by themselves.

### 7.10.8.1 Push Button Configuration

WPS Push Button Configuration (PBC) is initiated by pressing a button on each WPS-enabled device, and allowing them to connect automatically. You do not need to enter any information.

Not every WPS-enabled device has a physical WPS button. Some may have a WPS PBC button in their configuration utilities instead of or in addition to the physical button.

Take the following steps to set up WPS using the button.

- 1 Ensure that the two devices you want to set up are within wireless range of one another.
- 2 Look for a WPS button on each device. If the device does not have one, log into its configuration utility and locate the button (see the device's User's Guide for how to do this - for the Zyxel Device, see [Section 7.6 on page 163](#)).
- 3 Press the button on one of the devices (it doesn't matter which). For the Zyxel Device you must press the WPS button for more than five seconds.
- 4 Within two minutes, press the button on the other device. The registrar sends the network name (SSID) and security key through a secure connection to the enrollee.

If you need to make sure that WPS worked, check the list of associated wireless clients in the AP's configuration utility. If you see the wireless client in the list, WPS was successful.

### 7.10.8.2 PIN Configuration

Each WPS-enabled device has its own PIN (Personal Identification Number). This may either be static (it cannot be changed) or dynamic (in some devices you can generate a new PIN by clicking on a button in the configuration interface).

Use the PIN method instead of the push-button configuration (PBC) method if you want to ensure that the connection is established between the devices you specify, not just the first two devices to activate WPS in range of each other. However, you need to log into the configuration interfaces of both devices to use the PIN method.

When you use the PIN method, you must enter the PIN from one device (usually the wireless client) into the second device (usually the Access Point or wireless router). Then, when WPS is activated on the first device, it presents its PIN to the second device. If the PIN matches, one device sends the network and security information to the other, allowing it to join the network.

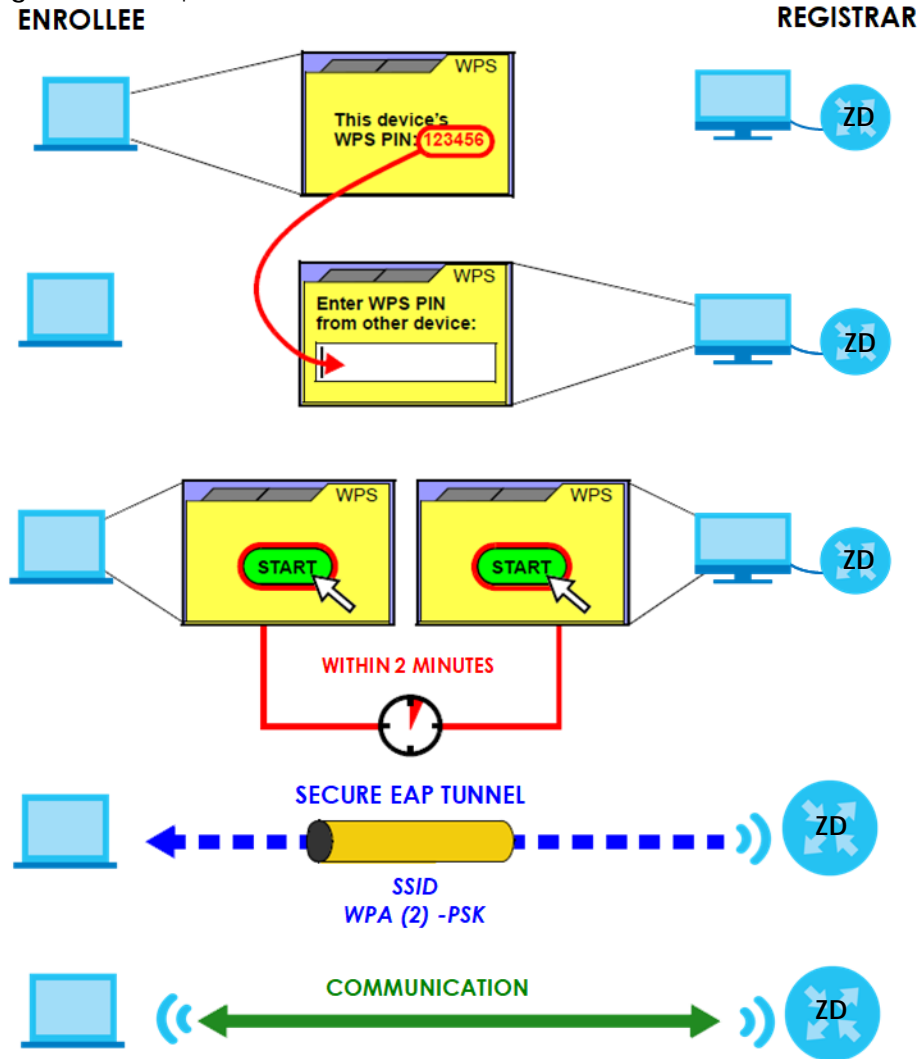
Take the following steps to set up a WPS connection between an access point or wireless router (referred to here as the AP) and a client device using the PIN method.

- 1 Ensure WPS is enabled on both devices.
- 2 Access the WPS section of the AP's configuration interface. See the device's User's Guide for how to do this.
- 3 Look for the client's WPS PIN; it will be displayed either on the device, or in the WPS section of the client's configuration interface (see the device's User's Guide for how to find the WPS PIN - for the Zyxel Device, see [Section 7.5 on page 161](#)).
- 4 Enter the client's PIN in the AP's configuration interface.
- 5 If the client device's configuration interface has an area for entering another device's PIN, you can either enter the client's PIN in the AP, or enter the AP's PIN in the client - it does not matter which.
- 6 Start WPS on both devices within two minutes.
- 7 Use the configuration utility to activate WPS, not the push-button on the device itself.
- 8 On a computer connected to the wireless client, try to connect to the Internet. If you can connect, WPS was successful.

If you cannot connect, check the list of associated wireless clients in the AP's configuration utility. If you see the wireless client in the list, WPS was successful.

The following figure shows a WPS-enabled wireless client (installed in a notebook computer) connecting to the WPS-enabled AP via the PIN method.

Figure 96 Example WPS Process: PIN Method

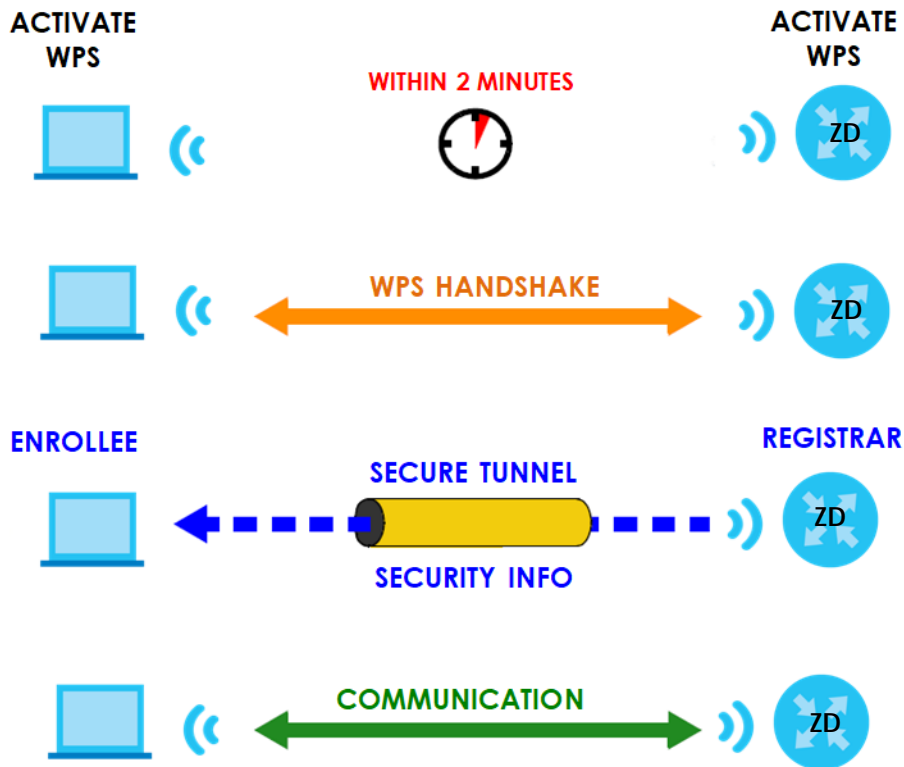


### 7.10.8.3 How WPS Works

When two WPS-enabled devices connect, each device must assume a specific role. One device acts as the registrar (the device that supplies network and security settings) and the other device acts as the enrollee (the device that receives network and security settings). The registrar creates a secure EAP (Extensible Authentication Protocol) tunnel and sends the network name (SSID) and the WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK pre-shared key to the enrollee. Whether WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK is used depends on the standards supported by the devices. If the registrar is already part of a network, it sends the existing information. If not, it generates the SSID and WPA2-PSK randomly.

The following figure shows a WPS-enabled client (installed in a notebook computer) connecting to a WPS-enabled access point.

Figure 97 How WPS Works



The roles of registrar and enrollee last only as long as the WPS setup process is active (two minutes). The next time you use WPS, a different device can be the registrar if necessary.

The WPS connection process is like a handshake; only two devices participate in each WPS transaction. If you want to add more devices you should repeat the process with one of the existing networked devices and the new device.

Note that the access point (AP) is not always the registrar, and the wireless client is not always the enrollee. All WPS-certified APs can be a registrar, and so can some WPS-enabled wireless clients.

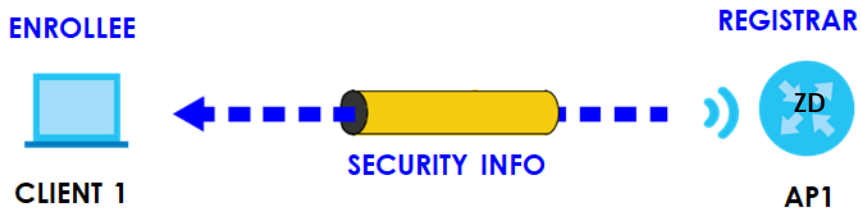
By default, a WPS device is "unconfigured". This means that it is not part of an existing network and can act as either enrollee or registrar (if it supports both functions). If the registrar is unconfigured, the security settings it transmits to the enrollee are randomly-generated. Once a WPS-enabled device has connected to another device using WPS, it becomes "configured". A configured wireless client can still act as enrollee or registrar in subsequent WPS connections, but a configured access point can no longer act as enrollee. It will be the registrar in all subsequent WPS connections in which it is involved. If you want a configured AP to act as an enrollee, you must reset it to its factory defaults.

#### 7.10.8.4 Example WPS Network Setup

This section shows how security settings are distributed in an example WPS setup.

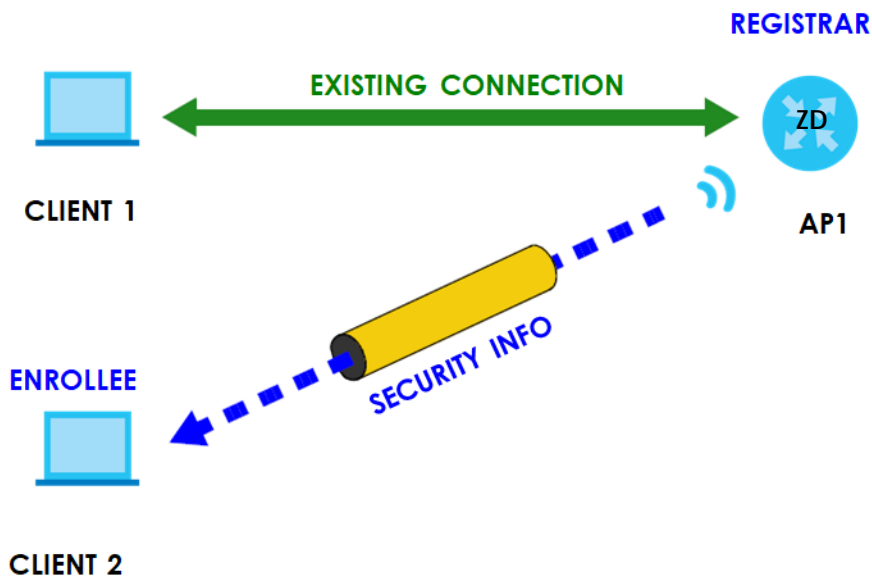
The following figure shows an example network. In step 1, both **AP1** and **Client 1** are unconfigured. When WPS is activated on both, they perform the handshake. In this example, **AP1** is the registrar, and **Client 1** is the enrollee. The registrar randomly generates the security information to set up the network, since it is unconfigured and has no existing information.

Figure 98 WPS: Example Network Step 1



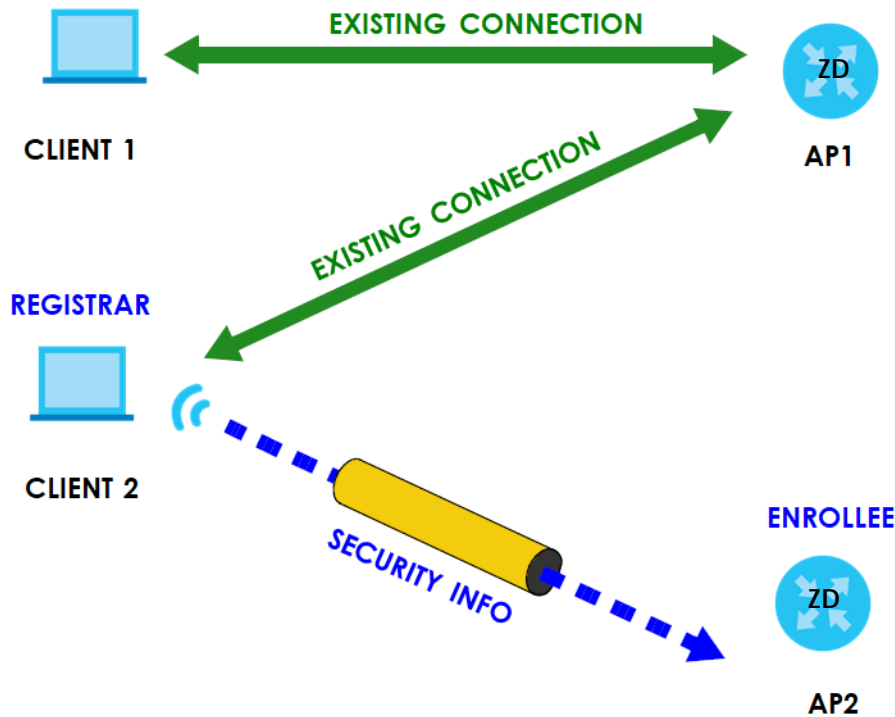
In step 2, you add another wireless client to the network. You know that **Client 1** supports registrar mode, but it is better to use **AP1** for the WPS handshake with the new client since you must connect to the access point anyway in order to use the network. In this case, **AP1** must be the registrar, since it is configured (it already has security information for the network). **AP1** supplies the existing security information to **Client 2**.

Figure 99 WPS: Example Network Step 2



In step 3, you add another access point (**AP2**) to your network. **AP2** is out of range of **AP1**, so you cannot use **AP1** for the WPS handshake with the new access point. However, you know that **Client 2** supports the registrar function, so you use it to perform the WPS handshake instead.

Figure 100 WPS: Example Network Step 3



### 7.10.8.5 Limitations of WPS

WPS has some limitations of which you should be aware.

- WPS works in Infrastructure networks only (where an AP and a wireless client communicate). It does not work in Ad-Hoc networks (where there is no AP).
- When you use WPS, it works between two devices only. You cannot enroll multiple devices simultaneously, you must enroll one after the other.

For instance, if you have two enrollees and one registrar you must set up the first enrollee (by pressing the WPS button on the registrar and the first enrollee, for example), then check that it successfully enrolled, then set up the second device in the same way.

- WPS works only with other WPS-enabled devices. However, you can still add non-WPS devices to a network you already set up using WPS.

WPS works by automatically issuing a randomly-generated WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK pre-shared key from the registrar device to the enrollee devices. Whether the network uses WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK depends on the device. You can check the configuration interface of the registrar device to discover the key the network is using (if the device supports this feature). Then, you can enter the key into the non-WPS device and join the network as normal (the non-WPS device must also support WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK).

- When you use the PBC method, there is a short period (from the moment you press the button on one device to the moment you press the button on the other device) when any WPS-enabled device could join the network. This is because the registrar has no way of identifying the “correct” enrollee, and cannot differentiate between your enrollee and a rogue device. This is a possible way for a hacker to gain access to a network.

You can easily check to see if this has happened. WPS works between only two devices simultaneously, so if another device has enrolled your device will be unable to enroll, and will not have access to the network. If this happens, open the access point's configuration interface and look at the list of associated clients (usually displayed by MAC address). It does not matter if the access

point is the WPS registrar, the enrollee, or was not involved in the WPS handshake; a rogue device must still associate with the access point to gain access to the network. Check the MAC addresses of your wireless clients (usually printed on a label on the bottom of the device). If there is an unknown MAC address you can remove it or reset the AP.

# CHAPTER 8

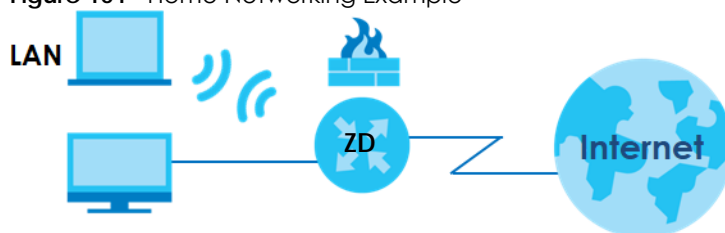
## Home Networking

### 8.1 Home Networking Overview

A Local Area Network (LAN) is a shared communication system to which many networking devices are connected. It is usually located in one immediate area such as a building or floor of a building.

Use the LAN screens to help you configure a LAN DHCP server and manage IP addresses.

Figure 101 Home Networking Example



#### 8.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- Use the **LAN Setup** screen to set the LAN IP address, subnet mask, and DHCP settings of your Zyxel Device ([Section 8.2 on page 186](#)).
- Use the **Static DHCP** screen to assign IP addresses on the LAN to specific individual computers based on their MAC addresses ([Section 8.3 on page 191](#)).
- Use the **UPnP** screen to enable UPnP and UPnP NAT traversal on the Zyxel Device ([Section 8.4 on page 193](#)).
- Use the **Additional Subnet** screen to configure IP alias and public static IP ([Section 8.5 on page 199](#)).
- Use the **STB Vendor ID** screen to configure the Vendor IDs of the connected Set Top Box (STB) devices, which have the Zyxel Device automatically create static DHCP entries for the STB devices when they request IP addresses ([Section 8.6 on page 200](#)).
- Use the **Wake on LAN** screen to remotely turn on a device on the network. ([Section 8.7 on page 201](#)).
- Use the **TFTP Server Name** screen to identify a TFTP server for configuration file download using DHCP option 66. ([Section 8.8 on page 202](#)).

#### 8.1.2 What You Need To Know

##### 8.1.2.1 About LAN

###### IP Address

IP addresses identify individual devices on a network. Every networking device (including computers, servers, routers, printers, and so on) needs an IP address to communicate across the network. These networking devices are also known as hosts.



## Subnet Mask

Subnet masks determine the maximum number of possible hosts on a network. You can also use subnet masks to divide one network into multiple sub-networks.

## DHCP

A DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) server can assign your Zyxel Device an IP address, subnet mask, DNS and other routing information when it is turned on.

## DNS

DNS (Domain Name System) is for mapping a domain name to its corresponding IP address and vice versa. The DNS server is extremely important because without it, you must know the IP address of a networking device before you can access it.

## RADVD (Router Advertisement Daemon)

When an IPv6 host sends a Router Solicitation (RS) request to discover the available routers, RADVD with Router Advertisement (RA) messages in response to the request. It specifies the minimum and maximum intervals of RA broadcasts. RA messages containing the address prefix. IPv6 hosts can be generated with the IPv6 prefix an IPv6 address.

### 8.1.2.2 About UPnP

#### Identifying UPnP Devices

UPnP hardware is identified as an icon in the Network Connections folder (Windows 10). Each UPnP compatible device installed on your network will appear as a separate icon. Selecting the icon of a UPnP device will allow you to access the information and properties of that device.

#### NAT Traversal

UPnP NAT traversal automates the process of allowing an application to operate through NAT. UPnP network devices can automatically configure network addressing, announce their presence in the network to other UPnP devices and enable exchange of simple product and service descriptions. NAT traversal allows the following:

- Dynamic port mapping
- Learning public IP addresses
- Assigning lease times to mappings

Windows Messenger is an example of an application that supports NAT traversal and UPnP.

See the [Chapter 11 on page 235](#) for more information on NAT.

#### Cautions with UPnP

The automated nature of NAT traversal applications in establishing their own services and opening firewall ports may present network security issues. Network information and configuration may also be obtained and modified by users in some network environments.

When a UPnP device joins a network, it announces its presence with a multicast message. For security reasons, the Zyxel Device allows multicast messages on the LAN only.

All UPnP-enabled devices may communicate freely with each other without additional configuration. Disable UPnP if this is not your intention.

## UPnP and Zyxel

Zyxel has achieved UPnP certification from the Universal Plug and Play Forum UPnP™ Implementers Corp. (UIC). Zyxel's UPnP implementation supports Internet Gateway Device (IGD) 1.0.

See [Section 8.4.1 on page 195](#) for examples of installing and using UPnP.

## Finding Out More

See [Section 8.9 on page 203](#) for technical background information on LANs.

### 8.1.3 Before You Begin

Find out the MAC addresses of your network devices if you intend to add them to the DHCP Client List screen.

## 8.2 LAN Setup

Use this screen to set the IP address and subnet mask of your Zyxel Device. Configure DHCP settings to have the Zyxel Device or a DHCP server assign IP addresses to devices. Click **Network Setting > Home Networking** to open the **LAN Setup** screen.

Follow these steps to configure your LAN settings.

- 1 Enter an IP address into the **IP Address** field. The IP address must be in dotted decimal notation. This will become the IP address of your Zyxel Device.
- 2 Enter the IP subnet mask into the **IP Subnet Mask** field. Unless instructed otherwise it is best to leave this alone, the configurator will automatically compute a subnet mask based upon the IP address you entered.

- 3 Click **Apply** to save your settings.

Figure 102 Network Setting > Home Networking > LAN Setup

### Home Networking

**LAN Setup** Static DHCP UPnP Additional Subnet STP Vendor ID Wake on LAN TFTP Server Name

Use this screen to set the Local Area Network IP address and subnet mask of your Zynol Device. Configure DHCP settings to have the Zynol Device or a DHCP server assign IP addresses to devices.

**Interface Group**

Group Name:

**LAN IP Setup**

IP Address:  .  .  .

Subnet Mask:  .  .  .

**IGMP Snooping**

Active:

IGMP Mode:  Standard Mode  Blocking Mode

**DHCP Server State**

DHCP:  Enable  Disable  DHCP Relay

**IP Addressing Values**

Beginning IP Address:  .  .  .

Ending IP Address:  .  .  .

Auto reserve IP for the same host:

**DHCP Server Lease Time**

days  hours  minutes

**DNS Values**

DNS:  DNS Proxy  Static  From ISP

**LAN IPv6 Mode Setup**

IPv6 Active:

**Link Local Address Type**

EUI64  Manual

**LAN Global Identifier Type**

EUI64  Manual

**LAN IPv6 Prefix Setup**

Delegate prefix from WAN  Static

From WAN:

**MLD Snooping**

Active:

MLD Mode:  Standard Mode  Blocking Mode

**LAN IPv6 Address Assign Setup**

**LAN IPv6 DNS Assign Setup**

**DHCPv6 Configuration**

DHCPv6 Active:  DHCPv6 Server:

**IPv6 Router Advertisement State**

RADVD Active:  Enable:

**IPv6 DNS Values**

IPv6 DNS Server 1:

IPv6 DNS Server 2:

IPv6 DNS Server 3:

**DNS Query Scenario**

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 41 Network Setting &gt; Home Networking &gt; LAN Setup


LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Interface Group	
Group Name	Select the interface group name for which you want to configure LAN settings. See <a href="#">Chapter 15 on page 263</a> for how to create a new interface group.
LAN IP Setup	
IP Address	Enter the LAN IPv4 IP address you want to assign to your Zyxel Device in dotted decimal notation, for example, 192.168.1.1 (factory default).
Subnet Mask	Type the subnet mask of your network in dotted decimal notation, for example 255.255.255.0 (factory default). Your Zyxel Device automatically computes the subnet mask based on the IP address you enter, so do not change this field unless you are instructed to do so.
IGMP Snooping	
Active	Select <b>Enable</b> to allow the Zyxel Device to passively learn multicast group.
IGMP Mode	Select <b>Standard Mode</b> to forward multicast packets to a port that joins the multicast group and broadcast unknown multicast packets from the WAN to all LAN ports.  Select <b>Blocking Mode</b> to block all unknown multicast packets from the WAN.
DHCP Server State	
DHCP	Select <b>Enable</b> to have the Zyxel Device act as a DHCP server or DHCP relay agent.  Select <b>Disable</b> to stop the DHCP server on the Zyxel Device.  Select <b>DHCP Relay</b> to have the Zyxel Device forward DHCP request to the DHCP server.
DHCP Relay Server Address	This field is only available when you select <b>DHCP Relay</b> in the <b>DHCP</b> field.
IP Address	Enter the IPv4 IP address of the actual remote DHCP server in this field.
IP Addressing Values	This field is only available when you select <b>Enable</b> in the <b>DHCP</b> field.
Beginning IP Address	This field specifies the first of the contiguous addresses in the IP address pool.
Ending IP Address	This field specifies the last of the contiguous addresses in the IP address pool.
Auto reserve IP for the same host	Click this switch to have the Zyxel Device record DHCP IP addresses with the MAC addresses the IP addresses are assigned to. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.  The Zyxel Device assigns the same IP address to the same MAC address when the host requests an IP address again through DHCP.
DHCP Server Lease Time	This is the period of time DHCP-assigned addresses is used. DHCP automatically assigns IP addresses to clients when they log in. DHCP centralizes IP address management on central computers that run the DHCP server program. DHCP leases addresses, for a period of time, which means that past addresses are "recycled" and made available for future reassignment to other systems.  This field is only available when you select <b>Enable</b> in the <b>DHCP</b> field.
Days/Hours/Minutes	Enter the lease time of the DHCP server.
DNS Values	This field is only available when you select <b>Enable</b> in the <b>DHCP</b> field.
DNS	Select the type of service that you are registered for from your DNS service provider ( <b>From ISP</b> ).  Select <b>DNS Proxy</b> if you have the DNS proxy service. The Zyxel Device redirects clients' DNS queries to a DNS server for resolving domain names.  Select <b>Static</b> if you have the static DNS service.

Table 41 Network Setting &gt; Home Networking &gt; LAN Setup (continued)



LABEL	DESCRIPTION
DNS Server 1/2	Enter the first and second DNS (Domain Name System) server IP addresses the Zyxel Device passes to the DHCP clients.
LAN IPv6 Mode Setup	
IPv6 Active	Click this switch to enable or disable the IPv6 mode and configure IPv6 settings on the Zyxel Device. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
Link Local Address Type	
EUI64	Select this to have the Zyxel Device generate an interface ID for the LAN interface's link-local address using the EUI-64 format.
Manual	Select this to manually enter an interface ID for the LAN interface's link-local address.
LAN Global Identifier Type	
EUI64	Select this to have the Zyxel Device generate an interface ID using the EUI-64 format for its global address.
Manual	Select this to manually enter an interface ID for the LAN interface's global IPv6 address.
LAN IPv6 Prefix Setup	
Delegate prefix from WAN	Select this option and specify a WAN interface (connection) through which the Zyxel Device automatically obtains an IPv6 network prefix from the service provider or an uplink router.
Static	Select this option to configure a fixed IPv6 prefix for the Zyxel Device's LAN IPv6 address.
MLD Snooping	Multicast Listener Discovery (MLD) allows an IPv6 switch or router to discover the presence of MLD hosts who wish to receive multicast packets and the IP addresses of multicast groups the hosts want to join on its network.
Active	Click this switch to enable or disable MLD Snooping on the Zyxel Device. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.  This allows the Zyxel Device to check MLD packets passing through it and learn the multicast group membership. It helps reduce multicast traffic.
MLD Mode	Select <b>Standard Mode</b> to forward multicast packets to a port that joins the multicast group and broadcast unknown multicast packets from the WAN to all LAN ports.  Select <b>Blocking Mode</b> to block all unknown multicast packets from the WAN.
LAN IPv6 Address Assign Setup	Select how you want to obtain an IPv6 address: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Stateless:</b> The Zyxel Device uses IPv6 stateless autoconfiguration. RADVD (Router Advertisement Daemon) is enabled to have the Zyxel Device send IPv6 prefix information in router advertisements periodically and in response to router solicitations. DHCPv6 server is disabled.</li> <li>• <b>Stateful:</b> The Zyxel Device uses IPv6 stateful autoconfiguration. The DHCPv6 server is enabled to have the Zyxel Device act as a DHCPv6 server and pass IPv6 addresses to DHCPv6 clients.</li> </ul>
LAN IPv6 DNS Assign Setup	Select how the Zyxel Device provide DNS server and domain name information to the clients: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>From Router Advertisement:</b> The Zyxel Device provides DNS information through router advertisements.</li> <li>• <b>From DHCPv6 Server:</b> The Zyxel Device provides DNS information through DHCPv6.</li> <li>• <b>From RA &amp; DHCPv6 Server:</b> The Zyxel Device provides DNS information through both router advertisements and DHCPv6.</li> </ul>
DHCPv6 Configuration	
DHCPv6 Active	This shows the status of the DHCPv6. <b>DHCPv6 Server</b> displays if you configured the Zyxel Device to act as a DHCPv6 server which assigns IPv6 addresses and/or DNS information to clients.
IPv6 Router Advertisement State	
RADVD Active	This shows whether RADVD is enabled or not.
IPv6 Address Values (This section is available only when you select <b>Stateful</b> in the <b>LAN IPv6 Address Assign Setup</b> field.)	

Table 41 Network Setting &gt; Home Networking &gt; LAN Setup (continued)

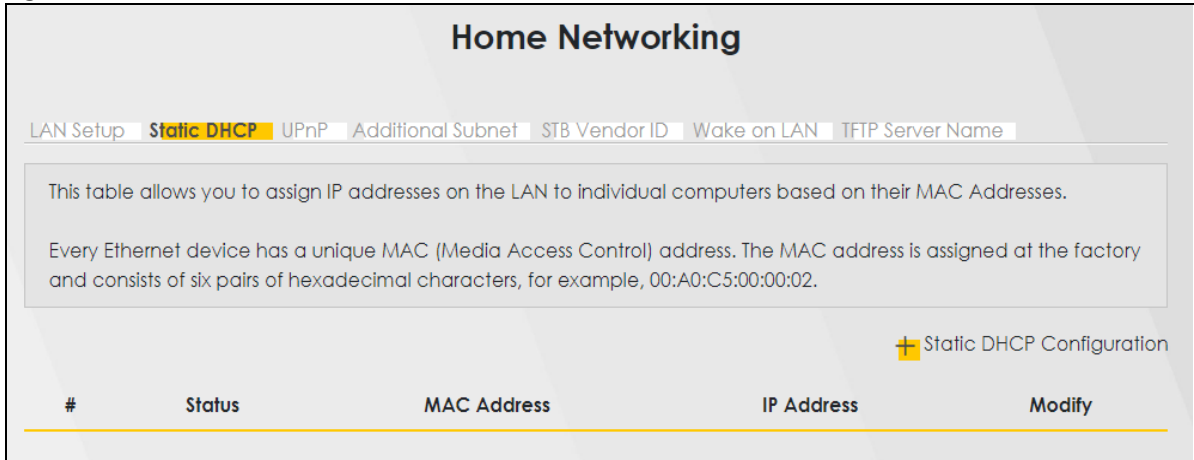
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IPv6 Start Address	Enter the first of the contiguous addresses in the IPv6 address pool.
IPv6 End Address	Enter the last of the contiguous addresses in the IPv6 address pool.
IPv6 Domain Name	Enter the domain name that is assigned to the DHCPv6 clients.
IPv6 DNS Values	
IPv6 DNS Server 1-3	Select <b>From ISP</b> if your ISP dynamically assigns IPv6 DNS server information. Select <b>User-Defined</b> if you have the IPv6 address of a DNS server. Enter the DNS server IPv6 addresses the Zyxel Device passes to the DHCP clients. Select <b>None</b> if you do not want to configure IPv6 DNS servers.
DNS Query Scenario	Select how the Zyxel Device handles clients' DNS information requests. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>IPv4/IPv6 DNS Server:</b> The Zyxel Device forwards the requests to both the IPv4 and IPv6 DNS servers and sends clients the first DNS information it receives.</li> <li>• <b>IPv6 DNS Server Only:</b> The Zyxel Device forwards the requests to the IPv6 DNS server and sends clients the DNS information it receives.</li> <li>• <b>IPv4 DNS Server Only:</b> The Zyxel Device forwards the requests to the IPv4 DNS server and sends clients the DNS information it receives.</li> <li>• <b>IPv6 DNS Server First:</b> The Zyxel Device forwards the requests to the IPv6 DNS server first and then the IPv4 DNS server. Then it sends clients the first DNS information it receives.</li> <li>• <b>IPv4 DNS Server First:</b> The Zyxel Device forwards the requests to the IPv4 DNS server first and then the IPv6 DNS server. Then it sends clients the first DNS information it receives.</li> </ul>
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to restore your previously saved settings.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.

## 8.3 LAN Static DHCP

This table allows you to assign IP addresses on the LAN to individual computers based on their MAC addresses.

Every Ethernet device has a unique MAC (Media Access Control) address. The MAC address is assigned at the factory and consists of six pairs of hexadecimal characters, for example, 00:A0:C5:00:00:02.

Use this screen to change your Zyxel Device's static DHCP settings. Click **Network Setting > Home Networking > Static DHCP** to open the following screen.

**Figure 103** Network Setting > Home Networking > Static DHCP

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 42** Network Setting > Home Networking > Static DHCP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Static DHCP Configuration	Click this to add a new static DHCP entry.
#	This is the index number of the entry.
Status	This field displays whether the client is connected to the Zyxel Device.
MAC Address	The MAC (Media Access Control) or Ethernet address on a LAN (Local Area Network) is unique to your computer (six pairs of hexadecimal notation).  A network interface card such as an Ethernet adapter has a hardwired address that is assigned at the factory. This address follows an industry standard that ensures no other adapter has a similar address.
IP Address	This field displays the IP address relative to the # field listed above.
Modify	Click the <b>Edit</b> icon to have the IP address field editable and change it.  Click the <b>Delete</b> icon to delete a static DHCP entry. A window displays asking you to confirm that you want to delete the selected entry.

If you click **Static DHCP Configuration** in the **Static DHCP** screen or the **Edit** icon next to a static DHCP entry, the following screen displays. Using a static DHCP means a client will always have the same IP address assigned to it by the DHCP server. Assign a fixed IP address to a device by selecting the interface group of this device and its IP address type and selecting the device/computer from a list or manually entering its MAC address and assigned IP address.




**Figure 104** Static DHCP: Static DHCP Configuration/Edit

The screenshot shows the 'Static DHCP Configuration' interface. It includes a back arrow, a title, and several configuration fields: 'Active' (toggle), 'Group Name' (dropdown), 'IP Type' (dropdown), 'Select Device Info' (dropdown), 'MAC Address' (text field), and 'IP Address' (text field). The 'Select Device Info' field is highlighted with a yellow border. At the bottom, there are 'Cancel' and 'OK' buttons.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 43** Static DHCP: Static DHCP Configuration/Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Click this switch to enable or disable the connection between the client and the Zyxel Device. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
Group Name	Select the interface group name for which you want to configure static DHCP settings. See <a href="#">Chapter 15 on page 263</a> for how to create a new interface group.
IP Type	This field displays <b>IPv4</b> for the type of the DHCP IP address. At the time of writing, it is not allowed to select other type.
Select Device Info	Select a device or computer from the drop-down list or select <b>Manual Input</b> to manually enter a device's MAC address and IP address in the following fields.
MAC Address	If you select <b>Manual Input</b> , enter the MAC address of a computer on your LAN.
IP Address	If you select <b>Manual Input</b> , enter the IP address that you want to assign to the computer on your LAN with the MAC address that you will also specify.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to restore your previously saved settings.
OK	Click <b>OK</b> to save your changes.

## 8.4 UPnP Settings

Universal Plug and Play (UPnP) is an open networking standard that uses TCP/IP for simple peer-to-peer network connectivity between networking devices or software applications which have UPnP enabled. A UPnP device can dynamically join a network, obtain an IP address, advertise its services, and learn about other devices on the network. A device can also leave a network automatically when it is no longer in use.

See [Section 8.4.1 on page 195](#) for more information on UPnP.

Use the following screen to configure the UPnP settings on your Zyxel Device. Click **Network Setting > Home Networking > UPnP** to display the screen shown next.

Note: To use **UPnP NAT-T**, enable **NAT** in the **Network Setting > Broadband > Edit/Add New WAN Interface** screen.

**Figure 105** Network Setting > Home Networking > UPnP

**Home Networking**

LAN Setup Static DHCP **UPnP** Additional Subnet STB Vendor ID Wake on LAN TFTP Server Name

Universal Plug and Play (UPnP) is a distributed, open networking standard that uses TCP/IP for simple peer-to-peer network connectivity between devices. A UPnP device can dynamically join a network, obtain an IP address, convey its capabilities, and learn about other devices on the network. A device can then leave a network smoothly and automatically when it is no longer in use.

**UPnP State**

UPnP

**UPnP NAT-T State**

UPnP NAT-T

Note

To use **UPnP NAT-T**, enable **NAT** in the **Network Setting > Broadband > Edit/Add New WAN Interface** screen.

#	Description	Destination IP Address	External Port	Internal Port	Protocol
<input type="button" value="Cancel"/> <input checked="" type="button" value="Apply"/>					

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 44** Network Setting > Home Networking > UPnP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
UPnP State	
UPnP	Click this switch to enable or disable UPnP. When the switch goes to the right <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.  Be aware that anyone could use a UPnP application to open the Web Configurator's login screen without entering the Zyxel Device's IP address (although you must still enter the password to access the Web Configurator).
UPnP NAT-T State	
UPnP NAT-T	Click this switch to allow UPnP-enabled applications to automatically configure the Zyxel Device so that they can communicate through the Zyxel Device by using NAT traversal. When the switch goes to the right <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.  UPnP applications automatically reserve a NAT forwarding port in order to communicate with another UPnP enabled device; this eliminates the need to manually configure port forwarding for the UPnP enabled application.  The table below displays the NAT port forwarding rules added automatically by UPnP NAT-T.
#	This is the index number of the UPnP NAT-T connection.

Table 44 Network Setting &gt; Home Networking &gt; UPnP (continued)

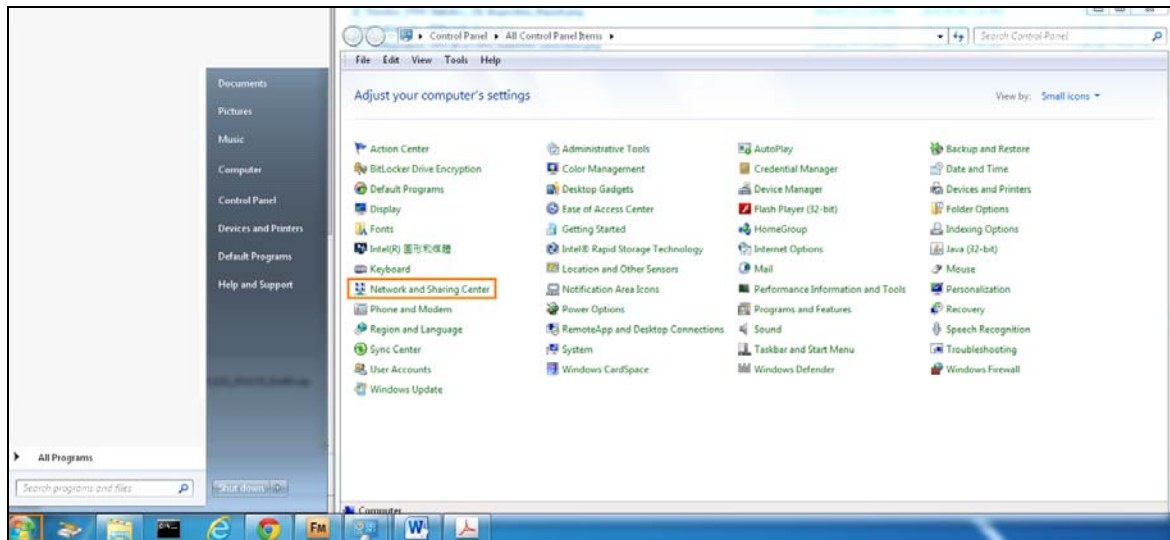
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Description	This is the description of the UPnP NAT-T connection.
Destination IP Address	This is the IP address of the other connected UPnP-enabled device.
External Port	This is the external port number that identifies the service.
Internal Port	This is the internal port number that identifies the service.
Protocol	This is the transport layer protocol used for the service.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to restore your previously saved settings.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.

### 8.4.1 Turning on UPnP in Windows 7 Example

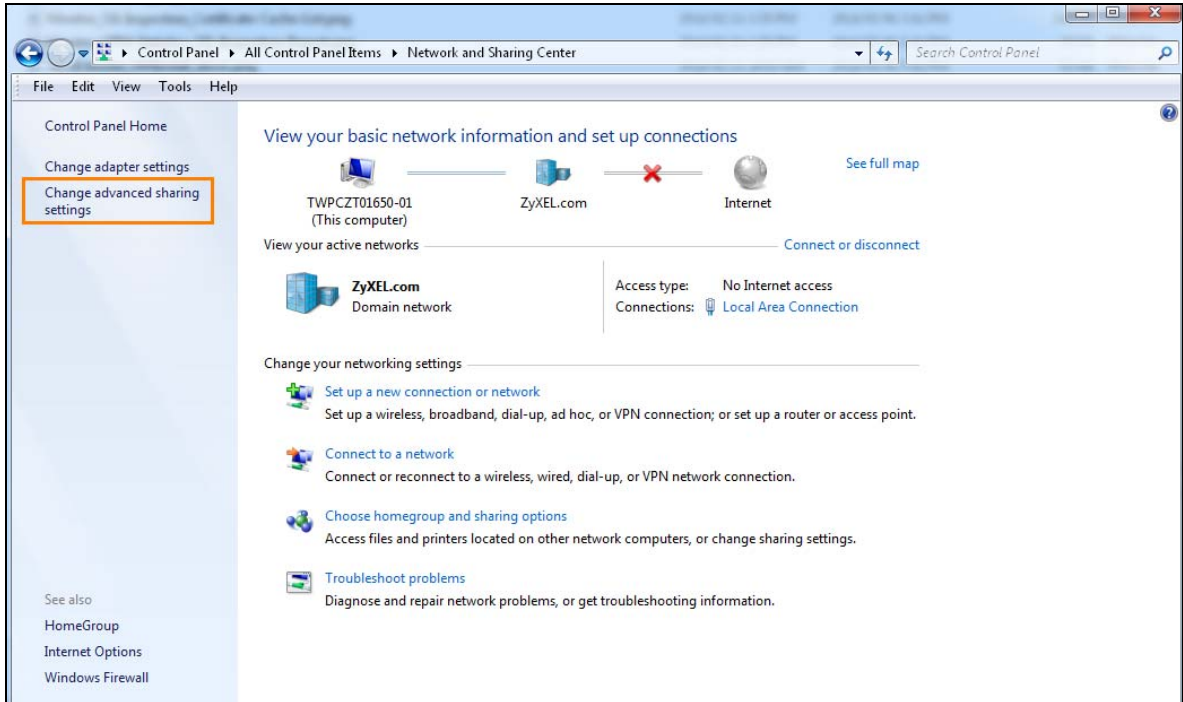
This section shows you how to use the UPnP feature in Windows 7. UPnP server is installed in Windows 7. Activate UPnP on the Zyxel Device in **Network Setting > Home Networking > UPnP**.

Make sure the computer is connected to a LAN port of the Zyxel Device. Turn on your computer and the Zyxel Device.

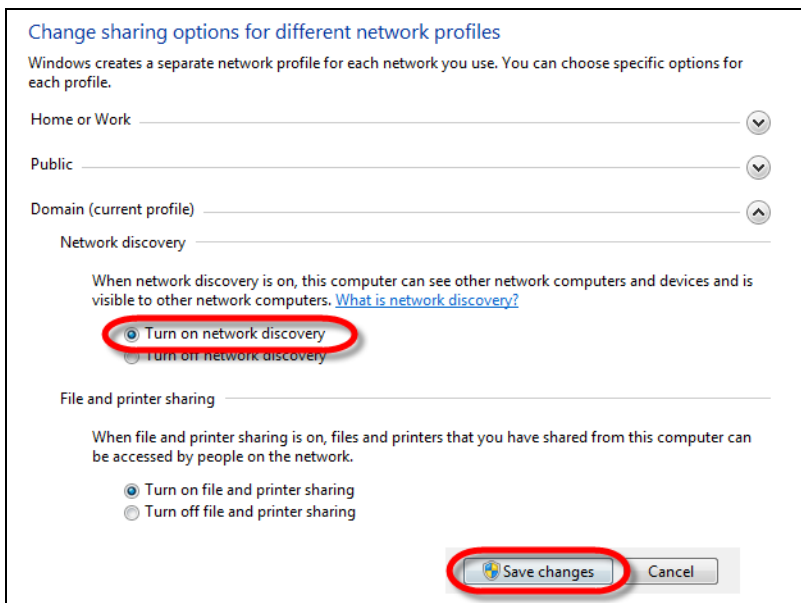
- 1 Click the start icon, **Control Panel** and then the **Network and Sharing Center**.



- 2 Click **Change Advanced Sharing Settings**.



- 3 Select **Turn on network discovery** and click **Save Changes**. Network discovery allows your computer to find other computers and devices on the network and other computers on the network to find your computer. This makes it easier to share files and printers.

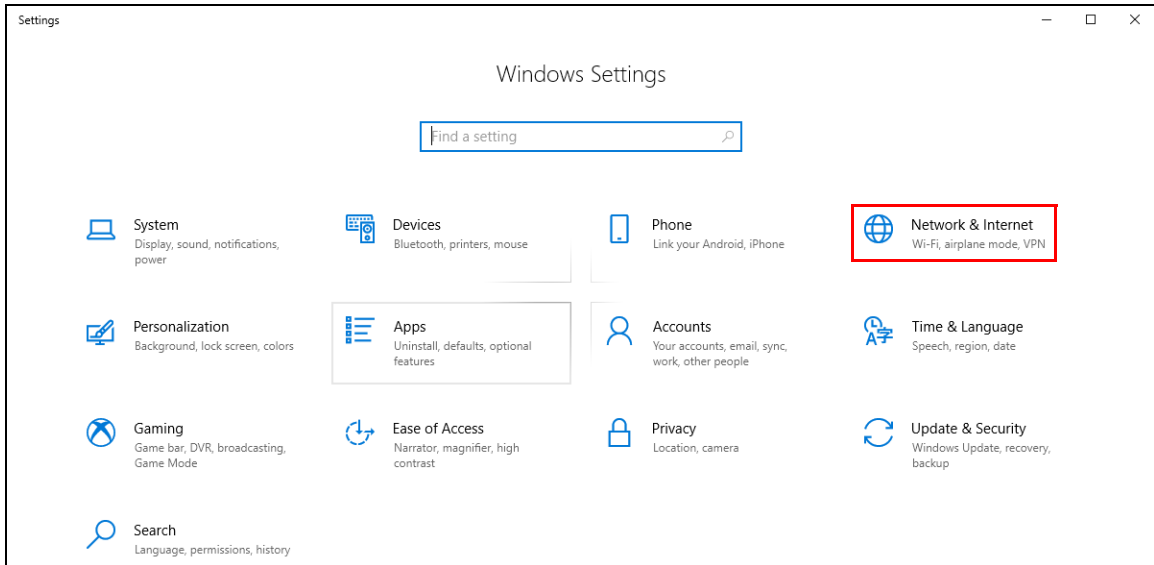


## 8.4.2 Turning on UPnP in Windows 10 Example

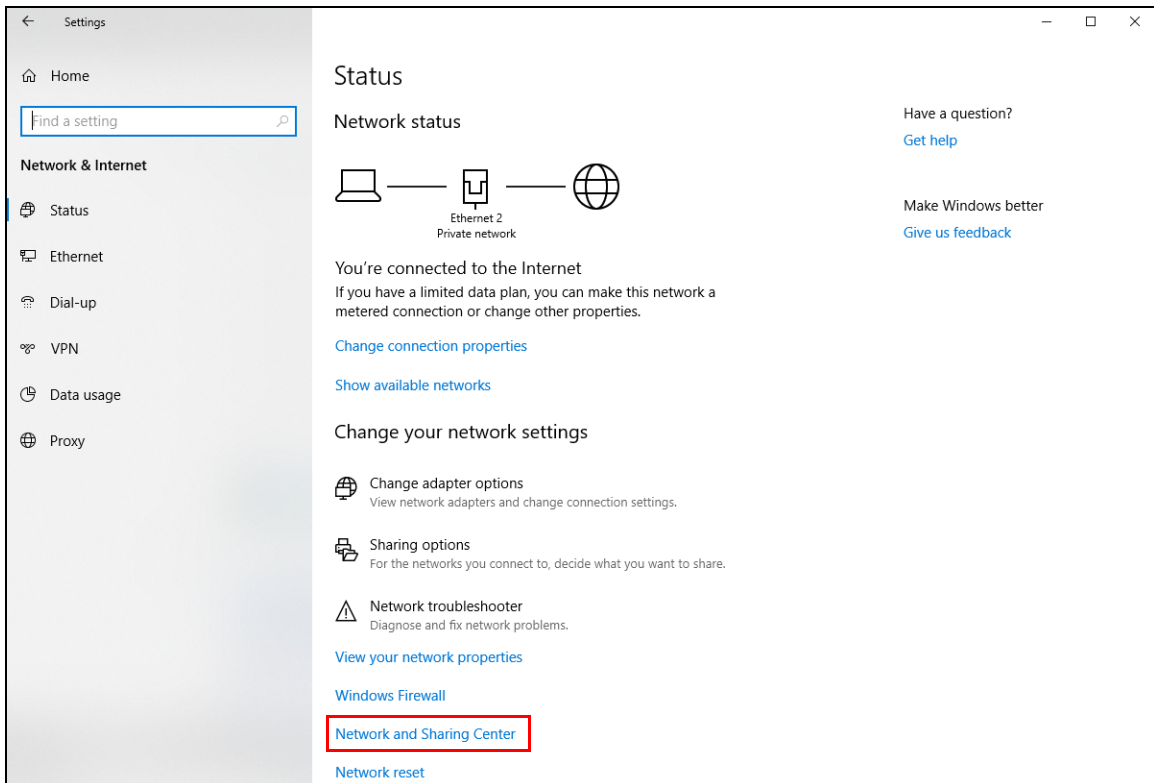
This section shows you how to use the UPnP feature in Windows 10. UPnP server is installed in Windows 10. Activate UPnP on the Zyxel Device in **Network Setting > Home Networking > UPnP**.

Make sure the computer is connected to the LAN port of the Zyxel Device. Turn on your computer and the Zyxel Device.

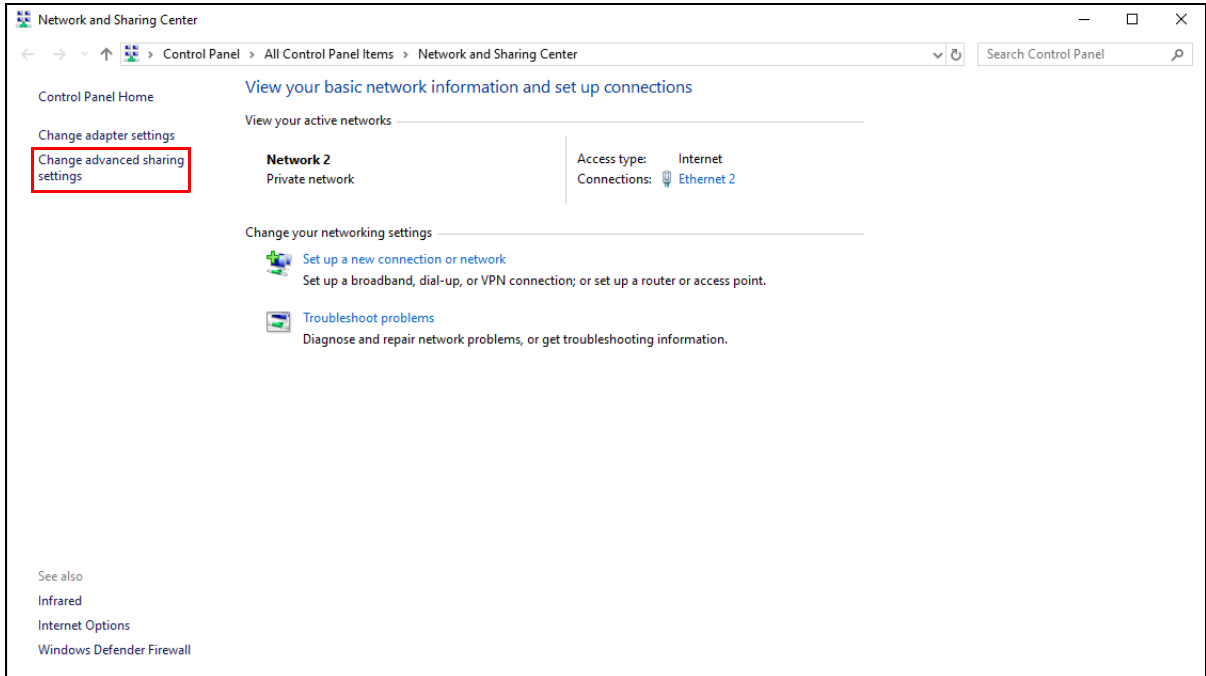
- 1 Click the start icon, **Settings** and then **Network & Internet**.



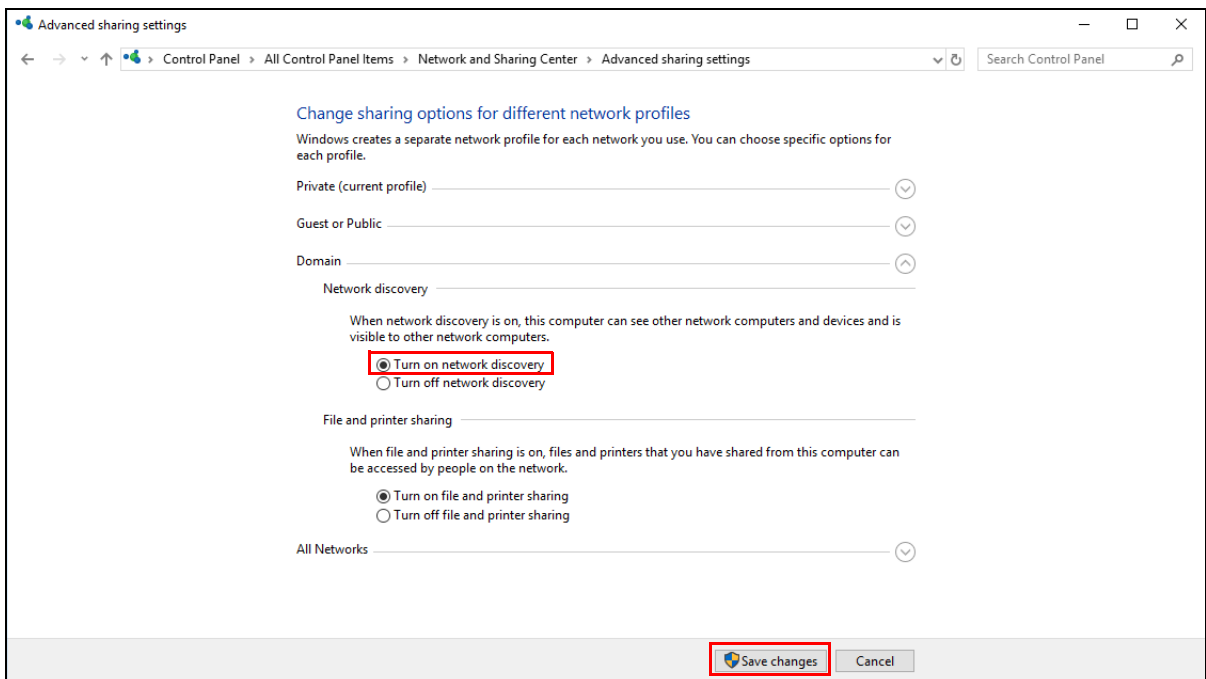
- 2 Click **Network and Sharing Center**.



- 3 Click **Change advanced sharing settings**.



- 4 Under **Domain**, select **Turn on network discovery** and click **Save Changes**. Network discovery allows your computer to find other computers and devices on the network and other computers on the network to find your computer. This makes it easier to share files and printers.



## 8.5 LAN Additional Subnet

Use this screen to configure IP alias and public static IP.

IP alias allows you to partition a physical network into different logical networks over the same Ethernet interface. The Zyxel Device supports multiple logical LAN interfaces via its physical Ethernet interface with the Zyxel Device itself as the gateway for the LAN network. When you use IP alias, you can also configure firewall rules to control access to the LAN's logical network (subnet).

If your ISP provides the **Public LAN** service, the Zyxel Device may use a LAN IP address that can be accessed from the WAN.

Click **Network Setting > Home Networking > Additional Subnet** to display the screen shown next.

**Figure 106** Network Setting > Home Networking > Additional Subnet

**Home Networking**

LAN Setup Static DHCP UPnP **Additional Subnet** STB Vendor ID Wake on LAN TFTP Server Name

Use this screen to configure IP alias and public static IP. IP alias allows you to partition a physical network into different logical networks over the same Ethernet interface. The Zyxel Device supports multiple logical LAN interfaces via its physical Ethernet interface with the Zyxel Device itself as the gateway for the LAN network. When you use IP alias, you can also configure firewall rules to control access to the LAN's logical network (subnet).

If your ISP provides the **Public LAN** service, the Zyxel Device may use a LAN IP address that can be accessed from the WAN.

**IP Alias Setup**

Group Name: Default

Active:

IPv4 Address: . . .

Subnet Mask: . . .

**Public LAN**

Active:

IPv4 Address: . . .

Subnet Mask: 255 . 255 . 255 . 0





Offer Public IP by DHCP:

Enable ARP Proxy:

Cancel Apply

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 45 Network Setting > Home Networking > Additional Subnet

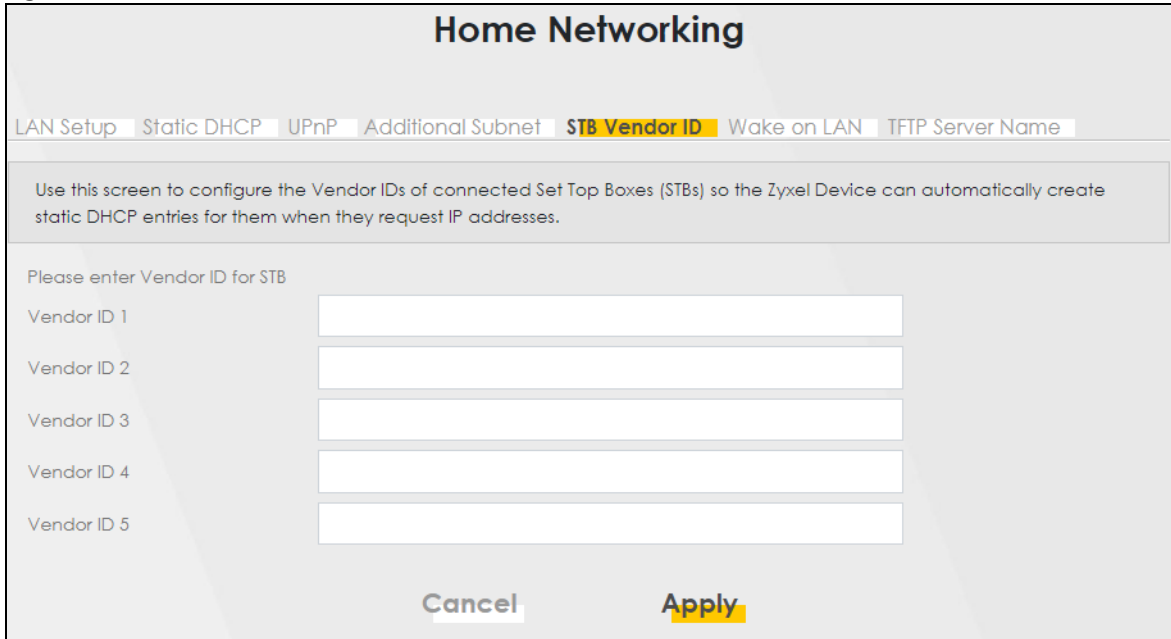
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IP Alias Setup	
Group Name	Select the interface group name for which you want to configure the IP alias settings. See <a href="#">Chapter 15 on page 263</a> for how to create a new interface group.
Active	Click this switch to configure a LAN network for the Zyxel Device. When the switch goes to the right  , the following fields will be configurable. Otherwise, they are not.
IPv4 Address	Enter the IP address of your Zyxel Device in dotted decimal notation.
Subnet Mask	Your Zyxel Device will automatically calculate the subnet mask based on the IPv4 address that you assign. Unless you are implementing subnetting, use this value computed by the Zyxel Device.
Public LAN	
Active	Click this switch to enable or disable the Public LAN feature. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.  Your ISP must support Public LAN and static IP.
IPv4 Address	Enter the public IP address provided by your ISP.
Subnet Mask	Enter the public IPv4 subnet mask provided by your ISP.
Offer Public IP by DHCP	Click this switch to enable or disable the Zyxel Device to provide public IP addresses by DHCP server. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
Enable ARP Proxy	Click this switch to enable or disable the ARP (Address Resolution Protocol) proxy. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to restore your previously saved settings.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.

## 8.6 STB Vendor ID

Use this screen to configure the Vendor IDs of connected Set Top Boxes (STBs) so the Zyxel Device can automatically create static DHCP entries for them when they request IP addresses.

Click **Network Setting > Home Networking > STB Vendor ID** to open this screen.



**Figure 107** Network Setting > Home Networking > STB Vendor ID


The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 46** Network Setting > Home Networking > STB Vendor ID

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Vendor ID 1~5	These are STB's Vendor Class Identifiers (DHCP option 60). A Vendor Class Identifier is usually used to inform the DHCP server a DHCP client's vendor and functionality.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to restore your previously saved settings.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.

## 8.7 Wake on LAN

Wake on LAN (WoL) allows you to remotely turn on a device on the network, such as a computer, storage device or media server. To use this feature the remote hardware (for example the network adapter on a computer) must support Wake On LAN using the 'Magic Packet' method.

You need to know the MAC address of the LAN device. It may be on a label on the device or in its documentation.

Click **Network Setting > Home Networking > Wake on LAN** to open this screen.

**Figure 108** Network Setting > Home Networking > Wake on LAN

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 47** Network Setting > Home Networking > Wake on LAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Wake by Address	Select <b>Manual</b> and enter the IP address or MAC address of the device to turn it on remotely. The drop-down list also lists the IP addresses that can be found in the Zyxel Device's ARP table. If you select an IP address, the MAC address of the device with the selected IP address then displays in the <b>MAC Address</b> field.
IP Address	Enter the IPv4 IP address of the device to turn it on. This field is not available if you select an IP address in the <b>Wake by Address</b> field.
MAC Address	Enter the MAC address of the device to turn it on. A MAC address consists of six hexadecimal character pairs.
Wake up	Click this to send a WoL magic packet to wake up the specified device.

## 8.8 TFTP Server Name

Use the **TFTP Server Name** screen to identify a TFTP server for configuration file download using DHCP option 66. RFC 2132 defines the option 66 open standard. DHCP option 66 supports the IP address or the host name of a single TFTP server.

Click **Network Setting** > **Home Networking** > **TFTP Server Name** to open this screen.

**Figure 109** Network Setting > Home Networking > TFTP Server Name

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 48 Network Setting > Home Networking > TFTP Server Name

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
TFTP Server Name	Enter the IP address or the host name of a single TFTP server.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to restore your previously saved settings.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.

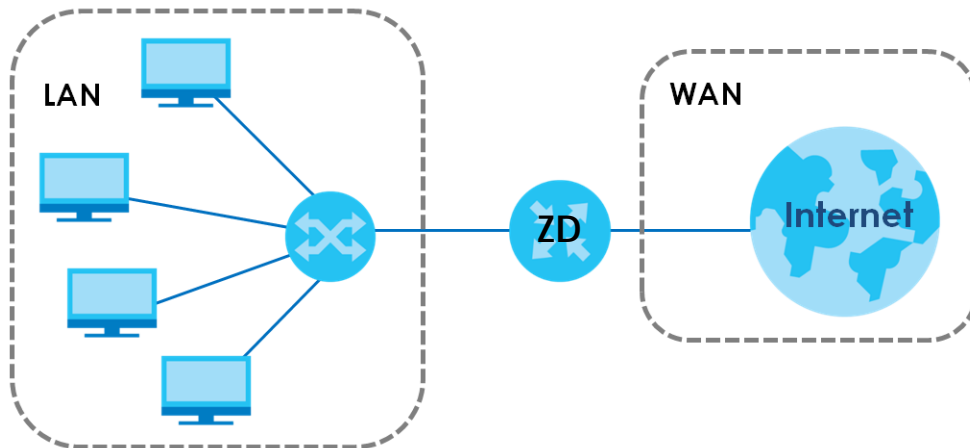
## 8.9 Technical Reference

This section provides some technical background information about the topics covered in this chapter.

### 8.9.1 LANs, WANs and the Zyxel Device

The actual physical connection determines whether the Zyxel Device ports are LAN or WAN ports. There are two separate IP networks, one inside the LAN network and the other outside the WAN network as shown next.

Figure 110 LAN and WAN IP Addresses



## 8.9.2 DHCP Setup

DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol, RFC 2131 and RFC 2132) allows individual clients to obtain TCP/IP configuration at start-up from a server. You can configure the Zyxel Device as a DHCP server or disable it. When configured as a server, the Zyxel Device provides the TCP/IP configuration for the clients. If you turn DHCP service off, you must have another DHCP server on your LAN, or else the computer must be manually configured.

### IP Pool Setup

The Zyxel Device is pre-configured with a pool of IP addresses for the DHCP clients (DHCP Pool). See the product specifications in the appendices. Do not assign static IP addresses from the DHCP pool to your LAN computers.

## 8.9.3 DNS Server Addresses

DNS (Domain Name System) maps a domain name to its corresponding IP address and vice versa. The DNS server is extremely important because without it, you must know the IP address of a computer before you can access it. The DNS server addresses you enter when you set up DHCP are passed to the client machines along with the assigned IP address and subnet mask.

There are two ways that an ISP disseminates the DNS server addresses.

- The ISP tells you the DNS server addresses, usually in the form of an information sheet, when you sign up. If your ISP gives you DNS server addresses, enter them in the **DNS Server** fields in the **DHCP Setup** screen.
- Some ISPs choose to disseminate the DNS server addresses using the DNS server extensions of IPCP (IP Control Protocol) after the connection is up. If your ISP did not give you explicit DNS servers, chances are the DNS servers are conveyed through IPCP negotiation. The Zyxel Device supports the IPCP DNS server extensions through the DNS proxy feature.

Please note that DNS proxy works only when the ISP uses the IPCP DNS server extensions. It does not mean you can leave the DNS servers out of the DHCP setup under all circumstances. If your ISP gives you explicit DNS servers, make sure that you enter their IP addresses in the **DHCP Setup** screen.

## 8.9.4 LAN TCP/IP

The Zyxel Device has built-in DHCP server capability that assigns IP addresses and DNS servers to systems that support DHCP client capability.

### IP Address and Subnet Mask

Similar to the way houses on a street share a common street name, so too do computers on a LAN share one common network number.

Where you obtain your network number depends on your particular situation. If the ISP or your network administrator assigns you a block of registered IP addresses, follow their instructions in selecting the IP addresses and the subnet mask.

If the ISP did not explicitly give you an IP network number, then most likely you have a single user account and the ISP will assign you a dynamic IP address when the connection is established. If this is the case, it is recommended that you select a network number from 192.168.0.0 to 192.168.255.0 and you must enable the Network Address Translation (NAT) feature of the Zyxel Device. The Internet Assigned Number Authority (IANA) reserved this block of addresses specifically for private use; please do not use any other number unless you are told otherwise. Let's say you select 192.168.1.0 as the network number; which covers 254 individual addresses, from 192.168.1.1 to 192.168.1.254 (zero and 255 are reserved). In other words, the first three numbers specify the network number while the last number identifies an individual computer on that network.

Once you have decided on the network number, pick an IP address that is easy to remember, for instance, 192.168.1.1, for your Zyxel Device, but make sure that no other device on your network is using that IP address.

The subnet mask specifies the network number portion of an IP address. Your Zyxel Device will compute the subnet mask automatically based on the IP address that you entered. You do not need to change the subnet mask computed by the Zyxel Device unless you are instructed to do otherwise.

### Private IP Addresses

Every machine on the Internet must have a unique address. If your networks are isolated from the Internet, for example, only between your two branch offices, you can assign any IP addresses to the hosts without problems. However, the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) has reserved the following three blocks of IP addresses specifically for private networks:

- 10.0.0.0 — 10.255.255.255
- 172.16.0.0 — 172.31.255.255
- 192.168.0.0 — 192.168.255.255

You can obtain your IP address from the IANA, from an ISP or it can be assigned from a private network. If you belong to a small organization and your Internet access is through an ISP, the ISP can provide you with the Internet addresses for your local networks. On the other hand, if you are part of a much larger organization, you should consult your network administrator for the appropriate IP addresses.

**Note:** Regardless of your particular situation, do not create an arbitrary IP address; always follow the guidelines above. For more information on address assignment, please refer to RFC 1597, "Address Allocation for Private Internets" and RFC 1466, "Guidelines for Management of IP Address Space".

# CHAPTER 9

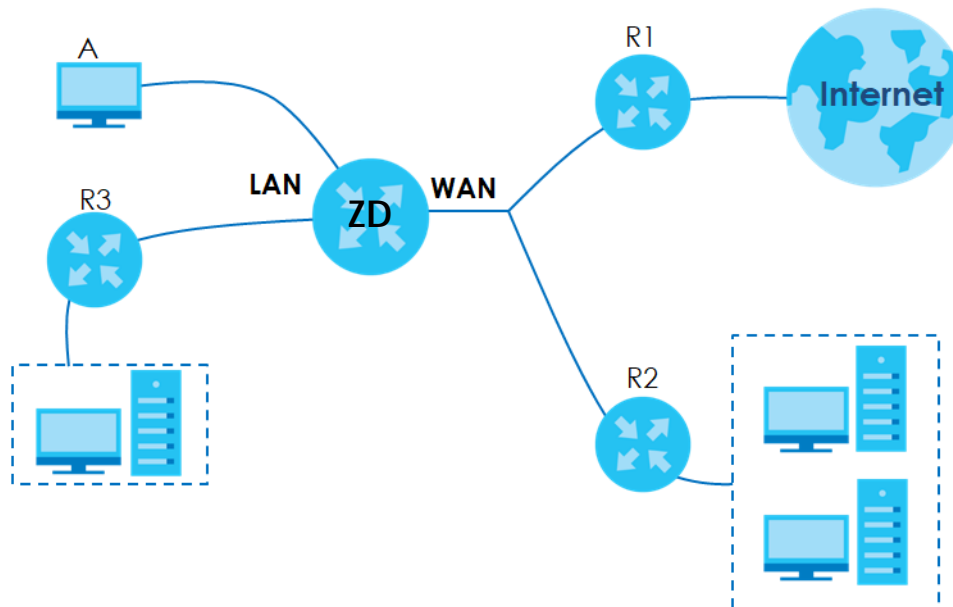
## Routing

### 9.1 Overview

The Zyxel Device usually uses the default gateway to route outbound traffic from computers on the LAN to the Internet. To have the Zyxel Device send data to devices not reachable through the default gateway, use static routes.

For example, the next figure shows a computer (**A**) connected to the Zyxel Device's LAN interface. The Zyxel Device routes most traffic from **A** to the Internet through the Zyxel Device's default gateway (**R1**). You create one static route to connect to services offered by your ISP behind router **R2**. You create another static route to communicate with a separate network behind a router **R3** connected to the LAN.

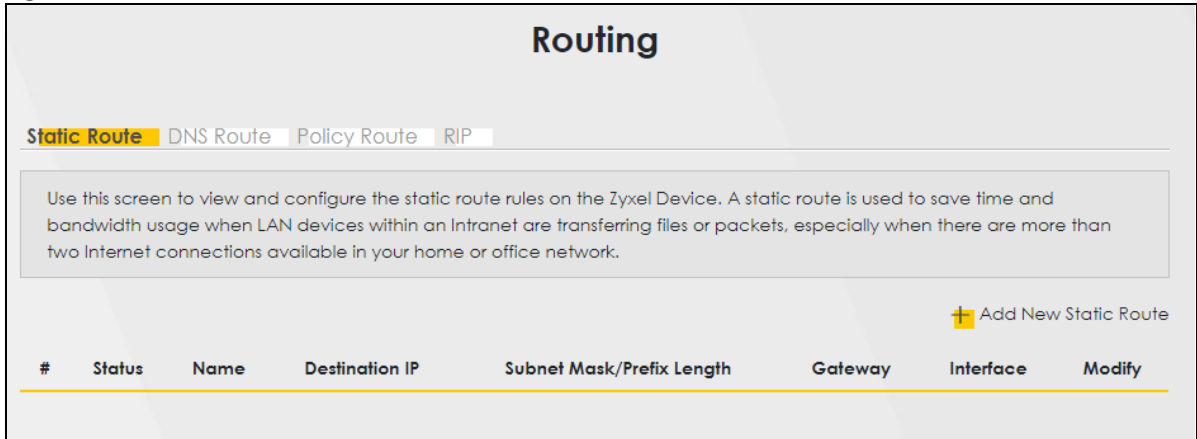
**Figure 111** Example of Routing Topology



### 9.2 Static Route Settings

Use this screen to view and configure the static route rules on the Zyxel Device. A static route is used to save time and bandwidth usage when LAN devices within an Intranet are transferring files or packets, especially when there are more than two Internet connections available in your home or office network. Click **Network Setting > Routing > Static Route** to open the following screen.

Figure 112 Network Setting &gt; Routing &gt; Static Route



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 49 Network Setting &gt; Routing &gt; Static Route

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New Static Route	Click this to configure a new static route.
#	This is the index number of the entry.
Status	This field displays whether the static route is active or not. A yellow bulb signifies that this route is active. A gray bulb signifies that this route is not active.
Name	This is the name that describes or identifies this route.
Destination IP	This parameter specifies the IP network address of the final destination. Routing is always based on network number.
Subnet Mask/Prefix Length	This parameter specifies the IP network subnet mask of the final destination.
Gateway	This is the IP address of the gateway. The gateway is a router or switch on the same network segment as the device's LAN or WAN port. The gateway helps forward packets to their destinations.
Interface	This is the WAN interface used for this static route.
Modify	Click the <b>Edit</b> icon to edit the static route on the ZyXel Device. Click the <b>Delete</b> icon to remove a static route from the ZyXel Device. A window displays asking you to confirm that you want to delete the route.

## 9.2.1 Add/Edit Static Route



Use this screen to add or edit a static route. Click **Add new static route** in the **Routing** screen or the **Edit** icon next to the static route you want to edit. The screen shown next appears.

Note: The **Gateway IP Address** must be within the range of the selected interface in **Use Interface**.

**Figure 113** Network Setting > Routing > Static Route: Add/Edit

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 50 Network Setting &gt; Routing &gt; Static Route: Add/Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Click this switch to enable or disable this static route. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
Route Name	Enter a descriptive name for the static route.
IP Type	Select whether your IP type is <b>IPv4</b> or <b>IPv6</b> .
Destination IP Address	Enter the IPv4 or IPv6 network address of the final destination.
Subnet Mask	If you are using IPv4 and need to specify a route to a single host, use a subnet mask of 255.255.255.255 in the subnet mask field to force the network number to be identical to the host ID. Enter the IP subnet mask here.
Use Gateway IP Address	The gateway is a router or switch on the same network segment as the device's LAN or WAN port. The gateway helps forward packets to their destinations.  Click this switch to enable or disable the gateway IP address. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
Gateway IP Address	Enter the IP address of the gateway.
Use Interface	Select the WAN interface you want to use for this static route.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to exit this screen without saving any changes.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.



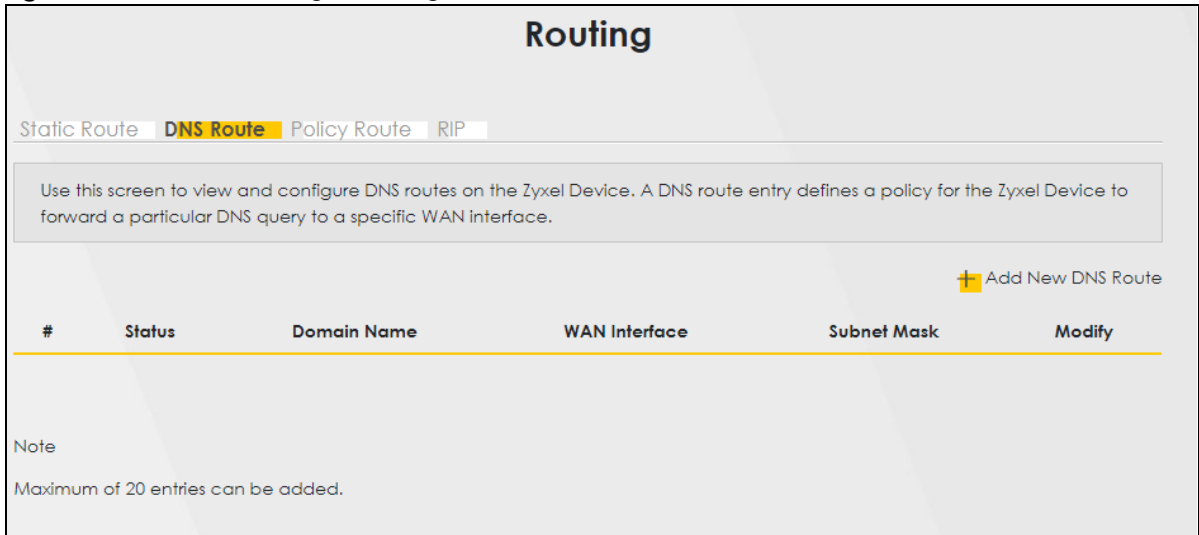
## 9.3 DNS Route

Use this screen to view and configure DNS routes on the Zyxel Device. A DNS route entry defines a policy for the Zyxel Device to forward a particular DNS query to a specific WAN interface.

Note: A maximum of 20 entries can be added. A maximum of 20 DNS routes can be added.

Note: Click **Network Setting > Routing > DNS Route** to open the following screen.

**Figure 114** Network Setting > Routing > DNS Route



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 51** Network Setting > Routing > DNS Route

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New DNS Route	Click this to add a new DNS route.
#	This is the index number of a DNS route.
Status	This field displays whether the DNS route is active or not. A yellow bulb signifies that this DNS route is active. A gray bulb signifies that this DNS route is not active.
Domain Name	This is the host name or domain name of the DNS route entry.
WAN Interface	This is the WAN connection through which the Zyxel Device forwards DNS requests for this domain name.
Subnet Mask	This is the subnet mask of the DNS route entry.
Modify	Click the <b>Edit</b> icon to modify the DNS route. Click the <b>Delete</b> icon to delete the DNS route.


### 9.3.1 Add DNS Route

You can manually add the Zyxel Device's DNS route entry. Click **Add New DNS Route** in the **Network Setting > Routing > DNS Route** screen. The screen shown next appears.

Figure 115 Add New DNS Route

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 52 DNS Route Add

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Click this switch to enable or disable the DNS route. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
Domain Name	Enter the domain name of the DNS route entry.
Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask of the DNS route entry.
WAN Interface	Select the WAN connection through which the Zyxel Device forwards DNS requests for this domain name.
Cancel	Click this to exit this screen without saving any changes.
OK	Click this to save your changes.

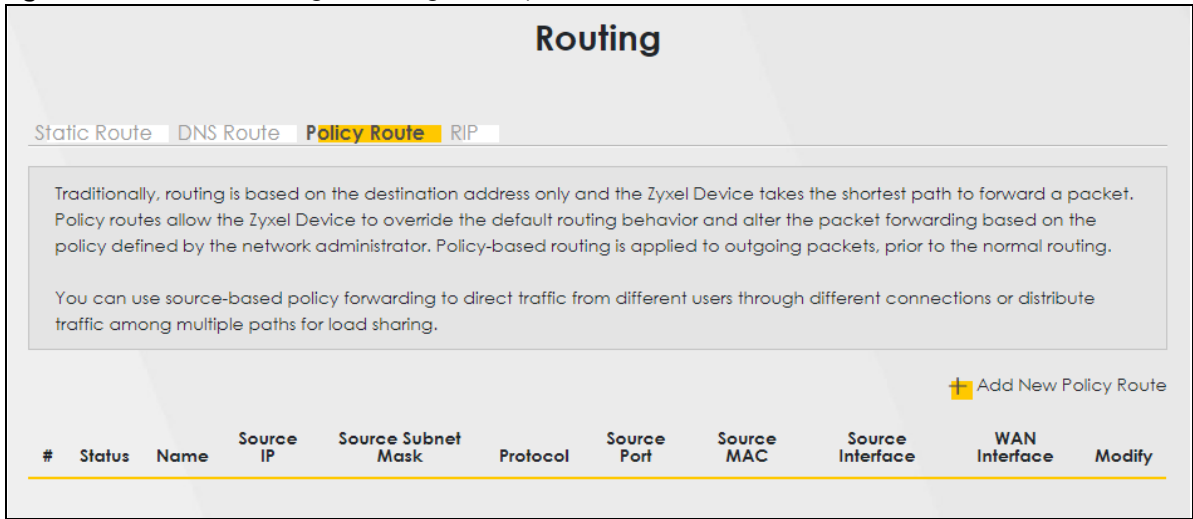
## 9.4 Policy Route

By default, the Zyxel Device routes packets based on the shortest path to the destination address. Policy routes allow you to override the default behavior and route packets based on other criteria, such as the source address.

For example, you can use policy-based routing to direct traffic from specific users through specific connections or distribute traffic across multiple paths for load sharing. Policy-based routing is applied to outgoing packets before the default routing rules are applied.

The **Policy Route** screen let you view and configure routing policies on the Zyxel Device. Click **Network Setting > Routing > Policy Route** to open the following screen.

**Figure 116** Network Setting > Routing > Policy Route



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 53** Network Setting > Routing > Policy Route

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New Policy Route	Click this to create a new policy forwarding rule.
#	This is the index number of the entry.
Status	This field displays whether the DNS route is active or not. A yellow bulb signifies that this DNS route is active. A gray bulb signifies that this DNS route is not active.
Name	This is the name of the rule.
Source IP	This is the source IP address.
Source Subnet Mask	This is the source subnet mask address.
Protocol	This is the transport layer protocol.
Source Port	This is the source port number.
Source MAC	This is the source MAC address.
Source Interface	This is the interface from which the matched traffic is sent.
WAN Interface	This is the WAN interface through which the traffic is routed.
Modify	Click the <b>Edit</b> icon to edit this policy.  Click the <b>Delete</b> icon to remove a policy from the Zyxel Device. A window displays asking you to confirm that you want to delete the policy.


## 9.4.1 Add/Edit Policy Route

Click **Add New Policy Route** in the **Policy Route** screen or click the **Edit** icon next to a policy. Use this screen to configure the required information for a policy route.

**Figure 117** Policy Route: Add/Edit

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 54** Policy Route: Add/Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Click this switch to enable or disable the policy route. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
Route Name	Enter a descriptive name of up to 8 printable English keyboard characters, not including spaces.
Source IP Address	Enter the source IP address.
Source Subnet Mask	Enter the source subnet mask address.
Protocol	Select the transport layer protocol ( <b>TCP</b> or <b>UDP</b> ).
Source Port	Enter the source port number.
Source MAC	Enter the source MAC address.
Source Interface (ex: br0 or LAN1~LAN4)	Type the name of the interface from which the matched traffic is sent.
WAN Interface	Select the WAN interface through which the traffic is sent.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to exit this screen without saving any changes.
OK	Click <b>OK</b> to save your changes.

## 9.5 RIP Settings

Routing Information Protocol (RIP, RFC 1058 and RFC 1389) allows a device to exchange routing information with other routers.

Click **Network Setting > Routing > RIP** to open the **RIP** screen.

**Figure 118** Network Setting > Routing > RIP

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 55** Network Setting > Routing > RIP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
#	This is the index of the interface in which the RIP setting is used.
Interface	This is the name of the interface in which the RIP setting is used.
Version	The RIP version controls the format and the broadcasting method of the RIP packets that the Zyxel Device sends (it recognizes both formats when receiving). RIP version 1 is universally supported but RIP version 2 carries more information. RIP version 1 is probably adequate for most networks, unless you have an unusual network topology.
Operation	Select <b>Passive</b> to have the Zyxel Device update the routing table based on the RIP packets received from neighbors but not advertise its route information to other routers in this interface.  Select <b>Active</b> to have the Zyxel Device advertise its route information and also listen for routing updates from neighboring routers.
Enable	Select the check box to activate the settings.
Disable Default Gateway	Select the check box to set the Zyxel Device to not send the route information to the default gateway.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to restore your previously saved settings.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device.

# CHAPTER 10

## Quality of Service (QoS)

### 10.1 QoS Overview

Quality of Service (QoS) refers to both a network's ability to deliver data with minimum delay, and the networking methods used to control the use of bandwidth. Without QoS, all traffic data is equally likely to be dropped when the network is congested. This can cause a reduction in network performance and make the network inadequate for time-critical applications such as video-on-demand.

Configure QoS on the Zyxel Device to group and prioritize application traffic and fine-tune network performance. Setting up QoS involves these steps:

- 1 Configure classifiers to sort traffic into different flows.
- 2 Assign priority and define actions to be performed for a classified traffic flow.

The Zyxel Device assigns each packet a priority and then queues the packet accordingly. Packets assigned a high priority are processed more quickly than those with low priority if there is congestion, allowing time-sensitive applications to flow more smoothly. Time-sensitive applications include both those that require a low level of latency (delay) and a low level of jitter (variations in delay) such as Voice over IP (VoIP) or Internet gaming, and those for which jitter alone is a problem such as Internet radio or streaming video. There are eight priority levels, with 1 having the highest priority.

This chapter contains information about configuring QoS and editing classifiers.

#### 10.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- The **General** screen lets you enable or disable QoS and set the upstream bandwidth ([Section 10.3 on page 216](#)).
- The **Queue Setup** screen lets you configure QoS queue assignment ([Section 10.4 on page 218](#)).
- The **Classification Setup** screen lets you add, edit or delete QoS classifiers ([Section 10.5 on page 221](#)).
- The **Shaper Setup** screen limits outgoing traffic transmission rate on the selected interface ([Section 10.6 on page 226](#)).
- The **Policer Setup** screen lets you control incoming traffic transmission rate and bursts ([Section 10.7 on page 227](#)).

### 10.2 What You Need to Know

The following terms and concepts may help as you read through this chapter.

## QoS versus CoS

QoS is used to prioritize source-to-destination traffic flows. All packets in the same flow are given the same priority. CoS (class of service) is a way of managing traffic in a network by grouping similar types of traffic together and treating each type as a class. You can use CoS to give different priorities to different packet types.

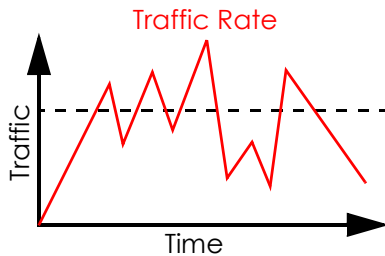
CoS technologies include IEEE 802.1p layer 2 tagging and DiffServ (Differentiated Services or DS). IEEE 802.1p tagging makes use of three bits in the packet header, while DiffServ is a new protocol and defines a new DS field, which replaces the eight-bit ToS (Type of Service) field in the IP header.

## Tagging and Marking

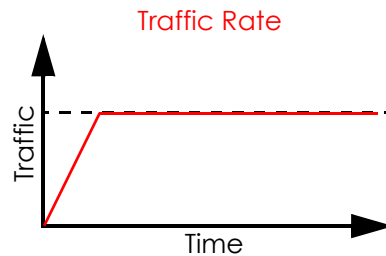
In a QoS class, you can configure whether to add or change the DSCP (DiffServ Code Point) value, IEEE 802.1p priority level and VLAN ID number in a matched packet. When the packet passes through a compatible network, the networking device, such as a backbone switch, can provide specific treatment or service based on the tag or marker.

## Traffic Shaping

Bursty traffic may cause network congestion. Traffic shaping regulates packets to be transmitted with a pre-configured data transmission rate using buffers (or queues). Your Zyxel Device uses the Token Bucket algorithm to allow a certain amount of large bursts while keeping a limit at the average rate.



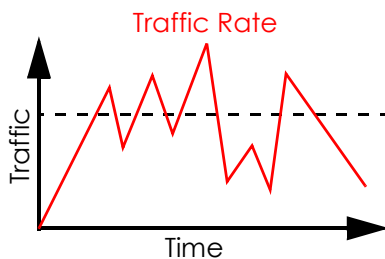
(Before Traffic Shaping)



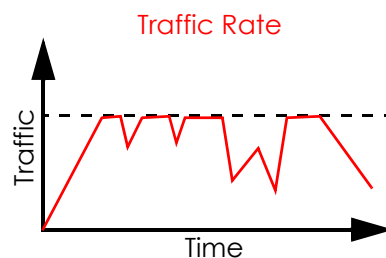
(After Traffic Shaping)

## Traffic Policing

Traffic policing is the limiting of the input or output transmission rate of a class of traffic on the basis of user-defined criteria. Traffic policing methods measure traffic flows against user-defined criteria and identify it as either conforming, exceeding or violating the criteria.



(Before Traffic Policing)



(After Traffic Policing)

The Zyxel Device supports three incoming traffic metering algorithms: Token Bucket Filter (TBF), Single Rate Two Color Marker (srTCM), and Two Rate Two Color Marker (trTCM). You can specify actions which are performed on the colored packets. See [Section 10.8 on page 230](#) for more information on each metering algorithm.

## 10.3 Quality of Service General Settings

Click **Network Setting > QoS > General** to open the screen as shown next.

Use this screen to enable or disable QoS and set the upstream bandwidth or assign traffic priority. See [Section 10.1 on page 214](#) for more information.

When one of the following situations happens, the current WAN linkup rate will be used instead:

- 1 **WAN Managed Upstream Bandwidth** is set to 0
- 2 **WAN Managed Upstream Bandwidth** is empty
- 3 **WAN Managed Upstream Bandwidth** is higher than the current WAN interface linkup rate

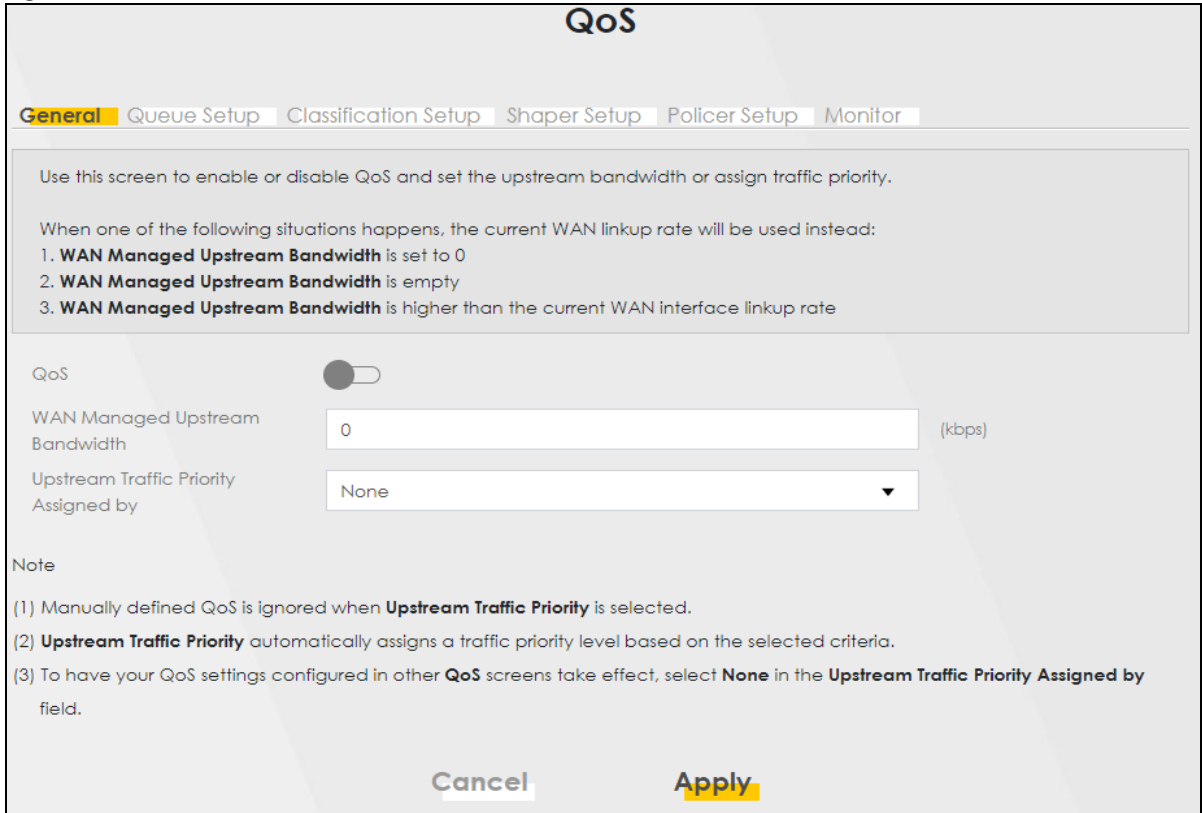
Note: Manually defined QoS is ignored when **Upstream Traffic Priority** is selected.

Note: **Upstream Traffic Priority** automatically assigns a traffic priority level based on the selected criteria.

Note: To have your QoS settings configured in other **QoS** screens take effect, select **None** in the **Upstream Traffic Priority Assigned by** field.



Figure 119 Network > QoS > General



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 56 Network Setting > QoS > General


LABEL	DESCRIPTION
QoS	Click this switch to enable or disable QoS to improve your network performance. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
WAN Managed Upstream Bandwidth	<p>Enter the amount of upstream bandwidth for the WAN interfaces that you want to allocate using QoS.</p> <p>The recommendation is to set this speed to match the interfaces' actual transmission speed. For example, set the WAN interfaces' speed to 100000 kbps if your Internet connection has an upstream transmission speed of 100 Mbps.</p> <p>You can set this number higher than the interfaces' actual transmission speed. The Zyxel Device uses up to 95% of the DSL port's actual upstream transmission speed even if you set this number higher than the DSL port's actual transmission speed.</p> <p>You can also set this number lower than the interfaces' actual transmission speed. This will cause the Zyxel Device to not use some of the interfaces' available bandwidth.</p> <p>If you leave this field blank, the Zyxel Device automatically sets this number to be 95% of the WAN interfaces' actual upstream transmission speed.</p>

Table 56 Network Setting &gt; QoS &gt; General (continued) (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
LAN Managed Downstream Bandwidth	<p>Enter the amount of downstream bandwidth for the LAN interfaces (including wireless LAN) that you want to allocate using QoS.</p> <p>The recommendation is to set this speed to match the WAN interfaces' actual transmission speed. For example, set the LAN managed downstream bandwidth to 100000 kbps if you use a 100 Mbps wired Ethernet WAN connection.</p> <p>You can also set this number lower than the WAN interfaces' actual transmission speed. This will cause the Zyxel Device to not use some of the interfaces' available bandwidth.</p> <p>If you leave this field blank, the Zyxel Device automatically sets this to the LAN interfaces' maximum supported connection speed.</p>
Upstream traffic priority Assigned by	<p>Select how the Zyxel Device assigns priorities to various upstream traffic flows.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>None:</b> Disables auto priority mapping and has the Zyxel Device put packets into the queues according to your classification rules. Traffic which does not match any of the classification rules is mapped into the default queue with the lowest priority.</li> <li>• <b>Ethernet Priority:</b> Automatically assign priority based on the IEEE 802.1p priority level.</li> <li>• <b>IP Precedence:</b> Automatically assign priority based on the first three bits of the TOS field in the IP header.</li> <li>• <b>Packet Length:</b> Automatically assign priority based on the packet size. Smaller packets get higher priority since control, signaling, VoIP, Internet gaming, or other real-time packets are usually small while larger packets are usually best effort data packets like file transfers.</li> </ul>
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to restore your previously saved settings.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.

## 10.4 Queue Setup

Click **Network Setting > QoS > Queue Setup** to open the screen as shown next.

Use this screen to configure QoS queue assignment to decide the priority on WAN/LAN interfaces. Traffic with higher priority gets through faster than those with lower priority. Low-priority traffic is dropped first when the network is congested.

Note: Configure the priority level for a QoS queue from 1 to 8. The smaller the number in the **Priority** column, the higher the priority.

Note: The corresponding classifier(s) will be removed automatically if a queue is deleted.


Note: Rate limit 0 means there is no rate limit on a queue.


Figure 120 Network Setting &gt; QoS &gt; Queue Setup

**QoS**

General **Queue Setup** Classification Setup Shaper Setup Policer Setup Monitor

Use this screen to configure QoS queue assignment to decide the priority on WAN/LAN interfaces. Traffic with higher priority gets through faster than those with lower priority. Low-priority traffic is dropped first when the network is congested.

 Add New Queue

#	Status	Name	Interface	Priority	Weight	Buffer Management	Rate Limit	Modify
1		default queue	WAN	8	1	DT		

Note

- (1) Apart from the default entry that cannot be edited, you can add up to 7 extra entries.
- (2) Configure the priority level for a QoS queue from 1 to 8. The smaller the number in the **Priority** column, the higher the priority.
- (3) Rate limit 0 means there's no rate limit on a queue.
- (4) The corresponding classifier(s) will be removed automatically if a queue is deleted.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 57 Network Setting &gt; QoS &gt; Queue Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New Queue	Click this button to create a new queue entry.
#	This is the index number of the entry.
Status	This field displays whether the queue is active or not. A yellow bulb signifies that this queue is active. A gray bulb signifies that this queue is not active.
Name	This shows the descriptive name of this queue.
Interface	This shows the name of the Zyxel Device's interface through which traffic in this queue passes.
Priority	This shows the priority of this queue. The lower the number, the higher the priority level.
Weight	This shows the weight of this queue.
Buffer Management	This shows the queue management algorithm used for this queue. Queue management algorithms determine how the Zyxel Device should handle packets when it receives too many (network congestion).
Rate Limit	This shows the maximum transmission rate allowed for traffic on this queue. Rate limit 0 means there's no rate limit on this queue.
Modify	Click the <b>Edit</b> icon to edit the queue. Click the <b>Delete</b> icon to delete an existing queue. Note that subsequent rules move up by one when you take this action.


## 10.4.1 Adding a QoS Queue

Click **Add New Queue** or the **Edit** icon in the **Queue Setup** screen to configure a queue.

**Figure 121** Queue Setup: Add

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 58** Queue Setup: Add

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Click this switch to enable or disable the queue. When the switch turns blue  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
Name	Enter the descriptive name of this queue.
Interface	Select the interface to which this queue is applied. This field is read-only if you are editing the queue.
Priority	Select the priority level (from 1 to 8) of this queue.  The smaller the number, the higher the priority level. Traffic assigned to higher priority queues gets through faster while traffic in lower priority queues is dropped if the network is congested.
Weight	Select the weight (from 1 to 8) of this queue.  If two queues have the same priority level, the Zyxel Device divides the bandwidth across the queues according to their weights. Queues with larger weights get more bandwidth than queues with smaller weights.
Buffer Management	This field displays <b>Drop Tail (DT)</b> . <b>Drop Tail (DT)</b> is a simple queue management algorithm that allows the Zyxel Device buffer to accept as many packets as it can until it is full. Once the buffer is full, new packets that arrive are dropped until there is space in the buffer again (packets are transmitted out of it).
Rate Limit	Specify the maximum transmission rate (in Kbps) allowed for traffic on this queue. If you enter 0 here, this means there's no rate limit on this queue.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to exit this screen without saving any changes.
OK	Click <b>OK</b> to save your changes.

## 10.5 QoS Classification Setup

Use this screen to add, edit or delete QoS classifiers. A classifier groups traffic into data flows according to specific criteria such as the source address, destination address, source port number, destination port number or incoming interface. For example, you can configure a classifier to select traffic from the same protocol port (such as Telnet) to form a flow.

You can give different priorities to traffic that the Zyxel Device forwards through the WAN interface. Give high priority to voice and video to make them run more smoothly. Similarly, give low priority to many large file downloads so that they do not reduce the quality of other applications.

Click **Network Setting > QoS > Classification Setup** to open the following screen.

**Figure 122** Network Setting > QoS > Classification Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 59** Network Setting > QoS > Classification Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New Classification	Click this to create a new classifier.
Order	This is the index number of the entry. The classifiers are applied in order of their numbering.
Status	This field displays whether the classifier is active or not. A yellow bulb signifies that this classifier is active. A gray bulb signifies that this classifier is not active.
Class Name	This is the name of the classifier.
Classification Criteria	This shows criteria specified in this classifier, for example the interface from which traffic of this class should come and the source MAC address of traffic that matches this classifier.
DSCP Mark	This is the DSCP number added to traffic of this classifier.
802.1P Mark	This is the IEEE 802.1p priority level assigned to traffic of this classifier.
VLAN ID Tag	This is the VLAN ID number assigned to traffic of this classifier.
To Queue	This is the name of the queue in which traffic of this classifier is put.
Modify	Click the <b>Edit</b> icon to edit the classifier.  Click the <b>Delete</b> icon to delete an existing classifier. Note that subsequent rules move up by one when you take this action.

## 10.5.1 Add/Edit QoS Class

Click **Add New Classification** in the **Classification Setup** screen or the **Edit** icon next to a classifier to open the following screen.

Figure 123 Classification Setup: Add/Edit

### Add New Classification

Please follow the guidance through step 1~5 to configure a QoS rule

**Step1: Class Configuration**

Active

Class Name

Classification Order Last

**Step2: Criteria Configuration**

Use the configurations below to specify the characteristics of a data flow needed to be managed by this QoS rule

**Basic**

From Interface LAN

Ether Type NA

**Source**

Address  Subnet Mask   Exclude

Port Range  ~   Exclude

MAC  MAC Mask   Exclude

**Destination**

Address  Subnet Mask   Exclude

Port Range  ~   Exclude

MAC  MAC Mask   Exclude

**Others**

Service RTSP Server  Exclude

IP protocol TCP   Exclude

DHCP   Exclude

IP Packet Length  ~   Exclude

DSCP  (0~63)  Exclude

802.1P 0 BE  Exclude

VLAN ID  (1~4094)  Exclude

TCP ACK  Exclude

**Step3: Packet Modification**

The content of the packet can be modified by applying the following settings

DSCP Mark Unchange  (0~63)

VLAN ID Tag Unchange  (1~4094)

802.1P Mark 0 BE

**Step4: Class Routing**

This module can route a packet to a certain interface according to the class setting

Forward To Interface Unchange

**Step5: Outgoing Queue Selection**

Outgoing queue decides the priority of the traffic and how traffic should be shaped in the WAN interface.

To Queue Index default queue

Cancel OK

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 60 Classification Setup: Add/Edit


LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Step1: Class Configuration	
Active	Click this switch to enable or disable the classifier. When the switch turns blue  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
Class Name	Enter a descriptive name of up to 15 printable English keyboard characters, not including spaces.
Classification Order	Select an existing number for where you want to put this classifier to move the classifier to the number you selected after clicking <b>Apply</b> .  Select <b>Last</b> to put this rule in the back of the classifier list.
Step2: Criteria Configuration	
Basic	
From Interface	If you want to classify the traffic by an ingress interface, select an interface from the <b>From Interface</b> drop-down list box.
Ether Type	Select a predefined application to configure a class for the matched traffic.  If you select <b>IP</b> , you also need to configure source or destination MAC address, IP address, DHCP options, DSCP value or the protocol type.  If you select <b>802.1Q</b> , you can configure an 802.1p priority level.
Source	
Address	Select the check box and enter the source IP address in dotted decimal notation. A blank source IP address means any source IP address.
Subnet Mask	Enter the source subnet mask.
Port Range	If you select <b>TCP</b> or <b>UDP</b> in the <b>IP Protocol</b> field, select the check box and enter the port number(s) of the source.
MAC	Select the check box and enter the source MAC address of the packet.
MAC Mask	Type the mask for the specified MAC address to determine which bits a packet's MAC address should match.  Enter "f" for each bit of the specified source MAC address that the traffic's MAC address should match. Enter "0" for the bit(s) of the matched traffic's MAC address, which can be of any hexadecimal character(s). For example, if you set the MAC address to 00:13:49:00:00:00 and the mask to ff:ff:ff:00:00:00, a packet with a MAC address of 00:13:49:12:34:56 matches this criteria.
Exclude	Select this option to exclude the packets that match the specified criteria from this classifier.
Destination	
Address	Select the check box and enter the source IP address in dotted decimal notation. A blank source IP address means any source IP address.
Subnet Mask	Enter the source subnet mask.
Port Range	If you select <b>TCP</b> or <b>UDP</b> in the <b>IP Protocol</b> field, select the check box and enter the port number(s) of the source.
MAC	Select the check box and enter the source MAC address of the packet.
MAC Mask	Type the mask for the specified MAC address to determine which bits a packet's MAC address should match.  Enter "f" for each bit of the specified source MAC address that the traffic's MAC address should match. Enter "0" for the bit(s) of the matched traffic's MAC address, which can be of any hexadecimal character(s). For example, if you set the MAC address to 00:13:49:00:00:00 and the mask to ff:ff:ff:00:00:00, a packet with a MAC address of 00:13:49:12:34:56 matches this criteria.
Exclude	Select this option to exclude the packets that match the specified criteria from this classifier.
Others	



Table 60 Classification Setup: Add/Edit (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Service	This field is available only when you select <b>IP</b> in the <b>Ether Type</b> field.  This field simplifies classifier configuration by allowing you to select a predefined application. When you select a predefined application, you do not configure the rest of the filter fields.
IP Protocol	This field is available only when you select <b>IP</b> in the <b>Ether Type</b> field.  Select this option and select the protocol (service type) from <b>TCP</b> , <b>UDP</b> , <b>ICMP</b> or <b>IGMP</b> . If you select <b>User defined</b> , enter the protocol (service type) number.
DHCP	This field is available only when you select <b>IP</b> in the <b>Ether Type</b> field.  Select this option and select a DHCP option.  If you select <b>Vendor Class ID (DHCP Option 60)</b> , enter the Vendor Class Identifier (Option 60) of the matched traffic, such as the type of the hardware or firmware.  If you select <b>Client ID (DHCP Option 61)</b> , enter the Identity Association Identifier (IAD Option 61) of the matched traffic, such as the MAC address of the device.  If you select <b>User Class ID (DHCP Option 77)</b> , enter a string that identifies the user's category or application type in the matched DHCP packets.  If you select <b>Vendor Specific Info (DHCP Option 125)</b> , enter the vendor specific information of the matched traffic, such as the product class, model name, and serial number of the device.
IP Packet Length	This field is available only when you select <b>IP</b> in the <b>Ether Type</b> field.  Select this option and enter the minimum and maximum packet length (from 46 to 1500) in the fields provided.
DSCP	This field is available only when you select <b>IP</b> in the <b>Ether Type</b> field.  Select this option and specify a DSCP (DiffServ Code Point) number between 0 and 63 in the field provided.
802.1P	This field is available only when you select <b>802.1Q</b> in the <b>Ether Type</b> field.  Select this option and select a priority level (between 0 and 7) from the drop-down list box. "0" is the lowest priority level and "7" is the highest.
VLAN ID	This field is available only when you select <b>802.1Q</b> in the <b>Ether Type</b> field.  Select this option and specify a VLAN ID number.
TCP ACK	This field is available only when you select <b>IP</b> in the <b>Ether Type</b> field.  If you select this option, the matched TCP packets must contain the ACK (Acknowledge) flag.
Exclude	Select this option to exclude the packets that match the specified criteria from this classifier.
Step3: Packet Modification	
DSCP Mark	This field is available only when you select <b>IP</b> in the <b>Ether Type</b> field.  If you select <b>Remark</b> , enter a DSCP value with which the Zyxel Device replaces the DSCP field in the packets.  If you select <b>Unchange</b> , the Zyxel Device keep the DSCP field in the packets.
VLAN ID	If you select <b>Remark</b> , enter a VLAN ID number with which the Zyxel Device replaces the VLAN ID of the frames.  If you select <b>Remove</b> , the Zyxel Device deletes the VLAN ID of the frames before forwarding them out.  If you select <b>Add</b> , the Zyxel Device treat all matched traffic untagged and add a second VLAN ID.  If you select <b>Unchange</b> , the Zyxel Device keep the VLAN ID in the packets.

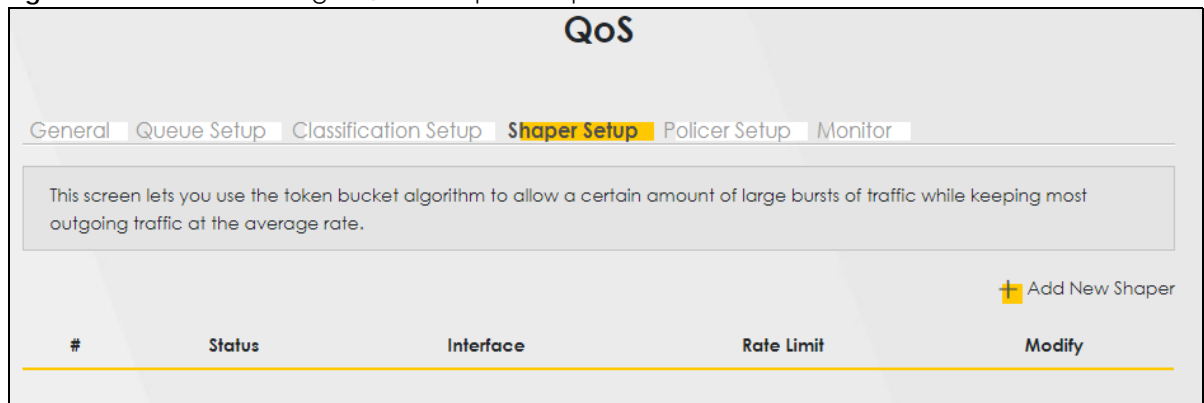
Table 60 Classification Setup: Add/Edit (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
802.1P Mark	Select a priority level with which the Zyxel Device replaces the IEEE 802.1p priority field in the packets.  If you select <b>Unchange</b> , the Zyxel Device keep the 802.1p priority field in the packets.
Step4: Class Routing	
Forward to Interface	Select a WAN interface through which traffic of this class will be forwarded out. If you select <b>Unchange</b> , the Zyxel Device forward traffic of this class according to the default routing table.
Step5: Outgoing Queue Selection	
To Queue Index	Select a queue that applies to this class.  You should have configured a queue in the <b>Queue Setup</b> screen already.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to exit this screen without saving any changes.
OK	Click <b>OK</b> to save your changes.

## 10.6 QoS Shaper Setup

This screen lets you use the token bucket algorithm to allow a certain amount of large bursts of traffic while keeping most outgoing traffic at the average rate. Click **Network Setting > QoS > Shaper Setup**. The screen appears as shown.

Figure 124 Network Setting &gt; QoS &gt; Shaper Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 61 Network Setting &gt; QoS &gt; Shaper Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New Shaper	Click this to create a new entry.
#	This is the index number of the entry.
Status	This field displays whether the shaper is active or not. A yellow bulb signifies that this policer is active. A gray bulb signifies that this shaper is not active.
Interface	This shows the name of the Zyxel Device's interface through which traffic in this shaper applies.

Table 61 Network Setting &gt; QoS &gt; Shaper Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Rate Limit	This shows the average rate limit of traffic bursts for this shaper.
Modify	Click the <b>Edit</b> icon to edit the shaper.  Click the <b>Delete</b> icon to delete an existing shaper. Note that subsequent rules move up by one when you take this action.


## 10.6.1 Add/Edit a QoS Shaper

Click **Add New Shaper** in the **Shaper Setup** screen or the **Edit** icon next to a shaper to show the following screen.

Figure 125 Shaper Setup: Add/Edit

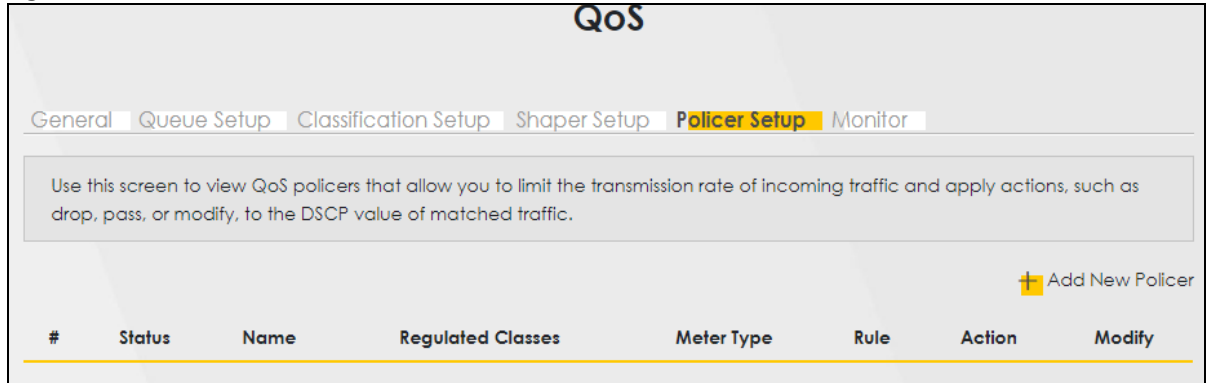
The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 62 Shaper Setup: Add/Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Click this switch to enable or disable the shaper. When the switch turns blue  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
Interface	Select a Zyxel Device's interface through which traffic in this shaper applies.
Rate Limit	Enter the average rate limit of traffic bursts for this shaper.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to exit this screen without saving any changes.
OK	Click <b>OK</b> to save your changes.

## 10.7 QoS Policer Setup

Use this screen to view QoS policers that allow you to limit the transmission rate of incoming traffic and apply actions, such as drop, pass, or modify, to the DSCP value of matched traffic. Click **Network Setting > QoS > Policer Setup**. The screen appears as shown.

**Figure 126** Network Setting > QoS > Policer Setup

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 63** Network Setting > QoS > Policer Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add new Policer	Click this to create a new entry.
#	This is the index number of the entry.
Status	This field displays whether the policer is active or not. A yellow bulb signifies that this policer is active. A gray bulb signifies that this policer is not active.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name of this policer.
Regulated Classes	This field displays the name of a QoS classifier
Meter Type	This field displays the type of QoS metering algorithm used in this policer.
Rule	These are the rates and burst sizes against which the policer checks the traffic of the member QoS classes.
Action	This shows how the policer has the Zyxel Device treat different types of traffic belonging to the policer's member QoS classes.
Modify	Click the <b>Edit</b> icon to edit the policer.  Click the <b>Delete</b> icon to delete an existing policer. Note that subsequent rules move up by one when you take this action.

### 10.7.1 Add/Edit a QoS Policer

Click **Add New Policer** in the **Policer Setup** screen or the **Edit** icon next to a policer to show the following screen.

Figure 127 Policer Setup: Add/Edit

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 64 Policer Setup: Add/Edit


LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Click this switch to enable or disable the policer. When the switch turns blue  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
Name	Enter the descriptive name of this policer.
Meter Type	This shows the traffic metering algorithm used in this policer.  The <b>Simple Token Bucket</b> algorithm uses tokens in a bucket to control when traffic can be transmitted. Each token represents one byte. The algorithm allows bursts of up to $b$ bytes which is also the bucket size.  The <b>Single Rate Three Color Marker</b> (srTCM) is based on the token bucket filter and identifies packets by comparing them to the Committed Information Rate (CIR), the Committed Burst Size (CBS) and the Excess Burst Size (EBS).  The <b>Two Rate Three Color Marker</b> (trTCM) is based on the token bucket filter and identifies packets by comparing them to the Committed Information Rate (CIR) and the Peak Information Rate (PIR).
Committed Rate	Specify the committed rate. When the incoming traffic rate of the member QoS classes is less than the committed rate, the device applies the conforming action to the traffic.

Table 64 Policer Setup: Add/Edit (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Committed Burst Size	Specify the committed burst size for packet bursts. This must be equal to or less than the peak burst size (two rate three color) or excess burst size (single rate three color) if it is also configured.  This is the maximum size of the (first) token bucket in a traffic metering algorithm.
Excess Burst Size	Specify the additional amount of bytes that are admitted at the committed rate besides the committed burst size.  This is the maximum size of the second token bucket in the srTCM.  This field is only available when you select <b>Single Rate Three Color</b> in the <b>Meter Type</b> field.
Peak Rate	Specify the maximum rate at which packets are admitted to the network.  The peak rate should be greater than or equal to the committed rate. This is to specify how many bytes of tokens are added to the second bucket every second in the trTCM.  This field is only available when you select <b>Two Rate Three Color</b> in the <b>Meter Type</b> field.
Peak Burst Size	Specify the maximum amount of bytes that are admitted at the committed rate.  This is the maximum size of the second token bucket in the trTCM.  This field is only available when you select <b>Two Rate Three Color</b> in the <b>Meter Type</b> field.
Conforming Action	Specify what the Zyxel Device does for packets within the committed rate and burst size (green-marked packets). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Pass:</b> Send the packets without modification.</li> <li>• <b>DSCP Mark:</b> Change the DSCP mark value of the packets. Enter the DSCP mark value to use.</li> </ul>
Partial Conforming Action	Specify the action that the Zyxel Device takes on yellow-marked packets.  Select <b>Pass</b> to forward the packets.  Select <b>Drop</b> to discard the packets.  Select <b>DSCP Mark</b> to assign a specified DSCP number (between 0 and 63) to the packets and forward them. The packets are dropped if there is congestion on the network.  This field is only available when you select <b>Single/Two Rate Three Color</b> in the <b>Meter Type</b> field.
Non-Conforming Action	Specify what the Zyxel Device does for packets that exceed the excess burst size or peak rate and burst size (red-marked packets). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Drop:</b> Discard the packets.</li> <li>• <b>DSCP Mark:</b> Change the DSCP mark value of the packets. Enter the DSCP mark value to use. The packets may be dropped if there is congestion on the network.</li> </ul>
Available Class	Select a QoS classifier to apply this QoS policer to traffic that matches the QoS classifier.
Selected Class	Highlight a QoS classifier in the <b>Available Class</b> box and use the > button to move it to the <b>Selected Class</b> box.  To remove a QoS classifier from the <b>Selected Class</b> box, select it and use the < button.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to exit this screen without saving any changes.
OK	Click <b>OK</b> to save your changes.

## 10.8 Technical Reference

The following section contains additional technical information about the Zyxel Device features described in this chapter.

## IEEE 802.1Q Tag

The IEEE 802.1Q standard defines an explicit VLAN tag in the MAC header to identify the VLAN membership of a frame across bridges. A VLAN tag includes the 12-bit VLAN ID and 3-bit user priority. The VLAN ID associates a frame with a specific VLAN and provides the information that devices need to process the frame across the network.

IEEE 802.1p specifies the user priority field and defines up to eight separate traffic types. The following table describes the traffic types defined in the IEEE 802.1d standard (which incorporates the 802.1p).

Table 65 IEEE 802.1p Priority Level and Traffic Type

PRIORITY LEVEL	TRAFFIC TYPE
Level 7	Typically used for network control traffic such as router configuration messages.
Level 6	Typically used for voice traffic that is especially sensitive to jitter (jitter is the variations in delay).
Level 5	Typically used for video that consumes high bandwidth and is sensitive to jitter.
Level 4	Typically used for controlled load, latency-sensitive traffic such as SNA (Systems Network Architecture) transactions.
Level 3	Typically used for "excellent effort" or better than best effort and would include important business traffic that can tolerate some delay.
Level 2	This is for "spare bandwidth".
Level 1	This is typically used for non-critical "background" traffic such as bulk transfers that are allowed but that should not affect other applications and users.
Level 0	Typically used for best-effort traffic.

## DiffServ

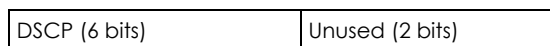
QoS is used to prioritize source-to-destination traffic flows. All packets in the flow are given the same priority. You can use CoS (class of service) to give different priorities to different packet types.

DiffServ (Differentiated Services) is a class of service (CoS) model that marks packets so that they receive specific per-hop treatment at DiffServ-compliant network devices along the route based on the application types and traffic flow. Packets are marked with DiffServ Code Points (DSCPs) indicating the level of service desired. This allows the intermediary DiffServ-compliant network devices to handle the packets differently depending on the code points without the need to negotiate paths or remember state information for every flow. In addition, applications do not have to request a particular service or give advanced notice of where the traffic is going.

## DSCP and Per-Hop Behavior

DiffServ defines a new Differentiated Services (DS) field to replace the Type of Service (TOS) field in the IP header. The DS field contains a 2-bit unused field and a 6-bit DSCP field which can define up to 64 service levels. The following figure illustrates the DS field.

DSCP is backward compatible with the three precedence bits in the ToS octet so that non-DiffServ compliant, ToS-enabled network device will not conflict with the DSCP mapping.



The DSCP value determines the forwarding behavior, the PHB (Per-Hop Behavior), that each packet gets across the DiffServ network. Based on the marking rule, different kinds of traffic can be marked for

different kinds of forwarding. Resources can then be allocated according to the DSCP values and the configured policies.

## IP Precedence

Similar to IEEE 802.1p prioritization at layer-2, you can use IP precedence to prioritize packets in a layer-3 network. IP precedence uses three bits of the eight-bit ToS (Type of Service) field in the IP header. There are eight classes of services (ranging from zero to seven) in IP precedence. Zero is the lowest priority level and seven is the highest.

## Automatic Priority Queue Assignment

If you enable QoS on the Zyxel Device, the Zyxel Device can automatically base on the IEEE 802.1p priority level, IP precedence and/or packet length to assign priority to traffic which does not match a class.

The following table shows you the internal layer-2 and layer-3 QoS mapping on the Zyxel Device. On the Zyxel Device, traffic assigned to higher priority queues gets through faster while traffic in lower index queues is dropped if the network is congested.

Table 66 Internal Layer2 and Layer3 QoS Mapping

PRIORITY QUEUE	LAYER 2	LAYER 3		
	IEEE 802.1P USER PRIORITY (ETHERNET PRIORITY)	TOS (IP PRECEDENCE)	DSCP	IP PACKET LENGTH (BYTE)
0	1	0	000000	
1	2			
2	0	0	000000	>1100
3	3	1	001110 001100 001010 001000	250~1100
4	4	2	010110 010100 010010 010000	
5	5	3	011110 011100 011010 011000	<250



Table 66 Internal Layer2 and Layer3 QoS Mapping (continued)

PRIORITY QUEUE	LAYER 2	LAYER 3		
	IEEE 802.1P USER PRIORITY (ETHERNET PRIORITY)	TOS (IP PRECEDENCE)	DSCP	IP PACKET LENGTH (BYTE)
6	6	4	100110	
			100100	
		100010		
		100000		
7	7	5	101110	
			101000	
7	7	6	110000	
		7	111000	

## Token Bucket

The token bucket algorithm uses tokens in a bucket to control when traffic can be transmitted. The bucket stores tokens, each of which represents one byte. The algorithm allows bursts of up to  $b$  bytes which is also the bucket size, so the bucket can hold up to  $b$  tokens. Tokens are generated and added into the bucket at a constant rate. The following shows how tokens work with packets:

- A packet can be transmitted if the number of tokens in the bucket is equal to or greater than the size of the packet (in bytes).
- After a packet is transmitted, a number of tokens corresponding to the packet size is removed from the bucket.
- If there are no tokens in the bucket, the Zyxel Device stops transmitting until enough tokens are generated.
- If not enough tokens are available, the Zyxel Device treats the packet in either one of the following ways:

In traffic shaping:

- Holds it in the queue until enough tokens are available in the bucket.

In traffic policing:

- Drops it.
- Transmits it but adds a DSCP mark. The Zyxel Device may drop these marked packets if the network is overloaded.

Configure the bucket size to be equal to or less than the amount of the bandwidth that the interface can support. It does not help if you set it to a bucket size over the interface's capability. The smaller the bucket size, the lower the data transmission rate and that may cause outgoing packets to be dropped. A larger transmission rate requires a big bucket size. For example, use a bucket size of 10 kbytes to get the transmission rate up to 10 Mbps.

## Single Rate Three Color Marker

The Single Rate Three Color Marker (srTCM, defined in RFC 2697) is a type of traffic policing that identifies packets by comparing them to one user-defined rate, the Committed Information Rate (CIR), and two burst sizes: the Committed Burst Size (CBS) and Excess Burst Size (EBS).

The srTCM evaluates incoming packets and marks them with one of three colors which refer to packet loss priority levels. High packet loss priority level is referred to as red, medium is referred to as yellow and low is referred to as green.

The srTCM is based on the token bucket filter and has two token buckets (CBS and EBS). Tokens are generated and added into the bucket at a constant rate, called Committed Information Rate (CIR). When the first bucket (CBS) is full, new tokens overflow into the second bucket (EBS).

All packets are evaluated against the CBS. If a packet does not exceed the CBS it is marked green. Otherwise it is evaluated against the EBS. If it is below the EBS then it is marked yellow. If it exceeds the EBS then it is marked red.

The following shows how tokens work with incoming packets in srTCM:

- A packet arrives. The packet is marked green and can be transmitted if the number of tokens in the CBS bucket is equal to or greater than the size of the packet (in bytes).
- After a packet is transmitted, a number of tokens corresponding to the packet size is removed from the CBS bucket.
- If there are not enough tokens in the CBS bucket, the Zyxel Device checks the EBS bucket. The packet is marked yellow if there are sufficient tokens in the EBS bucket. Otherwise, the packet is marked red. No tokens are removed if the packet is dropped.

## Two Rate Three Color Marker

The Two Rate Three Color Marker (trTCM, defined in RFC 2698) is a type of traffic policing that identifies packets by comparing them to two user-defined rates: the Committed Information Rate (CIR) and the Peak Information Rate (PIR). The CIR specifies the average rate at which packets are admitted to the network. The PIR is greater than or equal to the CIR. CIR and PIR values are based on the guaranteed and maximum bandwidth respectively as negotiated between a service provider and client.

The trTCM evaluates incoming packets and marks them with one of three colors which refer to packet loss priority levels. High packet loss priority level is referred to as red, medium is referred to as yellow and low is referred to as green.

The trTCM is based on the token bucket filter and has two token buckets (Committed Burst Size (CBS) and Peak Burst Size (PBS)). Tokens are generated and added into the two buckets at the CIR and PIR respectively.

All packets are evaluated against the PIR. If a packet exceeds the PIR it is marked red. Otherwise it is evaluated against the CIR. If it exceeds the CIR then it is marked yellow. Finally, if it is below the CIR then it is marked green.

The following shows how tokens work with incoming packets in trTCM:

- A packet arrives. If the number of tokens in the PBS bucket is less than the size of the packet (in bytes), the packet is marked red and may be dropped regardless of the CBS bucket. No tokens are removed if the packet is dropped.
- If the PBS bucket has enough tokens, the Zyxel Device checks the CBS bucket. The packet is marked green and can be transmitted if the number of tokens in the CBS bucket is equal to or greater than the size of the packet (in bytes). Otherwise, the packet is marked yellow.

# CHAPTER 11

# Network Address Translation (NAT)

## 11.1 NAT Overview

This chapter discusses how to configure NAT on the Zyxel Device. NAT (Network Address Translation - NAT, RFC 1631) is the translation of the IP address of a host in a packet; for example, the source address of an outgoing packet, used within one network, to a different IP address known within another network.

### 11.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- Use the **Port Forwarding** screen to configure forward incoming service requests to the server(s) on your local network ([Section 11.2 on page 236](#)).
- Use the **Port Triggering** screen to add and configure the Zyxel Device's trigger port settings ([Section 11.3 on page 240](#)).
- Use the **DMZ** screen to configure a default server ([Section 11.4 on page 244](#)).
- Use the **ALG** screen to enable and disable the ALGs in the Zyxel Device ([Section 11.5 on page 245](#)).
- Use the **Address Mapping** screen to configure the Zyxel Device's address mapping settings ([Section 11.6 on page 246](#)).
- Use the **Sessions** screen to configure the Zyxel Device's maximum number of NAT sessions ([Section 11.6 on page 246](#)).

### 11.1.2 What You Need To Know

#### Inside/Outside

Inside/outside denotes where a host is located relative to the Zyxel Device, for example, the computers of your subscribers are the inside hosts, while the web servers on the Internet are the outside hosts.

#### Global/Local

Global/local denotes the IP address of a host in a packet as the packet traverses a router, for example, the local address refers to the IP address of a host when the packet is in the local network, while the global address refers to the IP address of the host when the same packet is traveling in the WAN side.

#### NAT

In the simplest form, NAT changes the source IP address in a packet received from a subscriber (the inside local address) to another (the inside global address) before forwarding the packet to the WAN

side. When the response comes back, NAT translates the destination address (the inside global address) back to the inside local address before forwarding it to the original inside host.

## Port Forwarding

A port forwarding set is a list of inside (behind NAT on the LAN) servers, for example, web or FTP, that you can make visible to the outside world even though NAT makes your whole inside network appear as a single computer to the outside world.

## Finding Out More

See [Section 11.8 on page 248](#) for advanced technical information on NAT.

# 11.2 Port Forwarding

Use **Port Forwarding** to forward incoming service requests from the Internet to the server(s) on your local network. Port forwarding is commonly used when you want to host online gaming, P2P file sharing, or other servers on your network.

You may enter a single port number or a range of port numbers to be forwarded, and the local IP address of the desired server. The port number identifies a service; for example, web service is on port 80 and FTP on port 21. In some cases, such as for unknown services or where one server can support more than one service (for example both FTP and web service), it might be better to specify a range of port numbers. You can allocate a server IP address that corresponds to a port or a range of ports.

The most often used port numbers and services are shown in [Appendix C on page 415](#). Please refer to RFC 1700 for further information about port numbers.

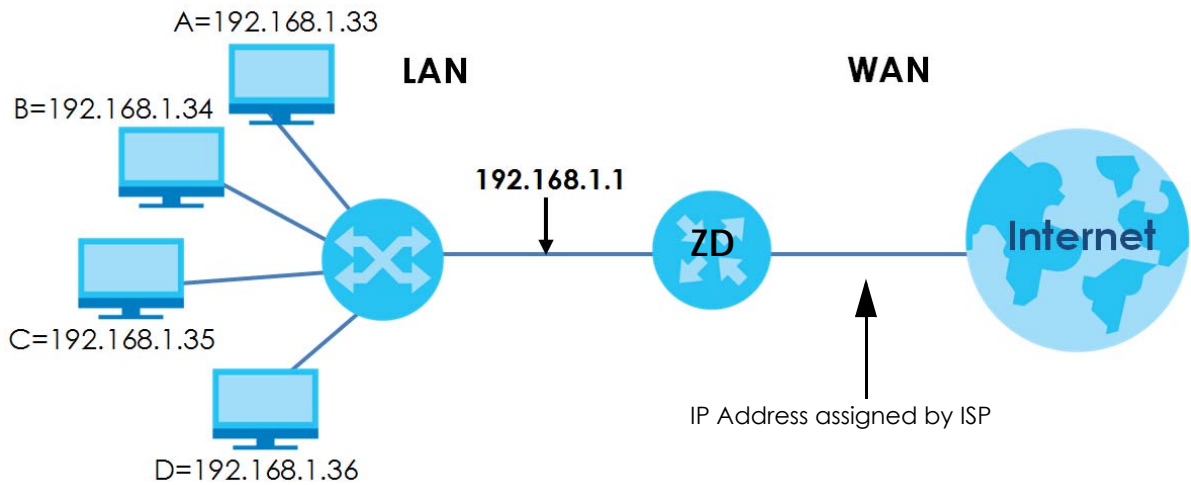
Note: TCP port 7547 is reserved for system use.

Note: Many residential broadband ISP accounts do not allow you to run any server processes (such as a Web or FTP server) from your location. Your ISP may periodically check for servers and may suspend your account if it discovers any active services at your location. If you are unsure, refer to your ISP.

## Configuring Servers Behind Port Forwarding (Example)

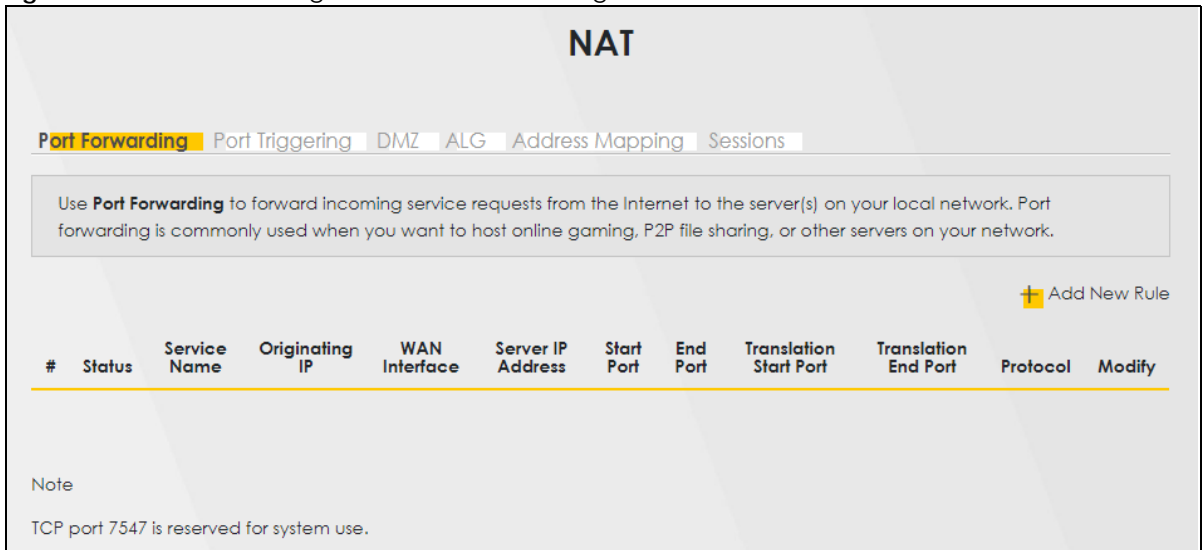
Let's say you want to assign ports 21-25 to one FTP, Telnet and SMTP server (**A** in the example), port 80 to another (**B** in the example) and assign a default server IP address of 192.168.1.35 to a third (**C** in the example). You assign the LAN IP addresses and the ISP assigns the WAN IP address. The NAT network appears as a single host on the Internet.

**Figure 128** Multiple Servers Behind NAT Example



Click **Network Setting > NAT > Port Forwarding** to open the following screen.

**Figure 129** Network Setting > NAT > Port Forwarding



The following table describes the fields in this screen.

**Table 67** Network Setting > NAT > Port Forwarding

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New Rule	Click this to add a new rule.
#	This is the index number of the entry.
Status	This field displays whether the NAT rule is active or not. A yellow bulb signifies that this rule is active. A gray bulb signifies that this rule is not active.
Service Name	This shows the service's name.
Originating IP	This field displays the source IP address from the WAN interface.
WAN Interface	This shows the WAN interface through which the service is forwarded.
Server IP Address	This is the server's IP address.
Start Port	This is the first external port number that identifies a service.

Table 67 Network Setting &gt; NAT &gt; Port Forwarding (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
End Port	This is the last external port number that identifies a service.
Translation Start Port	This is the first internal port number that identifies a service.
Translation End Port	This is the last internal port number that identifies a service.
Protocol	This shows the IP protocol supported by this virtual server, whether it is <b>TCP</b> , <b>UDP</b> , or <b>TCP/UDP</b> .
Modify	Click the <b>Edit</b> icon to edit this rule.  Click the <b>Delete</b> icon to delete an existing rule.

## 11.2.1 Add/Edit Port Forwarding

Click **Add New Rule** in the **Port Forwarding** screen or click the **Edit** icon next to an existing rule to open the following screen. Specify either a port or a range of ports, a server IP address, and a protocol to configure a port forwarding rule.

Note: To configure port forwarding, you need to have the same configurations in the **Start Port**, **End Port**, **Translation Start Port**, and **Translation End Port** fields.

Note: To configure port translation, you need to have different configurations in the **Start Port**, **End Port**, **Translation Start Port**, and **Translation End Port** fields.

Note: TCP port 7547 is reserved for system use.

Figure 130 Port Forwarding: Add/Edit

**Add New Rule**

Active

Service Name

WAN Interface Default ▼

Start Port

End Port

Translation Start Port

Translation End Port

Server IP Address

Configure Originating IP  Enable

Protocol TCP ▼

**Note**

1.To configure port forwarding, you need to have the same configurations in the **Start Port**, **End Port**, **Translation Start Port**, and **Translation End Port** fields.

To configure port translation, you need to have different configurations in the **Start Port**, **End Port**, **Translation Start Port**, and **Translation End Port** fields.

Here's an example to configure port translation. Configure **Start Port** to 100, **End Port** to 120, **Translation Start Port** to 200, and **Translation End Port** to 220.

2.TCP port 7547 is reserved for system use.

Cancel OK

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 68 Port Forwarding: Add/Edit


LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Click this switch to enable or disable the rule. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
Service Name	Enter a name to identify this rule using keyboard characters (A-Z, a-z, 1-2 and so on).
WAN Interface	Select the WAN interface through which the service is forwarded. You must have already configured a WAN connection with NAT enabled.
Start Port	Enter the original destination port for the packets. To forward only one port, enter the port number again in the <b>End Port</b> field. To forward a series of ports, enter the start port number here and the end port number in the <b>End Port</b> field.

Table 68 Port Forwarding: Add/Edit (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
End Port	Enter the last port of the original destination port range.  To forward only one port, enter the port number in the <b>Start Port</b> field above and then enter it again in this field.  To forward a series of ports, enter the last port number in a series that begins with the port number in the <b>Start Port</b> field above.
Translation Start Port	This shows the port number to which you want the Zyxel Device to translate the incoming port. For a range of ports, enter the first number of the range to which you want the incoming ports translated.
Translation End Port	This shows the last port of the translated port range.
Server IP Address	Enter the inside IP address of the virtual server here.
Configure Originating IP	Select <b>Enable</b> to enter the source IP address of WAN interface.
Originating IP	Enter the source IP address of WAN interface.
Protocol	Select the protocol supported by this virtual server. Choices are <b>TCP</b> , <b>UDP</b> , or <b>TCP/UDP</b> .
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to exit this screen without saving any changes.
OK	Click <b>OK</b> to save your changes.

## 11.3 Port Triggering

Some services use a dedicated range of ports on the client side and a dedicated range of ports on the server side. With regular port forwarding, you set a forwarding port in NAT to forward a service (coming in from the server on the WAN) to the IP address of a computer on the client side (LAN). The problem is that port forwarding only forwards a service to a single LAN IP address. In order to use the same service on a different LAN computer, you have to manually replace the LAN computer's IP address in the forwarding port with another LAN computer's IP address.

Trigger port forwarding addresses this problem. Trigger port forwarding allows computers on the LAN to dynamically take turns using the service. The Zyxel Device records the IP address of a LAN computer that sends traffic to the WAN to request a service with a specific port number and protocol (a "trigger" port). When the Zyxel Device's WAN port receives a response with a specific port number and protocol ("open" port), the Zyxel Device forwards the traffic to the LAN IP address of the computer that sent the request. After that computer's connection for that service closes, another computer on the LAN can use the service in the same manner. This way you do not need to configure a new IP address each time you want a different LAN computer to use the application.

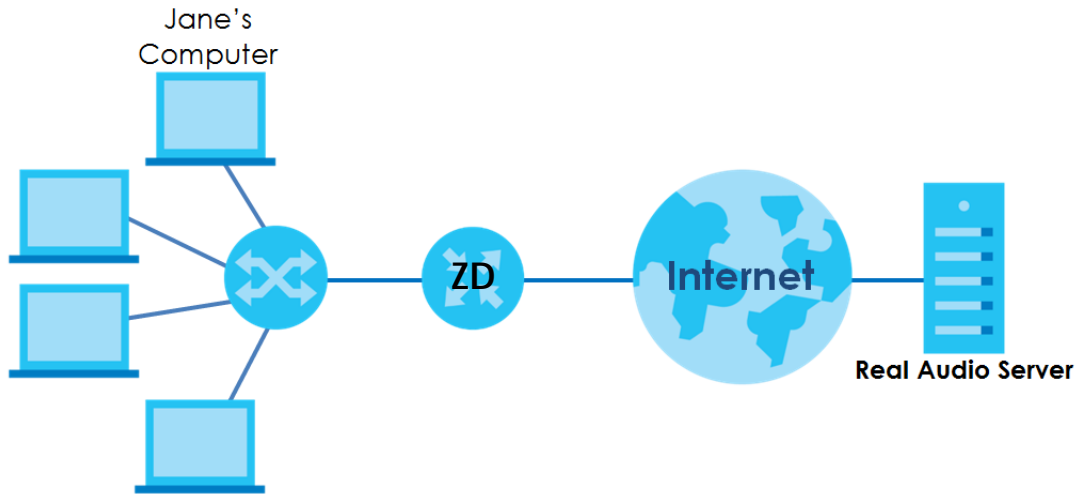
Note: TCP port 7547 is reserved for system use.

Note: The maximum number of trigger ports for a single rule or all rules is 999.

Note: The maximum number of open ports for a single rule or all rules is 999.

For example:



**Figure 131** Trigger Port Forwarding Process: Example

- 1 Jane requests a file from the Real Audio server (port 7070).
- 2 Port 7070 is a "trigger" port and causes the Zyxel Device to record Jane's computer IP address. The Zyxel Device associates Jane's computer IP address with the "open" port range of 6970-7170.
- 3 The Real Audio server responds using a port number ranging between 6970-7170.
- 4 The Zyxel Device forwards the traffic to Jane's computer IP address.
- 5 Only Jane can connect to the Real Audio server until the connection is closed or times out. The Zyxel Device times out in three minutes with UDP (User Datagram Protocol) or two hours with TCP/IP (Transfer Control Protocol/Internet Protocol).


Click **Network Setting > NAT > Port Triggering** to open the following screen. Use this screen to view your Zyxel Device's trigger port settings.

Figure 132 Network Setting &gt; NAT &gt; Port Triggering

## NAT

[Port Forwarding](#) | **[Port Triggering](#)** | [DMZ](#) | [ALG](#) | [Address Mapping](#) | [Sessions](#)

Trigger port forwarding allows computers on the LAN to dynamically take turns using the service. The Zyxel Device records the IP address of a LAN computer that sends traffic to the WAN to request a service with a specific port number and protocol (a "trigger" port). When the Zyxel Device's WAN port receives a response with a specific port number and protocol ("open" port), the Zyxel Device forwards the traffic to the LAN IP address of the computer that sent the request. After that computer's connection for that service closes, another computer on the LAN can use the service in the same manner. This way you do not need to configure a new IP address each time you want a different LAN computer to use the application.

 Add New Rule

#	Status	Service Name	WAN Interface	Trigger Start Port	Trigger End Port	Trigger Proto.	Open Start Port	Open End Port	Open Protocol	Modify
<p>Note</p> <p>(1) The maximum number of trigger ports for a single rule or all rules is 999.</p> <p>(2) The maximum number of open ports for a single rule or all rules is 999.</p> <p>(3) TCP port 7547 is reserved for system use.</p>										

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 69 Network Setting &gt; NAT &gt; Port Triggering

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New Rule	Click this to create a new rule.
#	This is the index number of the entry.
Status	This field displays whether the port triggering rule is active or not. A yellow bulb signifies that this rule is active. A gray bulb signifies that this rule is not active.
Service Name	This field displays the name of the service used by this rule.
WAN Interface	This field shows the WAN interface through which the service is forwarded.
Trigger Start Port	The trigger port is a port (or a range of ports) that causes (or triggers) the Zyxel Device to record the IP address of the LAN computer that sent the traffic to a server on the WAN. This is the first port number that identifies a service.
Trigger End Port	This is the last port number that identifies a service.
Trigger Proto.	This is the trigger transport layer protocol.
Open Start Port	The open port is a port (or a range of ports) that a server on the WAN uses when it sends out a particular service. The Zyxel Device forwards the traffic with this port (or range of ports) to the client computer on the LAN that requested the service. This is the first port number that identifies a service.
Open End Port	This is the last port number that identifies a service.
Open Proto.	This is the open transport layer protocol.
Modify	Click the <b>Edit</b> icon to edit this rule. Click the <b>Delete</b> icon to delete an existing rule.

### 11.3.1 Add/Edit Port Triggering Rule

This screen lets you create new port triggering rules. Click **Add new rule** in the **Port Triggering** screen or click a rule's **Edit** icon to open the following screen. Use this screen to configure a port or range of ports and protocols for sending out requests and for receiving responses.

**Figure 133** Port Triggering: Add/Edit

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 70** Port Triggering: Configuration Add/Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select <b>Enable</b> or <b>Disable</b> to activate or deactivate the rule.
Service Name	Enter a name to identify this rule using keyboard characters (A-Z, a-z, 1-2 and so on).
WAN Interface	Select a WAN interface for which you want to configure port triggering rules.
Trigger Start Port	The trigger port is a port (or a range of ports) that causes (or triggers) the Zyxel Device to record the IP address of the LAN computer that sent the traffic to a server on the WAN. Type a port number or the starting port number in a range of port numbers.
Trigger End Port	Type a port number or the ending port number in a range of port numbers.
Trigger Protocol	Select the transport layer protocol from <b>TCP</b> , <b>UDP</b> , or <b>TCP/UDP</b> .
Open Start Port	The open port is a port (or a range of ports) that a server on the WAN uses when it sends out a particular service. The Zyxel Device forwards the traffic with this port (or range of ports) to the client computer on the LAN that requested the service. Type a port number or the starting port number in a range of port numbers.
Open End Port	Type a port number or the ending port number in a range of port numbers.
Open Protocol	Select the transport layer protocol from <b>TCP</b> , <b>UDP</b> , or <b>TCP/UDP</b> .
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to exit this screen without saving any changes.
OK	Click <b>OK</b> to save your changes.

## 11.4 DMZ Settings

Use this screen to specify the IP address of a default server to receive packets from ports not specified in the **Port Triggering** screen. The DMZ (DeMilitarized Zone) is a network between the WAN and the LAN that is accessible to devices on both the WAN and LAN with firewall protection. Devices on the WAN can initiate connections to devices on the DMZ but not to those on the LAN.

You can put public servers, such as email, web, and FTP servers, on the DMZ to provide services on both the WAN and LAN. To use this feature, you first need to assign a DMZ host.

Note: Use an IPv4 address for the DMZ server.

Note: Enter the IP address of the default server in the **Default Server Address** field, and click **Apply** to activate the DMZ host. Otherwise, clear the IP address in the **Default Server Address** field, and click **Apply** to deactivate the DMZ host.

**Figure 134** Network Setting > NAT > DMZ

**NAT**

Port Forwarding | Port Triggering | **DMZ** | ALG | Address Mapping | Sessions

A client in the Demilitarized Zone (DMZ) is no longer behind the Zyxel Device and therefore can run any Internet applications such as video conferencing and Internet gaming without restrictions. This, however, may pose a security threat to the Zyxel Device.

Default Server Address: 0 . 0 . 0 . 0

Note: Enter the IP address of the default server in the **Default Server Address** field, and click **Apply** to activate the DMZ host. Otherwise, clear the IP address in the **Default Server Address** field, and click **Apply** to deactivate the DMZ host.

Cancel | **Apply**

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 71 Network Setting > NAT > DMZ

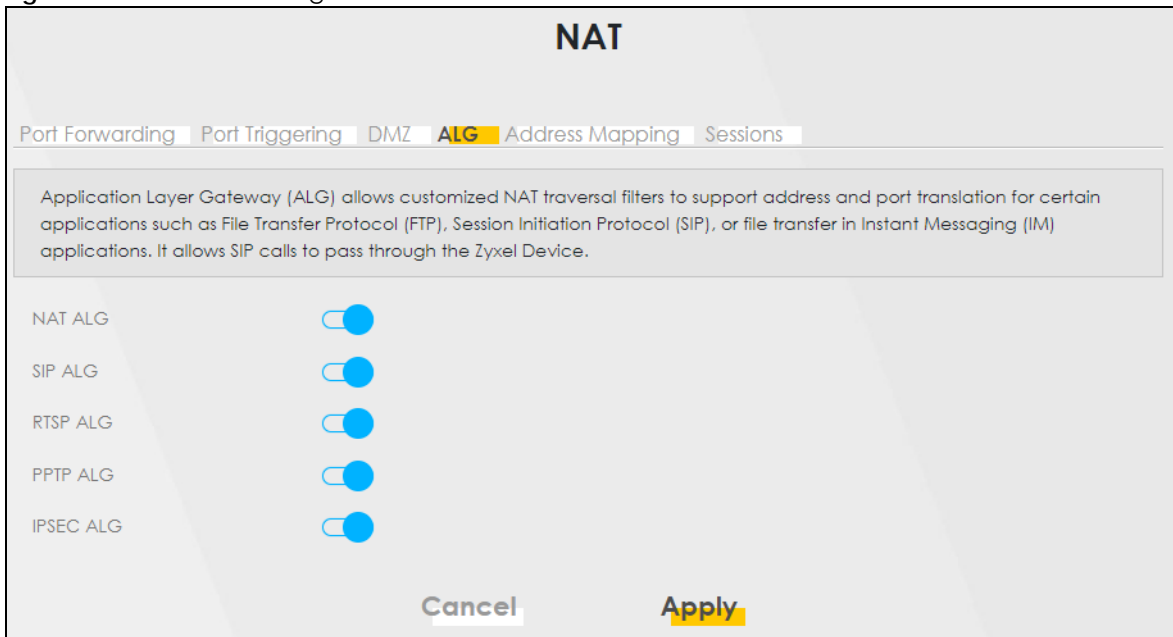
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Default Server Address	Enter the IP address of the default server which receives packets from ports that are not specified in the <b>NAT Port Forwarding</b> screen.  Note: If you do not assign a <b>Default Server Address</b> , the Zyxel Device discards all packets received for ports that are not specified in the <b>NAT Port Forwarding</b> screen.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to restore your previously saved settings.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.

## 11.5 ALG Settings

Application Layer Gateway (ALG) allows customized NAT traversal filters to support address and port translation for certain applications such as File Transfer Protocol (FTP), Session Initiation Protocol (SIP), or file transfer in Instant Messaging (IM) applications. It allows SIP calls to pass through the Zyxel Device. When the Zyxel Device registers with the SIP register server, the SIP ALG translates the Zyxel Device's private IP address inside the SIP data stream to a public IP address. You do not need to use STUN or an outbound proxy if your Zyxel Device is behind a SIP ALG.

Use this screen to enable and disable the ALGs in the Zyxel Device. To access this screen, click **Network Setting > NAT > ALG**.

**Figure 135** Network Setting > NAT > ALG



The following table describes the fields in this screen.

**Table 72** Network Setting > NAT > ALG

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
NAT ALG	Enable this to make sure applications such as FTP and file transfer in IM applications work correctly with port-forwarding and address-mapping rules.
SIP ALG	Enable this to make sure SIP (VoIP) works correctly with port-forwarding and address-mapping rules.
RTSP ALG	Enable this to have the Zyxel Device detect RTSP traffic and help build RTSP sessions through its NAT. The Real Time Streaming (media control) Protocol (RTSP) is a remote control for multimedia on the Internet.
PPTP ALG	Enable this to turn on the PPTP ALG on the Zyxel Device to detect PPTP traffic and help build PPTP sessions through the Zyxel Device's NAT.
IPSEC ALG	Enable this to turn on the IPsec ALG on the Zyxel Device to detect IPsec traffic and help build IPsec sessions through the Zyxel Device's NAT.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to restore your previously saved settings.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.

## 11.6 Address Mapping

Address mapping can map local IP Addresses to global IP addresses. Ordering your rules is important because the Zyxel Device applies the rules in the order that you specify. When a rule matches the current packet, the Zyxel Device takes the corresponding action and the remaining rules are ignored.

Click **Network Setting > NAT > Address Mapping** to display the following screen.

**Figure 136** Network Setting > NAT > Address Mapping

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

**Table 73** Network Setting > NAT > Address Mapping

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New Rule	Click this to create a new rule.
Rule Name	This is the name of the rule.
Local Start IP	This is the starting Inside Local IP Address (ILA).
Local End IP	This is the ending Inside Local IP Address (ILA). If the rule is for all local IP addresses, then this field displays 0.0.0.0 as the Local Start IP address and 255.255.255.255 as the Local End IP address. This field is blank for <b>One-to-One</b> mapping types.
Global Start IP	This is the starting Inside Global IP Address (IGA). Enter 0.0.0.0 here if you have a dynamic IP address from your ISP. You can only do this for the <b>Many-to-One</b> mapping type.
Global End IP	This is the ending Inside Global IP Address (IGA). This field is blank for <b>One-to-One</b> and <b>Many-to-One</b> mapping types.
Type	This is the address mapping type.  <b>One-to-One:</b> This mode maps one local IP address to one global IP address. Note that port numbers do not change for the One-to-one NAT mapping type.  <b>Many-to-One:</b> This mode maps multiple local IP addresses to one global IP address. This is equivalent to SUA (for example, PAT, port address translation), the Zyxel Device's Single User Account feature that previous routers supported only.  <b>Many-to-Many:</b> This mode maps multiple local IP addresses to shared global IP addresses.
WAN Interface	This is the WAN interface to which the address mapping rule applies.
Modify	Click the <b>Edit</b> icon to go to the screen where you can edit the address mapping rule.  Click the <b>Delete</b> icon to delete an existing address mapping rule. Note that subsequent address mapping rules move up by one when you take this action.

## 11.6.1 Add/Edit Address Mapping Rule

To add or edit an address mapping rule, click **Add new rule** or the rule's edit icon in the **Address Mapping** screen to display the screen shown next. Specify the NAT mapping type, the local and global IP address(es), and a WAN interface in this screen.

**Figure 137** Address Mapping: Add/Edit

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

**Table 74** Address Mapping: Add/Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Rule Name	Type up to 20 alphanumeric characters for the name of this rule.
Type	Choose the IP/port mapping type from one of the following.  <b>One-to-One:</b> This mode maps one local IP address to one global IP address. Note that port numbers do not change for the One-to-one NAT mapping type.  <b>Many-to-One:</b> This mode maps multiple local IP addresses to one global IP address. This is equivalent to SUA (for example, PAT, port address translation), the Zyxel Device's Single User Account feature that previous routers supported only.  <b>Many-to-Many:</b> This mode maps multiple local IP addresses to shared global IP addresses.
Local Start IP	Enter the starting Inside Local IP Address (ILA).
Local End IP	Enter the ending Inside Local IP Address (ILA). If the rule is for all local IP addresses, then this field displays 0.0.0.0 as the Local Start IP address and 255.255.255.255 as the Local End IP address. This field is blank for <b>One-to-One</b> mapping types.
Global Start IP	Enter the starting Inside Global IP Address (IGA). Enter 0.0.0.0 here if you have a dynamic IP address from your ISP. You can only do this for the <b>Many-to-One</b> mapping type.
Global End IP	Enter the ending Inside Global IP Address (IGA). This field is blank for <b>One-to-One</b> and <b>Many-to-One</b> mapping types.
WAN Interface	Select a WAN interface to which the address mapping rule applies.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to exit this screen without saving any changes.
OK	Click <b>OK</b> to save your changes.

## 11.7 NAT Sessions

Use this screen to limit the number of concurrent NAT sessions a client can use, to ensure that no single client uses up too many available NAT sessions. Some applications, such as P2P file sharing, demand a greater number of NAT sessions in order to get a better uploading and downloading rate. Click **Network Setting > NAT > Sessions** to display the following screen.

Note: Enter a number of concurrent NAT sessions in the **MAX NAT Session Per Host** field, and click **Apply** to limit the number of concurrent NAT sessions a client can use. Otherwise, clear the number in the **MAX NAT Session Per Host** field. Click **Apply** and there's no limit for concurrent NAT sessions a client can use.

**Figure 138** Network Setting > NAT > Sessions

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

**Table 75** Network Setting > NAT > Sessions

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
MAX NAT Session Per Host (0 ~ 20480)	Use this field to set a limit to the number of concurrent NAT sessions each client host can have. If only a few clients use peer to peer applications, you can raise this number to improve their performance. With heavy peer-to-peer application use, lower this number to ensure no single client uses too many of the available NAT sessions.
Cancel	Click this to restore your previously saved.
Apply	Click this to save your changes on this screen.

## 11.8 Technical Reference

This part contains more information regarding NAT.



## 11.8.1 NAT Definitions

Inside/outside denotes where a host is located relative to the Zyxel Device, for example, the computers of your subscribers are the inside hosts, while the web servers on the Internet are the outside hosts.

Global/local denotes the IP address of a host in a packet as the packet traverses a router, for example, the local address refers to the IP address of a host when the packet is in the local network, while the global address refers to the IP address of the host when the same packet is traveling in the WAN side.

Note that inside/outside refers to the location of a host, while global/local refers to the IP address of a host used in a packet. Thus, an inside local address (ILA) is the IP address of an inside host in a packet when the packet is still in the local network, while an inside global address (IGA) is the IP address of the same inside host when the packet is on the WAN side. The following table summarizes this information.

Table 76 NAT Definitions

ITEM	DESCRIPTION
Inside	This refers to the host on the LAN.
Outside	This refers to the host on the WAN.
Local	This refers to the packet address (source or destination) as the packet travels on the LAN.
Global	This refers to the packet address (source or destination) as the packet travels on the WAN.

NAT never changes the IP address (either local or global) of an outside host.

## 11.8.2 What NAT Does

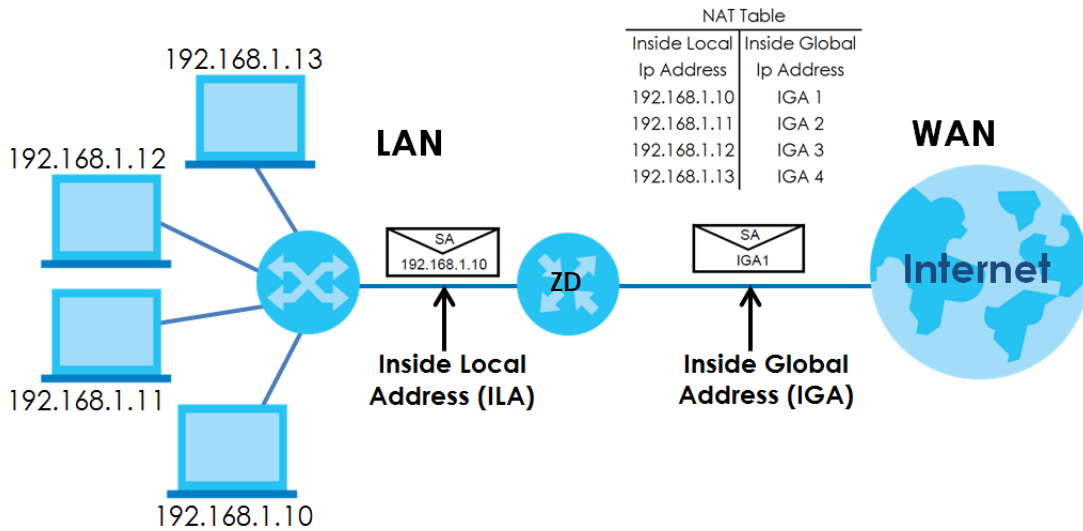
In the simplest form, NAT changes the source IP address in a packet received from a subscriber (the inside local address) to another (the inside global address) before forwarding the packet to the WAN side. When the response comes back, NAT translates the destination address (the inside global address) back to the inside local address before forwarding it to the original inside host. Note that the IP address (either local or global) of an outside host is never changed.

The global IP addresses for the inside hosts can be either static or dynamically assigned by the ISP. In addition, you can designate servers, for example, a web server and a telnet server, on your local network and make them accessible to the outside world. If you do not define any servers (for Many-to-One and Many-to-Many Overload mapping), NAT offers the additional benefit of firewall protection. With no servers defined, your Zyxel Device filters out all incoming inquiries, thus preventing intruders from probing your network. For more information on IP address translation, refer to *RFC 1631, The IP Network Address Translator (NAT)*.

## 11.8.3 How NAT Works

Each packet has two addresses – a source address and a destination address. For outgoing packets, the ILA (Inside Local Address) is the source address on the LAN, and the IGA (Inside Global Address) is the source address on the WAN. For incoming packets, the ILA is the destination address on the LAN, and the IGA is the destination address on the WAN. NAT maps private (local) IP addresses to globally unique ones required for communication with hosts on other networks. It replaces the original IP source address (and TCP or UDP source port numbers for Many-to-One and Many-to-Many Overload NAT mapping) in each packet and then forwards it to the Internet. The Zyxel Device keeps track of the original addresses and port numbers so incoming reply packets can have their original values restored. The following figure illustrates this.

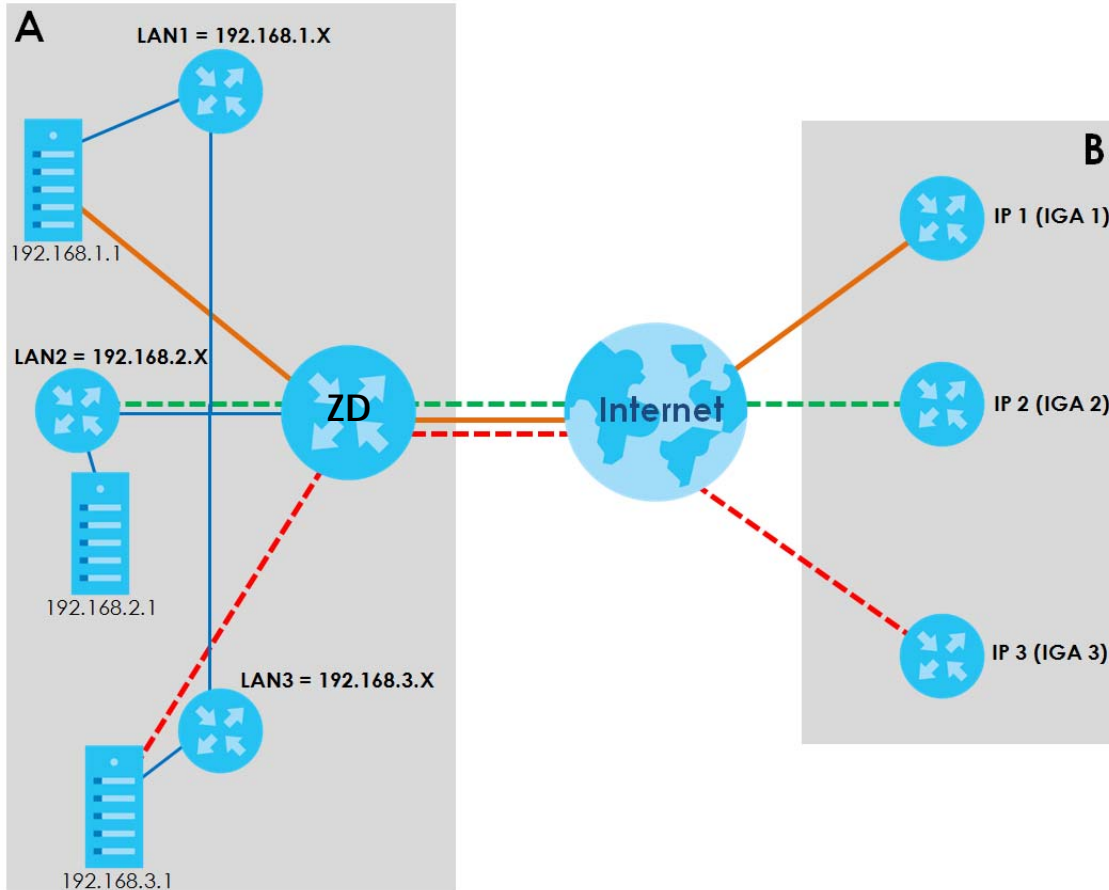
Figure 139 How NAT Works



### 11.8.4 NAT Application

The following figure illustrates a possible NAT application, where three inside LANs (logical LANs using IP alias) behind the Zyxel Device can communicate with three distinct WAN networks.

Figure 140 NAT Application With IP Alias



## Port Forwarding: Services and Port Numbers

The most often used port numbers are shown in the following table. Please refer to RFC 1700 for further information about port numbers. Please also refer to the Supporting CD for more examples and details on port forwarding and NAT.

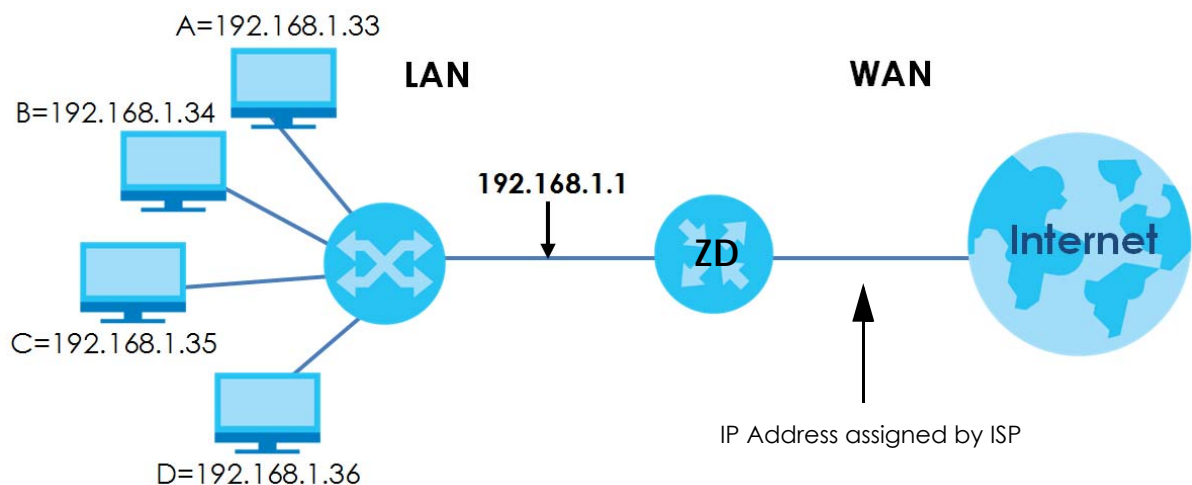
Table 77 Services and Port Numbers

SERVICES	PORT NUMBER
ECHO	7
FTP (File Transfer Protocol)	21
SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol)	25
DNS (Domain Name System)	53
Finger	79
HTTP (Hyper Text Transfer protocol or WWW, Web)	80
POP3 (Post Office Protocol)	110
NNTP (Network News Transport Protocol)	119
SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol)	161
SNMP trap	162
PPTP (Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol)	1723

## Port Forwarding Example

Let's say you want to assign ports 21-25 to one FTP, Telnet and SMTP server (**A** in the example), port 80 to another (**B** in the example) and assign a default server IP address of 192.168.1.35 to a third (**C** in the example). You assign the LAN IP addresses and the ISP assigns the WAN IP address. The NAT network appears as a single host on the Internet.

Figure 141 Multiple Servers Behind NAT Example



# CHAPTER 12

## Dynamic DNS Setup

### 12.1 DNS Overview

#### DNS

DNS (Domain Name System) is for mapping a domain name to its corresponding IP address and vice versa. The DNS server is extremely important because without it, you must know the IP address of a machine before you can access it.

In addition to the system DNS server(s), each WAN interface (service) is set to have its own static or dynamic DNS server list. You can configure a DNS static route to forward DNS queries for certain domain names through a specific WAN interface to its DNS server(s). The Zyxel Device uses a system DNS server (in the order you specify in the **Broadband** screen) to resolve domain names that do not match any DNS routing entry. After the Zyxel Device receives a DNS reply from a DNS server, it creates a new entry for the resolved IP address in the routing table.

#### Dynamic DNS

Dynamic DNS allows you to use a dynamic IP address with one or many dynamic DNS services so that anyone can contact you (in NetMeeting, CU-SeeMe, and so on). You can also access your FTP server or Web site on your own computer using a domain name (for instance myhost.dhs.org, where myhost is a name of your choice) that will never change instead of using an IP address that changes each time you reconnect. Your friends or relatives will always be able to call you even if they don't know your IP address.

You first need to have registered a dynamic DNS account with [www.dyndns.org](http://www.dyndns.org). This is for people with a dynamic IP from their ISP or DHCP server that would still like to have a domain name. The Dynamic DNS service provider will give you a password or key.

#### 12.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- Use the **DNS Entry** screen to view, configure, or remove DNS routes ([Section 12.2 on page 253](#)).
- Use the **Dynamic DNS** screen to enable DDNS and configure the DDNS settings on the Zyxel Device ([Section 12.3 on page 254](#)).

#### 12.1.2 What You Need To Know

##### DYNDNS Wildcard

Enabling the wildcard feature for your host causes \*.yourhost.dyndns.org to be aliased to the same IP address as yourhost.dyndns.org. This feature is useful if you want to be able to use, for example, www.yourhost.dyndns.org and still reach your hostname.

If you have a private WAN IP address, then you cannot use Dynamic DNS.

## 12.2 DNS Entry

DNS (Domain Name System) is used for mapping a domain name to its corresponding IP address and vice versa. Use this screen to view and configure DNS routes on the Zyxel Device. Click **Network Setting > DNS** to open the **DNS Entry** screen.

Note: The host name should consist of the host's local name and the domain name. For example, Mycomputer.home is a host name where Mycomputer is the host's local name, and .home is the domain name.

**Figure 142** Network Setting > DNS > DNS Entry

**DNS**

**DNS Entry** Dynamic DNS

DNS (Domain Name System) is used for mapping a domain name to its corresponding IP address and vice versa. Use this screen to view and configure DNS routes on the Zyxel Device.

+ Add New DNS Entry

#	HostName	IP Address	Modify
Note			
The host name should consist of the host's local name and the domain name. For example, Mycomputer.home is a host name where Mycomputer is the host's local name, and .home is the domain name.			

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

**Table 78** Network Setting > DNS > DNS Entry

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New DNS Entry	Click this to create a new DNS entry.
#	This is the index number of the entry.
Hostname	This indicates the host name or domain name.
IP Address	This indicates the IP address assigned to this computer.
Modify	Click the <b>Edit</b> icon to edit the rule. Click the <b>Delete</b> icon to delete an existing rule.

### 12.2.1 Add/Edit DNS Entry

You can manually add or edit the Zyxel Device's DNS name and IP address entry. Click **Add New DNS Entry** in the **DNS Entry** screen or the **Edit** icon next to the entry you want to edit. The screen shown next appears.

**Figure 143** DNS Entry: Add/Edit

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 79** DNS Entry: Add/Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Host Name	Enter the host name of the DNS entry.
IP Address	Enter the IP address of the DNS entry.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to restore your previously saved settings.
OK	Click <b>OK</b> to save your changes.

## 12.3 Dynamic DNS

Dynamic DNS can update your current dynamic IP address mapping to a hostname. Use this screen to configure a DDNS service provider on your Zyxel Device. Click **Network Setting > DNS > Dynamic DNS**. The screen appears as shown.

**Figure 144** Network Setting > DNS > Dynamic DNS

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

**Table 80** Network Setting > DNS > > Dynamic DNS

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Dynamic DNS Setup	
Dynamic DNS	Select <b>Enable</b> to use dynamic DNS.
Service Provider	Select your Dynamic DNS service provider from the drop-down list box.
Host Name	Type the domain name assigned to your Zyxel Device by your Dynamic DNS provider. You can specify up to two host names in the field separated by a comma (",").
Username	Type your user name.
Password	Type the password assigned to you.
Enable Wildcard Option	Select the check box to enable DynDNS Wildcard.
Enable Off Line Option (Only applies to custom DNS)	Check with your Dynamic DNS service provider to have traffic redirected to a URL (that you can specify) while you are off line.
Dynamic DNS Status	

Table 80 Network Setting &gt; DNS &gt;&gt; Dynamic DNS (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
User Authentication Result	This shows <b>Success</b> if the account is correctly set up with the Dynamic DNS provider account.
Last Updated Time	This shows the last time the IP address the Dynamic DNS provider has associated with the hostname was updated.
Current Dynamic IP	This shows the IP address your Dynamic DNS provider has currently associated with the hostname.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to exit this screen without saving any changes.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.



# CHAPTER 13

## IGMP/MLD

### 13.1 IGMP/MLD Overview

Multicast delivers IP packets to a group of hosts on the network defined by multicast groups. Membership to these multicast groups are established using IGMP/MLD.

Use the **IGMP/MLD** screen to configure IGMP/MLD group settings.

#### 13.1.1 What You Need To Know

##### Multicast and IGMP

See [Multicast on page 147](#) for more information.

##### Multicast Listener Discovery (MLD)

The Multicast Listener Discovery (MLD) protocol (defined in RFC 2710) is derived from IPv4's Internet Group Management Protocol version 2 (IGMPv2). MLD uses ICMPv6 message types, rather than IGMP message types. MLDv1 is equivalent to IGMPv2 and MLDv2 is equivalent to IGMPv3.

- MLD allows an IPv6 switch or router to discover the presence of MLD hosts who wish to receive multicast packets and the IP addresses of multicast groups the hosts want to join on its network.
- MLD snooping and MLD proxy are analogous to IGMP snooping and IGMP proxy in IPv4.
- MLD filtering controls which multicast groups a port can join.
- An MLD Report message is equivalent to an IGMP Report message, and a MLD Done message is equivalent to an IGMP Leave message.

##### IGMP Fast Leave

When a host leaves a multicast group (224.1.1.1), it sends an IGMP leave message to inform all routers (224.0.0.2) in the multicast group. When a router receives the leave message, it sends a specific query message to all multicast group (224.1.1.1) members to check if any other hosts are still in the group. Then the router deletes the host's information.

With the IGMP fast leave feature enabled, the router removes the host's information from the group member list once it receives a leave message from a host and the fast leave timer expires.

### 13.2 IGMP/MLD Settings

Use this screen to configure multicast groups that the Zyxel Device manages through IGMP/MLD settings. To open this screen, click **Network Setting > IGMP/MLD**.

Figure 145 Network Setting &gt; IGMP/MLD

**IGMP/MLD**

Use this screen to configure multicast groups that the Zyxel Device manages through IGMP/MLD settings.

**IGMP Configuration**

Default Version	3
Query Interval	125
Query Response Interval	10
Last Member Query Interval	10
Robustness Value	2
Maximum Multicast Groups	25
Maximum Multicast Data Sources(for IGMPv3)	10
Maximum Multicast Groups Members	25
Fast Leave Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
LAN to LAN (Intra LAN) Multicast Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Membership Join Immediate (IPTV)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

**MLD Configuration**

Default Version	2
Query Interval	125
Query Response Interval	10
Last Member Query Interval	10
Robustness Value	2
Maximum Multicast Groups	10
Maximum Multicast Data Sources(for mldv2)	10
Maximum Multicast Groups Members	10
Fast Leave Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
LAN to LAN (Intra LAN) Multicast Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Cancel **Apply**

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 81 Network Setting &gt; IGMP/MLD

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IGMP/MLD Configuration	
Default Version	Enter the version of IGMP (1~3) and MLD (1~2) that you want the Zyxel Device to use on the WAN.
Query Interval	Enter the number of seconds the Zyxel Device sends a query message to hosts to get the group membership information.
Query Response Interval	Enter the maximum number of seconds the Zyxel Device can wait for receiving a General Query message. Multicast routers use general queries to learn which multicast groups have members.

Table 81 Network Setting &gt; IGMP/MLD (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Last Member Query Interval	Enter the maximum number of seconds the Zyxel Device can wait for receiving a response to a Group-Specific Query message. Multicast routers use group-specific queries to learn whether any member remains in a specific multicast group.
Robustness Value	Enter the number of times (1~7) the Zyxel Device can resend a packet if packet loss occurs due to network congestion.
Maximum Multicast Groups	Enter a number to limit the number of multicast groups an interface on the Zyxel Device is allowed to join. Once a multicast member is registered in the specified number of multicast groups, any new IGMP or MLD join report frames are dropped by the interface.
Maximum Multicast Data Sources(for IGMPv3/mldv2)	Enter a number to limit the number of multicast data sources (1-24) a multicast group is allowed to have.  Note: The setting only works for IGMPv3 and MLDv2.
Maximum Multicast Groups Members	Enter a number to limit the number of multicast members a multicast group can have.
Fast Leave Enable	Select this option to set the Zyxel Device to remove a port from the multicast tree immediately (without sending an IGMP or MLD membership query message) once it receives an IGMP or MLD leave message. This is helpful if a user wants to quickly change a TV channel (multicast group change) especially for IPTV applications.
LAN to LAN (Intra LAN) Multicast Enable	Select this to enable LAN to LAN IGMP snooping capability.
Membership Join Immediate (IPTV)	Select this to have the Zyxel Device add a host to a multicast group immediately once the Zyxel Device receives an IGMP or MLD join message.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to restore your previously saved settings.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device.

# CHAPTER 14

## VLAN Group

### 14.1 Overview

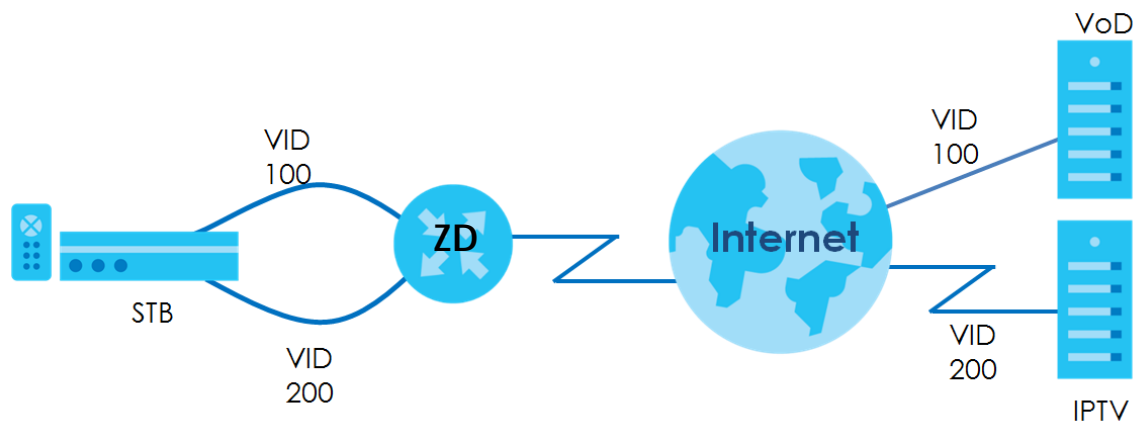
A VLAN (Virtual Local Area Network) allows a physical network to be partitioned into multiple logical networks. Devices on a logical network belong to one group. A device can belong to more than one group. With VLAN, a device cannot directly talk to or hear from devices that are not in the same group(s); the traffic must first go through a router.

Ports in the same VLAN group share the same frame broadcast domain thus increase network performance through reduced broadcast traffic. Shared resources such as a server can be used by all ports in the same VLAN as the server. Ports can belong to other VLAN groups too. VLAN groups can be modified at any time by adding, moving or changing ports without any re-cabling.

A tagged VLAN uses an explicit tag (VLAN ID) in the MAC header to identify the VLAN membership of a frame across bridges. The VLAN ID associates a frame with a specific VLAN and provides the information that switches the need to process the frame across the network.

In the following example, VLAN IDs (VIDs) 100 and 200 are added to identify Video-on-Demand and IPTV traffic respectively coming from the VoD and IPTV multicast servers. The Zyxel Device can also tag outgoing requests to the servers with these VLAN IDs.

**Figure 146** VLAN Group Example



#### 14.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

Use these screens to manage VLAN groups on the Zyxel Device.

## 14.2 VLAN Group Settings

This screen shows the VLAN groups created on the Zyxel Device. Click **Network Setting > VLAN Group** to open the following screen.

**Figure 147** Network Setting > VLAN Group



The following table describes the fields in this screen.

**Table 82** Network Setting > VLAN Group

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New VLAN Group	Click this button to create a new VLAN group.
#	This is the index number of the VLAN group.
Group Name	This shows the descriptive name of the VLAN group.
VLAN ID	This shows the unique ID number that identifies the VLAN group.
Interface	This shows the LAN ports included in the VLAN group and if traffic leaving the port will be tagged with the VLAN ID.
Modify	Click the <b>Edit</b> icon to change an existing VLAN group setting or click the <b>Delete</b> icon to remove the VLAN group.

### 14.2.1 Add/Edit a VLAN Group

Click the **Add New VLAN Group** button in the **VLAN Group** screen to open the following screen. Use this screen to create a new VLAN group.

Figure 148 Add/Edit VLAN Group

The screenshot shows a configuration screen titled "Add New VLAN Group". It features a back arrow in the top left corner. The main content area contains two text input fields: "VLAN Group Name" and "VLAN ID". Below these are four rows, each corresponding to a LAN interface (LAN1, LAN2, LAN3, LAN4). Each row has two checkboxes: "Include" and "TX Tagging". At the bottom of the screen, there are two buttons: "Cancel" and "OK".

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 83 Add/Edit VLAN Group

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VLAN Group Name	Enter a name to identify this group. You can enter up to 30 characters. You can use letters, numbers, hyphens (-) and underscores (_). Spaces are not allowed.
VLAN ID	Enter a unique ID number, from 1 to 4,094, to identify this VLAN group. Outgoing traffic is tagged with this ID if <b>TX Tagging</b> is selected below.
LAN	Select <b>Include</b> to add the associated LAN interface to this VLAN group.  Note: Select <b>TX Tagging</b> to tag outgoing traffic from the associated LAN port with the <b>VLAN ID</b> number entered above.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to exit this screen without saving any changes.
OK	Click <b>OK</b> to save your changes.

# CHAPTER 15

## Interface Grouping

### 15.1 Interface Grouping Overview

By default, all LAN and WAN interfaces on the Zyxel Device are in the same group and can communicate with each other. Create interface groups to have the Zyxel Device assign IP addresses in different domains to different groups. Each group acts as an independent network on the Zyxel Device. Devices in different groups cannot communicate with each other directly.

#### 15.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

The **Interface Grouping** screens let you map a port to a PVC or bridge group. ([Section 15.2 on page 263](#)).

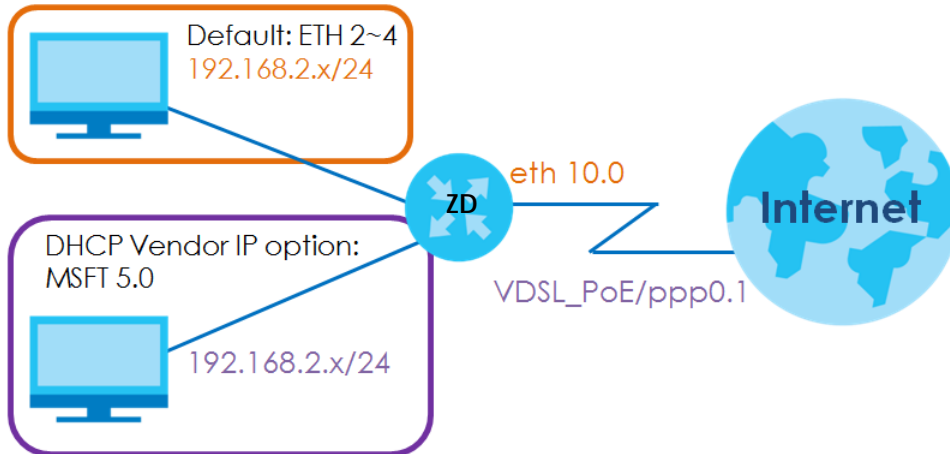
### 15.2 Interface Grouping Setup

You can manually add a LAN interface to a new group. Alternatively, you can have the Zyxel Device automatically add the incoming traffic and the LAN interface on which traffic is received to an interface group when its DHCP Vendor ID option information matches one listed for the interface group.

Use the **LAN Setup** screen to configure the private IP addresses the DHCP server on the Zyxel Device assigns to the clients in the default and/or user-defined groups. If you set the Zyxel Device to assign IP addresses based on the client's DHCP Vendor ID option information, you must enable DHCP server and configure LAN TCP/IP settings for both the default and user-defined groups. See [Chapter 8 on page 184](#) for more information.

In the following example, the client that sends packets with the DHCP Vendor ID option set to MSFT 5.0 (meaning it is a Windows 2000 DHCP client) is assigned the IP address 192.168.2.2 and uses the WAN VDSL\_PoE/ppp0.1 interface.

**Figure 149** Interface Grouping Application



You can use this screen to create new user-defined interface groups or modify existing ones. Interfaces that do not belong to any user-defined group always belong to the default group.

Click **Network Setting > Interface Grouping** to open the following screen.

**Figure 150** Network Setting > Interface Grouping

### Interface Grouping

By default, all LAN and WAN interfaces on the Zyxel Device are in the same group and can communicate with each other. Create interface groups to have the Zyxel Device assign IP addresses in different domains to different groups. Each group acts as an independent network on the Zyxel Device. Devices in different groups cannot communicate with each other directly.

You can use this screen to create new user-defined interface groups or modify existing ones. Interfaces that do not belong to any user-defined group always belong to the default group.

+ Add New Interface Group

Group Name	WAN Interface	LAN Interface	Criteria	Modify
Default	Any WAN	LAN1,LAN2,LAN3,LAN4 .Zyxel_0002(*2.4G),Zyxel_0002_guest(*2.4G),Zyxel_0002_extra2(*2.4G),Zyxel_0002_extra3(*2.4G),Zyxel_0002(*5G),Zyxel_0002_guest(*5G),Zyxel_0002_extra2_5G(*5G)		

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

**Table 84** Network Setting > Interface Grouping

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New Interface Group	Click this button to create a new interface group.
Group Name	This shows the descriptive name of the group.
WAN Interface	This shows the WAN interfaces in the group.



Table 84 Network Setting &gt; Interface Grouping (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
LAN Interfaces	This shows the LAN interfaces in the group.
Criteria	This shows the filtering criteria for the group.
Modify	Click the <b>Edit</b> icon to modify an existing Interface group setting or click the <b>Delete</b> icon to remove the Interface group.

## 15.2.1 Interface Group Configuration

Click the **Add New Interface Group** button in the **Interface Grouping** screen to open the following screen. Use this screen to create a new interface group. If you want to automatically add LAN clients to a new group, use filtering criteria.

Note: An interface can belong to only one group at a time.

Note: After configuring a vendor ID, reboot the client device attached to the Zyxel Device to obtain an appropriate IP address.

Note: You can have up to 15 filter criteria.

**Figure 151** Interface Group Configuration (DX5301-B2/B3 and DX5401-B0)

<

### Add New Interface Group

Use this screen to create a new interface group. If you want to automatically add LAN clients to a new group, use filtering criteria.

Group Name

WAN Interfaces used in the grouping

PTM type-

ATM type-

ETH type-

WWAN type-

**# Available LAN Interfaces**

- LAN1
- LAN2
- LAN3
- LAN4
- Zyxel\_0002(\*2.4G)

>

<

**# Selected LAN Interfaces**

- 
- 
-

**Automatically Add Clients With the following DHCP Vendor IDs**

#	Filter Criteria	WildCard Support	Modify
1	Option 60: 55	Y	

+ Add

Note

(1) After configuring a vendor ID, reboot the client device attached to the Zyxel Device to obtain an appropriate IP address.

(2) You can have up to 15 filter criteria.

Cancel **OK**

Figure 152 Interface Group Configuration (EX5300, EX5301, EX5501 and EX5401-B0)

<

## Add New Interface Group

Use this screen to create a new interface group. If you want to automatically add LAN clients to a new group, use filtering criteria.

Group Name

WAN Interfaces used in the grouping

ETH type- None ▼

WWAN type- None ▼

**# Available LAN Interfaces**

- LAN1
- LAN2
- LAN3
- LAN4
- Zyxel\_0002(\*2.4G)

>

<

**# Selected LAN Interfaces**

- 
- 
-

**Automotically Add Clients With the following DHCP Vendor IDs**

#	Filter Criteria	WildCard Support	Modify
+			Add

Note

(1) After configuring a vendor ID, reboot the client device attached to the Zyxel Device to obtain an appropriate IP address.

(2) You can have up to 15 filter criteria.

Cancel
OK

**Figure 153** Interface Group Configuration (AX7501 and PX7501)

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

**Table 85** Interface Group Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Group Name	Enter a name to identify this group. You can enter up to 30 characters. You can use letters, numbers, hyphens (-) and underscores (_). Spaces are not allowed.
WAN Interfaces used in the grouping	Select the WAN interface this group uses. Select <b>None</b> to not add a WAN interface to this group.
Selected LAN Interfaces Available LAN Interfaces	Select one or more LAN interfaces (Ethernet LAN, HPNA or wireless LAN) in the <b>Available LAN Interfaces</b> list and use the left arrow to move them to the <b>Selected LAN Interfaces</b> list to add the interfaces to this group. To remove a LAN or wireless LAN interface from the <b>Selected LAN Interfaces</b> , use the right-facing arrow.

Table 85 Interface Group Configuration (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Automatically Add Clients With the following DHCP Vendor IDs	Click <b>Add</b> to identify LAN hosts to add to the interface group by criteria such as the type of the hardware or firmware.
#	This shows the index number of the rule.
Filter Criteria	This shows the filtering criteria. The LAN interface on which the matched traffic is received will belong to this group automatically.
Wildcard Support	This shows if wildcard on DHCP option 60 is enabled.
Modify	Click the <b>Edit</b> icon to change the group setting. Click the <b>Delete</b> icon to delete this group from the Zyxel Device.
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to add a new filter criteria rule.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to exit this screen without saving any changes.
OK	Click <b>OK</b> to save your changes.

## 15.2.2 Interface Grouping Criteria

Click the **Add** button in the **Interface Grouping Configuration** screen to open the following screen. Use this screen to automatically add clients to an interface group based on specified criteria. You can choose to define a group based on a MAC address, a vendor ID (DHCP option 60), an Identity Association Identifier (DHCP option 61), vendor specific information (DHCP option 125), or a VLAN group.

**Figure 154** Add New Criteria

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 86 Interface Grouping Criteria

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Source MAC Address	Type the source MAC address of the packet.
DHCP Option 60	Select this option and enter the Vendor Class Identifier (Option 60) of the matched traffic, such as the type of the hardware or firmware.
Enable wildcard	Select this option to be able to use wildcards in the Vendor Class Identifier configured for DHCP option 60.
DHCP Option 61	Select this and enter the device identity of the matched traffic.
	Type the Identity Association Identifier (IAID) of the device, for example, the WAN connection index number.
DHCP Option 125	Select this and type vendor specific information of the matched traffic.
Enterprise Number	Type the vendor's 32-bit enterprise number registered with the IANA (Internet Assigned Numbers Authority).
Manufacturer OUI	Specify the vendor's OUI (Organization Unique Identifier). It is usually the first three bytes of the MAC address.
Serial Number	Type the serial number of the device.
Product Class	Type the product class of the device.
VLAN Group	Select this and the VLAN group of the matched traffic from the drop-down list box. A VLAN group can be configured in <b>Network Setting &gt; Vlan Group</b> .
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to exit this screen without saving.

# CHAPTER 16

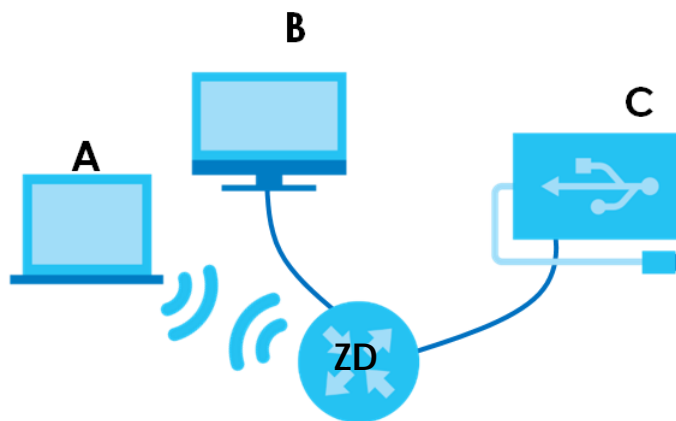
## USB Service

### 16.1 USB Service Overview

You can share files on a USB memory stick or hard drive connected to your Zyxel Device with users on your network.

The following figure is an overview of the Zyxel Device's file server feature. Computers **A** and **B** can access files on a USB device (**C**) which is connected to the Zyxel Device.

**Figure 155** File Sharing Overview



---

The Zyxel Device will not be able to join the workgroup if your local area network has restrictions set up that do not allow devices to join a workgroup. In this case, contact your network administrator.

---

#### 16.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- Use the **File Sharing** screen to enable file-sharing server ([Section 16.1.3 on page 272](#)).
- Use the **Media Server** screen to enable or disable the sharing of media files ([Section 16.3 on page 275](#)).

#### 16.1.2 What You Need To Know

The following terms and concepts may help as you read this chapter.

### 16.1.2.1 About File Sharing

#### Workgroup name

This is the name given to a set of computers that are connected on a network and share resources such as a printer or files. Windows automatically assigns the workgroup name when you set up a network.

#### Shares

When settings are set to default, each USB device connected to the Zyxel Device is given a folder, called a "share". If a USB hard drive connected to the Zyxel Device has more than one partition, then each partition will be allocated a share. You can also configure a "share" to be a sub-folder or file on the USB device.

#### File Systems

A file system is a way of storing and organizing files on your hard drive and storage device. Often different operating systems such as Windows or Linux have different file systems. The file sharing feature on your Zyxel Device supports File Allocation Table (FAT) and FAT32.

#### Common Internet File System

The Zyxel Device uses Common Internet File System (CIFS) protocol for its file sharing functions. CIFS compatible computers can access the USB file storage devices connected to the Zyxel Device. CIFS protocol is supported on Microsoft Windows, Linux Samba and other operating systems (refer to your systems specifications for CIFS compatibility).

### 16.1.3 Before You Begin

Make sure the Zyxel Device is connected to your network and turned on.

- 1 Connect the USB device to one of the Zyxel Device's USB port. Make sure the Zyxel Device is connected to your network.
- 2 The Zyxel Device detects the USB device and makes its contents available for browsing. If you are connecting a USB hard drive that comes with an external power supply, make sure it is connected to an appropriate power source that is on.

Note: If your USB device cannot be detected by the Zyxel Device, see the troubleshooting for suggestions.

## 16.2 File Sharing

Use this screen to set up file sharing through the Zyxel Device. The Zyxel Device's LAN users can access the shared folder (or share) from the USB device inserted in the Zyxel Device. To access this screen, click **Network Setting > USB Service > File Sharing**.



Figure 156 Network Setting &gt; USB Service &gt; File Sharing

**USB Service**

**File Sharing** / Media Server

You can share files on a USB memory stick or hard drive connected to your Zyxel Device with users on your network.

Use this screen to set up file sharing through the Zyxel Device. The Zyxel Device's LAN users can access the shared folder (or share) from the USB device inserted in the Zyxel Device.

**Information**

Volume	Capacity	Used Space
usb1_sda1	3851 MB	514 MB

**Server Configuration**

File Sharing Services

**Share Directory List**

[+ Add New Share](#)

Active	Status	Share Name	Share Path	Share Description	Modify
--------	--------	------------	------------	-------------------	--------

**Account Management**

[+ Add New User](#)

Status	User Name
	admin





Note: **Share Directory List** field appears when you connect a USB device to the USB port. Otherwise, it does not.

Each field is described in the following table.

Table 87 Network Setting &gt; USB Service &gt; File Sharing

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Information	
Volume	This is the volume name the Zyxel Device gives to an inserted USB device.
Capacity	This is the total available memory size (in megabytes) on the USB device.
Used Space	This is the memory size (in megabytes) already used on the USB device.
Server Configuration	
File Sharing Services	Click this switch to enable or disable file sharing through the Zyxel Device. When the switch goes to the right , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
Share Directory List	
Add New Share	Click this to set up a new share on the Zyxel Device.
Active	Select this to allow the share to be accessed.

Table 87 Network Setting &gt; USB Service &gt; File Sharing

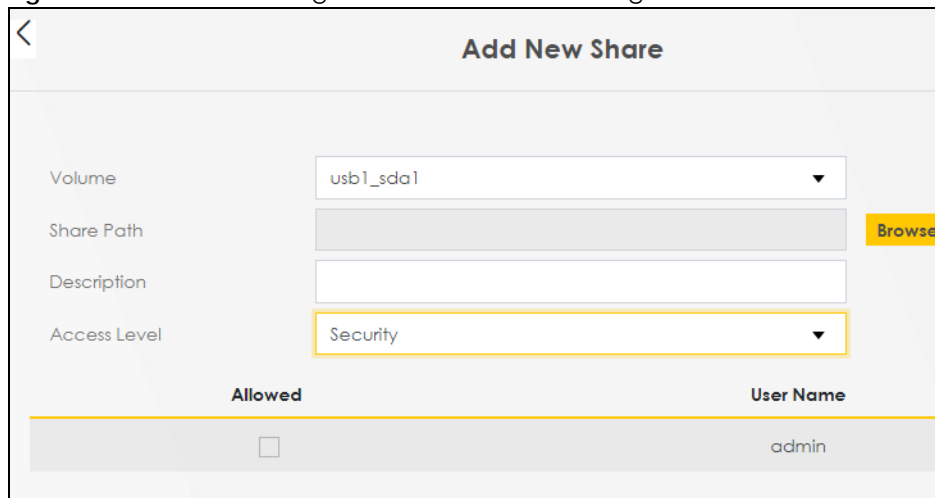
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Status	This field shows the status of the share  : The share is not activated.  : The share is activated.
Share Name	This field displays the share name on the PON device.
Share Path	This field displays the path for the share directories (folders) on the PON Device. These are the directories (folders) on your USB storage device.
Share Description	This field displays information about the share.
Modify	Click the <b>Edit</b> icon to change the settings of an existing share. Click the <b>Delete</b> icon to delete this share in the list.
Account Management	
Add New User	Click this button to create a user account to access the secured shares. This button redirects you to <b>Maintenance &gt; User Account</b> .
Status	This field shows the status of the user.  : The user account is not activated for the share.  : The user account is activated for the share.
User Name	This is the name of a user who is allowed to access the secured shares on the USB device.
Cancel	Click this to restore your previously saved settings.
Apply	Click this to save your changes to the Zyxel Device.

## 16.2.1 Add New Share

Use this screen to set up a new share or edit an existing share on the Zyxel Device. Click **Add new share** in the **File Sharing** screen or click the **Edit** icon next to an existing share.

Please note that you need to set up your shares in the USB before enabling file sharing in the Zyxel Device. Also, spaces and the following special characters listed in the brackets [ " < > ^ \$ | & ; \ / : \* ? ' ] are not allowed for the USB share name.

Figure 157 Network Setting &gt; USB Service &gt; File Sharing &gt; Add New Sharer



The screenshot shows the 'Add New Share' configuration screen. It includes the following elements:

- Volume:** A dropdown menu showing 'usb1\_sda1'.
- Share Path:** A text input field with a yellow 'Browse' button to its right.
- Description:** A text input field.
- Access Level:** A dropdown menu showing 'Security'.
- Allowed:** A checkbox that is currently unchecked.
- User Name:** A text input field containing 'admin'.

The following table describes the labels in this menu.

Table 88 Network Setting > USB Service > Media Server

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Volume	Select the volume in the USB storage device that you want to add as a share in the Zyxel Device.  This field is read-only when you are editing the share.
Share Path	Manually enter the file path for the share, or click the <b>Browse</b> button and select the folder that you want to add as a share.  This field is read-only when you are editing the share.
Description	You can either enter a short description of the share, or leave this field blank.
Access Level	Select <b>Public</b> if you want the share to be accessed by users connecting to the Zyxel Device. Otherwise, select <b>Security</b> .
Allowed	If <b>Security</b> is selected in the <b>Access Level</b> field, select this check box to allow/prohibit access to the share.
User Name	This field specifies the user for which the <b>Allowed</b> setting applies. Users can be added or modified in <b>Maintenance &gt; User Account</b> .
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to return to the previous screen.
OK	Click <b>OK</b> to save any changes.

## 16.2.2 Add New User

Once you click the **Add New User** button, you'll be directed to the **User Account** screen. To create a user account that can access the secured shares on the USB device, click the **Add New Account** button in the **Network Setting > Maintenance > User Account** screen.

Please see [Chapter 34 on page 361](#), for detailed information about **User Account** screen.

## 16.3 Media Server

The media server feature lets anyone on your network play video, music, and photos from the USB storage device connected to your Zyxel Device without having to copy them to another computer. The Zyxel Device can function as a DLNA-compliant media server, where the Zyxel Device streams files to DLNA-compliant media clients like Windows Media Player. The Digital Living Network Alliance (DLNA) is a group of personal computer and electronics companies that works to make products compatible in a home network.

The Zyxel Device media server enables you to:

- Publish all shares for everyone to play media files in the USB storage device connected to the Zyxel Device.
- Use hardware-based media clients like the DMA-2500 to play the files.

**Note:** Anyone on your network can play the media files in the published shares. No user name and password or other form of security is used. The media server is enabled by default with the video, photo, and music shares published.

To change your Zyxel Device's media server settings, click **Network Setting > USB Service > Media Server**. The screen appears as shown.

**Figure 158** Network Setting > USB Service > Media Server

**USB Service**

File Sharing **Media Server**

The media server feature lets anyone on your network play video, music, and photos from the USB storage device connected to your Zyxel Device without having to copy them to another computer. The Zyxel Device can function as a DLNA-compliant media server, where the Zyxel Device streams files to DLNA-compliant media clients like Windows Media Player. The Digital Living Network Alliance (DLNA) is a group of personal computer and electronics companies that works to make products compatible in a home network.

Media Server


Interface

Media Library Path

**Cancel** **Apply**

The following table describes the labels in this menu.

**Table 89** Network Setting > USB Service > Media Server

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Media Server	Click this switch to have the Zyxel Device function as a DLNA-compliant media server. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not. Enable the media server to let (DLNA-compliant) media clients on your network play media files located in the shares.
Interface	Select an interface on which you want to enable the media server function. An interface can be added or modified in <b>Network Setting &gt; Interface Grouping</b> .
Media Library Path	Enter the path clients use to access the media files on a USB storage device connected to the Zyxel Device.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to restore your previously saved settings.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.

# CHAPTER 17

## Firewall

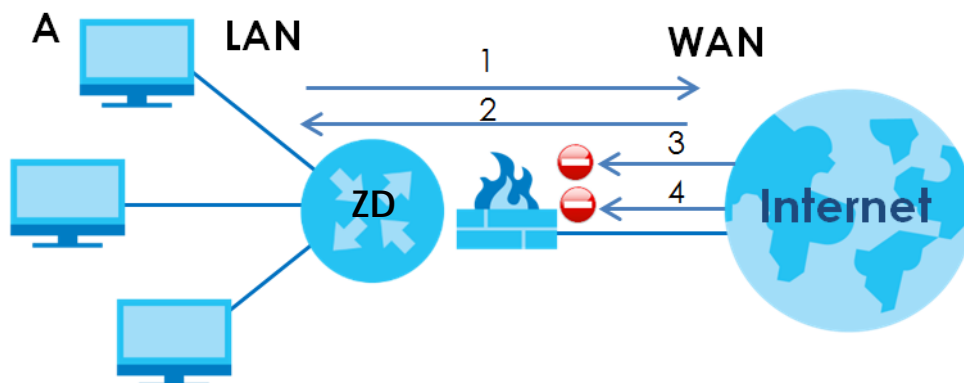
### 17.1 Firewall Overview

This chapter shows you how to enable and configure the Zyxel Device's security settings. Use the firewall to protect your Zyxel Device and network from attacks by hackers on the Internet and control access to it. By default the firewall:

- allows traffic that originates from your LAN computers to go to all other networks.
- blocks traffic that originates on other networks from going to the LAN.

The following figure illustrates the default firewall action. User **A** can initiate an IM (Instant Messaging) session from the LAN to the WAN (1). Return traffic for this session is also allowed (2). However other traffic initiated from the WAN is blocked (3 and 4).

Figure 159 Default Firewall Action



#### 17.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- Use the **General** screen to configure the security level of the firewall on the Zyxel Device ([Section 17.2 on page 278](#)).
- Use the **Protocol** screen to add or remove predefined Internet services and configure firewall rules ([Section 17.3 on page 280](#)).
- Use the **Access Control** screen to view and configure incoming/outgoing filtering rules ([Section 17.4 on page 281](#)).
- Use the **DoS** screen to activate protection against Denial of Service (DoS) attacks ([Section 17.5 on page 284](#)).

## 17.1.2 What You Need to Know

### SYN Attack

A SYN attack floods a targeted system with a series of SYN packets. Each packet causes the targeted system to issue a SYN-ACK response. While the targeted system waits for the ACK that follows the SYN-ACK, it queues up all outstanding SYN-ACK responses on a backlog queue. SYN-ACKs are moved off the queue only when an ACK comes back or when an internal timer terminates the three-way handshake. Once the queue is full, the system will ignore all incoming SYN requests, making the system unavailable for legitimate users.

### DoS

Denials of Service (DoS) attacks are aimed at devices and networks with a connection to the Internet. Their goal is not to steal information, but to disable a device or network so users no longer have access to network resources. The Zyxel Device is pre-configured to automatically detect and thwart all known DoS attacks.

### DDoS

A DDoS attack is one in which multiple compromised systems attack a single target, thereby causing denial of service for users of the targeted system.

### LAND Attack

In a LAND attack, hackers flood SYN packets into the network with a spoofed source IP address of the target system. This makes it appear as if the host computer sent the packets to itself, making the system unavailable while the target system tries to respond to itself.

### Ping of Death

Ping of Death uses a 'ping' utility to create and send an IP packet that exceeds the maximum 65,536 bytes of data allowed by the IP specification. This may cause systems to crash, hang or reboot.

### SPI

Stateful Packet Inspection (SPI) tracks each connection crossing the firewall and makes sure it is valid. Filtering decisions are based not only on rules but also context. For example, traffic from the WAN may only be allowed to cross the firewall in response to a request from the LAN.

## 17.2 Firewall Settings

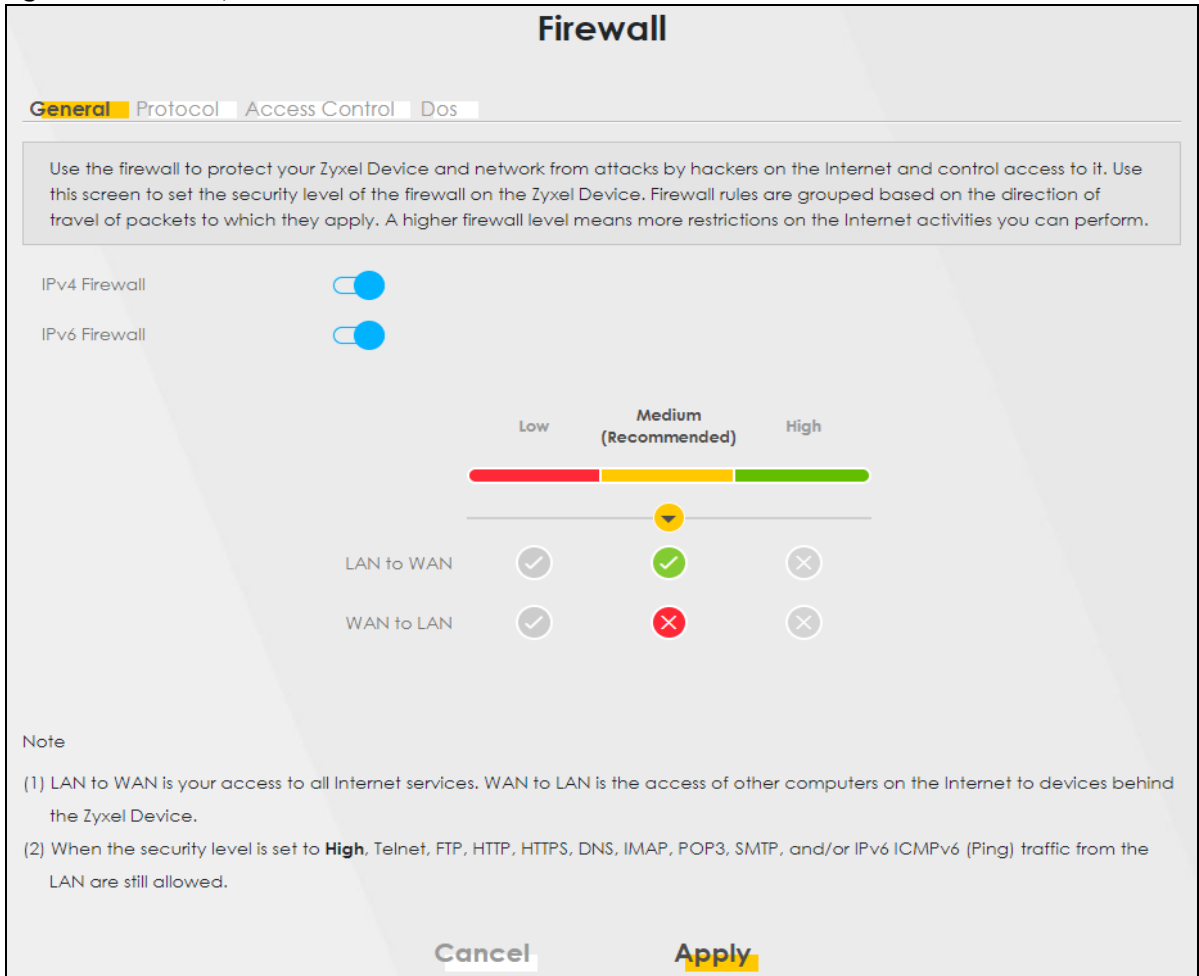
Use this screen to set the security level of the firewall on the Zyxel Device. Firewall rules are grouped based on the direction of travel of packets to which they apply. A higher firewall level means more restrictions on the Internet activities you can perform.

Note: LAN to WAN is your access to all Internet services. WAN to LAN is the access of other computers on the Internet to devices behind the Zyxel Device.

Note: When the security level is set to **High**, Telnet, FTP, HTTP, HTTPS, DNS, IMAP, POP3, SMTP, and/or IPv6 ICMPv6 (Ping) traffic from the LAN are still allowed.



Click **Security > Firewall** to display the **General** screen.

**Figure 160** Security > Firewall > General



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 90** Security > Firewall > General

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IPv4 Firewall	Use the switch to turn on or off the firewall feature on the ZyXel Device for IPv4 traffic. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is disabled.
IPv6 Firewall	Use the switch to turn on or off the firewall feature on the ZyXel Device for IPv6 traffic. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is disabled.
Low	Select <b>Low</b> to allow traffic from LAN to WAN or from WAN to LAN.
Medium	Select <b>Medium</b> to allow traffic from LAN to WAN but deny traffic from WAN to LAN.
High	Select <b>High</b> to deny both directions of travel of packets (LAN to WAN and WAN to LAN).
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to restore your previously saved settings.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.

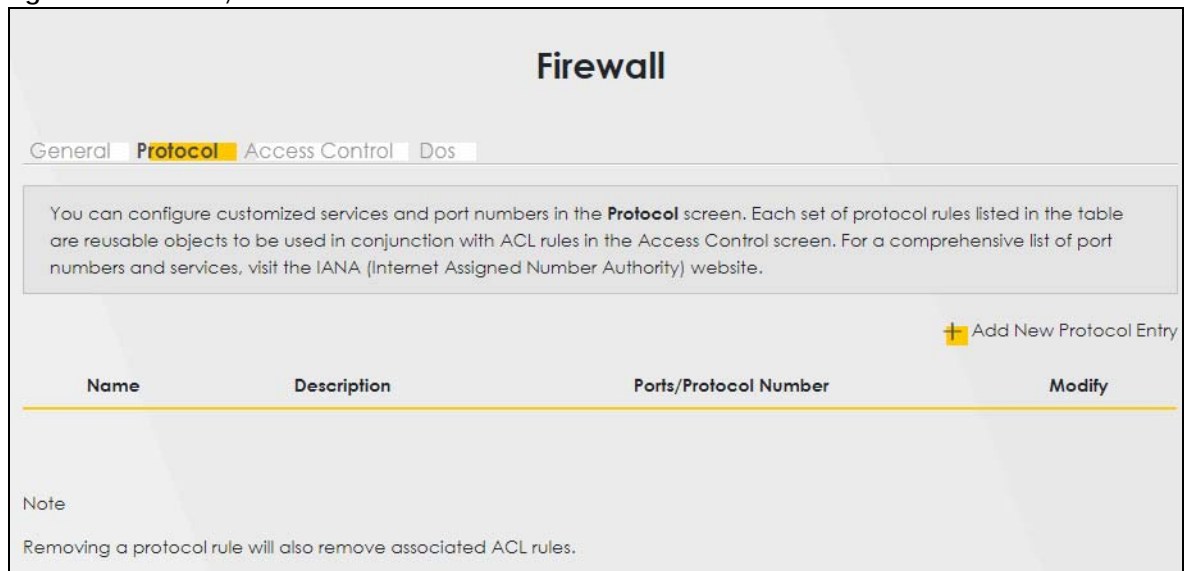
## 17.3 Protocol Settings

You can configure customized services and port numbers in the **Protocol** screen. Each set of protocol rules listed in the table are reusable objects to be used in conjunction with ACL rules in the Access Control screen. For a comprehensive list of port numbers and services, visit the IANA (Internet Assigned Number Authority) website. See [Appendix C on page 415](#) for some examples.

Note: Removing a protocol rule will also remove associated ACL rules.

Click **Security > Firewall > Protocol** to display the following screen.

**Figure 161** Security > Firewall > Protocol



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 91 Security > Firewall > Protocol

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New Protocol Entry	Click this to add a new service.
Name	This is the name of your customized service.
Description	This is the description of your customized service.
Ports/Protocol Number	This shows the IP protocol ( <b>TCP</b> , <b>UDP</b> , <b>ICMP</b> , or <b>TCP/UDP</b> ) and the port number or range of ports that defines your customized service. <b>Other</b> and the protocol number displays if the service uses another IP protocol.
Modify	Click the <b>Edit</b> icon to edit the entry. Click the <b>Delete</b> icon to remove this entry.

### 17.3.1 Add New/Edit Protocol Entry

Use this screen to add a customized service rule that you can use in the firewall's ACL rule configuration. Click **Add New Protocol Entry** or the **Edit** icon next to an existing service in the **Protocol** screen to display the following screen.



**Figure 162** Protocol Entry: Add New/Edit

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

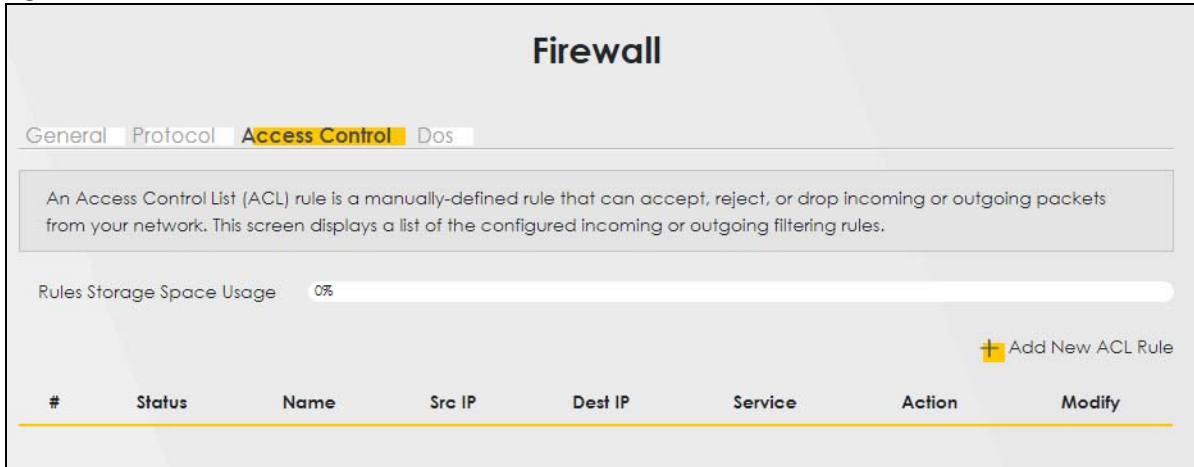
Table 92 Security &gt; Firewall &gt; Protocol: Add/Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Service Name	Enter a unique name (up to 32 printable English keyboard characters, including spaces) for your customized port.
Description	Enter a description for your customized port.
Protocol	Choose the IP protocol ( <b>TCP</b> , <b>UDP</b> , <b>ICMP</b> , <b>ICMPv6</b> , or <b>Other</b> ) that defines your customized port from the drop-down list box. Select <b>Other</b> to be able to enter a protocol number.
Protocol Number	This field is displayed if you select <b>Other</b> as the protocol. Enter the protocol number of your customized port.
Source Port	This field is displayed if you select either the <b>TCP</b> or <b>UDP</b> protocol. You may set it to <b>Any</b> , <b>Single</b> , or <b>Range</b> and enter the Port Number or range of Port Numbers for your source port.
Destination Port	This field is displayed if you select either the <b>TCP</b> or <b>UDP</b> protocol. You may set it to <b>Any</b> , <b>Single</b> , or <b>Range</b> and enter the Port Number or range of Port Numbers for your destination port.
ICMPv6type	This field is displayed if you select the <b>ICMPv6</b> protocol. From the drop-down menu, select which type value you would like to use.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to exit this screen without saving any changes.
OK	Click <b>OK</b> to save your changes.

## 17.4 Access Control

Click **Security > Firewall > Access Control** to display the following screen. An Access Control List (ACL) rule is a manually-defined rule that can accept, reject, or drop incoming or outgoing packets from your network. This screen displays a list of the configured incoming or outgoing filtering rules.

Figure 163 Security &gt; Firewall &gt; Access Control



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 93 Security &gt; Firewall &gt; Access Control

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New ACL Rule	Click this to add a filter rule for incoming or outgoing IP traffic.
#	This is the index number of the entry.
Name	This displays the name of the rule.
Src IP	This displays the source IP addresses to which this rule applies. Please note that a blank source address is equivalent to <b>Any</b> .
Dst IP	This displays the destination IP addresses to which this rule applies. Please note that a blank destination address is equivalent to <b>Any</b> .
Service	This displays the transport layer protocol that defines the service and the direction of traffic to which this rule applies.
Action	This field displays whether the rule silently discards packets ( <b>DROP</b> ), discards packets and sends a TCP reset packet or an ICMP destination-unreachable message to the sender ( <b>REJECT</b> ) or allows the passage of packets ( <b>ACCEPT</b> ).
Modify	Click the <b>Edit</b> icon to edit the rule. Click the <b>Delete</b> icon to delete an existing rule. Note that subsequent rules move up by one when you take this action. Click the <b>Move To</b> icon to change the order of the rule. Enter the number in the # field.

### 17.4.1 Add/Edit an ACL Rule

Click **Add new ACL rule** or the **Edit** icon next to an existing ACL rule in the **Access Control** screen. The following screen displays. Use this screen to accept, reject, or drop packets based on specified parameters, such as source and destination IP address, IP Type, service, and direction. You can also specify a limit as to how many packets this rule applies to at a certain period of time or specify a schedule for this rule.

Figure 164 Access Control: Add/Edit

The screenshot shows the 'Add New ACL Rule' configuration interface. It includes the following fields and controls:

- Active:** A toggle switch that is currently turned on (blue).
- Filter Name:** A text input field.
- Order:** A dropdown menu set to '2'.
- Select Source IP Address:** A dropdown menu set to 'Specific IP Address'.
- Source IP Address:** A text input field with a placeholder ' [/prefix length]'.
- Select Destination Device:** A dropdown menu set to 'Specific IP Address'.
- Destination IP Address:** A text input field with a placeholder ' [/prefix length]'.
- MAC Address:** A text input field with dashes as placeholders.
- IP Type:** A dropdown menu set to 'IPv4'.
- Select Service:** A dropdown menu set to 'Specific Service'.
- Protocol:** A dropdown menu set to 'ALL'.
- Custom Source Port:** A range selector with 'Range', '1', and '1' fields.
- Custom Destination Port:** A range selector with 'Range', '1', and '1' fields.
- Policy:** A dropdown menu set to 'ACCEPT'.
- Direction:** A dropdown menu set to 'WAN to LAN'.
- Enable Rate Limit:** A toggle switch that is currently turned off.
- Scheduler Rules:** A dropdown menu and a yellow 'Add New Rule' button.

At the bottom of the screen, there are 'Cancel' and 'OK' buttons.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 94 Access Control: Add/Edit


LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Click the <b>Active</b> button to enable this ACL rule. When the switch goes to the right (  ), the function is enabled.
Filter Name	Enter a descriptive name of up to 16 alphanumeric characters, not including spaces, underscores, and dashes.  You must enter the filter name to add an ACL rule. This field is read-only if you are editing the ACL rule.
Order	Select the order of the ACL rule.
Select Source IP Address	Select the source device to which the ACL rule applies. If you select <b>Specific IP Address</b> , enter the source IP address in the field below.
Source IP Address	Enter the source IP address.

Table 94 Access Control: Add/Edit (continued)

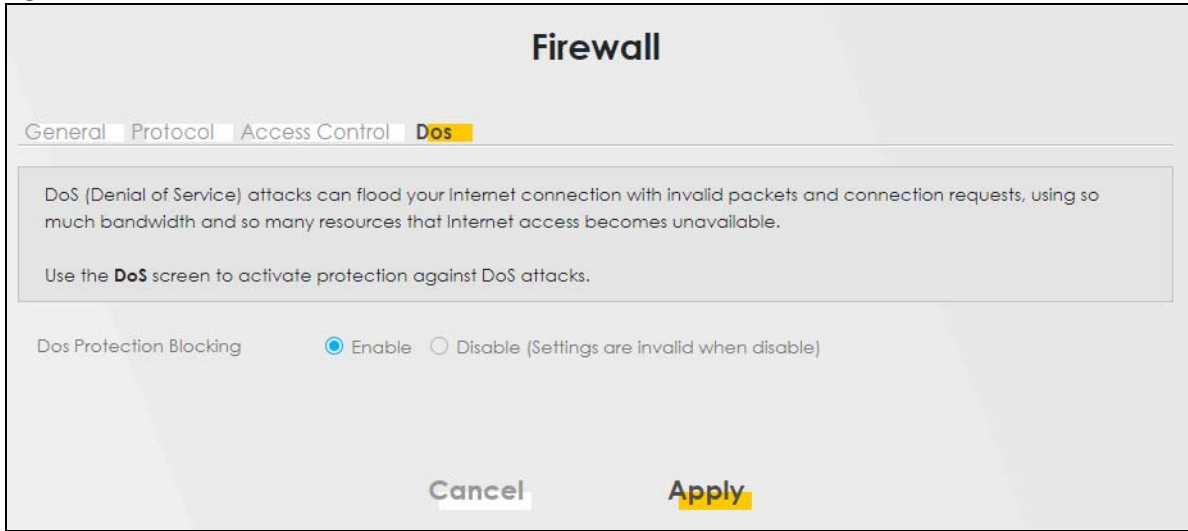
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Select Destination Device	Select the destination device to which the ACL rule applies. If you select <b>Specific IP Address</b> , enter the destination IP address in the field below.
Destination IP Address	Enter the destination IP address.
MAC Address	Enter the MAC addresses of the wireless or LAN clients that are allowed access to the Zyxel Device in these address fields. Enter the MAC addresses in a valid MAC address format, that is, six hexadecimal character pairs, for example, 12:34:56:78:9a:bc.
IP Type	Select whether your IP type is <b>IPv4</b> or <b>IPv6</b> .
Select Service	Select the transport layer protocol that defines your customized port from the drop-down list box. The specific protocol rule sets you add in the <b>Security &gt; Firewall &gt; Protocol &gt; Add</b> screen display in this list.  If you want to configure a customized protocol, select <b>Specific Service</b> .
Protocol	This field is displayed only when you select <b>Specific Service</b> in <b>Select Service</b> .  Choose the IP port ( <b>TCP/UDP</b> , <b>TCP</b> , <b>UDP</b> , <b>ICMP</b> , or <b>ICMPv6</b> ) that defines your customized port from the drop-down list box.
Custom Source Port	This field is displayed only when you select <b>Specific Service</b> in <b>Select Service</b> and have either <b>TCP</b> or <b>UDP</b> in the <b>Protocol</b> field.  Enter a single port number or the range of port numbers of the source.
Custom Destination Port	This field is displayed only when you select <b>Specific Service</b> in <b>Select Service</b> and have either <b>TCP</b> or <b>UDP</b> in the <b>Protocol</b> field.  Enter a single port number or the range of port numbers of the destination.
Policy	Use the drop-down list box to select whether to discard ( <b>DROP</b> ), deny and send an ICMP destination-unreachable message to the sender of ( <b>REJECT</b> ) or allow the passage of ( <b>ACCEPT</b> ) packets that match this rule.
Direction	Use the drop-down list box to select the direction of traffic to which this rule applies.
Enable Rate Limit	Select this check box to set a limit on the upstream/downstream transmission rate for the specified protocol.  Specify how many packets per minute or second the transmission rate is.
Scheduler Rules	Select a schedule rule for this ACL rule form the drop-down list box. You can configure a new schedule rule by click <b>Add New Rule</b> . This will bring you to the <b>Security &gt; Scheduler Rules</b> screen.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to exit this screen without saving any changes.
OK	Click <b>OK</b> to save your changes.

## 17.5 DoS Settings

DoS (Denial of Service) attacks can flood your Internet connection with invalid packets and connection requests, using so much bandwidth and so many resources that Internet access becomes unavailable.

Use the **DoS** screen to activate protection against DoS attacks. Click **Security > Firewall > DoS** to display the following screen.

Figure 165 Security &gt; Firewall &gt; DoS



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 95 Security &gt; Firewall &gt; DoS

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
DoS Protection Blocking	Select <b>Enable</b> to enable protection against DoS attacks.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to restore your previously saved settings.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.

# CHAPTER 18

## MAC Filter

### 18.1 MAC Filter Overview

You can configure the Zyxel Device to permit access to clients based on their MAC addresses in the **MAC Filter** screen. This applies to wired and wireless connections. Every Ethernet device has a unique MAC (Media Access Control) address. The MAC address is assigned at the factory and consists of six pairs of hexadecimal characters, for example, 00:A0:C5:00:00:02. You need to know the MAC addresses of the LAN client to configure this screen.

### 18.2 MAC Filter Settings

Enable **MAC Address Filter** and add the host name and MAC address of a LAN client to the table if you wish to allow or deny them access to your network. Click **Security > MAC Filter**. The screen appears as shown.

**Figure 166** Security > MAC Filter

**MAC Filter**

You can configure the Zyxel Device to permit access to clients based on their MAC addresses in the **MAC Filter** screen. This applies to wired and wireless connections. Every Ethernet device has a unique MAC (Media Access Control) address. The MAC address is assigned at the factory and consists of six pairs of hexadecimal characters, for example, 00:A0:C5:00:00:02. You need to know the MAC addresses of the LAN client to configure this screen.

Enable **MAC Address Filter** and add the host name and MAC address of a LAN client to the table if you wish to allow or deny them access to your network. You can choose to enable or disable the filters per entry; make sure that the check box under **Active** is selected if you want to use a filter.

MAC Address Filter  Enable  Disable (Settings are invalid when disable)

MAC Restrict Mode  Allow  Deny


[+ Add New Rule](#)

Set	Active	Host Name	MAC Address	Delete
-----	--------	-----------	-------------	--------

[Cancel](#) [Apply](#)

Click **Add New Rule** to add a filter rule. You can choose to enable or disable the filters per entry; select **Active** if you want to use this rule.

**Figure 167** Enabling individual MAC Filters

Set	Active	Host Name	MAC Address	Delete
1	<input type="checkbox"/>		- - - - -	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 96 Security &gt; MAC Filter

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
MAC Address Filter	Select <b>Enable</b> to activate the MAC filter function.
MAC Restrict Mode	Select <b>Allow</b> to only permit the listed MAC addresses access to the Zyxel Device. Select <b>Deny</b> to permit anyone access to the Zyxel Device except the listed MAC addresses.
Add New Rule	Click this button to create a new entry.
Set	This is the index number of the MAC address.
Active	Select <b>Active</b> to enable the MAC filter rule. The rule will not be applied if <b>Allow</b> is not selected.
Host Name	Enter the host name of the wireless or LAN clients that are allowed access to the Zyxel Device.
MAC Address	Enter the MAC addresses of the wireless or LAN clients that are allowed access to the Zyxel Device in these address fields. Enter the MAC addresses in a valid MAC address format, that is, six hexadecimal character pairs, for example, 12:34:56:78:9a:bc.
Delete	Click the <b>Delete</b> icon to delete an existing rule.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to restore your previously saved settings.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.

# CHAPTER 19

## Parental Control

### 19.1 Parental Control Overview

Parental control allows you to limit the time a user can access the Internet and prevent users from viewing inappropriate content or participating in specified online activities.

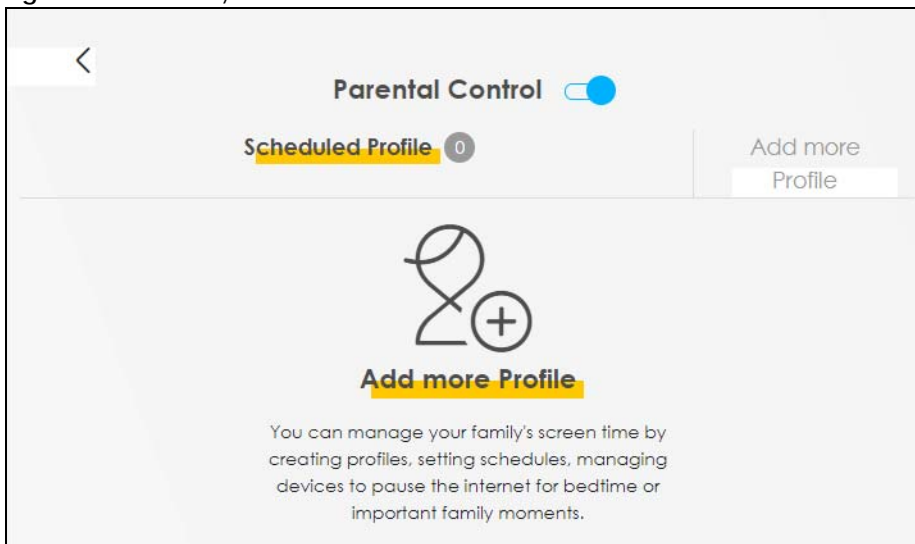
### 19.2 Parental Control Settings For EX5300, EX5301, DX5301-B2/B3 and DX/EX5401

Use this screen to enable parental control and view parental control rules and schedules. You can limit the time a user can access the Internet. These rules are defined in a Parental Control Profile (PCP).

Click **Security > Parental Control** to open the following screen.

Note: For EX/DX5401-B0, you need to disable MESH to add a new PCP.


**Figure 168** Security > Parental Control





The following table describes the fields in this screen.

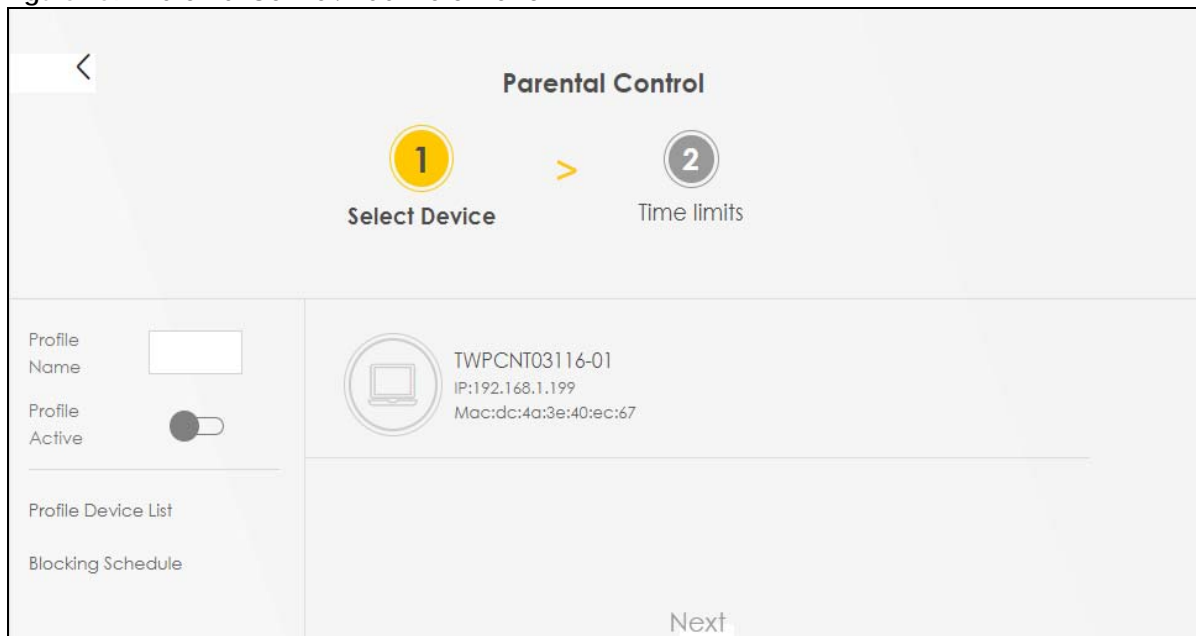
Table 97 Security > Parental Control

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Parental Control	Click this switch to enable or disable parental control. When the switch goes to the right (  ), the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
Scheduled Profile	This screen shows all the created profile(s).
Add more Profile	Click this button to create a new profile.

## 19.2.1 Add/Edit a Parental Control Profile

Click **Add more Profile** in the **Parental Control** screen to add a new rule or click the **Edit** icon next to an existing rule to edit it. Use this screen to configure a restricted access schedule.

Figure 169 Parental Control: Add more Profile



The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 98 Parental Control: Add more Profile


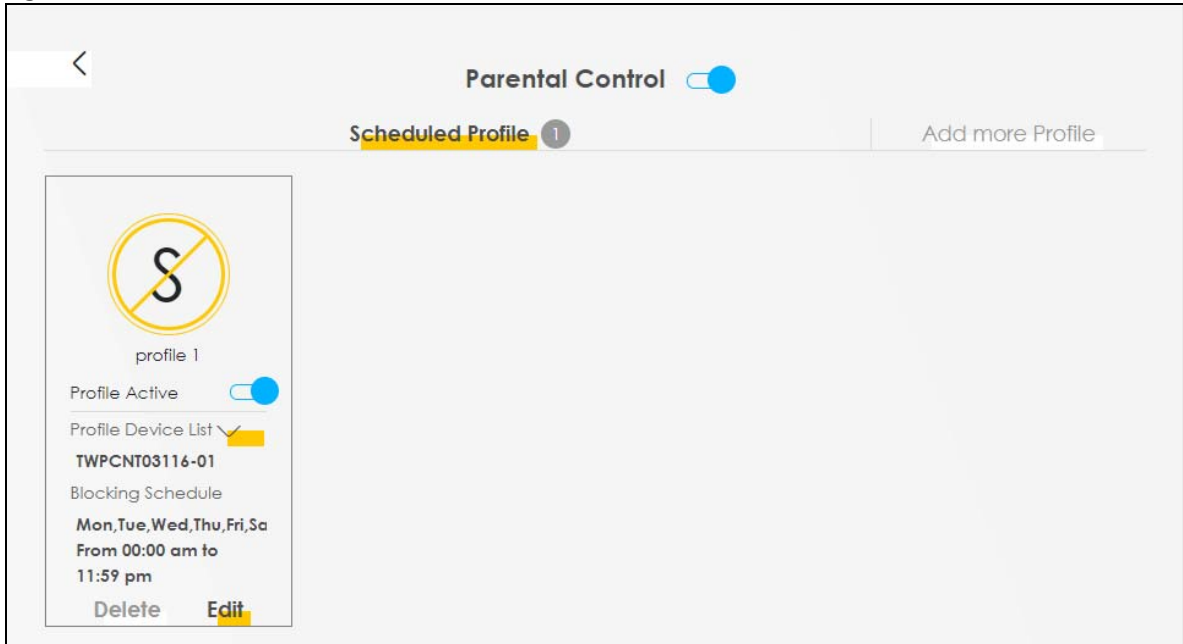



LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Profile Name	Enter a descriptive name for the profile.
Profile Active	Click this switch to enable or disable a created profile. When the switch goes to the right (  ), this profile is active. Otherwise, it is not.
Profile Device List	This field shows the devices selected on the right for this profile.
Blocking Schedule	This field shows the time during which Internet access is blocked on the profile device(s).

Figure 170 Parental Control: Scheduled Profile



The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 99 Parental Control: Add more Profile

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Parental Control	Click this switch to enable or disable parental control. When the switch goes to the right (  ), the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
Profile Active	Click this switch to enable or disable a created profile. When the switch goes to the right (  ), this profile is active. Otherwise, it is not.
Scheduled Profile	This screen shows all the created profile(s). Click  beside <b>Profile Device List</b> to view more information about the profile. You can click <b>Delete</b> to remove the profile or click <b>Edit</b> to change the profile settings. Only the <b>Add more Profile</b> button displays if there is no profile created.
Add more Profile	Click this button to create a new profile.


## 19.2.2 Define a Schedule

This screen allow you to define time periods and days during which Internet access is blocked on the profile device(s).

Figure 171 Parental Control &gt; Add more Profile: Schedule

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 100 Parental Control: Add more Profile

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Profile Name	Enter a descriptive name for the profile.
Internet Blocking	Click this switch to enable or disable Internet access. When the switch goes to the right (  ), this profile is active. Otherwise, it is not.
Profile Device List	This field shows the devices selected on the right for this profile.
Blocking Schedule	This field shows the time during which Internet access is blocked on the profile device(s).
Schedule	
Add New Schedule	Click this to add a new block for scheduling.
Start/End blocking	Select the time period when Internet access is blocked on the profile device(s). Select <b>Whole Week</b> and the scheduler rule will be activated for 24 hours.
Repeat On	Select the days when Internet access is blocked on the profile device(s).
Back	Click <b>Back</b> to return to the previous screen.
Save	Click <b>Save</b> to save your changes.

## 19.3 Parental Control Settings for AX7501/PX7501 and EX5501

Use this screen to enable parental control and view parental control rules and schedules. You can limit the time a user can access the Internet and prevent users from viewing inappropriate content or participating in specified online activities. These rules are defined in a Parental Control Profile (PCP).

Click **Security > Parental Control** to open the following screen.

**Figure 172** Security > Parental Control

**Parental Control**

Parental control allows you to limit the time a user can access the Internet and prevent users from viewing inappropriate content or participating in specified online activities.

Use this screen to enable parental control and view parental control rules and schedules. You can limit the time a user can access the Internet and prevent users from viewing inappropriate content or participating in specified online activities. These rules are defined in a Parental Control Profile (PCP).

**General**

Parental Control  Enable  Disable (Settings are invalid when disable)

**Parental Control Profile(PCP)** + Add New PCP

#	Status	PCP Name	Home Network User MAC	Internet Access Schedule	Network Service	Website Blocked	Modify
<span>Cancel</span> <span>Apply</span>							

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

**Table 101** Security > Parental Control

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
General	
Parental Control	Select <b>Enable</b> to activate parental control on the Zyxel Device.
Parental Control Profile (PCP)	
Add new PCP	Click this if you want to configure a new Parental Control Profile (PCP).
#	This shows the index number of the rule.
Status	This indicates whether the rule is active or not. A yellow bulb signifies that this rule is active. A gray bulb signifies that this rule is not active
PCP Name	This shows the name of the rule.
Home Network User MAC	This shows the MAC address of the LAN user's computer to which this rule applies.
Internet Access Schedule	This shows the day(s) and time on which parental control is enabled.
Network Service	This shows whether the network service is configured. If not, <b>None</b> will be shown.
Website Block	This shows whether the website block is configured. If not, <b>None</b> will be shown.
Modify	Click the <b>Edit</b> icon to go to the screen where you can edit the rule. Click the <b>Delete</b> icon to delete an existing rule.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to restore your previously saved settings.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.

### 19.3.1 Add/Edit a Parental Control Profile

Click **Add new PCP** in the **Parental Control** screen to add a new rule or click the **Edit** icon next to an existing rule to edit it. Use this screen to configure a restricted access schedule and/or URL filtering settings to block the users on your network from accessing certain web sites.

**Figure 173** Security > Parental Control > Add/Edit PCP (General, Rule List & Internet Access Schedule)

The screenshot displays the 'Add New PCP' configuration interface, which is divided into three main sections: General, Rule List, and Internet Access Schedule.

- General:** This section contains an 'Active' toggle with 'Enable' selected and 'Disable (Settings are invalid when disable)' as an option. Below this are input fields for 'Parental Control Profile Name', a dropdown menu for 'Home Network User' (currently set to 'Custom'), and a date selection field with dashes. A yellow 'Add' button is positioned to the right of the date field.
- Rule List:** This section features a table with two columns: 'User MAC Address' and 'Delete'. The table is currently empty.
- Internet Access Schedule:** This section includes a 'Day' row with seven circular buttons labeled 'Mon', 'Tue', 'Wed', 'Thu', 'Fri', 'Sat', and 'Sun'. Below the days is an 'Add New Time' button with a plus sign. The 'Time (Start-End)' row shows a horizontal timeline with a yellow bar extending from '00:00' to '24:00', indicating full-day access.

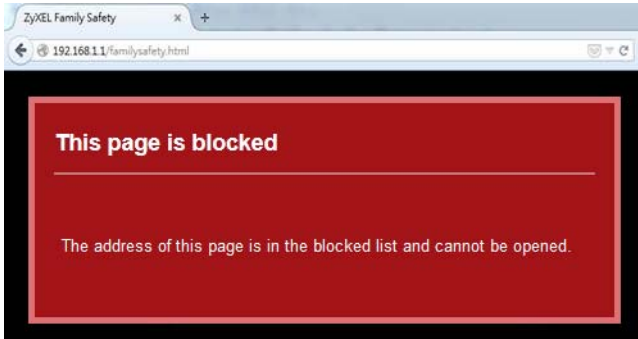
**Figure 174** Security > Parental Control > Add/Edit PCP (Network Service & Site/URL Keyword)

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

**Table 102** Security > Parental Control > Add/Edit PCP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
General	
Active	Select <b>Enable</b> or <b>Disable</b> to activate or deactivate the parental control rule.
Parental Control Profile Name	Enter a descriptive name for the rule.
Home Network User	Select the LAN user that you want to apply this rule to from the drop-down list box. If you select <b>Custom</b> , enter the LAN user's MAC address. If you select <b>All</b> , the rule applies to all LAN users.
Rule List	In <b>Home Network User</b> , select <b>Custom</b> , enter the LAN user's MAC address, then click the <b>Add</b> icon to enter a computer MAC address for this PCP. Up to five are allowed. Click the <b>Delete</b> icon to remove one.
Internet Access Schedule	
Day	Select check boxes for the days that you want the Zyxel Device to perform parental control.
Time	Drag the time bar to define the time that the LAN user is allowed access ( <b>Authorized access</b> ) or denied access ( <b>No access</b> ).
Add New Service	Click this to add a new time bar. Up to three are allowed.
Network Service	
Network Service Setting	If you select <b>Block</b> , the Zyxel Device prohibits the users from viewing the web sites with the URLs listed below.  If you select <b>Allow</b> , the Zyxel Device blocks access to all URLs except ones listed below.
Add New Service	Click this to show a screen in which you can add a new service rule. You can configure the <b>Service Name</b> , <b>Protocol</b> , and <b>Port</b> of the new rule, as shown in <a href="#">Figure 176</a> .
#	This shows the index number of the rule.

**Table 102** Security > Parental Control > Add/Edit PCP (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Service Name	This shows the name of the rule.
Protocol:Port	This shows the protocol and the port of the rule.
Modify	Click the <b>Edit</b> icon to go to the screen where you can edit the rule. Click the <b>Delete</b> icon to delete an existing rule.
Site/URL Keyword	
Block or Allow the Web Site	If you select <b>Block the Web URLs</b> , the Zyxel Device prohibits the users from viewing the Web sites with the URLs listed below. If you select <b>Allow the Web URLs</b> , the Zyxel Device blocks access to all URLs except ones listed below.
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to show a screen to enter the URL of web site or URL keyword to which the Zyxel Device blocks or allows access.
#	This shows the index number of the rule.
Website	This shows the URL of web site or URL keyword to which the Zyxel Device blocks or allows access.
Modify	Click the <b>Edit</b> icon to go to the screen where you can edit the rule. Click the <b>Delete</b> icon to delete an existing rule.
Redirect blocked site to Zyxel Family Safety page	Select this to redirect users who access any blocked websites listed above to the Zyxel Family Safety page as shown next.  <b>Figure 175</b> Zyxel Family Safety Page Example  The screenshot shows a web browser window with the title 'ZyXEL Family Safety'. The address bar shows '192.168.1.1/familysafety.html'. The main content area is a red box with the text: 'This page is blocked' followed by a horizontal line and 'The address of this page is in the blocked list and cannot be opened.'
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to exit this screen without saving any changes.
OK	Click <b>OK</b> to save your changes.

## Add New Service

Use this screen to add a new service rule.

**Figure 176** Security > Parental Control > Add/Edit PCP > Add New Service

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

**Table 103** Security > Parental Control > Add/Edit PCP > Add New Service

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New Service	Select the name of the service from the drop-down list. Otherwise, select <b>User Define</b> and specify the name, protocol, and port of the service.  If you have chosen a pre-defined service in the <b>Service Name</b> field, this field will not be configurable.
Protocol	Select the transport layer protocol used for the service. Choices are <b>TCP</b> , <b>UDP</b> , or <b>TCP &amp; UDP</b> .
Port	Enter the port of the service.  If you have chosen a pre-defined service in the <b>Service Name</b> field, this field will not be configurable.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to exit this screen without saving any changes.
OK	Click <b>OK</b> to save your changes.

## Add Site/URL Keyword

Click **Add** in the **Site/URL Keyword** section of the **Edit/Add new PCP** screen to open the following screen.

Note: Do not include "HTTP" or "HTTPS" in the keyword. HTTPS connections cannot be blocked by Parental Control.

**Figure 177** Security > Parental Control > Add/Edit PCP > Add Keyword



The following table describes the fields in this screen.

**Table 104** Security > Parental Control > Add/Edit PCP > Add Keyword

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Site/URL Keyword	Enter a keyword and click <b>OK</b> to have the Zyxel Device block access to the website URLs that contain the keyword.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to exit this screen without saving any changes.
OK	Click <b>OK</b> to save your changes.

# CHAPTER 20

## Scheduler Rule

### 20.1 Scheduler Rule Overview

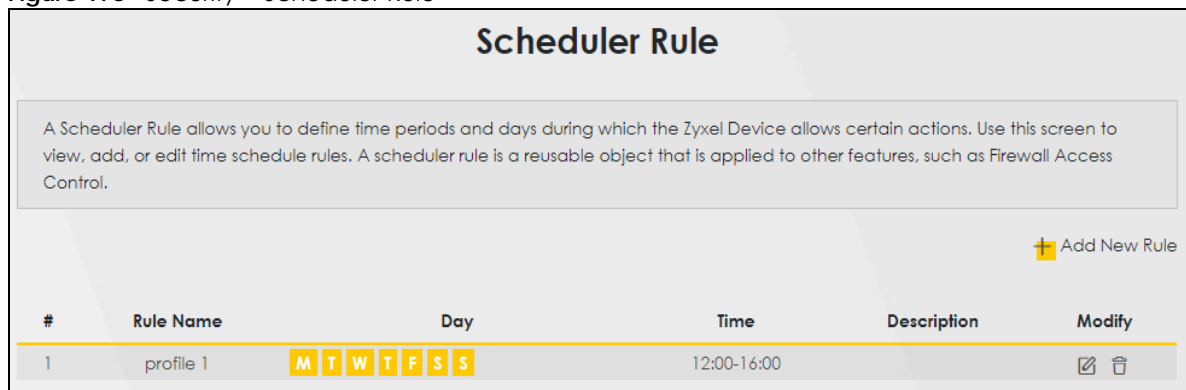
A Scheduler Rule allows you to define time periods and days during which the Zyxel Device allows certain actions.

### 20.2 Scheduler Rule Settings

Use this screen to view, add, or edit time schedule rules. A scheduler rule is a reusable object that is applied to other features, such as Firewall Access Control.

Click **Security > Scheduler Rule** to open the following screen.

**Figure 178** Security > Scheduler Rule



The following table describes the fields in this screen.

**Table 105** Security > Scheduler Rule

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New Rule	Click this to create a new rule.
#	This is the index number of the entry.
Rule Name	This shows the name of the rule.
Day	This shows the day(s) on which this rule is enabled.
Time	This shows the period of time on which this rule is enabled.
Description	This shows the description of this rule.
Modify	Click the <b>Edit</b> icon to edit the schedule. Click the <b>Delete</b> icon to delete a scheduler rule. Note: You cannot delete a scheduler rule once it is applied to a certain feature.

## 20.2.1 Add/Edit a Schedule Rule

Click the **Add New Rule** button in the **Scheduler Rule** screen or click the **Edit** icon next to a schedule rule to open the following screen. Use this screen to configure a schedule rule.

**Figure 179** Scheduler Rule: Add/Edit

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 106 Scheduler Rule: Add/Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Rule Name	Enter a name (up to 31 printable English keyboard characters, not including spaces) for this schedule.
Day	Select check boxes for the days that you want the Zyxel Device to perform this scheduler rule.
Time of Day Range	Enter the time period of each day, in 24-hour format, during which the rule will be enforced.
Description	Enter a description for this scheduler rule.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to exit this screen without saving any changes.
OK	Click <b>OK</b> to save your changes.

# CHAPTER 21

# Certificates

## 21.1 Certificates Overview

The Zyxel Device can use certificates (also called digital IDs) to authenticate users. Certificates are based on public-private key pairs. A certificate contains the certificate owner's identity and public key. Certificates provide a way to exchange public keys for use in authentication.

### 21.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- The **Local Certificates** screen lets you generate certification requests and import the Zyxel Device's CA-signed certificates ([Section 21.4 on page 304](#)).
- The **Trusted CA** screen lets you save the certificates of trusted CAs to the Zyxel Device ([Section 21.4 on page 304](#)).

## 21.2 What You Need to Know

The following terms and concepts may help as you read through this chapter.

### Certification Authority

A Certification Authority (CA) issues certificates and guarantees the identity of each certificate owner. There are commercial certification authorities like CyberTrust or VeriSign and government certification authorities. The certification authority uses its private key to sign certificates. Anyone can then use the certification authority's public key to verify the certificates. You can use the Zyxel Device to generate certification requests that contain identifying information and public keys and then send the certification requests to a certification authority.

## 21.3 Local Certificates

Click **Security > Certificates** to open the **Local Certificates** screen. Use this screen to view the Zyxel Device's summary list of certificates, generate certification requests, and import signed certificates.

Figure 180 Security &gt; Certificates &gt; Local Certificates

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 107 Security &gt; Certificates &gt; Local Certificates

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Private Key is protected by a password	Select the check box and enter the private key into the text box to store it on the Zyxel Device. The private key should not exceed 63 ASCII characters (not including spaces).
Browse / Choose File	Click <b>Browse</b> or <b>Choose File</b> to find the certificate file you want to upload.
Import Certificate	Click this button to save the certificate that you have enrolled from a certification authority from your computer to the Zyxel Device.
Create Certificate Request	Click this button to go to the screen where you can have the Zyxel Device generate a certification request.
Current File	This field displays the name used to identify this certificate. It is recommended that you give each certificate a unique name.
Subject	This field displays identifying information about the certificate's owner, such as CN (Common Name), OU (Organizational Unit or department), O (Organization or company) and C (Country). It is recommended that each certificate have unique subject information.
Issuer	This field displays identifying information about the certificate's issuing certification authority, such as a common name, organizational unit or department, organization or company and country.
Valid From	This field displays the date that the certificate becomes applicable. The text displays in red and includes a <b>Not Yet Valid!</b> message if the certificate has not yet become applicable.
Valid To	This field displays the date that the certificate expires. The text displays in red and includes an <b>Expiring!</b> or <b>Expired!</b> message if the certificate is about to expire or has already expired.
Modify	Click the <b>View</b> icon to open a screen with an in-depth list of information about the certificate (or certification request).  For a certification request, click <b>Load Signed</b> to import the signed certificate.  Click the <b>Remove</b> icon to delete the certificate (or certification request). You cannot delete a certificate that one or more features is configured to use.

## 21.3.1 Create Certificate Request

Click **Security > Certificates > Local Certificates** and then **Create Certificate Request** to open the following screen. Use this screen to have the Zyxel Device generate a certification request. To create a certificate signing request, you need to enter a common name, organization name, state/province name, and the two-letter country code for the certificate.

**Figure 181** Create Certificate Request

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

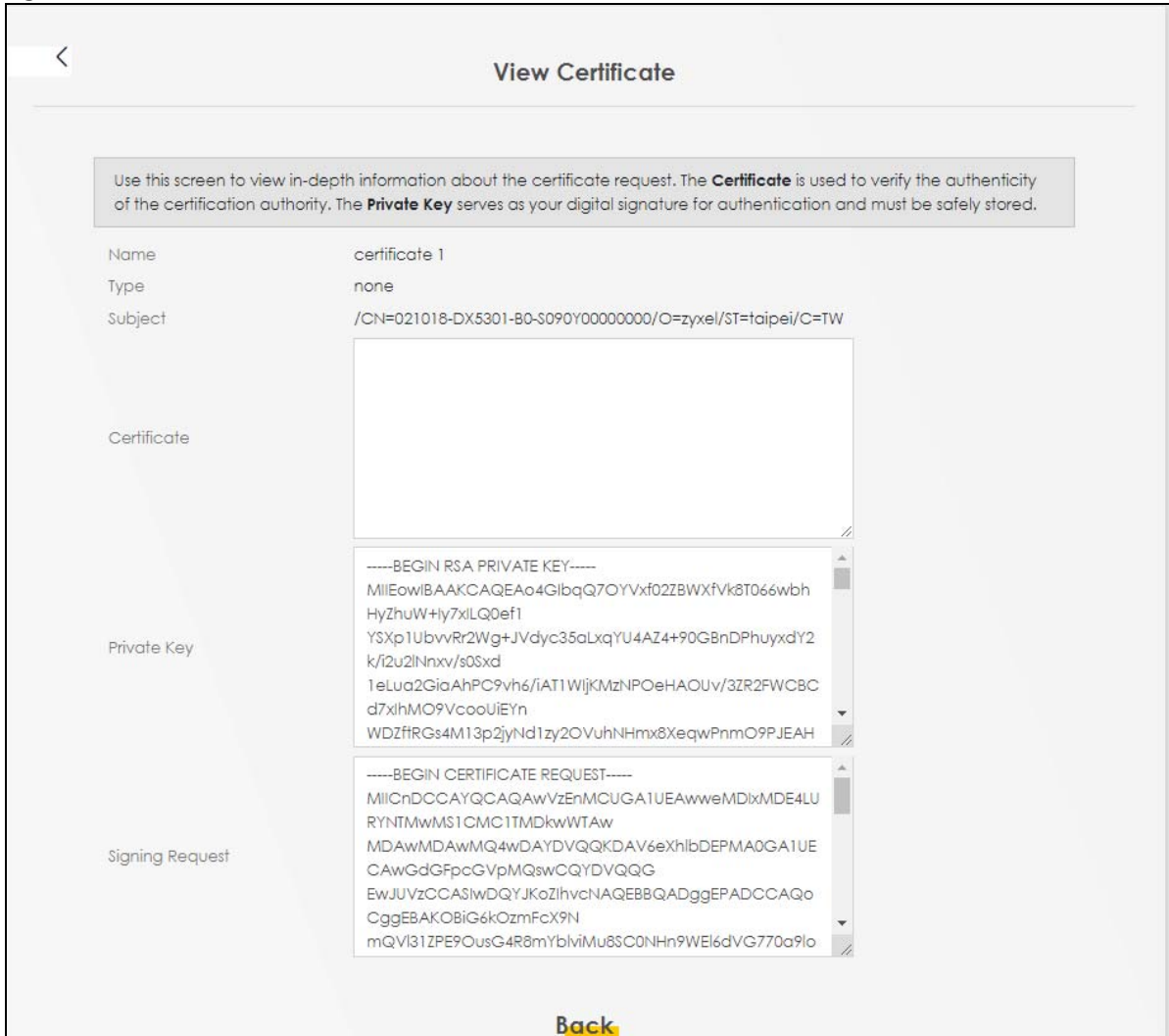
**Table 108** Create Certificate Request

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Certificate Name	Type up to 63 ASCII characters (not including spaces) to identify this certificate.
Common Name	Select <b>Auto</b> to have the Zyxel Device configure this field automatically. Or select <b>Customize</b> to enter it manually.  Type the IP address (in dotted decimal notation), domain name or e-mail address in the field provided. The domain name or e-mail address can be up to 63 ASCII characters. The domain name or e-mail address is for identification purposes only and can be any string.
Organization Name	Type up to 63 characters to identify the company or group to which the certificate owner belongs. You may use any character, including spaces, but the Zyxel Device drops trailing spaces.
State/Province Name	Type up to 32 characters to identify the state or province where the certificate owner is located. You may use any character, including spaces, but the Zyxel Device drops trailing spaces.
Country/Region Name	Select a country to identify the nation where the certificate owner is located.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to exit this screen without saving any changes.
OK	Click <b>OK</b> to save your changes.

## 21.3.2 View Certificate Request

Click the **Edit** icon in the **Local Certificates** screen to open the following screen. Use this screen to view in-depth information about the certificate request. The **Certificate** is used to verify the authenticity of the certification authority. The **Private Key** serves as your digital signature for authentication and must be safely stored.

**Figure 182** Certificate Request: View



The following table describes the fields in this screen.

**Table 109** Certificate Request: View

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	This field displays the identifying name of this certificate.
Type	This field displays general information about the certificate. <b>ca</b> means that a Certification Authority signed the certificate.
Subject	This field displays information that identifies the owner of the certificate, such as Common Name (CN), Organizational Unit (OU), Organization (O) and Country (C).

Table 109 Certificate Request: View (continued)

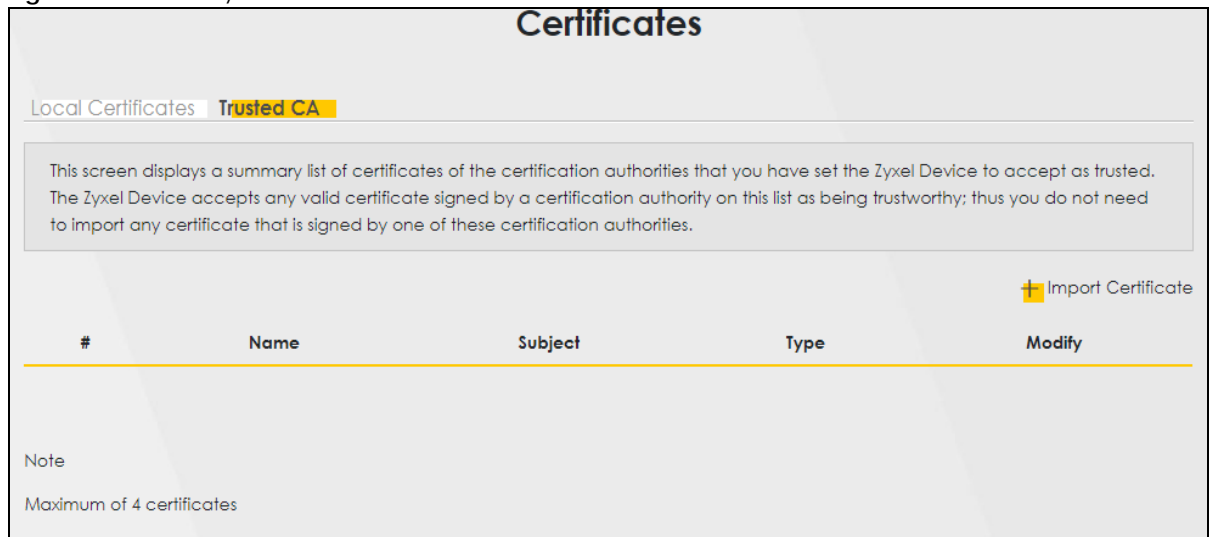
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Certificate	This read-only text box displays the certificate in Privacy Enhanced Mail (PEM) format. PEM uses base 64 to convert the binary certificate into a printable form.  You can copy and paste the certificate into an e-mail to send to friends or colleagues or you can copy and paste the certificate into a text editor and save the file on a management computer for later distribution.
Private Key	This field displays the private key of this certificate.
Signing Request	This field displays the CSR (Certificate Signing Request) information of this certificate. The CSR will be provided to a certificate authority, and it includes information about the public key, organization name, domain name, location, and country of this certificate.
Back	Click <b>Back</b> to return to the previous screen.

## 21.4 Trusted CA

Click **Security > Certificates > Trusted CA** to open the following screen. This screen displays a summary list of certificates of the certification authorities that you have set the Zyxel Device to accept as trusted. The Zyxel Device accepts any valid certificate signed by a certification authority on this list as being trustworthy; thus you do not need to import any certificate that is signed by one of these certification authorities.

Note: A maximum of 4 trusted certificates can be added.

Figure 183 Security &gt; Certificates &gt; Trusted CA



The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 110 Security &gt; Certificates &gt; Trusted CA

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Import Certificate	Click this button to open a screen where you can save the certificate of a certification authority that you trust to the Zyxel Device.
#	This is the index number of the entry.
Name	This field displays the name used to identify this certificate.



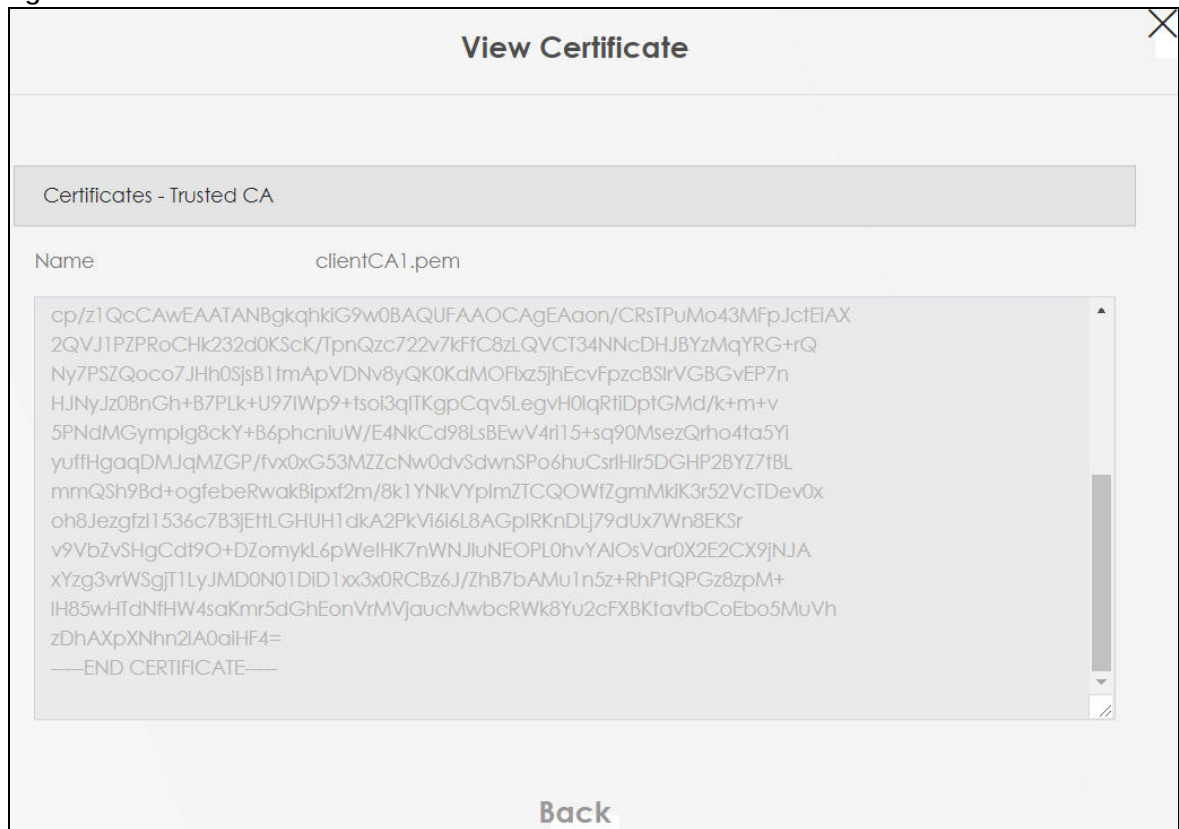
Table 110 Security &gt; Certificates &gt; Trusted CA (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Subject	This field displays information that identifies the owner of the certificate, such as Common Name (CN), OU (Organizational Unit or department), Organization (O), State (ST) and Country (C). It is recommended that each certificate have unique subject information.
Type	This field displays general information about the certificate. <b>ca</b> means that a Certification Authority signed the certificate.
Modify	Click the <b>View</b> icon to open a screen with an in-depth list of information about the certificate (or certification request).  Click the <b>Remove</b> button to delete the certificate (or certification request). You cannot delete a certificate that one or more features is configured to use.

## 21.4.1 View Trusted CA Certificate

Click the **View** icon in the **Trusted CA** screen to open the following screen. Use this screen to view in-depth information about the certification authority's certificate. The certificate text box is read-only and can be distributed to others.

Figure 184 Trusted CA: View



The following table describes the fields in this screen.

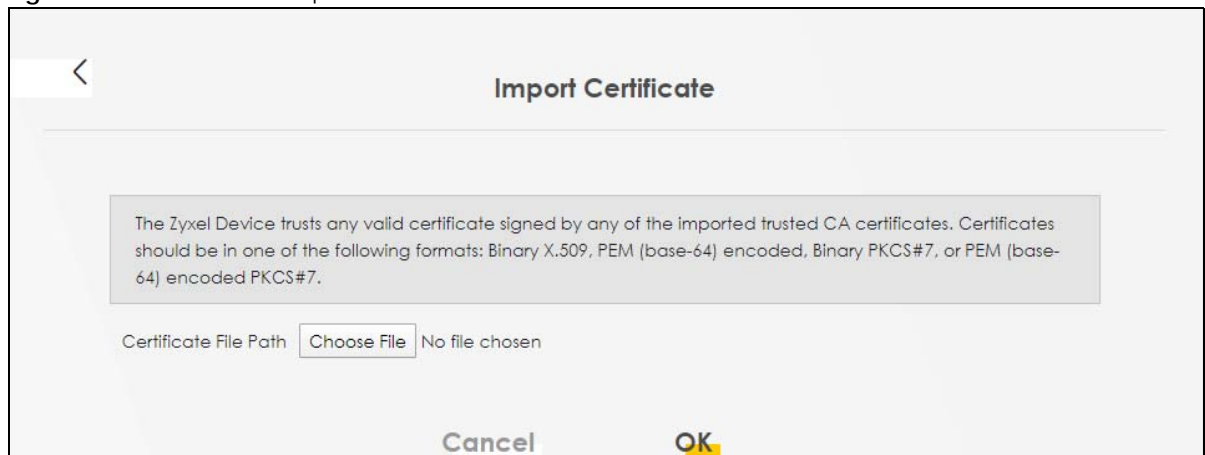
Table 111 Trusted CA: View

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	This field displays the identifying name of this certificate.
	This read-only text box displays the certificate in Privacy Enhanced Mail (PEM) format. PEM uses base 64 to convert the binary certificate into a printable form.  You can copy and paste the certificate into an e-mail to send to friends or colleagues or you can copy and paste the certificate into a text editor and save the file on a management computer for later distribution (via floppy disk for example).
Back	Click <b>Back</b> to return to the previous screen.

## 21.4.2 Import Trusted CA Certificate

Click the **Import Certificate** button in the **Trusted CA** screen to open the following screen. The Zyxel Device trusts any valid certificate signed by any of the imported trusted CA certificates. Certificates should be in one of the following formats: Binary X.509, PEM (base-64) encoded, Binary PKCS#7, or PEM (base-64) encoded PKCS#7.

Figure 185 Trusted CA: Import Certificate



The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 112 Trusted CA: Import Certificate

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Certificate File Path	Click <b>Browse</b> or <b>Choose File</b> and select the certificate you want to upload.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to exit this screen without saving any changes.
OK	Click <b>OK</b> to save your changes.

# CHAPTER 22

## VoIP

### 22.1 Overview

You can make calls over the Internet using VoIP technology. For this, you first need to set up a SIP account with a SIP service provider.

Use this chapter to:

- Connect an analog phone to the Zyxel Device.
- Configure settings such as speed dial.
- Configure network settings to optimize the voice quality of your phone calls.

#### 22.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

These screens allow you to configure your Zyxel Device to make phone calls over the Internet and your regular phone line, and to set up the phones you connect to the Zyxel Device.

- Use the **SIP Account** screen ([Section 22.3 on page 309](#)) to set up information about your SIP account, control which SIP accounts the phones connected to the Zyxel Device use and configure audio settings such as volume levels for the phones connected to the Zyxel Device.
- Use the **SIP Service Provider** screen ([Section 22.4 on page 313](#)) to configure the SIP server information, QoS for VoIP calls, the numbers for certain phone functions, and dialing plan.
- Use the **Phone Device** screen ([Section 22.5 on page 317](#)) to control which SIP account(s) each phone uses to handle outgoing and incoming calls.
- Use the **Region** screen ([Section 22.6 on page 319](#)) to change settings that depend on the country you are in.
- Use the **Call Rule** screen ([Section 22.7 on page 319](#)) to set up shortcuts for dialing frequently-used (VoIP) phone numbers.
- Use the **Call History** screen ([Section 22.8 on page 320](#)) to view detailed information for each outgoing call you made or each incoming call from someone calling you. You can also view the summary list of received, dialed and missed calls.

You do not necessarily need to use all these screens to set up your account. In fact, if your service provider did not supply information on a particular field in a screen, it is usually best to leave it at its default setting.

## 22.1.2 What You Need to Know About VoIP

### VoIP

VoIP stands for Voice over IP. IP is the Internet Protocol, which is the message-carrying standard the Internet runs on. So, Voice over IP is the sending of voice signals (speech) over the Internet (or another network that uses the Internet Protocol).

### SIP

SIP stands for Session Initiation Protocol. SIP is a signaling standard that lets one network device (like a computer or the Zyxel Device) send messages to another. In VoIP, these messages are about phone calls over the network. For example, when you dial a number on your Zyxel Device, it sends a SIP message over the network asking the other device (the number you dialed) to take part in the call.

### SIP Accounts

A SIP account is a type of VoIP account. It is an arrangement with a service provider that lets you make phone calls over the Internet. When you set the Zyxel Device to use your SIP account to make calls, the Zyxel Device is able to send all the information about the phone call to your service provider on the Internet.

Strictly speaking, you don't need a SIP account. It is possible for one SIP device (like the Zyxel Device) to call another without involving a SIP service provider. However, the networking difficulties involved in doing this make it tremendously impractical under normal circumstances. Your SIP account provider removes these difficulties by taking care of the call routing and setup - figuring out how to get your call to the right place in a way that you and the other person can talk to one another.

### SIP Address

A SIP address is a URI (Uniform Resource Identifier) that resembles an email address, using the format: user@domain. It uniquely identifies a telephone extension over a VoIP system. A SIP address of 123-45-67@voip-provider.net tells a client to connect to voip-provider.net and request a connection to 123-45-67. While VoIP can only send voice messages over the Internet, SIP (though strictly speaking is a type of VoIP) can send voice, data, video, and other media. VoIP phones also need to be connected to a computer to function, whereas SIP phones only need to be connected to a modem.

### How to Find Out More

See [Section 22.9 on page 322](#) for advanced technical information on SIP.

## 22.2 Before You Begin

- Before you can use these screens, you need to have a VoIP account already set up. If you do not have one yet, you can sign up with a VoIP service provider over the Internet.
- You should have the information your VoIP service provider gave you ready, before you start to configure the Zyxel Device.

## 22.3 SIP Account

The Zyxel Device uses a SIP account to make outgoing VoIP calls and check if an incoming call's destination number matches your SIP account's VoIP number. In order to make or receive a VoIP call, you need to enable and configure a SIP account and map it to a phone port. The SIP account contains information that allows your Zyxel Device to connect to your VoIP service provider.

See [Section 22.3.1 on page 309](#) for how to map a SIP account to a phone port.

Use this screen to view SIP account information. You can also enable and disable each SIP account. To access this screen, click **VoIP > SIP > SIP Account**.

**Figure 186** VoIP > SIP > SIP Account

#	Enable	SIP Account	Service Provider	Account Number	Modify
1	Disabled	SIP1	ChangeMe	ChangeMe	
2	Disabled	SIP2	ChangeMe	ChangeMe	

Each field is described in the following table.

Table 113 VoIP > SIP > SIP Account

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add new account	Click this to configure a SIP account.
#	This is the index number of the entry.
Enable	This shows whether the SIP account is activated or not.
SIP Account	This shows the name of the SIP account.
Service Provider	This shows the name of the SIP service provider.
Account Number	This shows the SIP address.
Modify	Click the <b>Edit</b> icon to configure the SIP account. Click the <b>Delete</b> icon to delete this SIP account from the Zyxel Device.

### 22.3.1 SIP Account Add/Edit

Use this screen to configure a SIP account and map it to a phone port in the **Phone Device** screen. To access this screen, click the **Add New Account** button or click the **Edit** icon of an entry in the **VoIP > SIP > SIP Account** screen.

Note: You do not necessarily need to use all these fields to set up your account.

**Figure 187** VoIP > SIP > SIP Account > Add New Account/Edit

Each field is described in the following table.

Table 114 VoIP &gt; SIP &gt; SIP Account &gt; Add new account/Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SIP Account Selection	
SIP Account Selection	This field displays <b>ChangeMe</b> if you are creating a new SIP account or the SIP account you are modifying.
SIP Service Provider Association	
SIP Account Associated with	Select the SIP service provider profile to use for the SIP account you are configuring in this screen. You should already have configured a SIP service provider profile in the <b>SIP Service Provider</b> screen.  This field is read-only when you are modifying an existing SIP account.
General	
Enable SIP Account	Select this if you want the Zyxel Device to use this account. Clear it if you do not want the Zyxel Device to use this account.
SIP Account Number	Enter your SIP address. In the full SIP URI, this is the part before the @ symbol. You can use up to 127 printable ASCII characters.
Authentication	
Username	Enter the user name for registering this SIP account, exactly as it was given to you. You can use up to 95 printable ASCII characters.
Password	Enter the user name for registering this SIP account, exactly as it was given to you. You can use up to 95 printable ASCII Extended set characters.
URL Type	
URL Type	Select whether or not to include the SIP service domain name when the Zyxel Device sends the SIP address.  <b>SIP</b> - include the SIP service domain name. <b>TEL</b> - do not include the SIP service domain name.
Voice Features	

Table 114 VoIP &gt; SIP &gt; SIP Account &gt; Add new account/Edit (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Primary Compression Type Secondary Compression Type Third Compression Type	<p>Select the type of voice coder/decoder (codec) that you want the Zyxel Device to use.</p> <p>G.711 provides high voice quality but requires more bandwidth (64 kbps). G.711 is the default codec used by phone companies and digital handsets.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>G.711a</b> is typically used in Europe.</li> <li>• <b>G.711u</b> is typically used in North America and Japan.</li> </ul> <p><b>G.726-24</b> operates at <b>24</b> kbps.</p> <p><b>G.726-32</b> operates at <b>32</b> kbps.</p> <p>By contrast, <b>G.729</b> only requires 8 kbps.</p> <p><b>G.722</b> is a 7 KHz wideband voice codec that operates at 48, 56 and 64 kbps. By using a sample rate of 16 kHz, G.722 can provide higher fidelity and better audio quality than narrowband codecs like G.711, in which the voice signal is sampled at 8 KHz.</p> <p>The Zyxel Device must use the same codec as the peer. When two SIP devices start a SIP session, they must agree on a codec.</p> <p>Select the Zyxel Device's first choice for voice coder/decoder.</p> <p>Select the Zyxel Device's second choice for voice coder/decoder. Select <b>None</b> if you only want the Zyxel Device to accept the first choice.</p> <p>Select the Zyxel Device's third choice for voice coder/decoder. Select <b>None</b> if you only want the Zyxel Device to accept the first or second choice.</p>
Speaking Volume Control	Select the loudness that the Zyxel Device uses for speech that it sends to the peer device.
Listening Volume Control	Select the loudness that the Zyxel Device uses for speech that it receives from the peer device.
Enable G.168 (Echo Cancellation)	Select this if you want to eliminate the echo caused by the sound of your voice reverberating in the telephone receiver while you talk.
Enable VAD (Voice Active Detector)	Select this if the Zyxel Device should stop transmitting when you are not speaking. This reduces the bandwidth the Zyxel Device uses.
Call Features	
Send Caller ID	Select this if you want to send identification when you make VoIP phone calls. Clear this if you do not want to send identification.
Enable Call Transfer	Select this to enable call transfer on the Zyxel Device. This allows you to transfer an incoming call (that you have answered) to another phone.
Enable Call Waiting	Select this to enable call waiting on the Zyxel Device. This allows you to place a call on hold while you answer another incoming call on the same telephone number.
Call Waiting Reject Timer	Specify the time in seconds that the Zyxel Device waits before rejecting the second call if you do not answer it.
Enable Unconditional Forward	<p>Select this if you want the Zyxel Device to forward all incoming calls to the specified phone number.</p> <p>Specify the phone number in the <b>To Number</b> field on the right.</p>
Enable Busy Forward	<p>Select this if you want the Zyxel Device to forward incoming calls to the specified phone number if the phone port is busy.</p> <p>Specify the phone number in the <b>To Number</b> field on the right.</p> <p>If you have call waiting, the incoming call is forwarded to the specified phone number if you reject or ignore the second incoming call.</p>

Table 114 VoIP &gt; SIP &gt; SIP Account &gt; Add new account/Edit (continued)

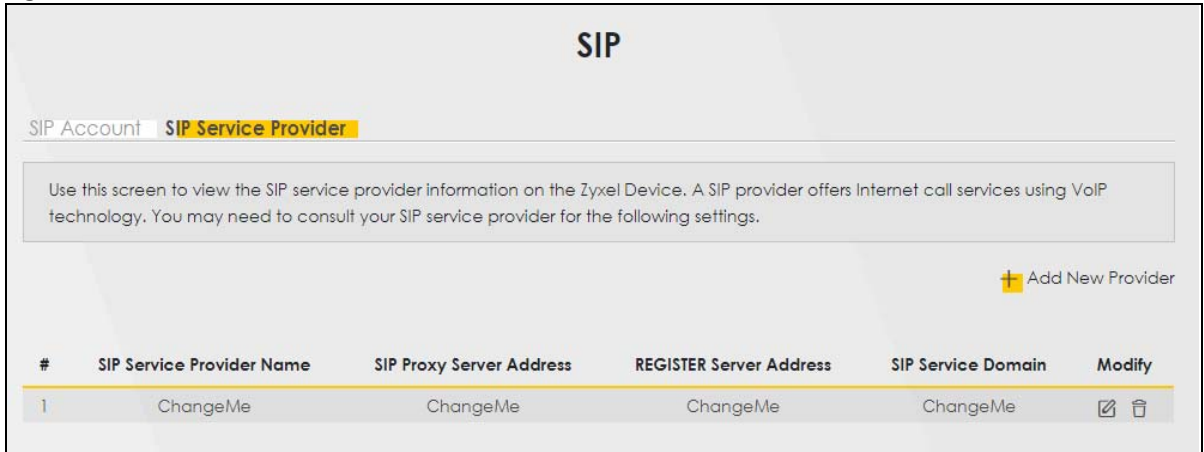
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Enable No Answer Forward	Select this if you want the Zyxel Device to forward incoming calls to the specified phone number if the call is unanswered. (See <b>No Answer Time</b> .)  Specify the phone number in the <b>To Number</b> field on the right.
No Answer Time	This field is used by the <b>Active No Answer Forward</b> feature.  Enter the number of seconds the Zyxel Device should wait for you to answer an incoming call before it considers the call unanswered.
Enable Do Not Disturb	Select this to set your phone to not ring when someone calls you.
Active Incoming Anonymous Call Block	Select this if you do not want the phone to ring when someone tries to call you with caller ID deactivated.
Enable MWI	Select this if you want to hear a waiting (beeping) dial tone on your phone when you have at least one voice message. Your VoIP service provider must support this feature.
MWI Subscribe Expiration Time	Keep the default value of this field unless your VoIP service provider tells you to change it. Enter the number of seconds the SIP server should provide the message waiting service each time the Zyxel Device subscribes to the service. Before this time passes, the Zyxel Device automatically subscribes again.
Hot Line / Warm Line Number	Select this to enable the hot line or warm line feature on the Zyxel Device.
Hot Line	Select this to have the Zyxel Device dial the specified hot line number immediately when you pick up the telephone.
Warm Line	Select this to have the Zyxel Device dial the specified warm line number after you pick up the telephone and do not press any keys on the keypad for a period of time.
Hot Line / Warm Line Number	Enter the number of the hot line or warm line that you want the Zyxel Device to dial.
Warm Line Timer	Enter a number of seconds that the Zyxel Device waits before dialing the warm line number if you pick up the telephone and do not press any keys on the keypad.
Enable Missed Call E-mail Notification	Select this option to have the Zyxel Device e-mail you a notification when there is a missed call.
Mail Account	Select a mail account for the e-mail address specified below. If you select <b>None</b> here, e-mail notifications will not be sent via e-mail.  You must have configured a mail account already in the <b>Email Notification</b> screen.
Send Notification to e-mail	Notifications are sent to the e-mail address specified in this field. If this field is left blank, notifications will not be sent via e-mail.
Missed Call e-mail Title	Type a title that you want to be in the subject line of the e-mail notifications that the Zyxel Device sends.
Early Media	Select this if you want people to hear a customized recording when they call you.
IVR Play Index	Select the tone you want people to hear when they call you.  This field is configurable only when you select <b>Early Media</b> . See <a href="#">Section 22.9 on page 322</a> for information on how to record these tones.
Music On Hold (MOH)	Select this to play a customized recording when you put people on hold.
IVR Play Index	Select the tone to play when you put someone on hold.  This field is configurable only when you select <b>Music on Hold</b> , See <a href="#">Section 22.9 on page 322</a> for information on how to record these tones.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to exit this screen without saving.
OK	Click <b>OK</b> to save your changes.



## 22.4 SIP Service Provider

Use this screen to view the SIP service provider information on the Zyxel Device. A SIP provider offers Internet call services using VoIP technology. You may need to consult your SIP service provider for the following settings. Click **VoIP > SIP > SIP Service Provider** to open the following screen.

**Figure 188** VoIP > SIP > SIP Service Provider



Each field is described in the following table.

Table 115 VoIP > SIP > SIP Service Provider

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New Provider	Click this button to add a new SIP service provider.
#	This is the index number of the entry.
SIP Service Provider Name	This shows the name of the SIP service provider.
SIP Proxy Server Address	This shows the IP address or domain name of the SIP server.
REGISTER Server Address	This shows the IP address or domain name of the SIP register server.
SIP Service Domain	This shows the SIP service domain name.
Modify	Click the <b>Edit</b> icon to configure the SIP service provider. Click the <b>Delete</b> icon to delete this SIP service provider from the Zyxel Device.

### 22.4.1 SIP Service Provider Add/Edit

Use this screen to configure a SIP service provider on the Zyxel Device. Click the **Add New Provider** button or an **Edit** icon in the **VoIP > SIP > SIP Service Provider** to open the following screen.

Note: Click this to see all the fields in the screen. You do not necessarily need to use all these fields to set up your account. Click again to see and configure only the fields needed for this feature.

**Figure 189** VoIP > SIP > SIP Service Provider > Add New Provider/Edit

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 116** VoIP > SIP > SIP Service Provider > Add New Provider/Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SIP Service Provider Selection	
Service Provider Selection	This field displays <b>ADD_NEW</b> if you are creating a new SIP service provider profile or the SIP service provider name you are modifying.
General	
SIP Service Provider	Select <b>Enable SIP Service Provider</b> to enable the SIP service provider.
SIP Service Provider Name	Enter the name of your SIP service provider.
SIP Local Port	Enter the Zyxel Device's listening port number, if your VoIP service provider gave you one. Otherwise, keep the default value.
SIP Proxy Server Address	Enter the IP address or domain name of the SIP server provided by your VoIP service provider. You can use up to 95 printable ASCII characters. It does not matter whether the SIP server is a proxy, redirect or register server.
SIP Proxy Server Port	Enter the SIP server's listening port number, if your VoIP service provider gave you one. Otherwise, keep the default value.
SIP REGISTRAR Server Address	Enter the IP address or domain name of the SIP register server, if your VoIP service provider gave you one. Otherwise, enter the same address you entered in the <b>SIP Server Address</b> field. You can use up to 95 printable ASCII characters.
SIP REGISTRAR Server Port	Enter the SIP register server's listening port number, if your VoIP service provider gave you one. Otherwise, enter the same port number you entered in the <b>SIP Server Port</b> field.
SIP Service Domain	Enter the SIP service domain name. In the full SIP URI, this is the part after the @ symbol. You can use up to 127 printable ASCII Extended set characters.
RFC Support	
PRACK (RFC 3262, Require: 100rel)	PRACK (RFC 3262) defines a mechanism to provide reliable transmission of SIP provisional response messages, which convey information on the processing progress of the request. This uses the option tag 100rel and the Provisional Response ACKnowledgement (PRACK) method.  Select this to have the peer device require the option tag 100rel to send provisional responses reliably.
VoIP IOP Flags	Select the VoIP inter-operability settings you want to activate.

Table 116 VoIP &gt; SIP &gt; SIP Service Provider &gt; Add New Provider/Edit (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Replace dial digit '#' to '%23' in SIP messages	Replace a dial digit "#" with "%23" in the INVITE messages.
Remove the 'Route' header in SIP messages	Remove the 'Route' header in SIP packets.
Bound Interface Name	
Bound Interface Name	<p>If you select <b>Any_WAN</b>, the Zyxel Device automatically activates the VoIP service when any LAN or WAN connection is up.</p> <p>If you select <b>Multi_WAN</b>, you also need to select two or more pre-configured WAN interfaces. The VoIP service is activated only when one of the selected WAN connections is up.</p>
Outbound Proxy	
Outbound Proxy Address	Enter the IP address or domain name of the SIP outbound proxy server if your VoIP service provider has a SIP outbound server to handle voice calls. This allows the Zyxel Device to work with any type of NAT router and eliminates the need for STUN or a SIP ALG. Turn off any SIP ALG on a NAT router in front of the Zyxel Device to keep it from re-translating the IP address (since this is already handled by the outbound proxy server).
Outbound Proxy Port	Enter the SIP outbound proxy server's listening port, if your VoIP service provider gave you one. Otherwise, keep the default value.
Use DHCP Option 120 First	Select this to enable the SIP server via DHCP option 120.
RTP Port Range	
Start Port End Port	<p>Enter the listening port number(s) for RTP traffic, if your VoIP service provider gave you this information. Otherwise, keep the default values.</p> <p>To enter one port number, enter the port number in the <b>Start Port</b> and <b>End Port</b> fields.</p> <p>To enter a range of ports,</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• enter the port number at the beginning of the range in the <b>Start Port</b> field.</li> <li>• enter the port number at the end of the range in the <b>End Port</b> field.</li> </ul>
SRTP Support	
SRTP Support	<p>When you make a VoIP call using SIP, the Real-time Transport Protocol (RTP) is used to handle voice data transfer. The Secure Real-time Transport Protocol (SRTP) is a security profile of RTP. It is designed to provide encryption and authentication for the RTP data in both unicast and multicast applications.</p> <p>The Zyxel Device supports encryption using AES with a 128-bit key. To protect data integrity, SRTP uses a Hash-based Message Authentication Code (HMAC) calculation with Secure Hash Algorithm (SHA)-1 to authenticate data. HMAC SHA-1 produces a 80 or 32-bit authentication tag that is appended to the packet.</p> <p>Both the caller and callee should use the same algorithms to establish an SRTP session.</p>
Crypto Suite	<p>Select the encryption and authentication algorithm set used by the Zyxel Device to set up an SRTP media session with the peer device.</p> <p>Select <b>AES_CM_128_HMAC_SHA1_80</b> or <b>AES_CM_128_HMAC_SHA1_32</b> to enable both data encryption and authentication for voice data.</p> <p>Select <b>AES_CM_128_NULL</b> to use 128-bit data encryption but disable data authentication.</p> <p>Select <b>NULL_CIPHER_HMAC_SHA1_80</b> to disable encryption but require authentication using the default 80-bit tag.</p>
DTMF Mode	

Table 116 VoIP &gt; SIP &gt; SIP Service Provider &gt; Add New Provider/Edit (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
DTMF Mode	Control how the Zyxel Device handles the tones that your telephone makes when you push its buttons. You should use the same mode your VoIP service provider uses.  <b>RFC2833</b> - send the DTMF tones in RTP packets.  <b>PCM</b> - send the DTMF tones in the voice data stream. This method works best when you are using a codec that does not use compression (like G.711). Codecs that use compression (like G.729 and G.726) can distort the tones.  <b>SIP INFO</b> - send the DTMF tones in SIP messages.
Transport Type	
Transport Type	Select the transport layer protocol <b>UDP</b> or <b>TCP</b> (usually UDP) used for SIP.
Ignore Direct IP	Select <b>Enable</b> to have the connected CPE devices accept SIP requests only from the SIP proxy/register server specified above. SIP requests sent from other IP addresses will be ignored.
FAX Option	This field controls how the Zyxel Device handles fax messages.
G711 Fax Passthrough	Select this if the Zyxel Device should use G.711 to send fax messages. The peer devices must use the same settings.
T38 Fax Relay	Select this if the Zyxel Device should send fax messages as UDP or TCP/IP packets through IP networks. This provides better quality, but it may have inter-operability problems. The peer devices must also use T.38.
QoS Tag	
SIP DSCP Mark Setting	Enter the DSCP (DiffServ Code Point) number for SIP message transmissions. The Zyxel Device creates Class of Service (CoS) priority tags with this number to SIP traffic that it transmits.
RTP DSCP Mark Setting	Enter the DSCP (DiffServ Code Point) number for RTP voice transmissions. The Zyxel Device creates Class of Service (CoS) priority tags with this number to RTP traffic that it transmits.
Timer Setting	
SIP Register Expiration Duration	Enter the number of seconds your SIP account is registered with the SIP register server before it is deleted. The Zyxel Device automatically tries to re-register your SIP account when one-half of this time has passed. (The SIP register server might have a different expiration.)
SIP Register Fail Re-try timer	Enter the number of seconds the Zyxel Device waits before it tries again to register the SIP account, if the first try failed or if there is no response.
Session Expires (SE)	Enter the number of seconds the Zyxel Device lets a SIP session remain idle (without traffic) before it automatically disconnects the session.
Min-SE	Enter the minimum number of seconds the Zyxel Device lets a SIP session remain idle (without traffic) before it automatically disconnects the session. When two SIP devices start a SIP session, they must agree on an expiration time for idle sessions. This field is the shortest expiration time that the Zyxel Device accepts.
Dialing Interval Selection	
Dialing Interval Selection	Enter the number of seconds the Zyxel Device should wait after you stop dialing numbers before it makes the phone call. The value depends on how quickly you dial phone numbers.
DNS SRV	
Enable DNS SRV	Select this to have the Zyxel Device use DNS procedures to resolve the SIP domain and find the SIP server's IP address, port number and supported transport protocol(s).  The Zyxel Device first uses DNS Name Authority Pointer (NAPTR) records to determine the transport protocols supported by the SIP server. It then performs DNS Service (SRV) query to determine the port number for the protocol. The Zyxel Device resolves the SIP server's IP address by a standard DNS address record lookup.  The <b>SIP Server Port</b> and <b>REGISTER Server Port</b> fields in the <b>General</b> section above are grayed out and not applicable and the <b>Transport Type</b> can also be set to <b>AUTO</b> if you enable this option.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to exit this screen without saving any changes.
OK	Click <b>OK</b> to save your changes.

## 22.5 Phone Device

Use this screen to view detailed information on phones used for Internet phone calls (SIP). You can define which phone(s) will ring when a specific SIP address receives an incoming call, and which SIP address will be used when an outgoing call is made with a specific phone. To access this screen, click **VoIP > Phone > Phone Device**.

**Figure 190** VoIP > Phone > Phone Device

#	Phone ID	Internal Number	Incoming SIP Number	Outgoing SIP Number	Modify
1	PHONE1	**11	ChangeMe	ChangeMe	
2	PHONE2	**12	ChangeMe	ChangeMe	

Each field is described in the following table.

Table 117 VoIP > Phone > Phone Device

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
#	This displays the index number of the phone device.
Phone ID	This field displays the name of a phone port on the Zyxel Device.
Internal Number	This field displays the internal call prefix of a phone port on the Zyxel Device.
Incoming SIP Number	This field displays the SIP address that you use to receive calls on this phone port.
Outgoing SIP Number	This field displays the SIP address that you use to make calls on this phone port.
Modify	Click the <b>Edit</b> icon to configure the SIP account.

### 22.5.1 Phone Device Edit

Use this screen to control which SIP account(s) each phone uses. Click an **Edit** icon in **VoIP > Phone > Phone Device** to open the following screen.

Figure 191 VoIP &gt; Phone &gt; Phone Device &gt; Edit

Each field is described in the following table.

Table 118 VoIP &gt; Phone &gt; Phone Device &gt; Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SIP Account to Make Outgoing Call	Select the SIP account you want to use when making outgoing calls with the analog phone connected to this phone port.
SIP Account(s) to Receive Incoming Call	Select a SIP account if you want to receive phone calls for the selected SIP account on this phone port.  If you select more than one SIP account for incoming calls, there is no way to distinguish between them when you receive phone calls. If you do not select a source for incoming calls, you cannot receive any calls on this phone port.
Immediate Dial Enable	Select this if you want to use the pound key (#) to tell the Zyxel Device to make the phone call immediately, instead of waiting for the number of second you selected in the <b>Dialing Interval Selection</b> field of the <b>VoIP &gt; SIP &gt; SIP Service Provider &gt; Add New Provider/Edit</b> screen.  If you select this, dial the phone number, and then press the pound key. The Zyxel Device makes the call immediately instead of waiting. You can still wait, if you want.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to exit this screen without saving any changes.
OK	Click <b>OK</b> to save your changes.

## 22.6 Phone Region

Use this screen to configure settings that depend on which region of the world the Zyxel Device is in. Selecting the region where the device is physically located improves the quality of phone calls. To access this screen, click **VoIP > Phone > Region**.

Note: You need to reboot the device after changing the region settings for it to take effect.

**Figure 192** VoIP > Phone > Region

**Phone**

Phone Device **Region**

Use this screen to maintain settings that depend on which region of the world the Zyxel Device is in. Selecting the region where the device is physically located improves the quality of phone calls.

Region Setting

Call Service Mode

Note

You need to reboot the device after changing the region settings for it to take effect.

**Cancel** **Apply**

Each field is described in the following table.

Table 119 VoIP > Phone > Region

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Region Setting	Select the place in which the Zyxel Device is located.
Call Service Mode	Select the mode for supplementary phone services (call hold, call waiting, call transfer and three-way conference calls) that your VoIP service provider supports.  <b>Europe Type</b> - use supplementary phone services in European mode <b>USA Type</b> - use supplementary phone services American mode You might have to subscribe to these services to use them. Contact your VoIP service provider.
Cancel	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the Zyxel Device.

## 22.7 Call Rule

Use this screen to add, edit, or remove speed-dial numbers for outgoing calls. Speed dial provides shortcuts for dialing frequently-used (VoIP) phone numbers. You also have to create speed-dial entries if you want to call SIP addresses that contain letters. Once you have configured a speed dial rule, you can use a shortcut (the speed dial number, #01 for example) on your phone's keypad to call the phone number.

Figure 193 VoIP &gt; Call Rule

## Call Rule

Use this screen to add, edit, or remove speed-dial numbers for outgoing calls. Speed dial provides shortcuts for dialing frequently-used (VoIP) phone numbers. You also have to create speed-dial entries if you want to call SIP addresses that contain letters. Once you have configured a speed dial rule, you can use a shortcut (the speed dial number, #01 for example) on your phone's keypad to call the phone number.

**Clear All Speed Dials**

Keys	Number	Description
#01		
#02		
#03		
#04		
#05		
#06		
#07		
#08		
#09		
#10		

**Cancel**      **Apply**

Each field is described in the following table.

Table 120 VoIP &gt; Call Rule

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Clear All Speed Dials	Click this to erase all the speed-dial entries on this screen.
Keys	This field displays the speed-dial number you should dial to use this entry.
Number	Enter the SIP address you want the Zyxel Device to call when you dial the speed-dial number.
Description	Enter a name to identify the party you call when you dial the speed-dial number. You can use up to 127 printable ASCII characters.
Cancel	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the Zyxel Device.

## 22.8 Call History

The Zyxel Device logs calls to or from your SIP addresses. This screen allows you to view a summary of received, dialed and missed calls, and a call history list. You can also view detailed information on each outgoing and incoming call.



Click **VoIP > Call History > Call History**. The following screen displays.

**Figure 194** VoIP > Call History > Call History

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 121** VoIP > Call History > Call History

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Clear	Click this button to remove all entries from the call history list.
Refresh	Click this button to renew the call history list.
Summary	
Date	This is the date when the calls were made.
Total Calls	This displays the total number of calls from or to your SIP addresses that day.
Outgoing Calls	This displays how many calls originated from you that day.
Incoming Calls	This displays how many calls you received that day.
Missing Calls	This displays how many incoming calls were not answered that day.
Total Duration (hh:mm:ss)	This displays how long all calls lasted that day.
Classify	Select the type of the calls. The call types are: <b>All</b> , <b>Incoming</b> , <b>Outgoing</b> and <b>Missed</b> .
Type	This displays the type of the calls.
Date/Time	This displays the date and time when the calls were made.
Peer Number	This displays the SIP address that called you or you called.
Phone Number	This displays the SIP address you used to make outgoing calls or receive calls.

Table 121 VoIP &gt; Call History &gt; Call History

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Duration (hh:mm:ss)	This displays how long the call lasted.
Delete	Click the <b>Delete</b> icon to remove the call history.

## 22.9 Technical Reference

This section contains background material relevant to the **VoIP** screens.

### VoIP

VoIP is the sending of voice signals over Internet Protocol. This allows you to make phone calls and send faxes over the Internet at a fraction of the cost of using the traditional circuit-switched telephone network. You can also use servers to run telephone service applications like PBX services and voice mail. Internet Telephony Service Provider (ITSP) companies provide VoIP service.

Circuit-switched telephone networks require 64 kilobits per second (Kbps) in each direction to handle a telephone call. VoIP can use advanced voice coding techniques with compression to reduce the required bandwidth.

### SIP

The Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) is an application-layer control (signaling) protocol that handles the setting up, altering and tearing down of voice and multimedia sessions over the Internet.

SIP signaling is separate from the media for which it handles sessions. The media that is exchanged during the session can use a different path from that of the signaling. SIP handles telephone calls and can interface with traditional circuit-switched telephone networks.

### SIP Identities

A SIP account uses an identity (sometimes referred to as a SIP address). A complete SIP identity is called a SIP URI (Uniform Resource Identifier). A SIP account's URI identifies the SIP account in a way similar to the way an e-mail address identifies an e-mail account. The format of a SIP identity is SIP-Number@SIP-Service-Domain.

### SIP Number

The SIP number is the part of the SIP URI that comes before the "@" symbol. A SIP number can use letters like in an email address (johndoe@your-ITSP.com for example) or numbers like a telephone number (1122334455@VoIP-provider.com for example).

### SIP Service Domain

The SIP service domain of the VoIP service provider is the domain name in a SIP URI. For example, if the SIP address is [1122334455@VoIP-provider.com](mailto:1122334455@VoIP-provider.com), then "VoIP-provider.com" is the SIP service domain.

## SIP Registration

Each Zyxel Device is an individual SIP User Agent (UA). To provide voice service, it has a public IP address for SIP and RTP protocols to communicate with other servers.

A SIP user agent has to register with the SIP registrar and must provide information about the users it represents, as well as its current IP address (for the routing of incoming SIP requests). After successful registration, the SIP server knows that the users (identified by their dedicated SIP URIs) are represented by the UA, and knows the IP address to which the SIP requests and responses should be sent.

Registration is initiated by the User Agent Client (UAC) running in the VoIP gateway (the Zyxel Device). The gateway must be configured with information letting it know where to send the REGISTER message, as well as the relevant user and authorization data.

A SIP registration has a limited lifespan. The User Agent Client must renew its registration within this lifespan. If it does not do so, the registration data will be deleted from the SIP registrar's database and the connection broken.

The Zyxel Device attempts to register all enabled subscriber ports when it is switched on. When you enable a subscriber port that was previously disabled, the Zyxel Device attempts to register the port immediately.

## Authorization Requirements

SIP registrations (and subsequent SIP requests) require a username and password for authorization. These credentials are validated via a challenge / response system using the HTTP digest mechanism (as detailed in RFC 3261, "SIP: Session Initiation Protocol").

## SIP Servers

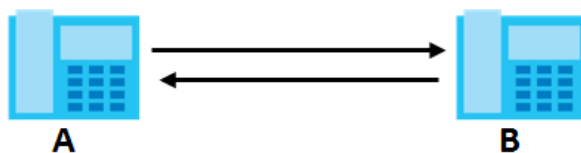
SIP is a client-server protocol. A SIP client is an application program or device that sends SIP requests. A SIP server responds to the SIP requests.

When you use SIP to make a VoIP call, it originates at a client and terminates at a server. A SIP client could be a computer or a SIP phone. One device can act as both a SIP client and a SIP server.

## SIP User Agent

A SIP user agent can make and receive VoIP telephone calls. This means that SIP can be used for peer-to-peer communications even though it is a client-server protocol. In the following figure, either **A** or **B** can act as a SIP user agent client to initiate a call. **A** and **B** can also both act as a SIP SIP user agent to receive the call.

Figure 195 SIP User Agent



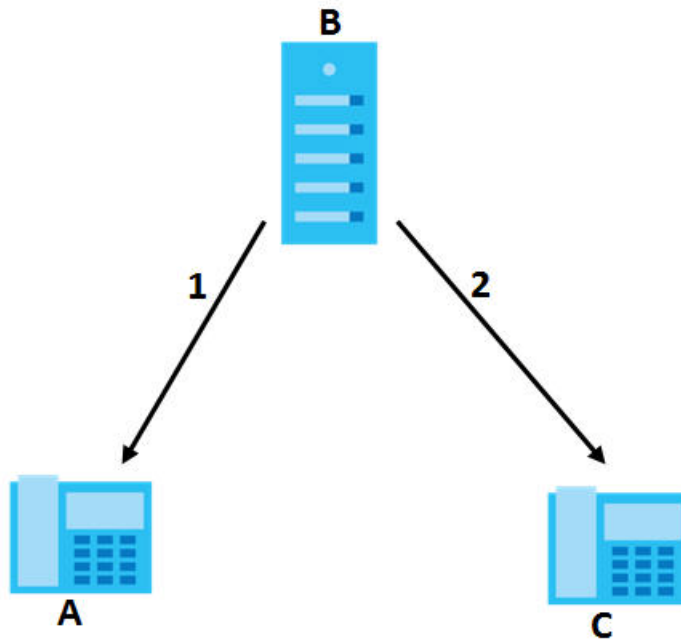
## SIP Proxy Server

A SIP proxy server receives requests from clients and forwards them to another server.

In the following example, you want to use client device **A** to call someone who is using client device **C**.

- 1 The client device (**A** in the figure) sends a call invitation to the SIP proxy server (**B**).
- 2 The SIP proxy server forwards the call invitation to **C**.

**Figure 196** SIP Proxy Server



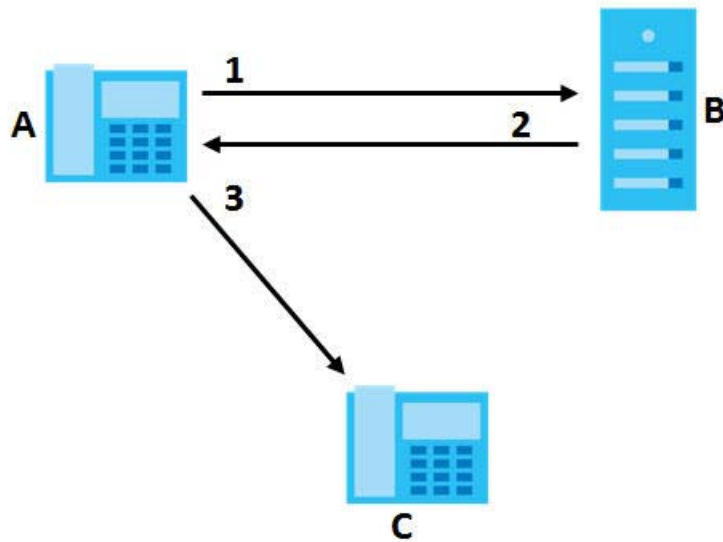
### SIP Redirect Server

A SIP redirect server accepts SIP requests, translates the destination address to an IP address and sends the translated IP address back to the device that sent the request. Then the client device that originally sent the request can send requests to the IP address that it received back from the redirect server. Redirect servers do not initiate SIP requests.

In the following example, you want to use client device **A** to call someone who is using client device **C**.

- 1 Client device **A** sends a call invitation for **C** to the SIP redirect server (**B**).
- 2 The SIP redirect server sends the invitation back to **A** with **C**'s IP address (or domain name).
- 3 Client device **A** then sends the call invitation to client device **C**.

Figure 197 SIP Redirect Server



### SIP Register Server

A SIP register server maintains a database of SIP identity-to-IP address (or domain name) mapping. The register server checks your user name and password when you register.

### RTP

When you make a VoIP call using SIP, the RTP (Real time Transport Protocol) is used to handle voice data transfer. See RFC 1889 for details on RTP.

### Pulse Code Modulation

Pulse Code Modulation (PCM) measures analog signal amplitudes at regular time intervals and converts them into bits.

### SIP Call Progression

The following figure displays the basic steps in the setup and tear down of a SIP call. A calls B.

Table 122 SIP Call Progression

A		B
1. INVITE	→	
	←	2. Ringing
	←	3. OK
4. ACK	→	
		5. Dialogue (voice traffic)
6. BYE	→	
	←	7. OK

- 1 **A** sends a SIP INVITE request to **B**. This message is an invitation for **B** to participate in a SIP telephone call.
- 2 **B** sends a response indicating that the telephone is ringing.
- 3 **B** sends an OK response after the call is answered.
- 4 **A** then sends an ACK message to acknowledge that **B** has answered the call.
- 5 Now **A** and **B** exchange voice media (talk).
- 6 After talking, **A** hangs up and sends a BYE request.
- 7 **B** replies with an OK response confirming receipt of the BYE request and the call is terminated.

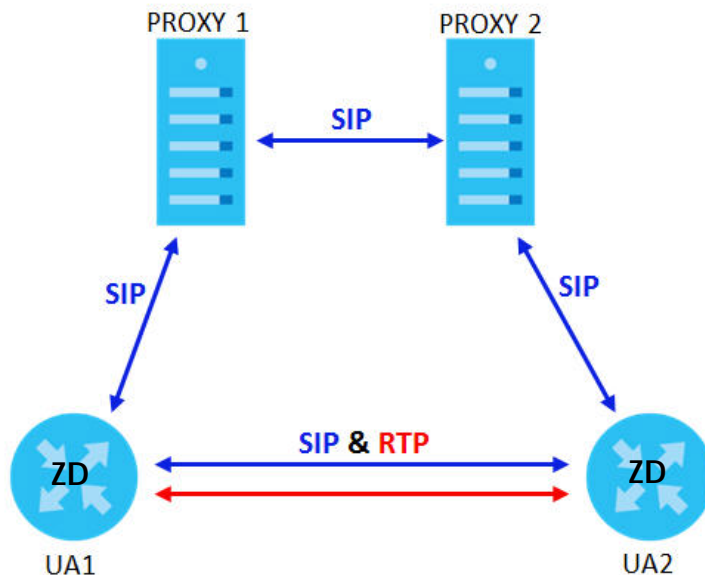
### SIP Call Progression Through Proxy Servers

Usually, the SIP UAC sets up a phone call by sending a request to the SIP proxy server. Then, the proxy server looks up the destination to which the call should be forwarded (according to the URI requested by the SIP UAC). The request may be forwarded to more than one proxy server before arriving at its destination.

The response to the request goes to all the proxy servers through which the request passed, in reverse sequence. Once the session is set up, session traffic is sent between the UAs directly, bypassing all the proxy servers in between.

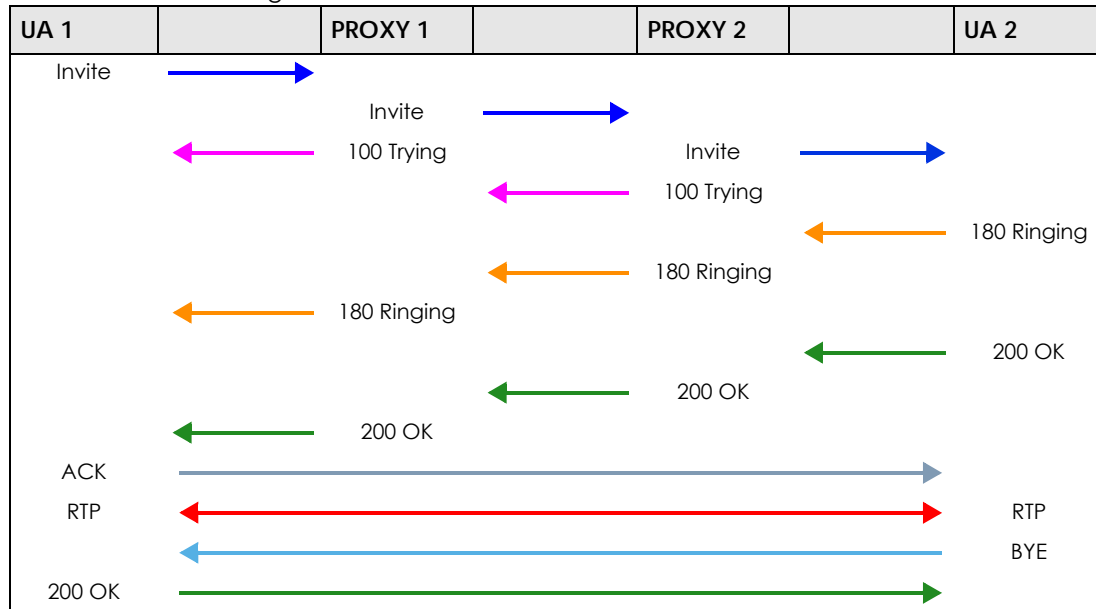
The following figure shows the SIP and session traffic flow between the user agents (**UA 1** and **UA 2**) and the proxy servers (this example shows two proxy servers, **PROXY 1** and **PROXY 2**).

**Figure 198** SIP Call Through Proxy Servers



The following table shows the SIP call progression.

Table 123 SIP Call Progression



- User Agent 1** sends a SIP INVITE request to **Proxy 1**. This message is an invitation to **User Agent 2** to participate in a SIP telephone call. **Proxy 1** sends a response indicating that it is trying to complete the request.
- Proxy 1** sends a SIP INVITE request to **Proxy 2**. **Proxy 2** sends a response indicating that it is trying to complete the request.
- Proxy 2** sends a SIP INVITE request to **User Agent 2**.
- User Agent 2** sends a response back to **Proxy 2** indicating that the phone is ringing. The response is relayed back to **User Agent 1** via **Proxy 1**.
- User Agent 2** sends an OK response to **Proxy 2** after the call is answered. This is also relayed back to **User Agent 1** via **Proxy 1**.
- User Agent 1** and **User Agent 2** exchange RTP packets containing voice data directly, without involving the proxies.
- When **User Agent 2** hangs up, he sends a BYE request.
- User Agent 1** replies with an OK response confirming receipt of the BYE request, and the call is terminated.

## Voice Coding

A codec (coder/decoder) codes analog voice signals into digital signals and decodes the digital signals back into analog voice signals. The Zyxel Device supports the following codecs.

- G.711 is a Pulse Code Modulation (PCM) waveform codec. PCM measures analog signal amplitudes at regular time intervals and converts them into digital samples. G.711 provides very good sound quality but requires 64 kbps of bandwidth.

- G.726 is an Adaptive Differential PCM (ADPCM) waveform codec that uses a lower bitrate than standard PCM conversion. ADPCM converts analog audio into digital signals based on the difference between each audio sample and a prediction based on previous samples. The more similar the audio sample is to the prediction, the less space needed to describe it. G.726 operates at 16, 24, 32 or 40 kbps.
- G.729 is an Analysis-by-Synthesis (AbS) hybrid waveform codec that uses a filter based on information about how the human vocal tract produces sounds. G.729 provides good sound quality and reduces the required bandwidth to 8 kbps.

## Voice Activity Detection/Silence Suppression

Voice Activity Detection (VAD) detects whether or not speech is present. This lets the Zyxel Device reduce the bandwidth that a call uses by not transmitting "silent packets" when you are not speaking.

## Comfort Noise Generation

When using VAD, the Zyxel Device generates comfort noise when the other party is not speaking. The comfort noise lets you know that the line is still connected as total silence could easily be mistaken for a lost connection.

## Echo Cancellation

G.168 is an ITU-T standard for eliminating the echo caused by the sound of your voice reverberating in the telephone receiver while you talk.

## MWI (Message Waiting Indication)

Enable Message Waiting Indication (MWI) enables your phone to give you a message-waiting (beeping) dial tone when you have a voice message(s). Your VoIP service provider must have a messaging system that sends message waiting status SIP packets as defined in RFC 3842.

## Custom Tones (IVR)

IVR (Interactive Voice Response) is a feature that allows you to use your telephone to interact with the Zyxel Device. The Zyxel Device allows you to record custom tones for the **Early Media** and **Music On Hold** functions. The same recordings apply to both the caller ringing and on hold tones.

Table 124 Custom Tones Details

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Total Time for All Tones	900 seconds for all custom tones combined
Maximum Time per Individual Tone	180 seconds
Total Number of Tones Recordable	5 You can record up to 5 different custom tones but the total time must be 900 seconds or less.

## Recording Custom Tones

Use the following steps if you would like to create new tones or change your tones:



- 1 Pick up the phone and press "\*\*\*\*#" on your phone's keypad and wait for the message that says you are in the configuration menu.
- 2 Press a number from 1101~1105 on your phone followed by the "#" key.
- 3 Play your desired music or voice recording into the receiver's mouthpiece. Press the "#" key.
- 4 You can continue to add, listen to, or delete tones, or you can hang up the receiver when you are done.

### Listening to Custom Tones

Do the following to listen to a custom tone:

- 1 Pick up the phone and press "\*\*\*\*#" on your phone's keypad and wait for the message that says you are in the configuration menu.
- 2 Press a number from 1201~1208 followed by the "#" key to listen to the tone.
- 3 You can continue to add, listen to, or delete tones, or you can hang up the receiver when you are done.

### Deleting Custom Tones

Do the following to delete a custom tone:

- 1 Pick up the phone and press "\*\*\*\*#" on your phone's keypad and wait for the message that says you are in the configuration menu.
- 2 Press a number from 1301~1308 followed by the "#" key to delete the tone of your choice. Press 14 followed by the "#" key if you wish to clear all your custom tones.

You can continue to add, listen to, or delete tones, or you can hang up the receiver when you are done.

## 22.9.1 Quality of Service (QoS)

Quality of Service (QoS) refers to both a network's ability to deliver data with minimum delay, and the networking methods used to provide bandwidth for real-time multimedia applications.

### Type of Service (ToS)

Network traffic can be classified by setting the ToS (Type of Service) values at the data source (for example, at the Zyxel Device) so a server can decide the best method of delivery, that is the least cost, fastest route and so on.

### DiffServ

DiffServ is a class of service (CoS) model that marks packets so that they receive specific per-hop treatment at DiffServ-compliant network devices along the route based on the application types and traffic flow. Packets are marked with DiffServ Code Points (DSCP) indicating the level of service desired.

This allows the intermediary DiffServ-compliant network devices to handle the packets differently depending on the code points without the need to negotiate paths or remember state information for every flow. In addition, applications do not have to request a particular service or give advanced notice of where the traffic is going.<sup>3</sup>

## DSCP and Per-Hop Behavior

DiffServ defines a new DS (Differentiated Services) field to replace the Type of Service (TOS) field in the IP header. The DS field contains a 2-bit unused field and a 6-bit DSCP field which can define up to 64 service levels. The following figure illustrates the DS field.

DSCP is backward compatible with the three precedence bits in the ToS octet so that non-DiffServ compliant, ToS-enabled network device will not conflict with the DSCP mapping.

**Figure 199** DiffServ: Differentiated Service Field

DSCP (6-bit)	Unused (2-bit)
-----------------	-------------------

The DSCP value determines the forwarding behavior, the PHB (Per-Hop Behavior), that each packet gets across the DiffServ network. Based on the marking rule, different kinds of traffic can be marked for different priorities of forwarding. Resources can then be allocated according to the DSCP values and the configured policies.

## 22.9.2 Phone Services Overview

Supplementary services such as call hold, call waiting, and call transfer, are generally available from your VoIP service provider. The Zyxel Device supports the following services:

- Call Return
- Call Hold
- Call Waiting
- Making a Second Call
- Call Transfer
- Call Forwarding
- Three-Way Conference
- Internal Calls
- Call Park and Pickup
- Do not Disturb
- IVR
- Call Completion
- CCBS
- Outgoing SIP

---

3. The Zyxel Device does not support DiffServ at the time of writing.

Note: To take full advantage of the supplementary phone services available through the Zyxel Device's phone ports, you may need to subscribe to the services from your VoIP service provider.

### 22.9.2.1 Flash Key

Flashing means to press the hook for a short period of time (a few hundred milliseconds) before releasing it. On newer telephones, there should be a "flash" key (button) that generates the signal electronically. If the flash key is not available, you can tap (press and immediately release) the hook by hand to achieve the same effect. However, using the flash key is preferred since the timing is much more precise. With manual tapping, if the duration is too long, it may be interpreted as hanging up by the Zyxel Device.

You can invoke all the supplementary services by using the flash key.

### 22.9.2.2 Europe Type Supplementary Phone Services

This section describes how to use supplementary phone services with the **Europe Type Call Service Mode**. Commands for supplementary services are listed in the table below.

After pressing the flash key, if you do not issue the sub-command before the default sub-command timeout (2 seconds) expires or issue an invalid sub-command, the current operation will be aborted.

Table 125 European Flash Key Commands

COMMAND	SUB-COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
Flash		Put a current call on hold to place a second call. Switch back to the call (if there is no second call).
Flash	0	Drop the call presently on hold or reject an incoming call which is waiting for answer.
Flash	1	Disconnect the current phone connection and answer the incoming call or resume with caller presently on hold.
Flash	2	1. Switch back and forth between two calls. 2. Put a current call on hold to answer an incoming call. 3. Separate the current three-way conference call into two individual calls (one is on-line, the other is on hold).
Flash	3	Create three-way conference connection.
Flash	*98#	Transfer the call to another phone.

### European Call Hold

Call hold allows you to put a call (**A**) on hold by pressing the flash key.

If you have another call, press the flash key and then "2" to switch back and forth between caller **A** and **B** by putting either one on hold.

Press the flash key and then "0" to disconnect the call presently on hold and keep the current call on line.

Press the flash key and then "1" to disconnect the current call and resume the call on hold.

If you hang up the phone but a caller is still on hold, there will be a remind ring.

## European Call Waiting

This allows you to place a call on hold while you answer another incoming call on the same telephone (directory) number.

If there is a second call to a telephone number, you will hear a call waiting tone. Take one of the following actions.

- Reject the second call.  
Press the flash key and then press "0".
- Disconnect the first call and answer the second call.  
Either press the flash key and press "1", or just hang up the phone and then answer the phone after it rings.
- Put the first call on hold and answer the second call.  
Press the flash key and then "2".

## European Call Transfer

Do the following to transfer an incoming call (that you have answered) to another phone.

- 1 Press the flash key to put the caller on hold.
- 2 When you hear the dial tone, dial "\*\*98#" followed by the number to which you want to transfer the call.
- 3 After you hear the ring signal or the second party answers it, hang up the phone.

## European Three-Way Conference

Use the following steps to make three-way conference calls.

- 1 When you are on the phone talking to someone, press the flash key to put the caller on hold and get a dial tone.
- 2 Dial a phone number directly to make another call.
- 3 When the second call is answered, press the flash key and press "3" to create a three-way conversation.
- 4 Hang up the phone to drop the connection.
- 5 If you want to separate the activated three-way conference into two individual connections (one is on-line, the other is on hold), press the flash key and press "2".

### 22.9.2.3 USA Type Supplementary Services

This section describes how to use supplementary phone services with the **USA Type Call Service Mode**. Commands for supplementary services are listed in the table below.

After pressing the flash key, if you do not issue the sub-command before the default sub-command timeout (2 seconds) expires or issue an invalid sub-command, the current operation will be aborted.

Table 126 USA Flash Key Commands

COMMAND	SUB-COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
Flash		Put a current call on hold to place a second call. After the second call is successful, press the flash key again to have a three-way conference call. Put a current call on hold to answer an incoming call.
Flash	*98#	Transfer the call to another phone.

## USA Call Hold

Call hold allows you to put a call (**A**) on hold by pressing the flash key.

If you have another call, press the flash key to switch back and forth between caller **A** and **B** by putting either one on hold.

If you hang up the phone but a caller is still on hold, there will be a remind ring.

## USA Call Waiting

This allows you to place a call on hold while you answer another incoming call on the same telephone (directory) number.

If there is a second call to your telephone number, you will hear a call waiting tone.

Press the flash key to put the first call on hold and answer the second call.

## USA Call Transfer

Do the following to transfer an incoming call (that you have answered) to another phone.

- 1 Press the flash key to put the caller on hold.
- 2 When you hear the dial tone, dial **\*\*98#** followed by the number to which you want to transfer the call.
- 3 After you hear the ring signal or the second party answers it, hang up the phone.

## USA Three-Way Conference

Use the following steps to make three-way conference calls.

- 1 When you are on the phone talking to someone (party A), press the flash key to put the caller on hold and get a dial tone.
- 2 Dial a phone number directly to make another call (to party B).
- 3 When party B answers the second call, press the flash key to create a three-way conversation.
- 4 Hang up the phone to drop the connection.

- 5 If you want to separate the activated three-way conference into two individual connections (with party A on-line and party B on hold), press the flash key.
- 6 If you want to go back to the three-way conversation, press the flash key again.
- 7 If you want to separate the activated three-way conference into two individual connections again, press the flash key. This time the party B is on-line and party A is on hold.

### 22.9.2.4 Phone Functions Summary

The following table shows the key combinations you can enter on your phone's keypad to use certain features.

Table 127 Phone Functions Summary

ACTION	FUNCTION	DESCRIPTION
*98#	Call transfer	Transfer a call to another phone. See <a href="#">Section 22.9.2.2 on page 331</a> (Europe type) and <a href="#">Section 22.9.2.3 on page 332</a> (USA type).
*66#	Call return	Place a call to the last person who called you.
*95#	Enable Do Not Disturb	Use these to set your phone not to ring when someone calls you, or to turn this function off.
#95#	Disable Do Not Disturb	
*41#	Enable Call Waiting	Use these to allow you to put a call on hold when you are answering another, or to turn this function off.
#41#	Disable Call Waiting	
****	IVR	Use these to set up Interactive Voice Response (IVR). IVR allows you to record custom caller ringing tones (the sound a caller hears before you pick up the phone) and on hold tones (the sound someone hears when you put their call on hold).
####	Internal Call	Call the phone(s) connected to the Zyxel Device.
*82	One Shot Caller Display Call	Activate or deactivate caller ID for the next call only.
*67	One Shot Caller Hidden Call	

# CHAPTER 23

# Log

## 23.1 Log Overview

These screens allow you to determine the categories of events that the Zyxel Device logs and then display these logs or have the Zyxel Device send them to an administrator (through e-mail) or to a syslog server.

### 23.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- Use the **System Log** screen to see the system logs ([Section 23.2 on page 336](#)).
- Use the **Security Log** screen to see the security-related logs for the categories that you select ([Section 23.3 on page 337](#)).

### 23.1.2 What You Need To Know

The following terms and concepts may help as you read this chapter.

#### Alerts and Logs

An alert is a type of log that warrants more serious attention. They include system errors, attacks (access control) and attempted access to blocked web sites. Some categories such as **System Errors** consist of both logs and alerts. You may differentiate them by their color in the **View Log** screen. Alerts display in red and logs display in black.

#### Syslog Overview

The syslog protocol allows devices to send event notification messages across an IP network to syslog servers that collect the event messages. A syslog-enabled device can generate a syslog message and send it to a syslog server.

Syslog is defined in RFC 3164. The RFC defines the packet format, content and system log related information of syslog messages. Each syslog message has a facility and severity level. The syslog facility identifies a file in the syslog server. Refer to the documentation of your syslog program for details. The following table describes the syslog severity levels.

Table 128 Syslog Severity Levels

CODE	SEVERITY
0	Emergency: The system is unusable.
1	Alert: Action must be taken immediately.
2	Critical: The system condition is critical.
3	Error: There is an error condition on the system.
4	Warning: There is a warning condition on the system.

Table 128 Syslog Severity Levels

CODE	SEVERITY
5	Notice: There is a normal but significant condition on the system.
6	Informational: The syslog contains an informational message.
7	Debug: The message is intended for debug-level purposes.

## 23.2 System Log

Use the **System Log** screen to see the system logs. You can filter the entries by selecting a severity level and/or category. Click **System Monitor > Log > System Log** to open the **System Log** screen.

Figure 200 System Monitor &gt; Log &gt; System Log

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 129 System Monitor &gt; Log &gt; System Log

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Level	Select a severity level from the drop-down list box. This filters search results according to the severity level you have selected. When you select a severity, the Zyxel Device searches through all logs of that severity or higher.
Category	Select the type of logs to display.
Clear Log	Click this to delete all the logs.
Refresh	Click this to renew the log screen.
Export Log	Click this to save the current list of logs to your computer.
E-mail Log Now	Click this to send the log file(s) to the e-mail address you specify in the <b>Maintenance &gt; E-mail Notification</b> screen.
#	This field is a sequential value and is not associated with a specific entry.
Time	This field displays the time the log was recorded.
Facility	The log facility allows you to send logs to different files in the syslog server. Refer to the documentation of your syslog program for more details.
Level	This field displays the severity level of the log.
Category	This field displays the type of the log.
Messages	This field states the reason for the log.



## 23.3 Security Log

Use the **Security Log** screen to see the security-related logs for the categories that you select. You can filter the entries by selecting a severity level and/or category. Click **System Monitor > Log > Security Log** to open the following screen.

**Figure 201** System Monitor > Log > Security Log

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

**Table 130** System Monitor > Log > Security Log

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Level	Select a severity level from the drop-down list box. This filters search results according to the severity level you have selected. When you select a severity, the Zyxel Device searches through all logs of that severity or higher.
Category	Select the type of logs to display.
Clear Log	Click this to delete all the logs.
Refresh	Click this to renew the log screen.
Export Log	Click this to save the current list of logs to your computer.
E-mail Log Now	Click this to send the log file(s) to the e-mail address you specify in the <b>Maintenance &gt; E-mail Notification</b> screen.
#	This field is a sequential value and is not associated with a specific entry.
Time	This field displays the time the log was recorded.
Facility	The log facility allows you to send logs to different files in the syslog server. Refer to the documentation of your syslog program for more details.
Level	This field displays the severity level of the log.
Category	This field displays the type of the log.
Messages	This field states the reason for the log.

# CHAPTER 24

## Traffic Status

### 24.1 Traffic Status Overview

Use the **Traffic Status** screens to look at the network traffic status and statistics of the WAN/LAN interfaces and NAT.

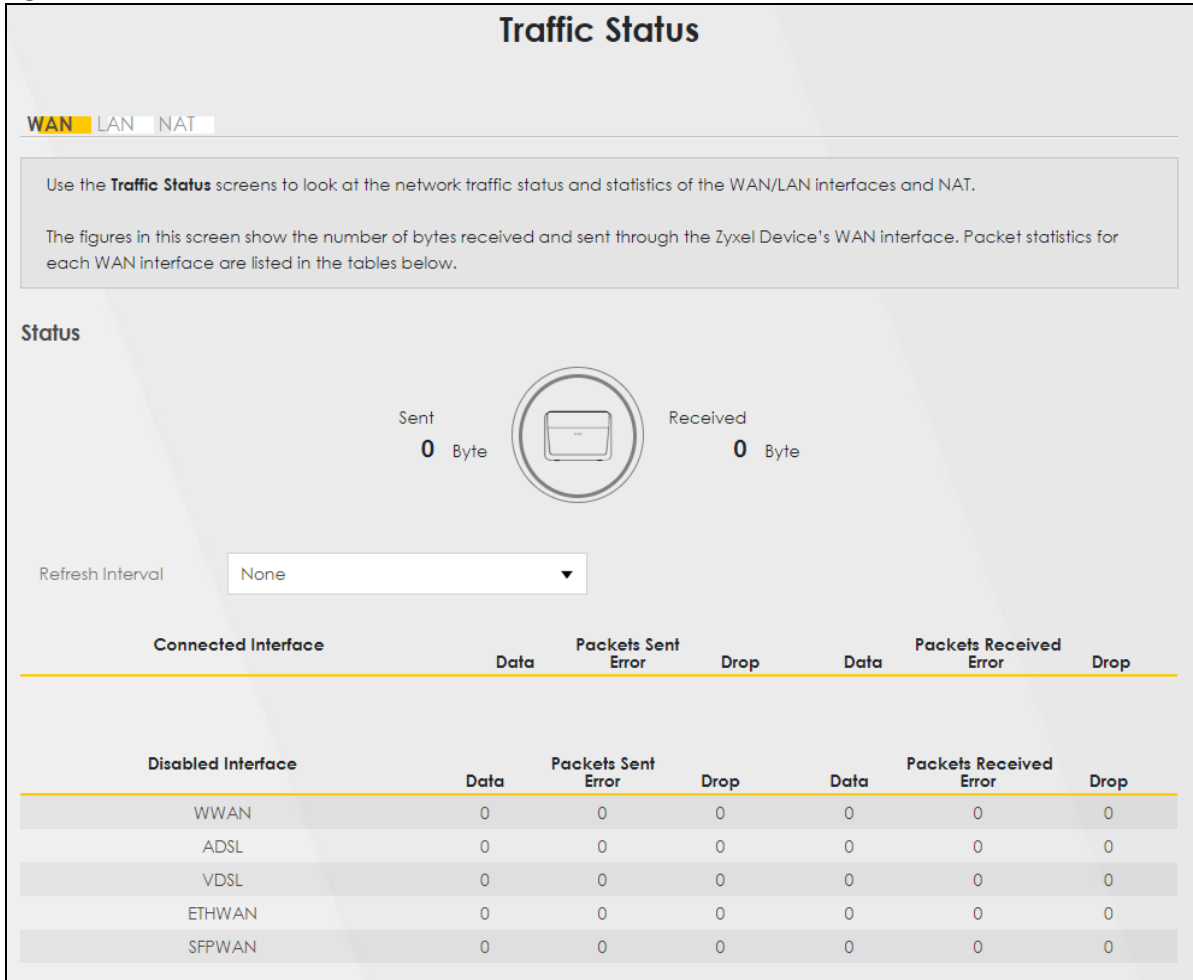
#### 24.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- Use the **WAN** screen to view the WAN traffic statistics ([Section 24.2 on page 338](#)).
- Use the **LAN** screen to view the LAN traffic statistics ([Section 24.3 on page 340](#)).
- Use the **NAT** screen to view the NAT status of the Zyxel Device's client(s) ([Section 24.4 on page 341](#)).

### 24.2 WAN Status

Click **System Monitor > Traffic Status** to open the **WAN** screen. The figures in this screen show the total number of bytes received and sent through the Zyxel Device's WAN interface(s). Packet statistics for each WAN interface are listed in the tables below.

Figure 202 System Monitor &gt; Traffic Status &gt; WAN



The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 131 System Monitor &gt; Traffic Status &gt; WAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Refresh Interval	Select how often you want the Zyxel Device to update this screen.
Connected Interface	This shows the name of the WAN interface that is currently connected.
Packets Sent	
Data	This indicates the number of transmitted packets on this interface.
Error	This indicates the number of frames with errors transmitted on this interface.
Drop	This indicates the number of outgoing packets dropped on this interface.
Packets Received	
Data	This indicates the number of received packets on this interface.
Error	This indicates the number of frames with errors received on this interface.
Drop	This indicates the number of received packets dropped on this interface.
Disabled Interface	This shows the name of the WAN interface that is currently disabled.
Packets Sent	

Table 131 System Monitor &gt; Traffic Status &gt; WAN (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Data	This indicates the number of transmitted packets on this interface.
Error	This indicates the number of frames with errors transmitted on this interface.
Drop	This indicates the number of outgoing packets dropped on this interface.
Packets Received	
Data	This indicates the number of received packets on this interface.
Error	This indicates the number of frames with errors received on this interface.
Drop	This indicates the number of received packets dropped on this interface.

## 24.3 LAN Status

Click **System Monitor > Traffic Status > LAN** to open the following screen. This screen allows you to view packet statistics for each LAN or WLAN interface on the Zyxel Device.

Figure 203 System Monitor &gt; Traffic Status &gt; LAN

The screenshot shows the 'Traffic Status' screen for LAN. It includes a navigation bar with 'WAN', 'LAN', and 'NAT' tabs. A descriptive text box states: 'This screen allows you to view packet statistics for each LAN or WLAN interface on the Zyxel Device.' Below this is a 'Refresh Interval' dropdown menu set to 'None'. The main content consists of two tables. The first table shows 'Bytes Sent' and 'Bytes Received' for interfaces LAN1, LAN2, LAN3, LAN4, 2.4G WLAN, and 5G WLAN. The second table shows 'Sent (Packet)' and 'Received (Packet)' statistics for the same interfaces, including sub-rows for Data, Error, and Drop.

Interface	LAN1	LAN2	LAN3	LAN4	2.4G WLAN	5G WLAN
Bytes Sent	0	0	0	472091	1095638	2208002
Bytes Received	0	0	0	220093	0	0

Interface		LAN1	LAN2	LAN3	LAN4	2.4G WLAN	5G WLAN
Sent (Packet)	Data	0	0	0	2157	12662	25397
	Error	0	0	0	0	272	0
	Drop	0	0	0	0	272	0
Received (Packet)	Data	0	0	0	1740	0	0
	Error	0	0	0	0	0	8
	Drop	0	0	0	65	0	0

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 132 System Monitor &gt; Traffic Status &gt; LAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Refresh Interval	Select how often you want the Zyxel Device to update this screen.
Interface	This shows the LAN or wireless LAN interface on the Zyxel Device.
Bytes Sent	This indicates the number of bytes transmitted on this interface.
Bytes Received	This indicates the number of bytes received on this interface.
Interface	This shows the LAN or wireless LAN interfaces on the Zyxel Device.
Sent (Packets)	

Table 132 System Monitor &gt; Traffic Status &gt; LAN (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Data	This indicates the number of transmitted packets on this interface.
Error	This indicates the number of frames with errors transmitted on this interface.
Drop	This indicates the number of outgoing packets dropped on this interface.
Received (Packets)	
Data	This indicates the number of received packets on this interface.
Error	This indicates the number of frames with errors received on this interface.
Drop	This indicates the number of received packets dropped on this interface.

## 24.4 NAT Status

Click **System Monitor > Traffic Status > NAT** to open the following screen. This screen lists the devices that have received an IP address from the Zyxel Device LAN or WLAN interface(s) and have ever established a session with the Zyxel Device.

Figure 204 System Monitor &gt; Traffic Status &gt; NAT

**Traffic Status**

WAN LAN **NAT**

This screen lists the devices that have received an IP address from the Zyxel Device's LAN or WLAN interface(s) and have ever established a session with the Zyxel Device.

Refresh Interval:

Device Name	IPv4 Address	MAC Address	NO. of Open Sessions
TWP CNT03116-01	192.168.1.199	dc:4a:3e:40:ec:67	20

Total:  0.20%

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 133 System Monitor &gt; Traffic Status &gt; NAT

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Refresh Interval	Select how often you want the Zyxel Device to update this screen.
Device Name	This displays the name of the connected host.
IPv4 Address	This displays the IP address of the connected host.
MAC Address	This displays the MAC address of the connected host.
No. of Open Session	This displays the number of NAT sessions currently opened for the connected host.
Total	This displays what percentage of NAT sessions the Zyxel Device can support is currently being used by all connected hosts.

# CHAPTER 25

## VoIP Status

### 25.1 VoIP Status Settings

Click **System Monitor > VoIP Status** to open the following screen. You can view the VoIP registration, current call status and phone numbers in this screen.

**Figure 205** System Monitor > VoIP Status

**VoIP Status**

This screen displays VoIP registration status, current call status and other related information for each SIP account. You can also see the phone port to which the SIP account is mapped for outgoing or incoming calls in this screen.

Poll  seconds [Set Interval](#) [Stop](#)

Interval(s)

**SIP Status**

Account	Register Action	Registration	Registration Time	URI	Message Waiting	Last Incoming Number	Last Outgoing Number
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	Disabled		ChangeMe@ChangeMe	No		
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	Disabled		ChangeMe@ChangeMe	No		

**Call Status**

Account	Duration	Status	Call Type	Codec	From Phone Port Type	To Phone Port Type	Peer Number

**Phone Status**

Phone	Outgoing Number	Incoming Number	Hook Status
Phone 1	ChangeMe	ChangeMe	On-hook
Phone 2	ChangeMe	ChangeMe	On-hook

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

**Table 134** System Monitor > VoIP Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Poll Interval(s)	Enter the number of seconds the Zyxel Device needs to wait before updating this screen and then click <b>Set Interval</b> . Click <b>Stop</b> to have the Zyxel Device stop updating this screen.
SIP Status	

Table 134 System Monitor &gt; VoIP Status (continued)



LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Account	This column displays the index number of each SIP account that has already configured in the Zyxel Device.
Register Action	<p>The switch is grayed out and cannot be configured if the SIP account is disabled.</p> <p>If the SIP account is not registered, you can click the switch to turn it on  to have the Zyxel Device attempt to register the SIP account with the SIP server.</p> <p>If the SIP account is already registered with a SIP server, setting the switch to off  will delete the SIP account's registration in the SIP server. This does not cancel your SIP account, but it deletes the mapping between your SIP identify and your IP address or domain name.</p>
Registration	<p>This field displays the current registration status of the SIP account.</p> <p><b>Registered</b> - The SIP account is activated and has been registered with a SIP server. You can use it to make a VoIP call.</p> <p><b>Unregistered</b> - The SIP account is activated, but the last time the Zyxel Device tried to register the SIP account with the SIP server, the attempt failed. Use the <b>Register Action</b> switch to register the account again. The Zyxel Device will also automatically try to register the SIP account again after a period of time that you configured in <b>VoIP &gt; SIP &gt; SIP Service Provider &gt; Add/Edit &gt; SIP Register Fail Re-Try Timer</b>.</p> <p><b>Disabled</b> - The SIP account is not active. Make sure the corresponding SIP Service Provider and SIP Account are both enabled in <b>VoIP &gt; SIP &gt; SIP Service Provider &gt; Add/Edit</b> and <b>VoIP &gt; SIP &gt; SIP Account &gt; Add/Edit</b>.</p>
Registration Time	This field displays the last time the Zyxel Device successfully registered the SIP account with the SIP server. The field is blank if this account is never successfully registered.
URI	This field displays the account number and service domain of the SIP account. You can change these in the <b>VoIP &gt; SIP &gt; SIP Service Provider &gt; Add/Edit</b> and <b>VoIP &gt; SIP &gt; SIP Account &gt; Add/Edit</b> screens.
Message Waiting	This field indicates whether or not there are any new voice messages in the SIP account. You have to enable the MWI function in the <b>VoIP &gt; SIP &gt; SIP Account &gt; Add/Edit</b> screen, and your VoIP service provider should also support the voice mail system and MWI feature.
Last Incoming Number	This field displays the last SIP number the peer device used to call the SIP account. The field is blank if there is never an incoming call for the SIP account.
Last Outgoing Number	<p>This field displays the last SIP number that you called via this SIP account. The field is blank if you never dialed a number using the SIP account.</p> <p>Note: An outgoing number is recorded only after SIP outgoing call signaling procedure starts.</p>
Call Status (This table displays the status of all active and ongoing calls only.)	
Account	This field displays the SIP number used to make an <b>Outgoing Call</b> or receive an <b>Incoming Call</b> through a SIP server. It shows the phone port number for an <b>Internal call</b> without a SIP server.
Duration	<p>This field displays how long the current call has lasted.</p> <p>Note: The time calculation starts from the beginning of the call setup signaling procedure, rather than the moment when the call is successfully established.</p>
Status	<p>This field displays the current call progress or state of the phone call.</p> <p><b>Calling</b> - The Zyxel Device sends an INVITE request to make an <b>Outgoing Call</b> or <b>Internal Call</b>. The callee's phone is ringing.</p> <p><b>Ringing</b> - There is an <b>Incoming call</b>. The phone attached to the Zyxel Device's phone port associated with the SIP account is ringing.</p> <p><b>InCall</b> - There is a call in progress. Voice data is exchanged between both parties.</p> <p><b>Hold</b> - An <b>Outgoing Call</b> or <b>Incoming Call</b> is placed on hold.</p>

Table 134 System Monitor &gt; VoIP Status (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Call Type	<p>This field displays the type of the current VoIP call.</p> <p><b>Outgoing Call</b> - This is a call that you originated using a SIP account.</p> <p><b>Incoming Call</b> - This is a call that you received for a SIP account.</p> <p><b>Internal Call</b> - This is a VoIP call between two phone ports without a SIP server. When you have phones attached to both of the Zyxel Device's phone ports, you can dial "#####" to place a call to the phone(s) connected to the other port.</p>
Codec	<p>This field displays what voice codec is being used for a current VoIP call through a phone port. It shows <b>Unknown</b> when <b>Status</b> is <b>Calling</b> or <b>Ringing</b> (before both parties agree on a codec).</p>
From Phone Port Type	<p>This field displays the phone port type used to originate the current VoIP call. It shows <b>SIP</b> for an <b>Incoming Call</b> and <b>FXS</b> for an <b>Outgoing Call</b> or <b>Internal Call</b>.</p>
To Phone Port Type	<p>This field displays the phone port type used to receive the current VoIP call. It shows <b>SIP</b> for an <b>Outgoing Call</b> and <b>FXS</b> for an <b>Incoming Call</b> or <b>Internal Call</b>. When an <b>Incoming Call</b>'s <b>Status</b> is <b>Ringing</b>, the phone port type is <b>Unknown</b>.</p>
Peer Number	<p>This field displays the SIP number of the party that is currently engaged in a VoIP call through a phone port. It shows ##### for an <b>Internal Call</b>.</p>
<p>Phone Status (This table displays the name and the SIP account binding relationship of different local phone ports. The SIP account binding relationship can be configured in <b>VoIP &gt; Phone &gt; Phone Device</b>.)</p>	
Phone	<p>This field displays the name of each phone port on the Zyxel Device.</p>
Outgoing Number	<p>This field displays the SIP number that you use to make outgoing calls on this phone port.</p>
Incoming Number	<p>This field displays the SIP number that you use to receive incoming calls on this phone port.</p>
Hook Status	<p>This field displays the current state of use of the phone.</p> <p><b>On-hook</b> - The phone attached to the Zyxel Device's phone port is not in use.</p> <p><b>Off-hook</b> - The phone attached to the Zyxel Device's phone port is in use</p>



# CHAPTER 26

## ARP Table

### 26.1 ARP Table Overview

Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) is a protocol for mapping an Internet Protocol address (IP address) to a physical machine address, also known as a Media Access Control or MAC address, on the local area network.

An IP version 4 address is 32 bits long. MAC addresses are 48 bits long. The ARP Table maintains an association between each MAC address and its corresponding IP address.

#### 26.1.1 How ARP Works

When an incoming packet destined for a host device on a local area network arrives at the device, the device's ARP program looks in the ARP Table and, if it finds the address, sends it to the device.

If no entry is found for the IP address, ARP broadcasts the request to all the devices on the LAN. The device fills in its own MAC and IP address in the sender address fields, and puts the known IP address of the target in the target IP address field. In addition, the device puts all ones in the target MAC field (FF.FF.FF.FF.FF.FF is the Ethernet broadcast address). The replying device (which is either the IP address of the device being sought or the router that knows the way) replaces the broadcast address with the target's MAC address, swaps the sender and target pairs, and unicasts the answer directly back to the requesting machine. ARP updates the ARP Table for future reference and then sends the packet to the MAC address that replied.

## 26.2 ARP Table Settings

Use the ARP table to view the IPv4-to-MAC address mappings for each device connected to the Zyxel Device. The neighbor table shows the IPv6-to-MAC address mappings of each neighbor. To open this screen, click **System Monitor > ARP Table**.

**Figure 206** System Monitor > ARP Table

ARP Table			
<p>Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) is a protocol for mapping an Internet Protocol address (IP address) to a physical machine address, also known as a Media Access Control or MAC address, on the local area network.</p> <p>An IP (version 4) address is 32 bits long. MAC addresses are 48 bits long. The ARP Table maintains an association between each MAC address and its corresponding IP address.</p> <p>Use the ARP table to view the IPv4-to-MAC address mapping(s) for each device connected to the Zyxel Device. The neighbor table shows the IPv6-to-MAC address mapping(s) of each neighbor.</p>			
IPv4 ARP Table			
#	IPv4 Address	MAC Address	Device
1	192.168.1.199	dc:4a:3e:40:ec:67	br0
IPv6 Neighbour Table			
#	IPv6 Address	MAC Address	Device
1	fe80::4087:e9cd:15e7:221e	dc:4a:3e:40:ec:67	br0

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 135 System Monitor > ARP Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
#	This is the index number of the ARP or neighbor table entry.
IPv4/IPv6 Address	This is the learned IPv4 or IPv6 IP address of a device connected to a port on the Zyxel Device.
MAC Address	This is the MAC address of the device with the listed IP address.
Device	This is the name of Zyxel Device's interface to which the device is connected.

# CHAPTER 27

# Routing Table

## 27.1 Routing Table Overview

Routing is based on the destination address only and the Zyxel Device takes the shortest path to forward a packet.

## 27.2 Routing Table Settings

The table below shows IPv4 and IPv6 routing information. The IPv4 subnet mask is '255.255.255.255' for a host destination and '0.0.0.0' for the default route. The gateway address is written as '\*' (IPv4) / '::' (IPv6) if none is set.

Click **System Monitor > Routing Table** to open the following screen.

Figure 207 System Monitor &gt; Routing Table

Routing Table						
Routing is based on the destination address only and the Zyxel Device takes the shortest path to forward a packet.						
The table below shows IPv4 and IPv6 routing information. The IPv4 subnet mask is '255.255.255.255' for a host destination and '0.0.0.0' for the default route. The gateway address is written as '**' (IPv4) '/' ':' (IPv6) if none is set.						
<b>Destination:</b> This indicates the destination IPv4 address or IPv6 address and prefix of this route.						
<b>Gateway:</b> This indicates the IPv4 address or IPv6 address of the gateway that helps forward this route's traffic.						
<b>Subnet Mask:</b> This indicates the destination subnet mask of the IPv4 route.						
<b>Flag:</b> This indicates the route status.						
U-Up: The route is up.						
I-Reject: The route is blocked and will force a route lookup to fail.						
G-Gateway: The route uses a gateway to forward traffic.						
H-Host: The target of the route is a host.						
R-Reinstate: The route is reinstated for dynamic routing.						
D-Dynamic (redirect): The route is dynamically installed by a routing daemon or redirect.						
M-Modified (redirect): The route is modified from a routing daemon or redirect.						
<b>Metric:</b> The metric represents the "cost of transmission". A router determines the best route for transmission by choosing a path with the lowest "cost". The smaller the number, the lower the "cost".						
<b>Interface:</b> This indicates the name of the interface through which the route is forwarded.						
IPv4 Routing Table						
Destination	Gateway	Subnet Mask	Flag	Metric	Interface	
192.168.1.0	0.0.0.0	255.255.255.0	U	0	br0	
239.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	255.0.0.0	U	0	br0	
IPv6 Routing Table						
Destination	Gateway	Flag	Metric	Interface		
fe80::/64	::	U	256	br0		
fe80::/64	::	U	256	eth3.0		
fe80::/64	::	U	256	wl0.5		
::1/128	::	U	0	lo		
fe80::/128	::	U	0	lo		
fe80::/128	::	U	0	lo		
fe80::/128	::	U	0	lo		
fe80::10:18ff:fe01:1/128	::	U	0	lo		
fe80::10:18ff:fe01:1/128	::	U	0	lo		
fe80::6010:18ff:fe01:0/128	::	U	0	lo		
ff02::1/128	::	UC	0	br0		
ff02::16/128	::	UC	0	br0		
ff00::/8	::	U	256	br0		
ff00::/8	::	U	256	eth3.0		
ff00::/8	::	U	256	wl0.5		

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 136 System Monitor &gt; Routing Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IPv4/IPv6 Routing Table	
Destination	This indicates the destination IPv4 address or IPv6 address and prefix of this route.
Gateway	This indicates the IPv4 address or IPv6 address of the gateway that helps forward this route's traffic.
Subnet Mask	This indicates the destination subnet mask of the IPv4 route.

Table 136 System Monitor &gt; Routing Table (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Flag	<p>This indicates the route status.</p> <p><b>U-Up:</b> The route is up.</p> <p><b>!-Reject:</b> The route is blocked and will force a route lookup to fail.</p> <p><b>G-Gateway:</b> The route uses a gateway to forward traffic.</p> <p><b>H-Host:</b> The target of the route is a host.</p> <p><b>R-Reinstate:</b> The route is reinstated for dynamic routing.</p> <p><b>D-Dynamic (redirect):</b> The route is dynamically installed by a routing daemon or redirect.</p> <p><b>M-Modified (redirect):</b> The route is modified from a routing daemon or redirect.</p>
Metric	<p>The metric represents the "cost of transmission". A router determines the best route for transmission by choosing a path with the lowest "cost". The smaller the number, the lower the "cost".</p>
Interface	<p>This indicates the name of the interface through which the route is forwarded.</p> <p><b>brx</b> indicates a LAN interface where x can be 0~3 to represent LAN1 to LAN4 respectively.</p> <p><b>ethx</b> indicates an Ethernet WAN interface using IPoE or in bridge mode.</p> <p><b>ppp0</b> indicates a WAN interface using PPPoE.</p> <p><b>wlx</b> indicates a wireless interface where x can be 0~1. For some models, <b>wl1</b> indicates 5 GHz wireless interface, and <b>wl0</b> indicates 2.4 GHz wireless interface. For the other models, <b>wl1</b> indicates 5 GHz wireless interface, and <b>wl0</b> indicates 2.4 GHz wireless interface.</p>

# CHAPTER 28

## Multicast Status

### 28.1 Multicast Status Overview

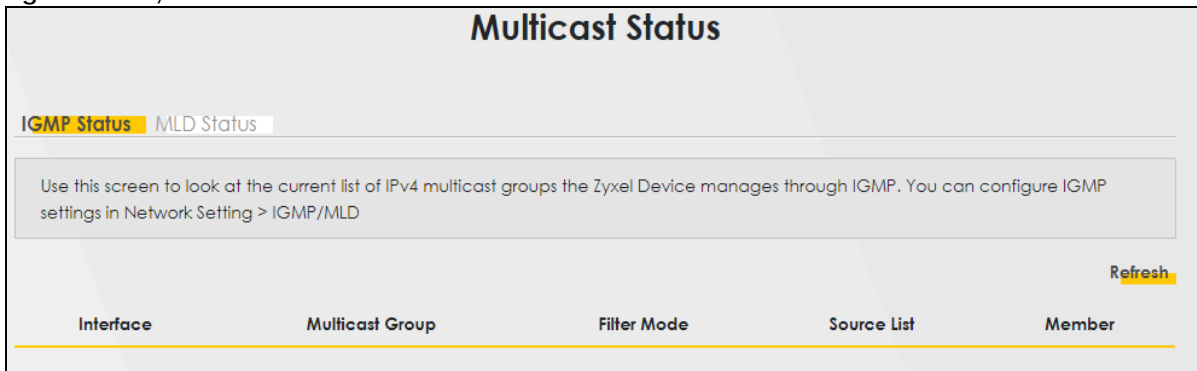
Use the **Multicast Status** screens to view IPv4 or IPv6 multicast group information.

### 28.2 IGMP Status

Use this screen to look at the current list of IPv4 multicast groups the Zyxel Device manages through IGMP. Internet Group Multicast Protocol (IGMP) is a network-layer protocol used to establish membership in a Multicast group - it is not used to carry user data. You can configure IGMP settings in **Network Setting > IGMP/MLD**.

To open this screen, click **System Monitor > Multicast Status > IGMP Status**.

**Figure 208** System Monitor > Multicast Status > IGMP Status



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 137** System Monitor > Multicast Status > IGMP Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Refresh	Click this button to update the information on this screen.
Interface	This field displays the name of the Zyxel Device interface that belongs to an IGMP multicast group.
Multicast Group	This field displays the address of the IGMP multicast group to which the interface belongs.
Filter Mode	<b>INCLUDE</b> means that only the IP addresses in the <b>Source List</b> get to receive the multicast group's traffic. <b>EXCLUDE</b> means that the IP addresses in the <b>Source List</b> are not allowed to receive the multicast group's traffic but other IP addresses can.

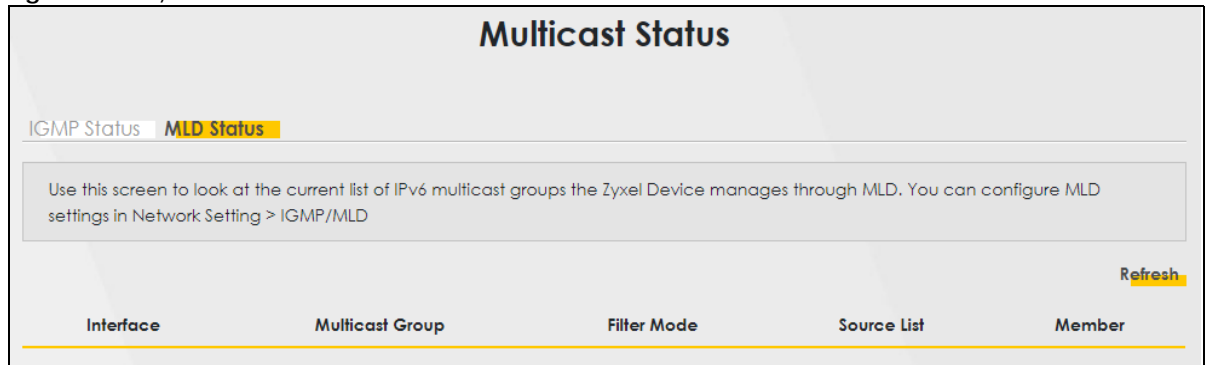
Table 137 System Monitor &gt; Multicast Status &gt; IGMP Status (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Source List	This lists the IP addresses that are allowed or not allowed to receive the multicast group's traffic depending on the filter mode.
Member	This lists the IP address of members currently in the multicast group.

## 28.3 MLD Status

Use this screen to look at the current list of IPv6 multicast groups the Zyxel Device manages through MLD. Multicast Listener Discovery (MLD) allows an IPv6 switch or router to discover the presence of MLD hosts who wish to receive multicast packets and the IP addresses of multicast groups the hosts want to join on its network. MLDv1 is equivalent to IGMPv2 and MLDv2 is equivalent to IGMPv3. You can configure MLD settings in **Network Setting > IGMP/MLD**. To open this screen, click **System Monitor > Multicast Status > MLD Status**.

Figure 209 System Monitor &gt; Multicast Status &gt; MLD Status



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 138 System Monitor &gt; Multicast Status &gt; MLD Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Refresh	Click this button to update the status on this screen.
Interface	This field displays the name of the Zyxel Device interface that belongs to an MLD multicast group.
Multicast Group	This field displays the address of the MLD multicast group to which the interface belongs.
Filter Mode	<b>INCLUDE</b> means that only the IP addresses in the <b>Source List</b> get to receive the multicast group's traffic. <b>EXCLUDE</b> means that the IP addresses in the <b>Source List</b> are not allowed to receive the multicast group's traffic but other IP addresses can.
Source List	This lists the IP addresses that are allowed or not allowed to receive the multicast group's traffic depending on the filter mode.
Member	This lists the IP address of members currently in the multicast group.

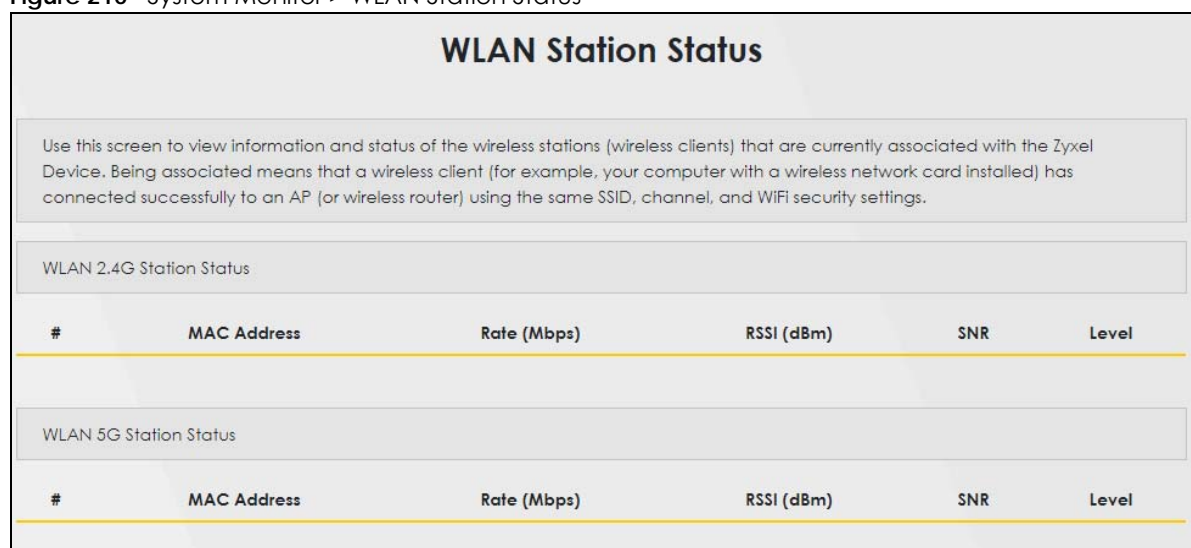
# CHAPTER 29

## WLAN Station Status

### 29.1 WLAN Station Status Overview

Click **System Monitor > WLAN Station Status** to open the following screen. Use this screen to view information and status of the wireless stations (wireless clients) that are currently associated with the Zyxel Device. Being associated means that a wireless client (for example, your network or computer with a wireless network card installed) has connected successfully to an AP (or wireless router) using the same SSID, channel, and WiFi security settings.

**Figure 210** System Monitor > WLAN Station Status



The screenshot shows the 'WLAN Station Status' interface. At the top, there is a title 'WLAN Station Status' and a descriptive paragraph. Below this, there are two sections: 'WLAN 2.4G Station Status' and 'WLAN 5G Station Status'. Each section contains a table with columns for '#', 'MAC Address', 'Rate (Mbps)', 'RSSI (dBm)', 'SNR', and 'Level'. The tables are currently empty.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 139** System Monitor > WLAN Station Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
#	This is the index number of an associated wireless station.
MAC Address	This field displays the MAC address of an associated wireless station.
Rate (Mbps)	This field displays the transmission rate of the WiFi traffic between an associated wireless station and the Zyxel Device.
RSSI (dBm)	The RSSI (Received Signal Strength Indicator) field shows the WiFi signal strength of the station's wireless connection.  The normal range is -30dBm to -79dBm. If the value drops below -80dBm, try moving the associated wireless station closer to the Zyxel Device to get better signal strength.



Table 139 System Monitor &gt; WLAN Station Status (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SNR	<p>The Signal-to-Noise Ratio (SNR) is the ratio between the received signal power and the received noise power.</p> <p>The normal range is 15 to 40. If the value drops below 15, try moving the associated wireless station closer to the Zyxel Device to get better quality WiFi.</p>
Level	<p>This field displays a number which represents the strength of the WiFi signal between an associated wireless station and the Zyxel Device. The Zyxel Device uses the RSSI and SNR values to determine the strength of the WiFi signal.</p> <p>5 means the Zyxel Device is receiving an excellent WiFi signal.</p> <p>4 means the Zyxel Device is receiving a very good WiFi signal.</p> <p>3 means the Zyxel Device is receiving a weak WiFi signal.</p> <p>2 means the Zyxel Device is receiving a very weak WiFi signal.</p> <p>1 means the Zyxel Device is not receiving a WiFi signal.</p>

# CHAPTER 30

## Cellular Statistics

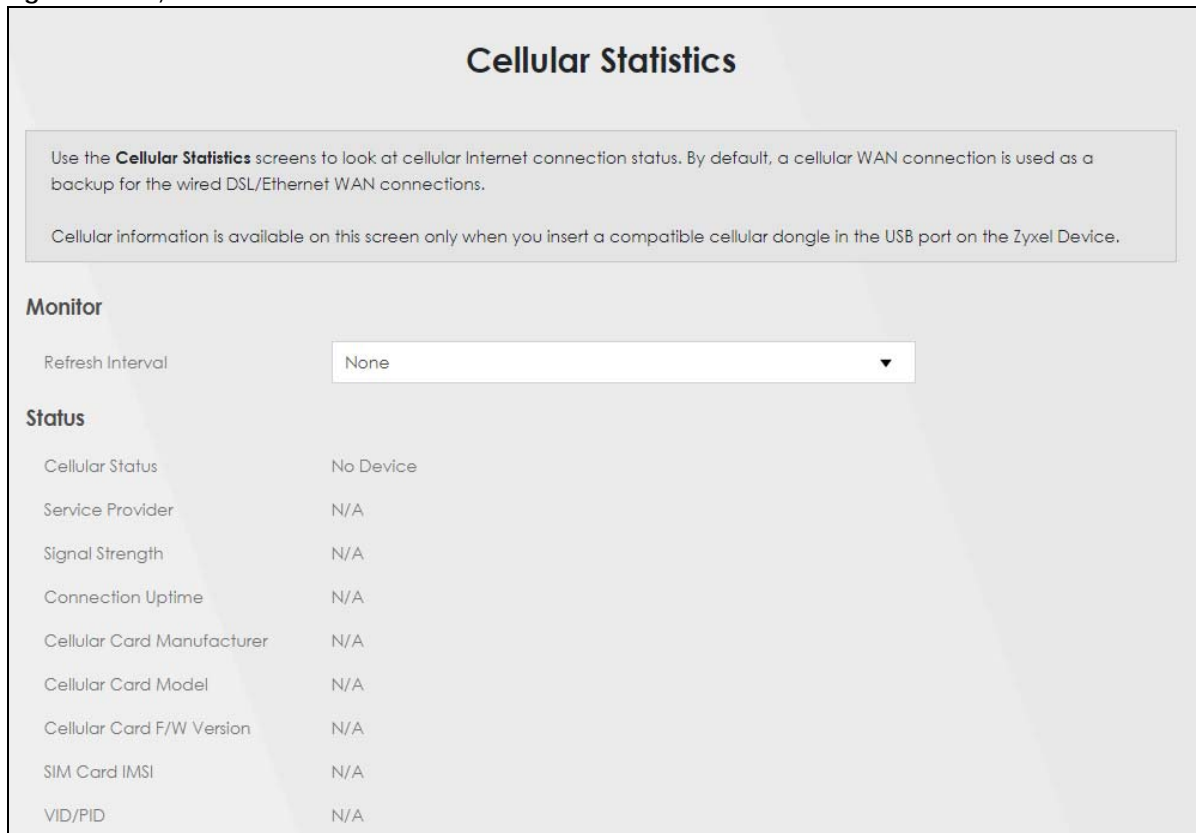
### 30.1 Cellular Statistics Overview

Use the **Cellular Statistics** screens to look at cellular Internet connection status. By default, a cellular WAN connection is used as a backup for the wired DSL/Ethernet WAN connections.

### 30.2 Cellular Statistics Settings

To open this screen, click **System Monitor > Cellular Statistics**. Cellular information is available on this screen only when you insert a compatible cellular dongle in the USB port on the Zyxel Device.

**Figure 211** System Monitor > Cellular Statistics



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 140 System Monitor &gt; Cellular Statistics

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Refresh Interval	Select how often you want the Zyxel Device to update this screen. Select <b>No Refresh</b> to stop refreshing.
Cellular Status	This field displays the status of the cellular Internet connection. This field can display: <b>GSM</b> - Global System for Mobile Communications, 2G <b>GPRS</b> - General Packet Radio Service, 2.5G <b>EDGE</b> - Enhanced Data rates for GSM Evolution, 2.75G <b>WCDMA</b> - Wideband Code Division Multiple Access, 3G <b>HSDPA</b> - High-Speed Downlink Packet Access, 3.5G <b>HSUPA</b> - High-Speed Uplink Packet Access, 3.75G <b>HSPA</b> - HSDPA+HSUPA, 3.75G
Service Provider	This field displays the name of the service provider.
Signal Strength	This field displays the strength of the signal in dBm.
Connection Uptime	This field displays the time the connection has been up.
Cellular Card Manufacturer	This field displays the manufacturer of the cellular card.
Cellular Card Model	This field displays the model name of the cellular card.
Cellular Card F/W Version	This field displays the firmware version of the cellular card.
SIM Card IMSI	The International Mobile Subscriber Identity or IMSI is a unique identification number associated with all cellular networks. This number is provisioned in the SIM card.
VID/PID	This field displays the USB Vendor ID and Product ID of the cellular card.

# CHAPTER 31

## xDSL Statistics

### 31.1 Overview

You can view information about DSL statistics, such as port details, in this screen.

### 31.2 xDSL Statistics

Use this screen to view detailed **DSL statistics**. Click **System Monitor > xDSL Statistics** to open the following screen.

Note: You can only see this screen if you are using DX5301-B2/B3 and DX5401.

**Figure 212** System Monitor > xDSL Statistics

The screenshot displays the 'xDSL Statistics' interface. At the top, there is a title 'xDSL Statistics' and a descriptive text box: 'Use this screen to view detailed DSL information. It allows you to see the DSL status, check port details, and see DSL counters.' Below this, the interface is divided into two main sections: 'Monitor' and 'Status'.

**Monitor**

Type	Stats
Refresh Interval	No Refresh
Line	Line 0

**Status**

```
=====
=====
xDSL Training Status: Idle
Mode: G.DMT
Traffic Type: Inactive
Link Uptime: N/A
=====
=====
xDSL Port Details  Upstream  Downstream
Line Rate: 0.000 Mbps  0.000 Mbps
Actual Net Data Rate: 0.000 Mbps  0.000 Mbps
Trellis Coding: N/A  N/A
SNR Margin: 0.0 dB  0.0 dB
```

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 141 Status &gt; xDSL Statistics

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Type	Select the type of DSL line for refreshing statistics.
Refresh Interval	Select the time interval for refreshing statistics.
Line	Select which DSL line's statistics you want to display.
xDSL Training Status	This displays the current state of setting up the DSL connection.
Mode	This displays the ITU standard used for this connection.
Traffic Type	This displays the type of traffic the DSL port is sending and receiving. <b>Inactive</b> displays if the DSL port is not currently sending or receiving traffic.
Link Uptime	This displays how long the port has been running (or connected) since the last time it was started.
xDSL Port Details	
Upstream	These are the statistics for the traffic direction going out from the port to the service provider.
Downstream	These are the statistics for the traffic direction coming into the port from the service provider.
Line Rate	These are the data transfer rates at which the port is sending and receiving data.
Actual Net Data Rate	These are the rates at which the port is sending and receiving the payload data without transport layer protocol headers and traffic.
Trellis Coding	This displays whether or not the port is using Trellis coding for traffic it is sending and receiving. Trellis coding helps to reduce the noise in ADSL transmissions. Trellis may reduce throughput but it makes the connection more stable.
SNR Margin	This is the upstream and downstream Signal-to-Noise Ratio margin (in dB). A DMT sub-carrier's SNR is the ratio between the received signal power and the received noise power. The signal-to-noise ratio margin is the maximum that the received noise power could increase with the system still being able to meet its transmission targets.
Actual Delay	This is the upstream and downstream interleave delay. It is the wait (in milliseconds) that determines the size of a single block of data to be interleaved (assembled) and then transmitted. Interleave delay is used when transmission error correction (Reed- Solomon) is necessary due to a less than ideal telephone line. The bigger the delay, the bigger the data block size, allowing better error correction to be performed.
Transmit Power	This is the upstream and downstream far end actual aggregate transmit power (in dBm). Upstream is how much power the port is using to transmit to the service provider. Downstream is how much power the service provider is using to transmit to the port.
Receive Power	Upstream is how much power the service provider is receiving from the port. Downstream is how much power the port is receiving from the service provider.
Actual INP	Sudden spikes in the line's level of external noise (impulse noise) can cause errors and result in lost packets. This could especially impact the quality of multimedia traffic such as voice or video. Impulse noise protection (INP) provides a buffer to allow for correction of errors caused by error correction to deal with this. The number of DMT (Discrete Multi-Tone) symbols shows the level of impulse noise protection for the upstream and downstream traffic. A higher symbol value provides higher error correction capability, but it causes overhead and higher delay which may increase error rates in received multimedia data.
Attainable Net Data Rate	These are the highest theoretically possible transfer rates at which the port could send and receive payload data without transport layer protocol headers and traffic.
xDSL Counters	
Downstream	These are the statistics for the traffic direction coming into the port from the service provider.
Upstream	These are the statistics for the traffic direction going out from the port to the service provider.
FEC	This is the number of Far End Corrected blocks.
CRC	This is the number of Cyclic Redundancy Checks.

Table 141 Status &gt; xDSL Statistics (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
ES	This is the number of Errored Seconds meaning the number of seconds containing at least one errored block or at least one defect.
SES	This is the number of Severely Errored Seconds meaning the number of seconds containing 30% or more errored blocks or at least one defect. This is a subset of ES.
UAS	This is the number of UnAvailable Seconds.
LOS	This is the number of Loss Of Signal seconds.
LOF	This is the number of Loss Of Frame seconds.
LOM	This is the number of Loss Of Margin seconds.
Retr	This is the number of DSL retraining count in BRCM DSL driver.
HostInitRetr	This is the number of the retraining counts the host initiated.
FailedRetr	This is the number of failed retraining counts.

# CHAPTER 32

## xPON Status

### 32.1 Overview

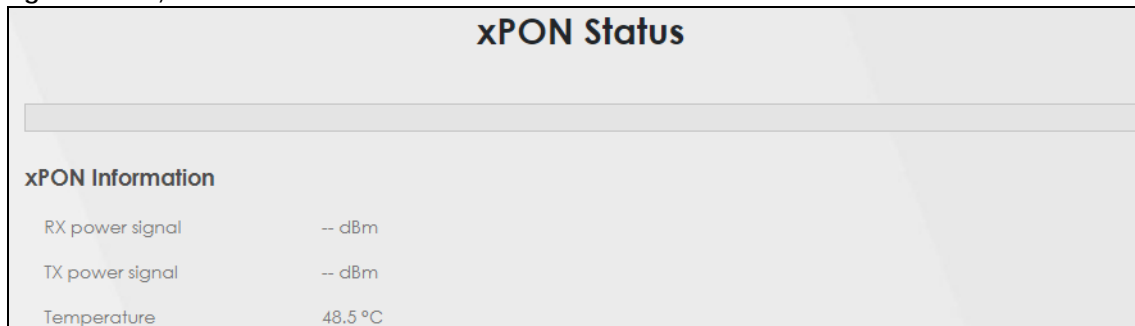
You can view the real-time optical transceiver information and operating parameters on the PON port. The parameters include, for example, transmitting and receiving power, and module temperature.

### 32.2 xPON Status Screen

Click **System Monitor > xPON Status** to open the following screen. Use this screen to view the current PON transceiver status.

Note: You can only see this screen if you are using AX7501 or PX7501.

**Figure 213** System Monitor > xPON Status



The screenshot shows a web interface titled "xPON Status". Below the title is a horizontal bar. Underneath, there is a section labeled "xPON Information" containing three rows of data: "RX power signal" with a value of "-- dBm", "TX power signal" with a value of "-- dBm", and "Temperature" with a value of "48.5 °C".

xPON Information	
RX power signal	-- dBm
TX power signal	-- dBm
Temperature	48.5 °C

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 142** System Monitor > xPON Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
xPON Information	
RX power signal	This displays the amount of power (in dBm) the PON transceiver is receiving from the fiber optic cable.
TX power signal	This displays the amount of power (in dBm) the PON transceiver is transmitting.
Temperature	This displays the temperature inside the PON transceiver in degrees Celsius.

# CHAPTER 33

## System

### 33.1 System Overview

Use this screen to name your Zyxel Device (Host) and give it an associated domain name for identification purposes.

Assign a unique name to the Zyxel Device so it can be easily recognized on your network. You can use up to 30 characters, including spaces.

### 33.2 System Settings

Click **Maintenance > System** to open the following screen. Assign a unique name to the Zyxel Device so it can be easily recognized on your network. You can use up to 30 characters, including spaces.

**Figure 214** Maintenance > System

**System**

In the **System** screen, you can name your Zyxel Device (Host) and give it an associated domain name for identification purposes.

Assign a unique name to the Zyxel Device so it can be easily recognized on your network. You can use up to 30 characters, including spaces.

Host Name

Domain Name

**Cancel** **Apply**

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 143 Maintenance > System

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Host Name	Type a host name for your Zyxel Device. Enter a descriptive name of up to 16 alphanumeric characters, not including spaces, underscores, and dashes.
Domain Name	Type a Domain name for your host Zyxel Device.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to restore your previously saved settings.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.



# CHAPTER 34

## User Account

### 34.1 User Account Overview

In the **User Account** screen, you can view the settings of the 'admin' and other user accounts that you use to log into the Zyxel Device to manage it.

### 34.2 User Account Settings

Click **Maintenance > User Account** to open the following screen. Use this screen to create or manage user accounts and their privileges on the Zyxel Device.

**Figure 215** Maintenance > User Account

#	Active	User Name	Retry Times	Idle Timeout	Lock Period	Group	Remote Privilege	Modify
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	admin	3	60	5	Administrator	LAN,WAN	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 144** Maintenance > User Account

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New Account	Click this button to add a new user account.
#	This is the index number of the user account.
Active	This field indicates whether the user account is active or not. Clear the check box to disable the user account. Select the check box to enable it.
User Name	This field displays the name of the account used to log into the Zyxel Device Web Configurator.

Table 144 Maintenance &gt; User Account (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Retry Times	This field displays the number of times consecutive wrong passwords can be entered for this account. 0 means there is no limit.
Idle Timeout	This field displays the length of inactive time before the Zyxel Device will automatically log the user out of the Web Configurator.
Lock Period	This field displays the length of time a user must wait before attempting to log in again after a number of consecutive wrong passwords have been entered as defined in <b>Retry Times</b> .
Group	This field displays whether this user has <b>Administrator</b> or <b>User</b> privileges.
Remote Privilege	This field displays whether this user can access the Zyxel Device with HTTP, Telnet or SSH through the <b>WAN</b> , <b>LAN</b> or <b>LAN/WAN</b> .
Modify	Click the <b>Edit</b> icon to configure the entry. Click the <b>Delete</b> icon to remove the entry.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to restore your previously saved settings.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.

### 34.2.1 User Account Add/Edit

Click **Add New Account** or the **Edit** icon of an existing account in the **Maintenance > User Account** to open the following screen.

Figure 216 Maintenance &gt; User Account &gt; Add/Edit

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 145 Maintenance &gt; User Account &gt; Add/Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select <b>Enable</b> or <b>Disable</b> to activate or deactivate the user account.
User Name	Enter a new name for the account. The <b>User Name</b> must contain 1 to 15 characters, including 0 to 9, a to z, and !@#%*()-_+~=.,{}[]\ . Spaces are not allowed.

Table 145 Maintenance &gt; User Account &gt; Add/Edit (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Password	Type your new system password (up to 256 characters). The <b>Password</b> must contain 6 to 64 characters, including 0 to 9 and a to z. Note that as you type a password, the screen displays a (*) for each character you type. After you change the password, use the new password to access the Zyxel Device.
Verify New Password	Type the new password again for confirmation.
Retry Times	Enter the number of times consecutive wrong passwords can be entered for this account. 0 means there is no limit.
Idle Timeout	Enter the length of inactive time before the Zyxel Device will automatically log the user out of the Web Configurator.
Lock Period	Enter the length of time a user must wait before attempting to log in again after a number if consecutive wrong passwords have been entered as defined in <b>Retry Times</b> .
Group	Specify whether this user will have <b>Administrator</b> or <b>User</b> privileges. The following menu items will only display when you log in as an <b>Administrator</b> . <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Quick Start Wizard</li> <li>• Network Setting</li> <li>• Security settings</li> <li>• Maintenance &gt; System</li> <li>• Maintenance &gt; SNMP</li> </ul>
Remote Privilege	Select whether this user can access the Zyxel Device with HTTP, Telnet or SSH through the <b>WAN</b> , <b>LAN</b> or <b>LAN/WAN</b> . Only the <b>Administrator</b> is allowed to use Telnet and SSH for remote management.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to exit this screen without saving any changes.
OK	Click <b>OK</b> to save your changes.

# CHAPTER 35

# Remote Management

## 35.1 Remote Management Overview

Use remote management to control what services you can use through which interface(s) in order to manage the Zyxel Device.

### 35.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- Use the **MGMT Services** screen to allow various approaches to access the Zyxel Device remotely from a WAN and/or LAN connection ([Section 35.2 on page 364](#)).
- Use the **Trust Domain** screen to enable users to permit access from local management services by entering specific IP addresses ([Section 35.3 on page 366](#)).

Note: The Zyxel Device is managed using the Web Configurator.

## 35.2 MGMT Services

Use this screen to configure the interfaces through which services can access the Zyxel Device. You can also specify service port numbers computers must use to connect to the Zyxel Device. Click **Maintenance > Remote Management > MGMT Services** to open the following screen.

Figure 217 Maintenance &gt; Remote Management &gt; MGMT Services

## Remote Management

**MGMT Services** Trust Domain

Use this screen to configure through which interface(s), each service can access the Zyxel Device. You can also specify service port numbers computers must use to connect to the Zyxel Device.

**Service Control**

WAN Interface used for services:  Any\_WAN  Multi\_WAN

WWAN  ADSL  VDSL  ETHWAN  SFPWAN

Service	LAN	WLAN	WAN	Trust Domain	Port
HTTP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	80
HTTPS	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	443
FTP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	21
TELNET	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	23
SSH	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	22
SNMP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	161
PING	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 146 Maintenance &gt; Remote Management &gt; MGMT Services

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
WAN Interface used for services	<p>Select <b>Any_WAN</b> to have the Zyxel Device automatically activate the remote management service when any WAN connection is up.</p> <p>Select <b>Multi_WAN</b> and then select one or more WAN connections to have the Zyxel Device activate the remote management service when the selected WAN connections are up.</p> <p>For the other field options, see <a href="#">Section on page 415</a> for details.</p>
Service	<p>This is the service you may use to access the Zyxel Device.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>HTTP</b> provides a non secured way.</li> <li>• <b>HTTPS</b> is the secured version of HTTP, it makes sure that your data cannot be read during transmission.</li> <li>• <b>FTP</b> is the most common way of communication between two devices.</li> <li>• <b>TELNET</b> provides a way to control your Zyxel Device remotely.</li> <li>• <b>SSH</b> prevents leakage of data during remote management. Additionally, it can encrypt all transmitted data.</li> <li>• <b>SNMP</b> is a management system that monitors devices connected to the Internet.</li> <li>• <b>PING</b> is a diagnostic tool that can check if your Zyxel Device is connected to the Internet.</li> </ul>
LAN/WLAN	<p>Select the <b>Enable</b> check box for the corresponding services that you want to allow access to the Zyxel Device from the LAN/WLAN.</p>

Table 146 Maintenance &gt; Remote Management &gt; MGMT Services (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
WAN	Select the <b>Enable</b> check box for the corresponding services that you want to allow access to the Zyxel Device from all WAN connections.
Trust Domain	Select the <b>Enable</b> check box for the corresponding services that you want to allow access to the Zyxel Device from the trusted hosts configured in the <b>Maintenance &gt; Remote MGMT &gt; Trust Domain</b> screen.  If you only want certain WAN connections to have access to the Zyxel Device using the corresponding services, then clear <b>WAN</b> , select <b>Trust Domain</b> and configure the allowed IP address(es) in the <b>Trust Domain</b> screen.
Port	You may change the server port number for a service if needed, however you must use the same port number in order to use that service for remote management.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to restore your previously saved settings.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device.

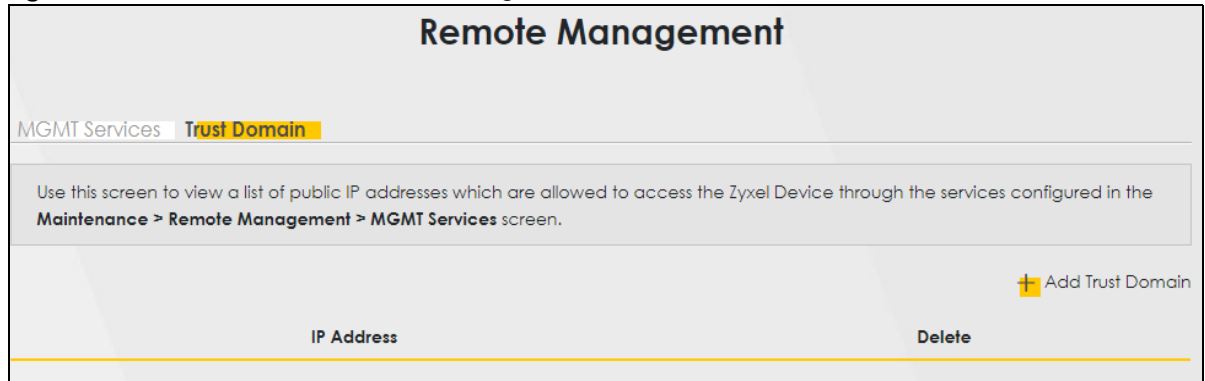
## 35.3 Trust Domain

Use this screen to view a list of public IP addresses which are allowed to access the Zyxel Device through the services configured in the **Maintenance > Remote Management > MGMT Services** screen.

Click **Maintenance > Remote Management > Trust Domain** to open the following screen.

Note: If specific services from the trusted hosts are allowed access but the trust domain list is empty, all public IP addresses can access the Zyxel Device from the WAN using the specified services.

Figure 218 Maintenance &gt; Remote Management &gt; Trust Domain



The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 147 Maintenance &gt; Remote Management &gt; Trust Domain

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add Trust Domain	Click this to add a trusted host IP address.
IP Address	This field shows a trusted host IP address.
Delete	Click the <b>Delete</b> icon to remove the trust IP address.

### 35.3.1 Add Trust Domain

Use this screen to configure a public IP address which is allowed to access the Zyxel Device. Enter the IP address of the management station permitted to access the local management services. If specific services from the trusted-hosts are allowed access but the trust domain list is empty, all public IP addresses can access the Zyxel Device from the WAN using the specified services.

Click the **Add Trust Domain** button in the **Maintenance > Remote Management > Trust Domain** screen to open the following screen.

**Figure 219** Maintenance > Remote Management > Trust Domain > Add Trust Domain

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 148 Maintenance > Remote Management > Trust Domain > Add Trust Domain

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IP Address	Enter a public IP address which is allowed to access the service on the Zyxel Device from the WAN. You can enter an IPv4 or IPv6 address and subnet mask or prefix length.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to exit this screen without saving any changes.
OK	Click <b>OK</b> to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device.

# CHAPTER 36

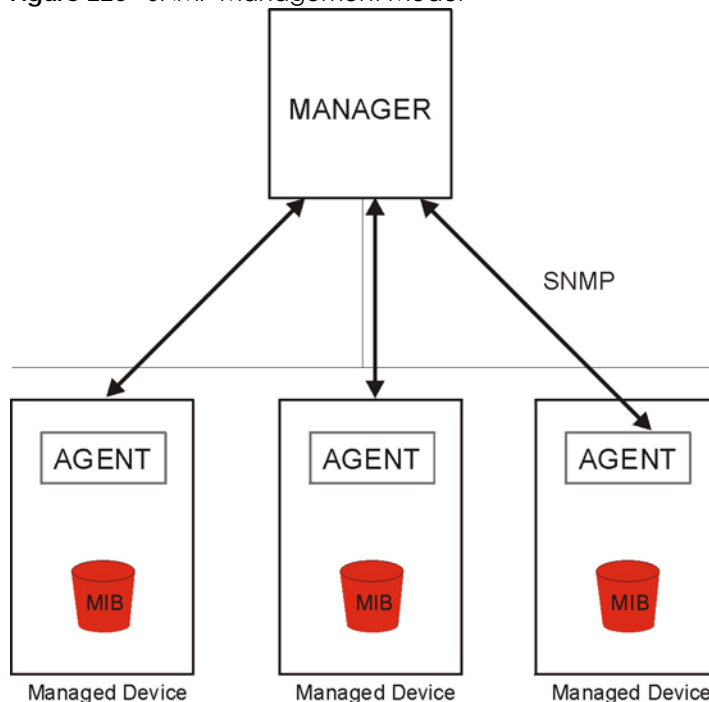
# SNMP

## 36.1 SNMP Overview

This screen allows you to configure the SNMP settings on the Zyxel Device.

The Simple Network Management Protocol is a protocol used for exchanging management information between network devices. Your Zyxel Device supports SNMP agent functionality, which allows a manager station to manage and monitor the Zyxel Device through the network. The next figure illustrates an SNMP management operation.

**Figure 220** SNMP Management Model



An SNMP managed network consists of two main types of components: agents and a manager.

An agent is a management software module that resides in a managed device (the Zyxel Device). An agent translates the local management information from the managed device into a form compatible with SNMP. The manager is the console through which network administrators perform network management functions. It executes applications that control and monitor managed devices.

The managed devices contain object variables/managed objects that define each piece of information to be collected about a device. Examples of variables include the number of packets received, node port status, and so on. A Management Information Base (MIB) is a collection of



managed objects. SNMP allows a manager and agents to communicate for the purpose of accessing these objects.

SNMP itself is a simple request/response protocol based on the manager/agent model. The manager issues a request and the agent returns responses using the following protocol operations:

- Get - Allows the manager to retrieve an object variable from the agent.
- GetNext - Allows the manager to retrieve the next object variable from a table or list within an agent. In SNMPv1, when a manager wants to retrieve all elements of a table from an agent, it initiates a Get operation, followed by a series of GetNext operations.
- Set - Allows the manager to set values for object variables within an agent.

Trap - Used by the agent to inform the manager of some events.

## 36.2 SNMP Settings

Click **Maintenance > SNMP** to open the following screen. Use this screen to configure the Zyxel Device SNMP settings.

Configure how the Zyxel Device reports to the Network Management System (NMS) via SNMP using the screen below.

**Figure 221** Maintenance > SNMP

### SNMP

This screen allows you to configure the SNMP settings on the Zyxel Device.


The Simple Network Management Protocol is a protocol used for exchanging management information between network devices. Your Zyxel Device supports SNMP agent functionality, which allows a manager station to manage and monitor the Zyxel Device through the network.

Configure how the Zyxel Device reports to the Network Management System (NMS) via SNMP using the screen below.

SNMP Agent	<input type="checkbox"/>
Get Community	<input type="text" value="public"/>
Set Community	<input type="text" value="private"/>
Trap Community	<input type="text" value="public"/>
System Name	<input type="text" value="DX5301-B0"/>
System Location	<input type="text" value="Taiwan"/>
System Contact	<input type="text"/>
Trap Destination	<input type="text"/>

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 149 Maintenance > SNMP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SNMP Agent	Enable this switch to let the Zyxel Device act as an SNMP agent, which allows a manager station to manage and monitor the Zyxel Device through the network. Click on this switch to enable/disable it. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled.
Get Community	Enter the <b>Get Community</b> , which is the password for the incoming Get and GetNext requests from the management station.
Set Community	Enter the <b>Set Community</b> , which is the password for the incoming Set requests from the management station.
Trap Community	Enter the <b>Trap Community</b> , which is the password sent with each trap to the SNMP manager. The default is public and allows all requests.
System Name	Enter the SNMP system name.
System Location	Enter the SNMP system location.
System Contact	Enter the SNMP system contact.
Trap Destination	Type the IP address of the station to send your SNMP traps to.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to restore your previously saved settings.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes back to the Zyxel Device.

# CHAPTER 37

## Time Settings

### 37.1 Time Settings Overview

This chapter shows you how to configure the Zyxel Device's system date and time.

### 37.2 Time

For effective scheduling and logging, the Zyxel Device system time must be accurate. Use this screen to configure the Zyxel Device's time based on your local time zone. You can enter a time server address, select the time zone where the Zyxel Device is physically located, and configure Daylight Savings settings if needed.

Click **Maintenance > Time** to open the following screen.

Figure 222 Maintenance &gt; Time

## Time

Use this screen to configure the Zyxel Device's time based on your local time zone. You can enter a time server address, select the time zone where the Zyxel Device is physically located, and configure Daylight Savings settings if needed.

### Current Date/Time

Current Time: 09:21:28  
Current Date: 2018-04-16

### Time and Date Setup

Time Protocol: SNTP (RFC-1769)

First Time Server Address: pool.ntp.org

Second Time Server Address: clock.nyc.he.net

Third Time Server Address: clock.sjc.he.net

Fourth Time Server Address: None

Fifth Time Server Address: None

### Time Zone

Time Zone: (GMT-12:00) International Date Line West

### Daylight Savings

Active:

#### Start Rule

Day:  1 in  
 Last Sunday in

Month: April

Hour: 2 : 0

#### End Rule

Day:  1 in  
 Last Sunday in


Month: November

Hour: 3 : 0

[Cancel](#) [Apply](#)

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 150 Maintenance &gt; Time

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Current Date/Time	
Current Time	This field displays the time of your Zyxel Device. Each time you reload this page, the Zyxel Device synchronizes the time with the time server.
Current Date	This field displays the date of your Zyxel Device. Each time you reload this page, the Zyxel Device synchronizes the date with the time server.
Time and Date Setup	
First ~ Fifth Time Server Address	Select an NTP time server from the drop-down list box. Otherwise, select <b>Other</b> and enter the IP address or URL (up to 29 extended ASCII characters in length) of your time server. Select <b>None</b> if you do not want to configure the time server. Check with your ISP/network administrator if you are unsure of this information.
Time Zone	
Time Zone	Choose the time zone of your location. This will set the time difference between your time zone and Greenwich Mean Time (GMT).
Daylight Savings	Daylight Saving Time is a period from late spring to early fall when many countries set their clocks ahead of normal local time by one hour to give more daytime light in the evening.
Active	Click this switch to enable or disable Daylight Saving Time. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
Start Rule	Configure the day and time when Daylight Saving Time starts if you enabled Daylight Saving. You can select a specific date in a particular month or a specific day of a specific week in a particular month. The <b>Hour</b> field uses the 24 hour format. Here are a couple of examples:  Daylight Saving Time starts in most parts of the United States on the second Sunday of March. Each time zone in the United States starts using Daylight Saving Time at 2 A.M. local time. So in the United States, set the day to <b>Second, Sunday</b> , the month to <b>March</b> and the time to <b>2</b> in the <b>Hour</b> field.  Daylight Saving Time starts in the European Union on the last Sunday of March. All of the time zones in the European Union start using Daylight Saving Time at the same moment (1 A.M. GMT or UTC). So in the European Union you would set the day to <b>Last, Sunday</b> and the month to <b>March</b> . The time you select in the <b>o'clock</b> field depends on your time zone. In Germany for instance, you would select <b>2</b> in the <b>Hour</b> field because Germany's time zone is one hour ahead of GMT or UTC (GMT+1).
End Rule	Configure the day and time when Daylight Saving Time ends if you enabled Daylight Saving. You can select a specific date in a particular month or a specific day of a specific week in a particular month. The <b>Hour</b> field uses the 24 hour format. Here are a couple of examples:  Daylight Saving Time ends in the United States on the first Sunday of November. Each time zone in the United States stops using Daylight Saving Time at 2 A.M. local time. So in the United States you would set the day to <b>First, Sunday</b> , the month to <b>November</b> and the time to <b>2</b> in the <b>Hour</b> field.  Daylight Saving Time ends in the European Union on the last Sunday of October. All of the time zones in the European Union stop using Daylight Saving Time at the same moment (1 A.M. GMT or UTC). So in the European Union you would set the day to <b>Last, Sunday</b> , and the month to <b>October</b> . The time you select in the <b>o'clock</b> field depends on your time zone. In Germany for instance, you would select <b>2</b> in the <b>Hour</b> field because Germany's time zone is one hour ahead of GMT or UTC (GMT+1).
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to restore your previously saved settings.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.

# CHAPTER 38

## E-mail Notification

### 38.1 E-mail Notification Overview

A mail server is an application or a computer that can receive, forward and deliver e-mail messages.

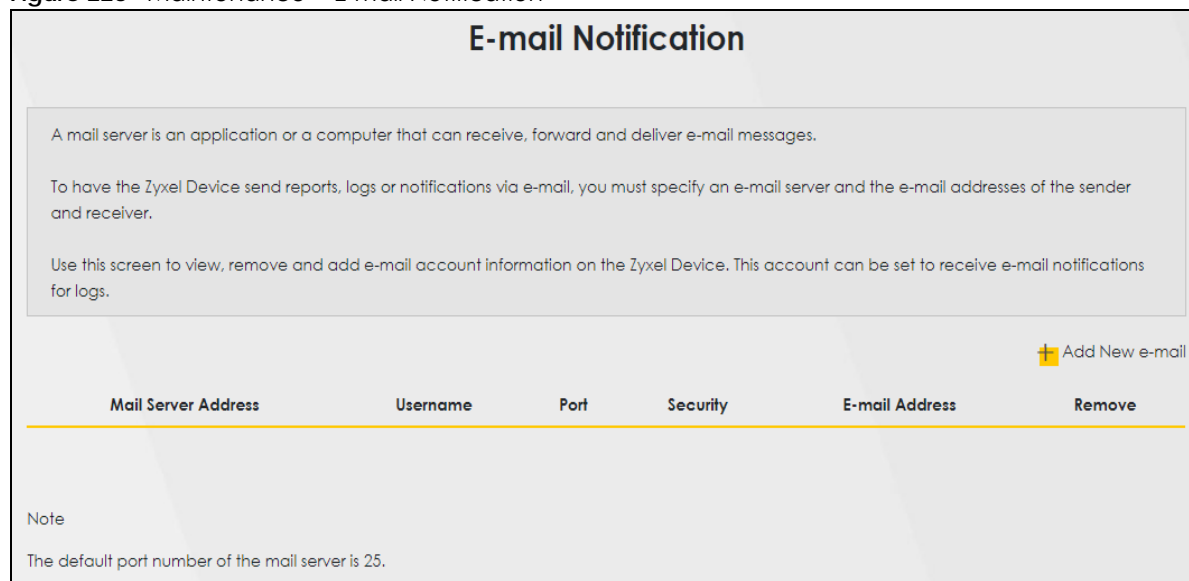
To have the Zyxel Device send reports, logs or notifications via e-mail, you must specify an e-mail server and the e-mail addresses of the sender and receiver.

### 38.2 E-mail Notification Settings

Click **Maintenance > E-mail Notification** to open the **E-mail Notification** screen. Use this screen to view, remove and add e-mail account information on the Zyxel Device. This account can be set to receive e-mail notifications for logs.

Note: The default port number of the mail server is 25.

**Figure 223** Maintenance > E-mail Notification



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 151 Maintenance > E-mail Notification

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New e-mail	Click this button to create a new entry.
Mail Server Address	This field displays the server name or the IP address of the mail server.

Table 151 Maintenance &gt; E-mail Notification (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Username	This field displays the user name of the sender's mail account.
Port	This field displays the port number of the mail server.
Security	This field displays the protocol used for encryption.
E-mail Address	This field displays the e-mail address that you want to be in the from/sender line of the e-mail that the Zyxel Device sends.
Remove	Click this to delete the entry.

## 38.2.1 E-mail Notification Edit

Click the **Add** button in the **E-mail Notification** screen. Use this screen to configure the required information for sending e-mail via a mail server.

Figure 224 E-mail Notification &gt; Add

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 152 E-mail Notification &gt; Add

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Mail Server Address	Enter the server name or the IP address of the mail server for the e-mail address specified in the <b>Account e-mail Address</b> field.  If this field is left blank, reports, logs or notifications will not be sent via e-mail.
Port	Enter the same port number here as is on the mail server for mail traffic.
Authentication User name	Enter the user name (up to 32 characters). This is usually the user name of a mail account you specified in the <b>Account e-mail Address</b> field.
Authentication Password	Enter the password associated with the user name above.

Table 152 E-mail Notification &gt; Add (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Account e-mail Address	Enter the e-mail address that you want to be in the from/sender line of the e-mail notification that the Zyxel Device sends.  If you activate SSL/TLS authentication, the e-mail address must be able to be authenticated by the mail server as well.
Connection Security	Select <b>SSL</b> to use Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) or Transport Layer Security (TLS) if you want encrypted communications between the mail server and the Zyxel Device.  Select <b>STARTTLS</b> to upgrade a plain text connection to a secure connection using SSL/TLS.
Cancel	Click this button to exit this screen without saving any changes.
OK	Click this button to save your changes and return to the previous screen.



# CHAPTER 39

## Log Setting

### 39.1 Logs Setting Overview

You can configure where the Zyxel Device sends logs and which type of logs the Zyxel Device records in the **Logs Setting** screen.

### 39.2 Log Settings

Use this screen to configure where the Zyxel Device sends logs, and which type of logs the Zyxel Device records.

If you have a server that is running a syslog service, you can also save log files to it by enabling **Syslog Logging** and then entering the IP address of the server in the **Syslog Server** field. Select **Remote** to store logs on the syslog server, or select **Local File** to store logs on the Zyxel Device. Select **Local File and Remote** to store logs on both the Zyxel Device and on the syslog server.

Figure 225 Maintenance > Log Setting

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 153 Maintenance > Log Setting



LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Syslog Setting	
Syslog Logging	The Zyxel Device sends a log to an external syslog server. Click this switch to enable or disable to enable syslog logging. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
Mode	Select the syslog destination from the drop-down list box.  If you select <b>Remote</b> , the log(s) will be sent to a remote syslog server. If you select <b>Local File</b> , the log(s) will be saved in a local file. If you want to send the log(s) to a remote syslog server and save it in a local file, select <b>Local File and Remote</b> .
Syslog Server	Enter the server name or IP address of the syslog server that will log the selected categories of logs.
UDP Port	Enter the port number used by the syslog server.
E-mail Log Settings	

Table 153 Maintenance &gt; Log Setting (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
E-mail Log Settings	Click this switch to have the Zyxel Device send logs and alarm messages to the configured e-mail addresses. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
Mail Account	Select a mail account from which you want to send logs. You can configure mail accounts in the <b>Maintenance &gt; E-mail Notification</b> screen.
System Log Mail Subject	Type a title that you want to be in the subject line of the system log e-mail message that the Zyxel Device sends.
Security Log Mail Subject	Type a title that you want to be in the subject line of the security log e-mail message that the Zyxel Device sends.
Send Log to	The Zyxel Device sends logs to the e-mail address specified in this field. If this field is left blank, the Zyxel Device does not send logs via e-mail.
Send Alarm to	Alerts are real-time notifications that are sent as soon as an event, such as a DoS attack, system error, or forbidden web access attempt occurs. Enter the e-mail address where the alert messages will be sent. Alerts include system errors, attacks and attempted access to blocked web sites. If this field is left blank, alert messages will not be sent via e-mail.
Alarm Interval	Specify how often the alarm should be updated.
Active Log	
System Log	Select the categories of system logs that you want to record.
Security Log	Select the categories of security logs that you want to record.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to restore your previously saved settings.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes.

### 39.2.1 Example E-mail Log

An 'End of Log' message displays for each mail in which a complete log has been sent. The following is an example of a log sent by e-mail.

- You may edit the subject title.
- The date format here is Day-Month-Year.
- The date format here is Month-Day-Year. The time format is Hour-Minute-Second.
- 'End of Log' message shows that a complete log has been sent.

Figure 226 E-mail Log Example

```

Subject:
    Firewall Alert From
Date:
    Fri, 07 Apr 2000 10:05:42
From:
    user@zyxel.com
To:
    user@zyxel.com
1|Apr 7 00 |From:192.168.1.1      To:192.168.1.255  |default policy |forward
  |09:54:03 |UDP      src port:00520 dest port:00520  |<1,00>         |
2|Apr 7 00  |From:192.168.1.131   To:192.168.1.255  |default policy |forward
  |09:54:17  |UDP      src port:00520 dest port:00520  |<1,00>         |
3|Apr 7 00  |From:192.168.1.6     To:10.10.10.10    |match          |forward
  |09:54:19  |UDP      src port:03516 dest port:00053  |<1,01>         |
.....{snip}.....
.....{snip}.....
126|Apr 7 00  |From:192.168.1.1     To:192.168.1.255  |match          |forward
   |10:05:00  |UDP      src port:00520 dest port:00520  |<1,02>         |
127|Apr 7 00  |From:192.168.1.131   To:192.168.1.255  |match          |forward
   |10:05:17  |UDP      src port:00520 dest port:00520  |<1,02>         |
128|Apr 7 00  |From:192.168.1.1     To:192.168.1.255  |match          |forward
   |10:05:30  |UDP      src port:00520 dest port:00520  |<1,02>         |

End of Firewall Log

```

# CHAPTER 40

## Firmware Upgrade

### 40.1 Firmware Upgrade Overview

This screen lets you upload new firmware to your Zyxel Device. You can download new firmware releases from your nearest Zyxel FTP site (or [www.zyxel.com](http://www.zyxel.com)) to upgrade your device's performance.

**Only use firmware for your device's specific model. Refer to the label on the bottom of your Zyxel Device.**

### 40.2 Firmware Upgrade Settings

Click **Maintenance > Firmware Upgrade** to open the following screen. Download the latest firmware file from the Zyxel website and upload it to your Zyxel Device using this screen. The upload process uses HTTP (Hypertext Transfer Protocol) and may take up to two minutes. After a successful upload, the Zyxel Device will reboot.

**Do NOT turn off the Zyxel Device while firmware upload is in progress!**

Figure 227 Maintenance > Firmware Upgrade

The screenshot shows the 'Firmware Upgrade' web interface. At the top, the title 'Firmware Upgrade' is centered. Below the title, there is a text box containing instructions: 'This screen lets you upload new firmware to your Zyxel Device.' and 'Download the latest firmware file from the Zyxel website and upload it to your Zyxel Device using this screen. The upload process uses HTTP (Hypertext Transfer Protocol) and may take up to two minutes. After a successful upload, the Zyxel Device will reboot.' Below this text box, there are two main sections: 'Upgrade Firmware' and 'Upgrade WWAN Package'. The 'Upgrade Firmware' section includes a checkbox for 'Restore Default Settings After Firmware Upgrade' (which is unchecked), the 'Current Firmware Version: V5.17(ABTX.0)b1\_0109', and a 'File Path' field with a 'Choose File' button, the text 'No file chosen', and a yellow 'Upload' button. The 'Upgrade WWAN Package' section includes the 'Current WWAN Package Version: 1.19' and a 'File Path' field with a 'Choose File' button, the text 'No file chosen', and a yellow 'Upload' button.

The following table describes the labels in this screen. After you see the firmware updating screen, wait two minutes before logging into the Zyxel Device again.

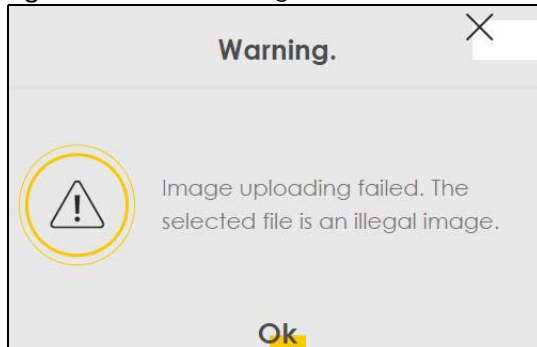
Table 154 Maintenance &gt; Firmware Upgrade

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Upgrade Firmware	
Restore Default Settings After Firmware Upgrade	Select the check box to have the Zyxel Device automatically reset itself after the new firmware is uploaded.
Current Firmware Version	This is the present Firmware version and the date created.
File Path	Type the location of the file you want to upload in this field or click <b>Browse</b> to find it.
Browse	Click this to find the .bin file you want to upload. Remember that you must decompress compressed (.zip) files before you can upload them.
Upload	Click this to begin the upload process. This process may take up to two minutes.

After two minutes, log in again and check your new firmware version in the **Status** screen.

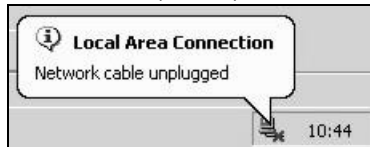
If the upload was not successful, the following screen will appear. Click **OK** to go back to the **Firmware Upgrade** screen.

Figure 228 Error Message



Note that the Zyxel Device automatically restarts during the upload, causing a temporary network disconnect. In some operating systems, you may see the following icon on your desktop.

Network Temporarily Disconnected



# CHAPTER 41

# Backup/Restore

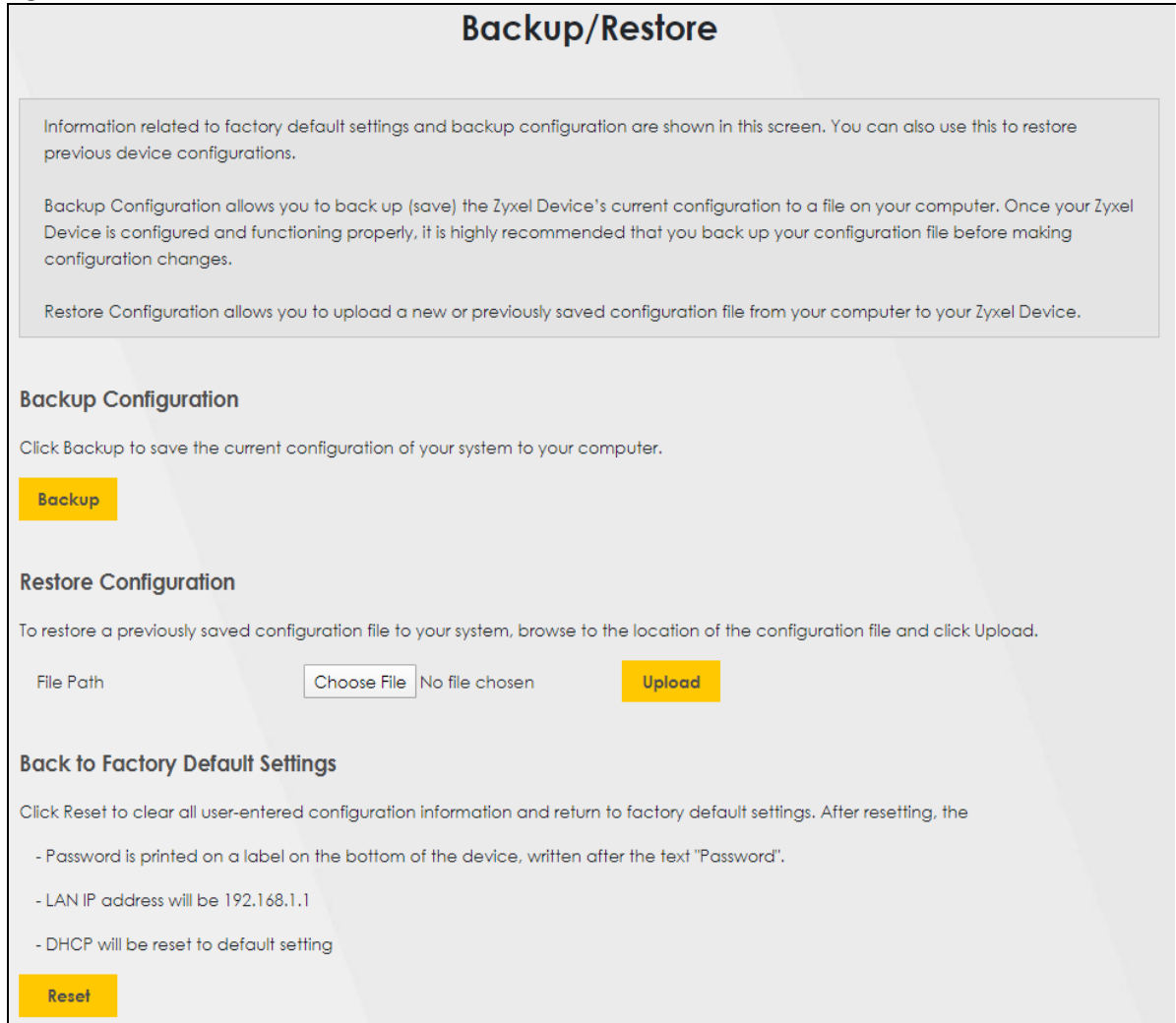
## 41.1 Backup/Restore Overview

The **Backup/Restore** screen allows you to backup and restore device configurations. You can also reset your device settings back to the factory default.

## 41.2 Backup/Restore Settings

Click **Maintenance > Backup/Restore**. Information related to factory default settings and backup configuration are shown in this screen. You can also use this to restore previous device configurations.

Figure 229 Maintenance &gt; Backup/Restore



## Backup Configuration

Backup Configuration allows you to back up (save) the Zyxel Device's current configuration to a file on your computer. Once your Zyxel Device is configured and functioning properly, it is highly recommended that you back up your configuration file before making configuration changes. The backup configuration file will be useful in case you need to return to your previous settings.

Click **Backup** to save the Zyxel Device's current configuration to your computer.



## Restore Configuration

Restore Configuration allows you to upload a new or previously saved configuration file from your computer to your Zyxel Device.

Table 155 Restore Configuration

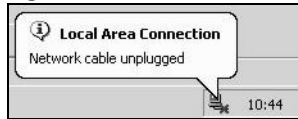
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
File Path	Type in the location of the file you want to upload in this field or click <b>Choose File / Browse</b> to find it.
Choose File / Browse	Click this to find the file you want to upload. Remember that you must decompress compressed (.ZIP) files before you can upload them.
Upload	Click this to begin the upload process.

**Do NOT turn off the Zyxel Device while configuration file upload is in progress.**

After the Zyxel Device configuration has been restored successfully, the login screen appears. Login again to restart the Zyxel Device.

The Zyxel Device automatically restarts in this time causing a temporary network disconnect. In some operating systems, you may see the following icon on your desktop.

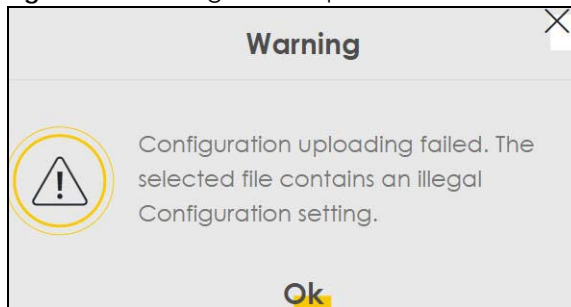
Figure 230 Network Temporarily Disconnected



If you uploaded the default configuration file you may need to change the IP address of your computer to be in the same subnet as that of the default device IP address (192.168.1.1).

If the upload was not successful, the following screen will appear. Click **OK** to go back to the **Backup/Restore** screen.

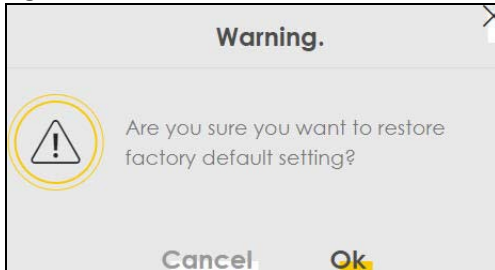
Figure 231 Configuration Upload Error



## Reset to Factory Defaults

Click the **Reset** button to clear all user-entered configuration information and return the Zyxel Device to its factory defaults. The following warning screen appears.

Figure 232 Reset Warning Message



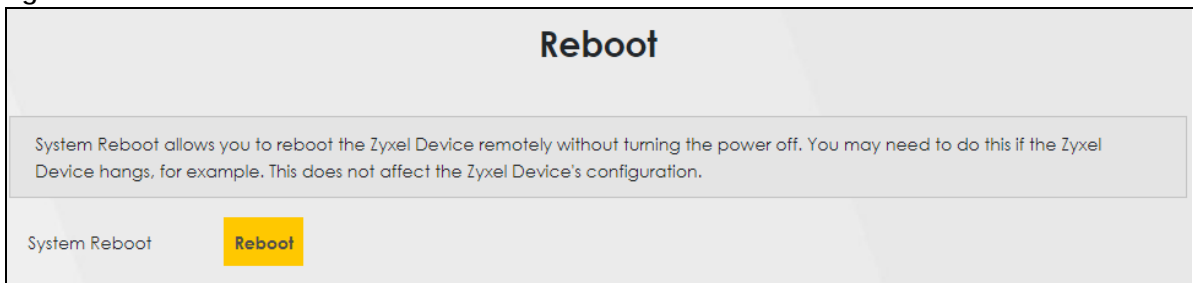
You can also press the **RESET** button on the rear panel to reset the factory defaults of your Zyxel Device. Refer to [Section 1.5.4 on page 37](#) for more information on the **RESET** button.

## 41.3 Reboot

System Reboot allows you to reboot the Zyxel Device remotely without turning the power off. You may need to do this if the Zyxel Device hangs, for example.

Click **Maintenance > Reboot**. Click **Reboot** to have the Zyxel Device reboot. This does not affect the Zyxel Device's configuration.

Figure 233 Maintenance &gt; Reboot



# CHAPTER 42

# Diagnostic

## 42.1 Diagnostic Overview

The **Diagnostic** screen displays information to help you identify problems with the Zyxel Device.

The route between an Ethernet switch and one of its Customer-Premises Equipment (CPE) may go through switches owned by independent organizations. A connectivity fault point generally takes time to discover and impacts subscriber's network access. In order to eliminate the management and maintenance efforts, IEEE 802.1ag is a Connectivity Fault Management (CFM) specification which allows network administrators to identify and manage connection faults. Through discovery and verification of the path, CFM can detect, analyze and isolate connectivity faults in bridged LANs.

### 42.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- The **Diagnostic** or **Ping & TraceRoute & NsLookup** screen lets you ping an IP address or trace the route packets take to a host ([Section 42.3 on page 388](#)).
- The **802.1ag** screen lets you perform CFM actions ([Section 42.4 on page 389](#)).
- The **802.3ah** screen lets you configure link OAM port parameters([Section 42.5 on page 390](#)).
- The **OAM Ping** screen lets you send an ATM OAM (Operation, Administration and Maintenance) packet to verify the connectivity of a specific PVC. ([Section 42.6 on page 392](#)).

## 42.2 What You Need to Know

The following terms and concepts may help as you read through this chapter.

### How CFM Works

A Maintenance Association (MA) defines a VLAN and associated Maintenance End Point (MEP) ports on the device under a Maintenance Domain (MD) level. An MEP port has the ability to send Connectivity Check Messages (CCMs) and get other MEP ports information from neighbor devices' CCMs within an MA.

CFM provides two tests to discover connectivity faults.

- Loopback test - checks if the MEP port receives its Loop Back Response (LBR) from its target after it sends the Loop Back Message (LBM). If no response is received, there might be a connectivity fault between them.

- Link trace test - provides additional connectivity fault analysis to get more information on where the fault is. If an MEP port does not respond to the source MEP, this may indicate a fault. Administrators can take further action to check and resume services from the fault according to the line connectivity status report.

## 42.3 Diagnostic Settings or Ping & TraceRoute & Nslookup

Use this screen use ping, traceroute, or nslookup for troubleshooting. Ping and traceroute are used to test whether a particular host is reachable. After entering an IP address and clicking on one of the buttons to start a test, the results will be shown in the Ping/Traceroute Test area. Use nslookup to find the IP address for a host name and vice versa. Click **Maintenance > Diagnostic > Ping & TraceRoute & Nslookup** to open the screen shown next.

**Figure 234** Maintenance > Diagnostic > Ping&TraceRoute&Nslookup

**Diagnostic**

**Ping&Traceroute&Nslookup** 802.1ag 802.3ah OAM Ping

The **Diagnostic** screens display information to help you identify problems with the Zyxel Device.

Use this screen to ping, traceroute, or nslookup for troubleshooting. Ping and traceroute are used to test whether a particular host is reachable. After entering an IP address and clicking on one of the buttons to start a test, the results will be shown in the Ping/Traceroute Test area. Use nslookup to find the IP address for a host name and vice versa.

**Ping/TraceRoute Test**

**TCP/IP**

Address

Ping Ping 6 Trace Route Trace Route 6 Nslookup

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 156 Maintenance > Diagnostic

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Address	Type the IP address of a computer that you want to perform ping, traceroute, or nslookup in order to test a connection.
Ping	Click this to ping the IPv4 address that you entered.
Ping 6	Click this to ping the IPv6 address that you entered.
Trace Route	Click this to display the route path and transmission delays between the Zyxel Device to the IPv4 address that you entered.

Table 156 Maintenance &gt; Diagnostic (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Trace Route 6	Click this to display the route path and transmission delays between the Zyxel Device to the IPv6 address that you entered.
Nslookup	Click this button to perform a DNS lookup on the IP address of a computer you enter.

## 42.4 802.1ag (CFM)

Click **Maintenance > Diagnostic > 802.1ag** to open the following screen. Use this screen to configure and perform Connectivity Fault Management (CFM) actions as defined by the IEEE 802.1ag standard. CFM protocols include Continuity Check Protocol (CCP), Link Trace (LT), and Loopback (LB).

Figure 235 Maintenance &gt; Diagnostic &gt; 802.1ag

Diagnostic

Ping&Traceroute&Nslookup 802.1ag 802.3ah OAM Ping

Use this screen to configure and perform Connectivity Fault Management (CFM) actions as defined by the IEEE 802.1ag standard. CFM protocols include Continuity Check Protocol (CCP), Link Trace (LT), and Loopback (LB).

### 802.1ag Connectivity Fault Management

IEEE 802.1ag CFM

Y.1731

Interface

Maintenance Domain (MD) Level

MD Name

MA ID

802.1Q VLAN ID  (1~4094), empty means no VLAN tag

Local MEP ID  (1~8191)

CCM

Remote MEP ID  (1~8191), empty means not configure Remote MEP

### Test the connection to another Maintenance End Point (MEP)

Destination MAC Address

**Test Result**



Loopback Message (LBM)

Linktrace Message (LTM)


Apply
Send Loopback
Send Linktrace

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 157 Maintenance > Diagnostic > 802.1ag

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
802.1ag Connectivity Fault Management	
IEEE 802.1ag CFM	Click this switch to enable or disable the IEEE802.1ag CFM specification, which allows network administrators to identify and manage connection faults. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
Y.1731	Click this switch to enable or disable Y.1731, which monitors Ethernet performance. When the switch goes to the right  , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
Interface	Select the interface on which you want to enable the IEE 802.1ag CFM.
Maintenance Domain (MD) Level	Select a level (0-7) under which you want to create an MA.
MD Name	Enter a descriptive name for the MD (Maintenance Domain). This field only appears if the <b>Y.1731</b> field is disabled.
MA ID	Enter a descriptive name to identify the Maintenance Association. This field only appears if the <b>Y.1731</b> field is disabled.
MEG ID	Enter a descriptive name to identify the Maintenance Entity Group. This field only appears if the <b>Y.1731</b> field is enabled.
802.1Q VLAN ID	Type a VLAN ID (1-4094) for this MA.
Local MEP ID	Enter the local Maintenance Endpoint Identifier (1~8191).
CCM	Select <b>Enable</b> to continue sending MEP information by CCM (Connectivity Check Messages). When CCMs are received the Zyxel Device will always process it, whether <b>CCM</b> is enabled or not.
Remote MEP ID	Enter the remote Maintenance Endpoint Identifier (1~8191).
Test the connection to another Maintenance End Point (MEP)	
Destination MAC Address	Enter the target device's MAC address to which the Zyxel Device performs a CFM loopback and linktrace test.
Test Result	
Loopback Message (LBM)	This shows <b>Pass</b> if a Loop Back Messages (LBMs) responses are received. If LBMs do not get a response it shows <b>Fail</b> .
Linktrace Message (LTM)	This shows the MAC address of MEPs that respond to the LTMs.
Apply	Click this button to save your changes.
Send Loopback	Click this button to have the selected MEP send the LBM (Loop Back Message) to a specified remote end point.
Send Linktrace	Click this button to have the selected MEP send the LTMs (Link Trace Messages) to a specified remote end point.

## 42.5 802.3ah (OAM)

Click **Maintenance > Diagnostic > 803.ah** to open the following screen. Link layer Ethernet OAM (Operations, Administration and Maintenance) as described in IEEE 802.3ah is a link monitoring protocol. It utilizes OAM Protocol Data Units (OAM PDU's) to transmit link status information between directly connected Ethernet devices. Both devices must support IEEE 802.3ah.

Figure 236 Maintenance &gt; Diagnostic &gt; 802.3ah

**Diagnostic**

Ping&Traceroute&Nslookup 802.1ag **802.3ah** OAM Ping

Link layer Ethernet OAM (Operations, Administration and Maintenance) as described in IEEE 802.3ah is a link monitoring protocol. It utilizes OAM Protocol Data Units (OAM PDU's) to transmit link status information between directly connected Ethernet devices. Both devices must support IEEE 802.3ah.

IEEE 802.3ah Ethernet OAM

Interface

OAM ID

Auto Event

Features  Variable Retrieval  Link Events  Remote Loopback  Active Mode

**Apply**

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 158 Maintenance &gt; Diagnostics &gt; 802.3ah

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IEEE 802.3ah Ethernet OAM	Click this switch to enable or disable the Ethernet OAM on the specified interface. When the switch goes to the right <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
Interface	Select the interface on which you want to enable the IEEE802.3ah.
OAM ID	Enter a positive integer to identify this node.
Auto Event	Click this switch to detect link status and send a notification when an error (such as errors in symbol, frames, or seconds) is detected. Otherwise, disable this and you will not be notified. When the switch goes to the right <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> , the function is enabled. Otherwise, it is not.
Features	<p>Select <b>Variable Retrieval</b> so the Zyxel Device can respond to requests for information, such as requests for Ethernet counters and statistics, about link events.</p> <p>Select <b>Link Events</b> so the Zyxel Device can interpret link events, such as link fault and dying asp.Link events are set in event notification PDUs (Protocol Data Units), and indicate when the number of errors in a certain given interval (time, number of frames, number of symbols, or number of error frame seconds) exceeds a specified threshold. Organizations may create organization-specific link event TLVs as well.</p> <p>Select <b>Remote Loopback</b> so the Zyxel Device can accept loopback control PDUs to convert Zyxel Device into loopback mode.</p> <p>Select <b>Active Mode</b> so the Zyxel Device initiates OAM discovery, send information PDUs; and may send event notification PDUs, variable request/response PDUs, or loopback control PDUs.</p>
Apply	Click this button to save your changes.

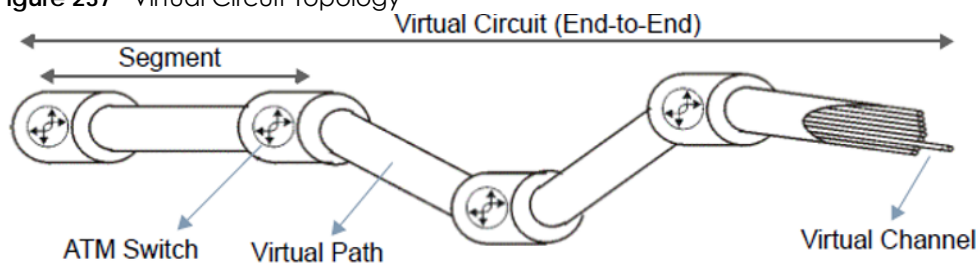
## 42.6 OAM Ping

Click **Maintenance > Diagnostic > OAM Ping** to open the screen shown next. Use this screen to perform an OAM (Operation, Administration and Maintenance) F4 or F5 loopback test on a PVC. The DX5301-B2/B3 sends an OAM F4 or F5 packet to the DSLAM or ATM switch and then returns it to the DX5301-B2/B3. The test result then displays in the text box.

ATM sets up virtual circuits over which end systems communicate. The terminology for virtual circuits is as follows:

- Virtual Channel (VC) Logical connections between ATM devices
- Virtual Path (VP) A bundle of virtual channels
- Virtual Circuits A series of virtual paths between circuit end points

**Figure 237** Virtual Circuit Topology



Think of a virtual path as a cable that contains a bundle of wires. The cable connects two points and wires within the cable provide individual circuits between the two points. In an ATM cell header, a VPI (Virtual Path Identifier) identifies a link formed by a virtual path; a VCI (Virtual Channel Identifier) identifies a channel within a virtual path. A series of virtual paths make up a virtual circuit.

F4 cells operate at the virtual path (VP) level, while F5 cells operate at the virtual channel (VC) level. F4 cells use the same VPI as the user data cells on VP connections, but use different predefined VCI values. F5 cells use the same VPI and VCI as the user data cells on the VC connections, and are distinguished from data cells by a predefined Payload Type Identifier (PTI) in the cell header. Both F4 flows and F5 flows are bidirectional and have two types.

- segment F4 flows (VCI=3)
- end-to-end F4 flows (VCI=4)
- segment F5 flows (PTI=100)
- end-to-end F5 flows (PTI=101)

OAM F4 or F5 tests are used to check virtual path or virtual channel availability between two DSL devices. Segment flows are terminated at the connecting point which terminates a VP or VC segment. End-to-end flows are terminated at the end point of a VP or VC connection, where an ATM link is terminated. Segment loopback tests allow you to verify integrity of a PVC to the nearest neighboring ATM device. End-to-end loopback tests allow you to verify integrity of an end-to-end PVC.

Note: The DSLAM to which the DX5301-B2/B3 is connected must also support ATM F4 and/or F5 to use this test.

Note: This screen is available only when you configure an ATM layer-2 interface using DX5301-B2/B3.



**Figure 238** Maintenance > Diagnostic > OAM Ping

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 159** Maintenance > Diagnostics > 802.3ah

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Select a PVC on which you want to perform the loopback test.	
F4 segment	Press this to perform an OAM F4 segment loopback test.
F4 end-end	Press this to perform an OAM F4 end-to-end loopback test.
F5 segment	Press this to perform an OAM F5 segment loopback test.
F5 end-end	Press this to perform an OAM F5 end-to-end loopback test.

---

# PART III

# Troubleshooting and Appendices

---

Appendices contain general information. Some information may not apply to your Zyxel Device.

# CHAPTER 43

## Troubleshooting

This chapter offers some suggestions to solve problems you might encounter. The potential problems are divided into the following categories.

- [Power and Hardware Problems](#)
- [Device Access Problems](#)
- [Internet Problems](#)
- [WiFi Problems](#)
- [USB Problems](#)

### 43.1 Power and Hardware Problems

---

[The Zyxel Device does not turn on. None of the LEDs turn on.](#)

---

- 1 Make sure the Zyxel Device is turned on.
- 2 Make sure you are using the power adapter included with the Zyxel Device.
- 3 Make sure the power adapter is connected to the Zyxel Device and plugged in to an appropriate power source. Make sure the power source is turned on.
- 4 Turn the Zyxel Device off and on.
- 5 If the problem continues, contact the vendor.

---

[One of the LEDs does not behave as expected.](#)

---

- 1 Make sure you understand the normal behavior of the LED. See [Table 3 on page 26](#).
- 2 Check the hardware connections.
- 3 Inspect your cables for damage. Contact the vendor to replace any damaged cables.
- 4 Turn the Zyxel Device off and on.
- 5 If the problem continues, contact the vendor.

## 43.2 Device Access Problems

---

### I don't know the IP address of the Zyxel Device.

---

- 1 The default LAN IP address is 192.168.1.1.
  - 2 If you changed the IP address and have forgotten it, you might get the IP address of the Zyxel Device by looking up the IP address of the default gateway for your computer. To do this in most Windows computers, click **Start > Run**, enter **cmd**, and then enter **ipconfig**. The IP address of the **Default Gateway** might be the IP address of the Zyxel Device (it depends on the network), so enter this IP address in your Internet browser.
  - 3 If this does not work, you have to reset the device to its factory defaults. See [Section 1.5.4 on page 37](#).
- 

### I forgot the admin password.

---

- 1 See the cover page for the default login names and associated passwords.
  - 2 If those do not work, you have to reset the device to its factory defaults. See [Section 1.5.4 on page 37](#).
- 

### I cannot access the Web Configurator Login screen.

---

- 1 Make sure you are using the correct IP address.
    - The default IP address is [192.168.1.1](#).
    - If you changed the IP address ([Section 8.2 on page 186](#)), use the new IP address.
    - If you changed the IP address and have forgotten it, see the troubleshooting suggestions for [I don't know the IP address of the Zyxel Device](#).
    - Make sure your computer has an IP address in the same subnet as the Zyxel Device. Your computer should have an IP address from 192.168.1.2 to 192.168.1.254. See [Section on page 400](#).
  - 2 Check the hardware connections, and make sure the LEDs are behaving as expected. See [Table 3 on page 26](#).
  - 3 Make sure your Internet browser does not block pop-up windows and has JavaScripts and Java enabled.
  - 4 If it is possible to log in from another interface, check the service control settings for HTTP and HTTPS (**Maintenance > Remote Management**).
  - 5 Reset the device to its factory defaults, and try to access the Zyxel Device with the default IP address. See [Section 1.5.4 on page 37](#).
-

- 6 If the problem continues, contact the network administrator or vendor, or try one of the advanced suggestions.

#### Advanced Suggestions

- Make sure you have logged out of any earlier management sessions using the same user account even if they were through a different interface or using a different browser.
- Try to access the Zyxel Device using another service, such as Telnet. If you can access the Zyxel Device, check the remote management settings and firewall rules to find out why the Zyxel Device does not respond to HTTP.

---

#### I cannot log into the Zyxel Device.

---

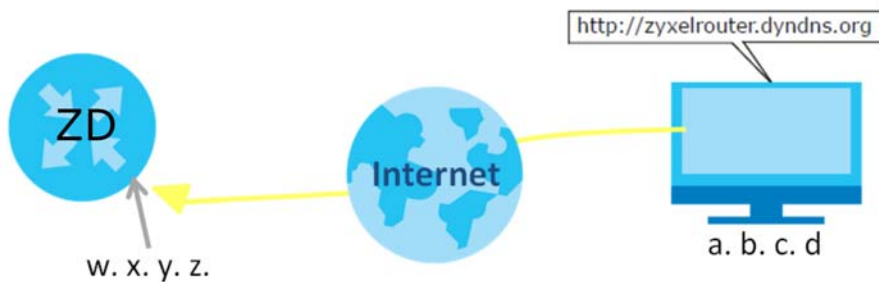
- 1 Make sure you have entered the password correctly. See the cover page for the default login names and associated passwords. The field is case-sensitive, so make sure [Caps Lock] is not on.
- 2 You cannot log in to the Web Configurator while someone is using Telnet to access the Zyxel Device. Log out of the Zyxel Device in the other session, or ask the person who is logged in to log out.
- 3 Turn the Zyxel Device off and on.
- 4 If this does not work, you have to reset the device to its factory defaults. See [Section 43.1 on page 395](#).

---

#### I cannot log into the Zyxel Device using DDNS.

---

If you connect your Zyxel Device to the Internet and it uses a dynamic WAN IP address, it is inconvenient for you to manage the device from the Internet. The Zyxel Device's WAN IP address changes dynamically. Dynamic DNS (DDNS) allows you to access the Zyxel Device using a domain name.



To use this feature, you have to apply for DDNS service at [www.dyndns.org](http://www.dyndns.org).

Note: If you have a private WAN IP address, then you cannot use DDNS.

Here are the three steps to use a domain name to log in the Web Configurator:

**Step 1 Register for a DDNS Account on [www.dyndns.org](http://www.dyndns.org)**

- 1 Open a browser and type **http://www.dyndns.org**.
- 2 Apply for a user account. This tutorial uses **UserName1** and **12345** as the username and password.
- 3 Log into **www.dyndns.org** using your account.
- 4 Add a new DDNS host name. This tutorial uses the following settings as an example.
  - Hostname: **zyxelrouter.dyndns.org**
  - Service Type: **Host with IP address**
  - IP Address: Enter the WAN IP address that your Zyxel Device is currently using. You can find the IP address on the Zyxel Device's Web Configurator **Status** page.

Then you will need to configure the same account and host name on the Zyxel Device later.

### Step 2 Configure DDNS on Your Zyxel Device

Configure the following settings in the **Network Setting > DNS > Dynamic DNS** screen.

- Select **Enable Dynamic DNS**.
- Select **www.DynDNS.com** as the service provider.
- Type **zyxelrouter.dyndns.org** in the **Host Name** field.
- Enter the user name (**UserName1**) and password (**12345**). Click **Apply**.

### Step 3 Test the DDNS Setting

Now you should be able to access the Zyxel Device from the Internet. To test this:

- 1 Open a web browser on the computer (using the IP address **a.b.c.d**) that is connected to the Internet.
- 2 Type **http://zyxelrouter.dyndns.org** and press [Enter].
- 3 The Zyxel Device's login page should appear. You can then log into the Zyxel Device and manage it.

---

### I cannot access the Zyxel Device using Telnet.

---

See the troubleshooting suggestions for [I cannot access the Web Configurator Login screen](#). Ignore the suggestions about your web browser.

---

### I cannot access the Zyxel Device using FTP.

---

See the troubleshooting suggestions for [I cannot access the Web Configurator Login screen](#). Ignore the suggestions about your browser.

---

## 43.3 Internet Problems

---

I cannot access the Internet.

---

- 1 Check the hardware connections, and make sure the LEDs are behaving as expected. See the **Quick Start Guide** and [Table 3 on page 26](#).
- 2 Make sure you entered your ISP account information correctly in the **Network Setting > Broadband** screen. These fields are case-sensitive, so make sure [Caps Lock] is not on.
- 3 If you are trying to access the Internet wirelessly, make sure that you enabled WiFi in the Zyxel Device and your wireless client and that the wireless settings in the wireless client are the same as the settings in the Zyxel Device.
- 4 Disconnect all the cables from your device and reconnect them.
- 5 If the problem continues, contact your ISP.

---

I cannot connect to the Internet using an Ethernet/Fiber connection.

---

- 1 (AX7501-B0)  
Make sure the Fiber port has a compatible SFP+ transceiver installed with a fiber optic cable connected to it.  
(EX5300-B3, EX5301-B3, EX5401-B0, EX5501-B0 and DX5301-B2/B3)  
Make sure you have the Ethernet WAN port connected to a Modem or Router.  
(DX5401-B0, EX5401-B0, PX7501-B0)  
Make sure you have the Fiber port connected to a fiber optic cable.
- 2 Make sure you configured a proper Ethernet WAN interface (**Network Setting > Broadband** screen) with the Internet account information provided by your ISP and that it is enabled.
- 3 Check that the WAN interface you are connected to is in the same interface group as the Ethernet connection (**Network Setting > Interface Group**).
- 4 If you set up a WAN connection using bridging service, make sure you turn off the DHCP feature in the **Network Setting > Home Networking > LAN Setup** screen to have the clients get WAN IP addresses directly from your ISP's DHCP server.

---

## 43.4 WiFi Problems

---

The WiFi connection is slow and intermittent.

---

The following factors may cause interference:

- Obstacles: walls, ceilings, furniture, and so on.
- Building Materials: metal doors, aluminum studs.
- Electrical devices: microwaves, monitors, electric motors, cordless phones, and other wireless devices.

To optimize the speed and quality of your wireless connection, you can:

- Move your wireless device closer to the AP if the signal strength is low.
- Reduce wireless interference that may be caused by other wireless networks or surrounding wireless electronics such as cordless phones.
- Place the AP where there are minimum obstacles (such as walls and ceilings) between the AP and the wireless client.
- Reduce the number of wireless clients connecting to the same AP simultaneously, or add additional APs if necessary.
- Try closing some programs that use the Internet, especially peer-to-peer applications. If the wireless client is sending or receiving a lot of information, it may have too many programs open that use the Internet.

## 43.5 USB Problems

---

The Zyxel Device fails to detect my USB device.

---

- 1 Disconnect the USB device.
- 2 Reboot the Zyxel Device.
- 3 If you are connecting a USB hard drive that comes with an external power supply, make sure it is connected to an appropriate power source that is on.
- 4 Re-connect your USB device to the Zyxel Device.



# APPENDIX A

## Customer Support

In the event of problems that cannot be solved by using this manual, you should contact your vendor. If you cannot contact your vendor, then contact a Zyxel office for the region in which you bought the device.

See <https://www.zyxel.com/homepage.shtml> and also [https://www.zyxel.com/about\\_zyxel/zyxel\\_worldwide.shtml](https://www.zyxel.com/about_zyxel/zyxel_worldwide.shtml) for the latest information.

Please have the following information ready when you contact an office.

### Required Information

- Product model and serial number.
- Warranty Information.
- Date that you received your device.
- Brief description of the problem and the steps you took to solve it.

### Corporate Headquarters (Worldwide)

#### Taiwan

- Zyxel Communications Corporation
- <http://www.zyxel.com>

### Asia

#### China

- Zyxel Communications (Shanghai) Corp.
- Zyxel Communications (Beijing) Corp.
- Zyxel Communications (Tianjin) Corp.
- <https://www.zyxel.com/cn/zh/>

#### India

- Zyxel Technology India Pvt Ltd
- <https://www.zyxel.com/in/en/>

#### Kazakhstan

- Zyxel Kazakhstan
- <https://www.zyxel.kz>

## **Korea**

- Zyxel Korea Corp.
- <http://www.zyxel.kr>

## **Malaysia**

- Zyxel Malaysia Sdn Bhd.
- <http://www.zyxel.com.my>

## **Pakistan**

- Zyxel Pakistan (Pvt.) Ltd.
- <http://www.zyxel.com.pk>

## **Philippines**

- Zyxel Philippines
- <http://www.zyxel.com.ph>

## **Singapore**

- Zyxel Singapore Pte Ltd.
- <http://www.zyxel.com.sg>

## **Taiwan**

- Zyxel Communications Corporation
- <https://www.zyxel.com/tw/zh/>

## **Thailand**

- Zyxel Thailand Co., Ltd
- <https://www.zyxel.com/th/th/>

## **Vietnam**

- Zyxel Communications Corporation-Vietnam Office
- <https://www.zyxel.com/vn/vi>

## **Europe**

### **Belarus**

- Zyxel BY
- <https://www.zyxel.by>

### **Belgium**

- Zyxel Communications B.V.
- <https://www.zyxel.com/be/nl/>

- <https://www.zyxel.com/be/fr/>

## **Bulgaria**

- Zyxel България
- <https://www.zyxel.com/bg/bg/>

## **Czech Republic**

- Zyxel Communications Czech s.r.o
- <https://www.zyxel.com/cz/cs/>

## **Denmark**

- Zyxel Communications A/S
- <https://www.zyxel.com/dk/da/>

## **Estonia**

- Zyxel Estonia
- <https://www.zyxel.com/ee/et/>

## **Finland**

- Zyxel Communications
- <https://www.zyxel.com/fi/fi/>

## **France**

- Zyxel France
- <https://www.zyxel.fr>

## **Germany**

- Zyxel Deutschland GmbH
- <https://www.zyxel.com/de/de/>

## **Hungary**

- Zyxel Hungary & SEE
- <https://www.zyxel.com/hu/hu/>

## **Italy**

- Zyxel Communications Italy
- <https://www.zyxel.com/it/it/>

## **Latvia**

- Zyxel Latvia
- <https://www.zyxel.com/lv/lv/>

## **Lithuania**

- Zyxel Lithuania
- <https://www.zyxel.com/lt/lt/>

## **Netherlands**

- Zyxel Benelux
- <https://www.zyxel.com/nl/nl/>

## **Norway**

- Zyxel Communications
- <https://www.zyxel.com/no/no/>

## **Poland**

- Zyxel Communications Poland
- <https://www.zyxel.com/pl/pl/>

## **Romania**

- Zyxel Romania
- <https://www.zyxel.com/ro/ro/>

## **Russia**

- Zyxel Russia
- <https://www.zyxel.com/ru/ru/>

## **Slovakia**

- Zyxel Communications Czech s.r.o. organizacna zlozka
- <https://www.zyxel.com/sk/sk/>

## **Spain**

- Zyxel Communications ES Ltd
- <https://www.zyxel.com/es/es/>

## **Sweden**

- Zyxel Communications
- <https://www.zyxel.com/se/sv/>

## **Switzerland**

- Studerus AG
- <https://www.zyxel.ch/de>
- <https://www.zyxel.ch/fr>

## **Turkey**

- Zyxel Turkey A.S.
- <https://www.zyxel.com/tr/tr/>

## **UK**

- Zyxel Communications UK Ltd.
- <https://www.zyxel.com/uk/en/>

## **Ukraine**

- Zyxel Ukraine
- <http://www.ua.zyxel.com>

## **South America**

### **Argentina**

- Zyxel Communications Corporation
- <https://www.zyxel.com/co/es/>

### **Brazil**

- Zyxel Communications Brasil Ltda.
- <https://www.zyxel.com/br/pt/>

### **Colombia**

- Zyxel Communications Corporation
- <https://www.zyxel.com/co/es/>

### **Ecuador**

- Zyxel Communications Corporation
- <https://www.zyxel.com/co/es/>

### **South America**

- Zyxel Communications Corporation
- <https://www.zyxel.com/co/es/>

## **Middle East**

### **Israel**

- Zyxel Communications Corporation
- <http://il.zyxel.com/>

## **Middle East**

- Zyxel Communications Corporation
- <https://www.zyxel.com/me/en/>

## **North America**

### **USA**

- Zyxel Communications, Inc. - North America Headquarters
- <https://www.zyxel.com/us/en/>

## **Oceania**

### **Australia**

- Zyxel Communications Corporation
- <https://www.zyxel.com/au/en/>

## **Africa**

### **South Africa**

- Nology (Pty) Ltd.
- <https://www.zyxel.com/za/en/>

# APPENDIX B

## IPv6

### Overview

IPv6 (Internet Protocol version 6), is designed to enhance IP address size and features. The increase in IPv6 address size to 128 bits (from the 32-bit IPv4 address) allows up to  $3.4 \times 10^{38}$  IP addresses.

### IPv6 Addressing

The 128-bit IPv6 address is written as eight 16-bit hexadecimal blocks separated by colons (:). This is an example IPv6 address `2001:0db8:1a2b:0015:0000:0000:1a2f:0000`.

IPv6 addresses can be abbreviated in two ways:

- Leading zeros in a block can be omitted. So `2001:0db8:1a2b:0015:0000:0000:1a2f:0000` can be written as `2001:db8:1a2b:15:0:0:1a2f:0`.
- Any number of consecutive blocks of zeros can be replaced by a double colon. A double colon can only appear once in an IPv6 address. So `2001:0db8:0000:0000:1a2f:0000:0000:0015` can be written as `2001:0db8::1a2f:0000:0000:0015`, `2001:0db8:0000:0000:1a2f::0015`, `2001:db8::1a2f:0:0:15` or `2001:db8:0:0:1a2f::15`.

### Prefix and Prefix Length

Similar to an IPv4 subnet mask, IPv6 uses an address prefix to represent the network address. An IPv6 prefix length specifies how many most significant bits (start from the left) in the address compose the network address. The prefix length is written as “/x” where x is a number. For example,

```
2001:db8:1a2b:15::1a2f:0/32
```

means that the first 32 bits (`2001:db8`) is the subnet prefix.

### Link-local Address

A link-local address uniquely identifies a device on the local network (the LAN). It is similar to a “private IP address” in IPv4. You can have the same link-local address on multiple interfaces on a device. A link-local unicast address has a predefined prefix of `fe80::/10`. The link-local unicast address format is as follows.

Table 160 Link-local Unicast Address Format

1111 1110 10	0	Interface ID
10 bits	54 bits	64 bits

### Global Address

A global address uniquely identifies a device on the Internet. It is similar to a “public IP address” in IPv4. A global unicast address starts with a 2 or 3.

## Unspecified Address

An unspecified address (0:0:0:0:0:0 or ::) is used as the source address when a device does not have its own address. It is similar to "0.0.0.0" in IPv4.

## Loopback Address

A loopback address (0:0:0:0:0:1 or ::1) allows a host to send packets to itself. It is similar to "127.0.0.1" in IPv4.

## Multicast Address

In IPv6, multicast addresses provide the same functionality as IPv4 broadcast addresses. Broadcasting is not supported in IPv6. A multicast address allows a host to send packets to all hosts in a multicast group.

Multicast scope allows you to determine the size of the multicast group. A multicast address has a predefined prefix of ff00::/8. The following table describes some of the predefined multicast addresses.

Table 161 Predefined Multicast Address

MULTICAST ADDRESS	DESCRIPTION
FF01:0:0:0:0:0:1	All hosts on a local node.
FF01:0:0:0:0:0:2	All routers on a local node.
FF02:0:0:0:0:0:1	All hosts on a local connected link.
FF02:0:0:0:0:0:2	All routers on a local connected link.
FF05:0:0:0:0:0:2	All routers on a local site.
FF05:0:0:0:0:0:1:3	All DHCP servers on a local site.

The following table describes the multicast addresses which are reserved and can not be assigned to a multicast group.

Table 162 Reserved Multicast Address

MULTICAST ADDRESS
FF00:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF01:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF02:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF03:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF04:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF05:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF06:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF07:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF08:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF09:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF0A:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF0B:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF0C:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF0D:0:0:0:0:0:0



Table 162 Reserved Multicast Address (continued)

MULTICAST ADDRESS
FF0E:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF0F:0:0:0:0:0:0

## Subnet Masking

Both an IPv6 address and IPv6 subnet mask compose of 128-bit binary digits, which are divided into eight 16-bit blocks and written in hexadecimal notation. Hexadecimal uses four bits for each character (1 ~ 10, A ~ F). Each block's 16 bits are then represented by four hexadecimal characters. For example, FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FC00:0000:0000:0000.

## Interface ID

In IPv6, an interface ID is a 64-bit identifier. It identifies a physical interface (for example, an Ethernet port) or a virtual interface (for example, the management IP address for a VLAN). One interface should have a unique interface ID.

## EUI-64

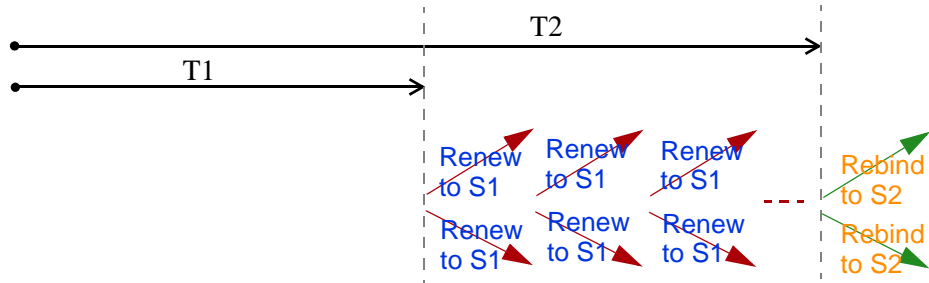
The EUI-64 (Extended Unique Identifier) defined by the IEEE (Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers) is an interface ID format designed to adapt with IPv6. It is derived from the 48-bit (6-byte) Ethernet MAC address as shown next. EUI-64 inserts the hex digits ffe between the third and fourth bytes of the MAC address and complements the seventh bit of the first byte of the MAC address. See the following example.

MAC	00 : 13 : 49 : 12 : 34 : 56
EUI-64	02 : 13 : 49 : FF : FE : 12 : 34 : 56

## Identity Association

An Identity Association (IA) is a collection of addresses assigned to a DHCP client, through which the server and client can manage a set of related IP addresses. Each IA must be associated with exactly one interface. The DHCP client uses the IA assigned to an interface to obtain configuration from a DHCP server for that interface. Each IA consists of a unique IAID and associated IP information.

The IA type is the type of address in the IA. Each IA holds one type of address. IA\_NA means an identity association for non-temporary addresses and IA\_TA is an identity association for temporary addresses. An IA\_NA option contains the T1 and T2 fields, but an IA\_TA option does not. The DHCPv6 server uses T1 and T2 to control the time at which the client contacts with the server to extend the lifetimes on any addresses in the IA\_NA before the lifetimes expire. After T1, the client sends the server (**S1**) (from which the addresses in the IA\_NA were obtained) a Renew message. If the time T2 is reached and the server does not respond, the client sends a Rebind message to any available server (**S2**). For an IA\_TA, the client may send a Renew or Rebind message at the client's discretion.



## DHCP Relay Agent

A DHCP relay agent is on the same network as the DHCP clients and helps forward messages between the DHCP server and clients. When a client cannot use its link-local address and a well-known multicast address to locate a DHCP server on its network, it then needs a DHCP relay agent to send a message to a DHCP server that is not attached to the same network.

The DHCP relay agent can add the remote identification (remote-ID) option and the interface-ID option to the Relay-Forward DHCPv6 messages. The remote-ID option carries a user-defined string, such as the system name. The interface-ID option provides slot number, port information and the VLAN ID to the DHCPv6 server. The remote-ID option (if any) is stripped from the Relay-Reply messages before the relay agent sends the packets to the clients. The DHCP server copies the interface-ID option from the Relay-Forward message into the Relay-Reply message and sends it to the relay agent. The interface-ID should not change even after the relay agent restarts.

## Prefix Delegation

Prefix delegation enables an IPv6 router to use the IPv6 prefix (network address) received from the ISP (or a connected uplink router) for its LAN. The Zyxel Device uses the received IPv6 prefix (for example, 2001:db2::/48) to generate its LAN IP address. Through sending Router Advertisements (RAs) regularly by multicast, the Zyxel Device passes the IPv6 prefix information to its LAN hosts. The hosts then can use the prefix to generate their IPv6 addresses.

## ICMPv6

Internet Control Message Protocol for IPv6 (ICMPv6 or ICMP for IPv6) is defined in RFC 4443. ICMPv6 has a preceding Next Header value of 58, which is different from the value used to identify ICMP for IPv4. ICMPv6 is an integral part of IPv6. IPv6 nodes use ICMPv6 to report errors encountered in packet processing and perform other diagnostic functions, such as "ping".

## Neighbor Discovery Protocol (NDP)

The Neighbor Discovery Protocol (NDP) is a protocol used to discover other IPv6 devices and track neighbor's reachability in a network. An IPv6 device uses the following ICMPv6 messages types:

- Neighbor solicitation: A request from a host to determine a neighbor's link-layer address (MAC address) and detect if the neighbor is still reachable. A neighbor being "reachable" means it responds to a neighbor solicitation message (from the host) with a neighbor advertisement message.
- Neighbor advertisement: A response from a node to announce its link-layer address.
- Router solicitation: A request from a host to locate a router that can act as the default router and forward packets.

- Router advertisement: A response to a router solicitation or a periodical multicast advertisement from a router to advertise its presence and other parameters.

## IPv6 Cache

An IPv6 host is required to have a neighbor cache, destination cache, prefix list and default router list. The Zyxel Device maintains and updates its IPv6 caches constantly using the information from response messages. In IPv6, the Zyxel Device configures a link-local address automatically, and then sends a neighbor solicitation message to check if the address is unique. If there is an address to be resolved or verified, the Zyxel Device also sends out a neighbor solicitation message. When the Zyxel Device receives a neighbor advertisement in response, it stores the neighbor's link-layer address in the neighbor cache. When the Zyxel Device uses a router solicitation message to query for a router and receives a router advertisement message, it adds the router's information to the neighbor cache, prefix list and destination cache. The Zyxel Device creates an entry in the default router list cache if the router can be used as a default router.

When the Zyxel Device needs to send a packet, it first consults the destination cache to determine the next hop. If there is no matching entry in the destination cache, the Zyxel Device uses the prefix list to determine whether the destination address is on-link and can be reached directly without passing through a router. If the address is un-link, the address is considered as the next hop. Otherwise, the Zyxel Device determines the next-hop from the default router list or routing table. Once the next hop IP address is known, the Zyxel Device looks into the neighbor cache to get the link-layer address and sends the packet when the neighbor is reachable. If the Zyxel Device cannot find an entry in the neighbor cache or the state for the neighbor is not reachable, it starts the address resolution process. This helps reduce the number of IPv6 solicitation and advertisement messages.

## Multicast Listener Discovery

The Multicast Listener Discovery (MLD) protocol (defined in RFC 2710) is derived from IPv4's Internet Group Management Protocol version 2 (IGMPv2). MLD uses ICMPv6 message types, rather than IGMP message types. MLDv1 is equivalent to IGMPv2 and MLDv2 is equivalent to IGMPv3.

MLD allows an IPv6 switch or router to discover the presence of MLD listeners who wish to receive multicast packets and the IP addresses of multicast groups the hosts want to join on its network.

MLD snooping and MLD proxy are analogous to IGMP snooping and IGMP proxy in IPv4.

MLD filtering controls which multicast groups a port can join.

## MLD Messages

A multicast router or switch periodically sends general queries to MLD hosts to update the multicast forwarding table. When an MLD host wants to join a multicast group, it sends an MLD Report message for that address.

An MLD Done message is equivalent to an IGMP Leave message. When an MLD host wants to leave a multicast group, it can send a Done message to the router or switch. The router or switch then sends a group-specific query to the port on which the Done message is received to determine if other devices connected to this port should remain in the group.

## Example - Enabling IPv6 on Windows XP/2003/Vista

By default, Windows XP and Windows 2003 support IPv6. This example shows you how to use the `ipv6 install` command on Windows XP/2003 to enable IPv6. This also displays how to use the `ipconfig` command to see auto-generated IP addresses.

```
C:\>ipv6 install
Installing...
Succeeded.

C:\>ipconfig

Windows IP Configuration

Ethernet adapter Local Area Connection:

    Connection-specific DNS Suffix  . :
    IP Address. . . . . : 10.1.1.46
    Subnet Mask . . . . . : 255.255.255.0
    IP Address. . . . . : fe80::2d0:59ff:feb8:103c%4
    Default Gateway . . . . . : 10.1.1.254
```

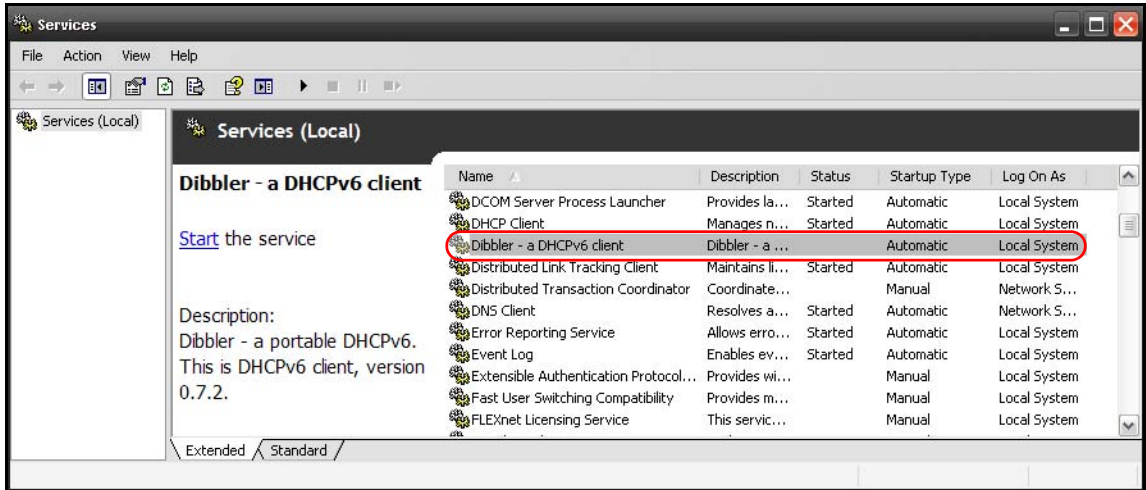
IPv6 is installed and enabled by default in Windows Vista. Use the `ipconfig` command to check your automatic configured IPv6 address as well. You should see at least one IPv6 address available for the interface on your computer.

## Example - Enabling DHCPv6 on Windows XP

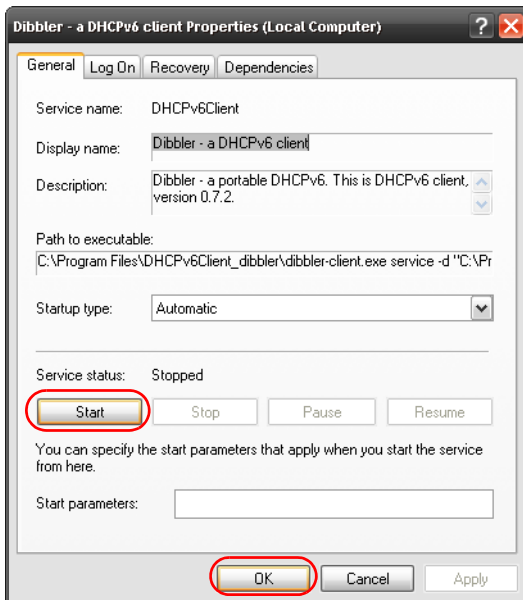
Windows XP does not support DHCPv6. If your network uses DHCPv6 for IP address assignment, you have to additionally install a DHCPv6 client software on your Windows XP. (Note: If you use static IP addresses or Router Advertisement for IPv6 address assignment in your network, ignore this section.)

This example uses Dibbler as the DHCPv6 client. To enable DHCPv6 client on your computer:

- 1 Install Dibbler and select the DHCPv6 client option on your computer.
- 2 After the installation is complete, select **Start > All Programs > Dibbler-DHCPv6 > Client Install as service**.
- 3 Select **Start > Control Panel > Administrative Tools > Services**.
- 4 Double click **Dibbler - a DHCPv6 client**.



- 5 Click **Start** and then **OK**.



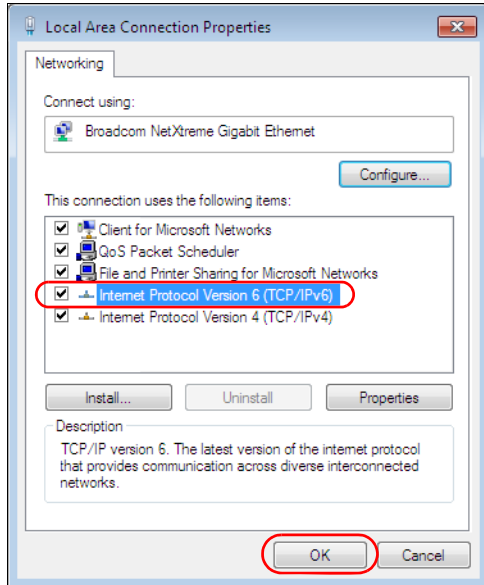
- 6 Now your computer can obtain an IPv6 address from a DHCPv6 server.

## Example - Enabling IPv6 on Windows 7

Windows 7 supports IPv6 by default. DHCPv6 is also enabled when you enable IPv6 on a Windows 7 computer.

To enable IPv6 in Windows 7:

- 1 Select **Control Panel > Network and Sharing Center > Local Area Connection**.
- 2 Select the **Internet Protocol Version 6 (TCP/IPv6)** checkbox to enable it.
- 3 Click **OK** to save the change.



- 4 Click **Close** to exit the **Local Area Connection Status** screen.
- 5 Select **Start > All Programs > Accessories > Command Prompt**.
- 6 Use the `ipconfig` command to check your dynamic IPv6 address. This example shows a global address (2001:b021:2d::1000) obtained from a DHCP server.

```
C:\>ipconfig

Windows IP Configuration

Ethernet adapter Local Area Connection:

    Connection-specific DNS Suffix  . :
    IPv6 Address. . . . . : 2001:b021:2d::1000
    Link-local IPv6 Address . . . . . : fe80::25d8:dcab:c80a:5189%11
    IPv4 Address. . . . . : 172.16.100.61
    Subnet Mask . . . . . : 255.255.255.0
    Default Gateway . . . . . : fe80::213:49ff:feaa:7125%11
                                172.16.100.254
```

# APPENDIX C

## Services

The following table lists some commonly-used services and their associated protocols and port numbers.

- **Name:** This is a short, descriptive name for the service. You can use this one or create a different one, if you like.
- **Protocol:** This is the type of IP protocol used by the service. If this is **TCP/UDP**, then the service uses the same port number with TCP and UDP. If this is **USER-DEFINED**, the **Port(s)** is the IP protocol number, not the port number.
- **Port(s):** This value depends on the **Protocol**.
  - If the **Protocol** is **TCP**, **UDP**, or **TCP/UDP**, this is the IP port number.
  - If the **Protocol** is **USER**, this is the IP protocol number.
- **Description:** This is a brief explanation of the applications that use this service or the situations in which this service is used.

Table 163 Examples of Services

NAME	PROTOCOL	PORT(S)	DESCRIPTION
AH (IPSEC_TUNNEL)	User-Defined	51	The IPSEC AH (Authentication Header) tunneling protocol uses this service.
AIM	TCP	5190	AOL's Internet Messenger service.
AUTH	TCP	113	Authentication protocol used by some servers.
BGP	TCP	179	Border Gateway Protocol.
BOOTP_CLIENT	UDP	68	DHCP Client.
BOOTP_SERVER	UDP	67	DHCP Server.
CU-SEEME	TCP/UDP TCP/UDP	7648 24032	A popular videoconferencing solution from White Pines Software.
DNS	TCP/UDP	53	Domain Name Server, a service that matches web names (for instance <a href="http://www.zyxel.com">www.zyxel.com</a> ) to IP numbers.
ESP (IPSEC_TUNNEL)	User-Defined	50	The IPSEC ESP (Encapsulation Security Protocol) tunneling protocol uses this service.
FINGER	TCP	79	Finger is a UNIX or Internet related command that can be used to find out if a user is logged on.
FTP	TCP TCP	20 21	File Transfer Protocol, a program to enable fast transfer of files, including large files that may not be possible by e-mail.
H.323	TCP	1720	NetMeeting uses this protocol.
HTTP	TCP	80	Hyper Text Transfer Protocol - a client/server protocol for the world wide web.
HTTPS	TCP	443	HTTPS is a secured http session often used in e-commerce.
ICMP	User-Defined	1	Internet Control Message Protocol is often used for diagnostic purposes.
ICQ	UDP	4000	This is a popular Internet chat program.
IGMP (MULTICAST)	User-Defined	2	Internet Group Multicast Protocol is used when sending packets to a specific group of hosts.
IKE	UDP	500	The Internet Key Exchange algorithm is used for key distribution and management.
IMAP4	TCP	143	The Internet Message Access Protocol is used for e-mail.
IMAP4S	TCP	993	This is a more secure version of IMAP4 that runs over SSL.
IRC	TCP/UDP	6667	This is another popular Internet chat program.
MSN Messenger	TCP	1863	Microsoft Networks' messenger service uses this protocol.
NetBIOS	TCP/UDP TCP/UDP TCP/UDP TCP/UDP	137 138 139 445	The Network Basic Input/Output System is used for communication between computers in a LAN.
NEW-ICQ	TCP	5190	An Internet chat program.
NEWS	TCP	144	A protocol for news groups.



Table 163 Examples of Services (continued)

NAME	PROTOCOL	PORT(S)	DESCRIPTION
NFS	UDP	2049	Network File System - NFS is a client/server distributed file service that provides transparent file sharing for network environments.
NNTP	TCP	119	Network News Transport Protocol is the delivery mechanism for the USENET newsgroup service.
PING	User-Defined	1	Packet Internet Groper is a protocol that sends out ICMP echo requests to test whether or not a remote host is reachable.
POP3	TCP	110	Post Office Protocol version 3 lets a client computer get e-mail from a POP3 server through a temporary connection (TCP/IP or other).
POP3S	TCP	995	This is a more secure version of POP3 that runs over SSL.
PPTP	TCP	1723	Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol enables secure transfer of data over public networks. This is the control channel.
PPTP_TUNNEL (GRE)	User-Defined	47	PPTP (Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol) enables secure transfer of data over public networks. This is the data channel.
RCMD	TCP	512	Remote Command Service.
REAL_AUDIO	TCP	7070	A streaming audio service that enables real time sound over the web.
REXEC	TCP	514	Remote Execution Daemon.
RLOGIN	TCP	513	Remote Login.
ROADRUNNER	TCP/UDP	1026	This is an ISP that provides services mainly for cable modems.
RTELNET	TCP	107	Remote Telnet.
RTSP	TCP/UDP	554	The Real Time Streaming (media control) Protocol (RTSP) is a remote control for multimedia on the Internet.
SFTP	TCP	115	The Simple File Transfer Protocol is an old way of transferring files between computers.
SMTP	TCP	25	Simple Mail Transfer Protocol is the message-exchange standard for the Internet. SMTP enables you to move messages from one e-mail server to another.
SMTPS	TCP	465	This is a more secure version of SMTP that runs over SSL.
SNMP	TCP/UDP	161	Simple Network Management Program.
SNMP-TRAPS	TCP/UDP	162	Traps for use with the SNMP (RFC:1215).
SQL-NET	TCP	1521	Structured Query Language is an interface to access data on many different types of database systems, including mainframes, midrange systems, UNIX systems and network servers.
SSDP	UDP	1900	The Simple Service Discovery Protocol supports Universal Plug-and-Play (UPnP).
SSH	TCP/UDP	22	Secure Shell Remote Login Program.
STRM WORKS	UDP	1558	Stream Works Protocol.
SYSLOG	UDP	514	Syslog allows you to send system logs to a UNIX server.

Table 163 Examples of Services (continued)

<b>NAME</b>	<b>PROTOCOL</b>	<b>PORT(S)</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>
TACACS	UDP	49	Login Host Protocol used for (Terminal Access Controller Access Control System).
TELNET	TCP	23	Telnet is the login and terminal emulation protocol common on the Internet and in UNIX environments. It operates over TCP/IP networks. Its primary function is to allow users to log into remote host systems.
VDOLIVE	TCP UDP	7000 user- defined	A videoconferencing solution. The UDP port number is specified in the application.

# APPENDIX D

## Legal Information

### Copyright

Copyright © 2020 by Zyxel Communications Corporation.

The contents of this publication may not be reproduced in any part or as a whole, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, translated into any language, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, magnetic, optical, chemical, photocopying, manual, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Zyxel Communications Corporation.

Published by Zyxel Communications Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Disclaimer

Zyxel does not assume any liability arising out of the application or use of any products, or software described herein. Neither does it convey any license under its patent rights nor the patent rights of others. Zyxel further reserves the right to make changes in any products described herein without notice. This publication is subject to change without notice.

### Regulatory Notice and Statement

#### EUROPEAN UNION (All Models)



The following information applies if you use the product within the European Union.

#### Declaration of Conformity with Regard to EU Directive 2014/53/EU (Radio Equipment Directive, RED)

- Compliance information for wireless products relevant to the EU and other Countries following the EU Directive 2014/53/EU (RED). And this product may be used in all EU countries (and other countries following the EU Directive 2014/53/EU) without any limitation except for the countries mentioned below table:
- In the majority of the EU and other European countries, the 5GHz bands have been made available for the use of wireless local area networks (LANs). Later in this document you will find an overview of countries in which additional restrictions or requirements or both are applicable. The requirements for any country may evolve. Zyxel recommends that you check with the local authorities for the latest status of their national regulations for the 5GHz wireless LANs.
- If this device for operation in the band 5150-5350 MHz, it is for indoor use only.
- This equipment should be installed and operated with a minimum distance of 20cm between the radio equipment and your body.
- The maximum RF power operating for each band as follows:
- DX5301-B2/DX5301-B3/EX5300-B3/EX5301-B3
  - The band 2,400-2,483.5 MHz is 88.51mW
  - The band 5150-5350 MHz is 184.93mW
  - The band 5470-5725 MHz is 907.82mW
- EX5501-B0
  - The band 2,400-2,483.5 MHz is 98.63mW
  - The band 5150-5350 MHz is 175.80mW
  - The band 5470-5725 MHz is 889.20mW
- AX7501-B0 and PX7501-B0
  - The band 2,400-2,483.5 MHz is 96.38 mW
  - The band 5150-5350 MHz is 184.50 mW
  - The band 5470-5725 MHz is 905.73 mW
- DX5401-B0 and EX5401-B0
  - The band 2,400-2,483.5 MHz is 8.57 mW (Zigbee)
  - The band 2,400-2,483.5 MHz is 97.72 mW (Wi-Fi)
  - The band 5150-5350 MHz is 177.42 mW
  - The band 5470-5725 MHz is 857.04 mW

Български (Bulgarian)	<p>С настоящото Zyxel декларира, че това оборудване е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредбите на Директива 2014/53/ЕС.</p> <p><b>National Restrictions</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Belgian Institute for Postal Services and Telecommunications (BIPT) must be notified of any outdoor wireless link having a range exceeding 300 meters. Please check <a href="http://www.bipt.be">http://www.bipt.be</a> for more details.</li> <li>Draadloze verbindingen voor buitengebruik en met een reikwijdte van meer dan 300 meter dienen aangemeld te worden bij het Belgisch Instituut voor postdiensten en telecommunicatie (BIPT). Zie <a href="http://www.bipt.be">http://www.bipt.be</a> voor meer gegevens.</li> <li>Les liaisons sans fil pour une utilisation en extérieur d'une distance supérieure à 300 mètres doivent être notifiées à l'Institut Belge des services Postaux et des Télécommunications (IBPT). Visitez <a href="http://www.ibpt.be">http://www.ibpt.be</a> pour de plus amples détails.</li> </ul>
Español (Spanish)	Por medio de la presente Zyxel declara que el equipo cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 2014/53/UE.
Čeština (Czech)	Zyxel tímto prohlašuje, že tento zařízení je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 2014/53/EU.
Dansk (Danish)	<p>Undertegnede Zyxel erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 2014/53/EU.</p> <p><b>National Restrictions</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In Denmark, the band 5150 - 5350 MHz is also allowed for outdoor usage.</li> <li>I Danmark må frekvensbåndet 5150 - 5350 også anvendes udendørs.</li> </ul>
Deutsch (German)	Hiermit erkläre Zyxel, dass sich das Gerät Ausstattung in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 2014/53/EU befindet.
Eesti keel (Estonian)	Käesolevaga kinnitab Zyxel seadme seadme vastavust direktiivi 2014/53/EL põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Ελληνικά (Greek)	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Zyxel ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ ΕΞΟΠΛΙΣΜΟΣ ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 2014/53/ΕΕ.
English	Hereby, Zyxel declares that this device is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 2014/53/EU.
Français (French)	Par la présente Zyxel déclare que l'appareil équipements est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 2014/53/UE.
Hrvatski (Croatian)	Zyxel ovime izjavljuje da je radijska oprema tipa u skladu s Direktivom 2014/53/UE.
Íslenska (Icelandic)	Hér með lýsir, Zyxel því yfir að þessi búnaður er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og önnur viðeigandi ákvæði tilskipunar 2014/53/UE.
Italiano (Italian)	<p>Con la presente Zyxel dichiara che questo attrezzatura è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 2014/53/UE.</p> <p><b>National Restrictions</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This product meets the National Radio Interface and the requirements specified in the National Frequency Allocation Table for Italy. Unless this wireless LAN product is operating within the boundaries of the owner's property, its use requires a "general authorization." Please check <a href="http://www.sviluppoeconomico.gov.it/">http://www.sviluppoeconomico.gov.it/</a> for more details.</li> <li>Questo prodotto è conforme alla specifiche di Interfaccia Radio Nazionali e rispetta il Piano Nazionale di ripartizione delle frequenze in Italia. Se non viene installato all'interno del proprio fondo, l'utilizzo di prodotti Wireless LAN richiede una "Autorizzazione Generale". Consultare <a href="http://www.sviluppoeconomico.gov.it/">http://www.sviluppoeconomico.gov.it/</a> per maggiori dettagli.</li> </ul>
Latviešu valoda (Latvian)	<p>Ar šo Zyxel deklarē, ka iekārtas atbilst Direktīvas 2014/53/ES būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.</p> <p><b>National Restrictions</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The outdoor usage of the 2.4 GHz band requires an authorization from the Electronic Communications Office. Please check <a href="http://www.esd.lv">http://www.esd.lv</a> for more details.</li> <li>2.4 GHz frekvenču joslas izmantošanai ārpus telpām nepieciešama atļauja no Elektronisko sakaru direkcijas. Vairāk informācijas: <a href="http://www.esd.lv">http://www.esd.lv</a>.</li> </ul>
Lietuvių kalba (Lithuanian)	Šiuo Zyxel deklaruoja, kad šis įranga atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 2014/53/ES Direktyvos nuostatas.
Magyar (Hungarian)	Alulírott, Zyxel nyilatkozom, hogy a berendezés megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 2014/53/EU irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
Malti (Maltese)	Hawnhekk, Zyxel, jiddikjara li dan tagħmir jikkonforma mal-htigijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn rilevanti li hemm fid-Direttiva 2014/53/UE.
Nederlands (Dutch)	Hierbij verklaart Zyxel dat het toestel uitrusting in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 2014/53/EU.
Polski (Polish)	Niniejszym Zyxel oświadcza, że sprzęt jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 2014/53/UE.
Português (Portuguese)	Zyxel declara que este equipamento está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 2014/53/UE.

Română (Romanian)	Prin prezenta, Zyxel declară că acest echipament este în conformitate cu cerințele esențiale și alte prevederi relevante ale Directivei 2014/53/UE.
Slovenčina (Slovak)	Zyxel týmto vyhlasuje, že zariadenia spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 2014/53/EÚ.
Slovenščina (Slovene)	Zyxel izjavlja, da je ta oprema v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 2014/53/EU.
Suomi (Finnish)	Zyxel vakuuttaa täten että laitteen tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 2014/53/EU oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Svenska (Swedish)	Härmed intygar Zyxel att denna utrustning står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 2014/53/EU.
Norsk (Norwegian)	Erklærer herved Zyxel at dette utstyret er i samsvar med de grunnleggende kravene og andre relevante bestemmelser i direktiv 2014/53/EU.

**Notes:**

- Although Norway, Switzerland and Liechtenstein are not EU member states, the EU Directive 2014/53/EU has also been implemented in those countries.
- The regulatory limits for maximum output power are specified in EIRP. The EIRP level (in dBm) of a device can be calculated by adding the gain of the antenna used (specified in dBi) to the output power available at the connector (specified in dBm).

**List of national codes**

COUNTRY	ISO 3166 2 LETTER CODE	COUNTRY	ISO 3166 2 LETTER CODE
Austria	AT	Liechtenstein	LI
Belgium	BE	Lithuania	LT
Bulgaria	BG	Luxembourg	LU
Croatia	HR	Malta	MT
Cyprus	CY	Netherlands	NL
Czech Republic	CZ	Norway	NO
Denmark	DK	Poland	PL
Estonia	EE	Portugal	PT
Finland	FI	Romania	RO
France	FR	Serbia	RS
Germany	DE	Slovakia	SK
Greece	GR	Slovenia	SI
Hungary	HU	Spain	ES
Iceland	IS	Switzerland	CH
Ireland	IE	Sweden	SE
Italy	IT	Turkey	TR
Latvia	LV	United Kingdom	GB

**Safety Warnings**

- Do not use this product near water, for example, in a wet basement or near a swimming pool.
- Do not expose your device to dampness, dust or corrosive liquids.
- Do not store things on the device.
- Do not obstruct the device ventilation slots as insufficient airflow may harm your device. For example, do not place the device in an enclosed space such as a box or on a very soft surface such as a bed or sofa.
- Do not install, use, or service this device during a thunderstorm. There is a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
- Connect ONLY suitable accessories to the device.
- Do not open the device or unit. Opening or removing covers can expose you to dangerous high voltage points or other risks.
- Only qualified service personnel should service or disassemble this device. Please contact your vendor for further information.
- Make sure to connect the cables to the correct ports.
- Place connecting cables carefully so that no one will step on them or stumble over them.
- Always disconnect all cables from this device before servicing or disassembling.
- Do not remove the plug and connect it to a power outlet by itself; always attach the plug to the power adaptor first before connecting it to a power outlet.
- Do not allow anything to rest on the power adaptor or cord and do NOT place the product where anyone can walk on the power adaptor or cord.
- Please use the provided or designated connection cables/power cables/adaptors. Connect it to the right supply voltage (for example, 110V AC in North America or 230V AC in Europe). If the power adaptor or cord is damaged, it might cause electrocution. Remove it from the device and the power source, repairing the power adapter or cord is prohibited. Contact your local vendor to order a new one.
- Do not use the device outside, and make sure all the connections are indoors. There is a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.

- CAUTION: Risk of explosion if battery is replaced by an incorrect type, dispose of used batteries according to the instruction. Dispose them at the applicable collection point for the recycling of electrical and electronic devices. For detailed information about recycling of this product, please contact your local city office, your household waste disposal service or the store where you purchased the product.
- The following warning statements apply, where the disconnect device is not incorporated in the device or where the plug on the power supply cord is intended to serve as the disconnect device.
  - For permanently connected devices, a readily accessible disconnect device shall be incorporated external to the device;
  - For pluggable devices, the socket-outlet shall be installed near the device and shall be easily accessible.
- This product is intended to be supplied by a DC power source marked 'L.P.S' or 'Limited Power Source', rated 12Vdc, 3.0 A and Tma 40°C (min.).
- Complies with 21 CFR 1040.10 and 1040.11 except for conformance with IEC 60825-1 Ed. 3., as described in Laser Notice No. 56, dated May 8, 2019
- CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT & COMPLIES WITH IEC 60825-1:2014

## Important Safety Instructions

- Caution! The RJ-45 jacks are not used for telephone line connection.
- Caution! Do not use this product near water, for example a wet basement or near a swimming pool.
- Caution! Avoid using this product (other than a cordless type) during an electrical storm. There may be a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
- Caution! Always disconnect all telephone lines from the wall outlet before servicing or disassembling this product.
- Attention: Les prises RJ-45 ne sont pas utilisés pour la connexion de la ligne téléphonique.
- Attention: Ne pas utiliser ce produit près de l'eau, par exemple un sous-sol humide ou près d'une piscine.
- Attention: Évitez d'utiliser ce produit (autre qu'un type sans fil) pendant un orage. Il peut y avoir un risque de choc électrique de la foudre.
- Attention: Toujours débrancher toutes les lignes téléphoniques de la prise murale avant de réparer ou de démonter ce produit.

## Environment Statement

### ErP (Energy-related Products)

Zyxel products put on the EU market in compliance with the requirement of the European Parliament and the Council published Directive 2009/125/EC establishing a framework for the setting of ecodesign requirements for energy-related products (recast), so called as "ErP Directive (Energy-related Products directive) as well as ecodesign requirement laid down in applicable implementing measures, power consumption has satisfied regulation requirements which are:

- Network standby power consumption < 8W, and/or
- Off mode power consumption < 0.5W, and/or
- Standby mode power consumption < 0.5W.

(Wireless setting, please refer to the chapter about wireless settings for more detail.)

### European Union - Disposal and Recycling Information

The symbol below means that according to local regulations your product and/or its battery shall be disposed of separately from domestic waste. If this product is end of life, take it to a recycling station designated by local authorities. At the time of disposal, the separate collection of your product and/or its battery will help save natural resources and ensure that the environment is sustainable development.

Die folgende Symbol bedeutet, dass Ihr Produkt und/oder seine Batterie gemäß den örtlichen Bestimmungen getrennt vom Hausmüll entsorgt werden muss. Wenden Sie sich an eine Recyclingstation, wenn dieses Produkt das Ende seiner Lebensdauer erreicht hat. Zum Zeitpunkt der Entsorgung wird die getrennte Sammlung von Produkt und/oder seiner Batterie dazu beitragen, natürliche Ressourcen zu sparen und die Umwelt und die menschliche Gesundheit zu schützen.

El símbolo de abajo indica que según las regulaciones locales, su producto y/o su batería deberán depositarse como basura separada de la doméstica. Cuando este producto alcance el final de su vida útil, llévelo a un punto limpio. Cuando llegue el momento de desechar el producto, la recogida por separado éste y/o su batería ayudará a salvar los recursos naturales y a proteger la salud humana y medioambiental.

Le symbole ci-dessous signifie que selon les réglementations locales votre produit et/ou sa batterie doivent être éliminés séparément des ordures ménagères. Lorsque ce produit atteint sa fin de vie, amenez-le à un centre de recyclage. Au moment de la mise au rebut, la collecte séparée de votre produit et/ou de sa batterie aidera à économiser les ressources naturelles et protéger l'environnement et la santé humaine.

Il simbolo sotto significa che secondo i regolamenti locali il vostro prodotto e/o batteria deve essere smaltito separatamente dai rifiuti domestici. Quando questo prodotto raggiunge la fine della vita di servizio portarlo a una stazione di riciclaggio. Al momento dello smaltimento, la raccolta separata del vostro prodotto e/o della sua batteria aiuta a risparmiare risorse naturali e a proteggere l'ambiente e la salute umana.

Symbolen innebär att enligt lokal lagstiftning ska produkten och/eller dess batteri kastas separat från hushållsavfallet. När den här produkten når slutet av sin livslängd ska du ta den till en återvinningsstation. Vid tiden för kasseringen bidrar du till en bättre miljö och mänsklig hälsa genom att göra dig av med den på ett återvinningsställe.



## 台灣



以下訊息僅適用於產品具有無線功能且銷售至台灣地區

- 第十二條 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司，商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。
- 第十四條 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。
- 無線資訊傳輸設備忍受合法通信之干擾且不得干擾合法通信；如造成干擾，應立即停用，俟無干擾之虞，始得繼續使用。
- 無線資訊傳輸設備的製造廠商應確保頻率穩定性，如依製造廠商使用手冊上所述正常操作，發射的信號應維持於操作頻帶中
- 使用無線產品時，應避免影響附近雷達系統之操作。
- 高增益指向性天線只得應用於固定式點對點系統。

以下訊息僅適用於產品屬於專業安裝並銷售至台灣地區

- 本器材須經專業工程人員安裝及設定，始得設置使用，且不得直接販售給一般消費者。





安全警告 - 為了您的安全，請先閱讀以下警告及指示：

- 請勿將此產品接近水、火焰或放置在高溫的環境。
- 避免設備接觸：
  - 任何液體 - 切勿讓設備接觸水、雨水、高濕度、污水腐蝕性的液體或其他水份。
  - 灰塵及污物 - 切勿接觸灰塵、污物、沙土、食物或其他不合適的材料。
- 雷雨天氣時，不要安裝，使用或維修此設備。有遭受電擊的風險。
- 切勿重摔或撞擊設備，並勿使用不正確的電源變壓器。
- 若接上不正確的電源變壓器會有爆炸的風險。
- 請勿隨意更換產品內的電池。
- 如果更換不正確之電池型式，會有爆炸的風險，請依製造商說明書處理使用過之電池。
- 請將廢電池丟棄在適當的電器或電子設備回收處。
- 請勿將設備解體。
- 請勿阻礙設備的散熱孔，空氣對流不足將會造成設備損害。
- 請插在正確的電壓供給插座（如：北美 / 台灣電壓 110V AC，歐洲是 230V AC）。
- 假若電源變壓器或電源變壓器的纜線損壞，請從插座拔除，若您還繼續插電使用，會有觸電死亡的風險。
- 請勿試圖修理電源變壓器或電源變壓器的纜線，若有毀損，請直接聯絡您購買的店家，購買一個新的電源變壓器。
- 請勿將此設備安裝於室外，此設備僅適合放置於室內。
- 請勿隨一般垃圾丟棄。
- 請參閱產品背貼上的設備額定功率。
- 請參考產品型錄或是彩盒上的作業溫度。
- 產品沒有斷電裝置或者採用電源線的插頭視為斷電裝置的一部分，以下警語將適用：
  - 對永久連接之設備，在設備外部須安裝可觸及之斷電裝置；
  - 對插接式之設備，插座必須接近安裝之地點而且是易於觸及的。

## About the Symbols

Various symbols are used in this product to ensure correct usage, to prevent danger to the user and others, and to prevent property damage. The meaning of these symbols are described below. It is important that you read these descriptions thoroughly and fully understand the contents.

### Explanation of the Symbols

SYMBOL	EXPLANATION
	Alternating current (AC): AC is an electric current in which the flow of electric charge periodically reverses direction.
	Direct current (DC): DC is the unidirectional flow or movement of electric charge carriers.
	Earth; ground: A wiring terminal intended for connection of a Protective Earthing Conductor.
	Class II equipment: The method of protection against electric shock in the case of class II equipment is either double insulation or reinforced insulation.

### Viewing Certifications

Go to <http://www.zyxel.com> to view this product's documentation and certifications.

### Zyxel Limited Warranty

Zyxel warrants to the original end user (purchaser) that this product is free from any defects in material or workmanship for a specific period (the Warranty Period) from the date of purchase. The Warranty Period varies by region. Check with your vendor and/or the authorized Zyxel local distributor for details about the Warranty Period of this product. During the warranty period, and upon proof of purchase, should the product have indications of failure due to faulty workmanship and/or materials, Zyxel will, at its discretion, repair or replace the defective products or components without charge for either parts or labor, and to whatever extent it shall deem necessary to restore the product or components to proper operating condition. Any replacement will consist of a new or re-manufactured functionally equivalent product of equal or higher value, and will be solely at the discretion of Zyxel. This warranty shall not apply if the product has been modified, misused, tampered with, damaged by an act of God, or subjected to abnormal working conditions.

#### Note

Repair or replacement, as provided under this warranty, is the exclusive remedy of the purchaser. This warranty is in lieu of all other warranties, express or implied, including any implied warranty of merchantability or fitness for a particular use or purpose. Zyxel shall in no event be held liable for indirect or consequential damages of any kind to the purchaser.

To obtain the services of this warranty, contact your vendor. You may also refer to the warranty policy for the region in which you bought the device at [http://www.zyxel.com/web/support\\_warranty\\_info.php](http://www.zyxel.com/web/support_warranty_info.php).

### Registration

Register your product online at [www.zyxel.com](http://www.zyxel.com) to receive e-mail notices of firmware upgrades and related information.

### Open Source Licenses

This product may contain in part some free software distributed under GPL license terms and/or GPL-like licenses.

To request the source code covered under these licenses, please go to: <https://service-provider.zyxel.com/global/en/gpl-oss-software-notice>



# Index

## Numbers

- 2.5G WAN [34](#)
- 2.5G WiFi LED [27, 29](#)
- 5G WiFi LED [27](#)
- 6rd
  - IPv6 [116](#)

## A

- ACK message [326](#)
- ACL rule
  - add/edit [282](#)
- activation
  - firewalls [278](#)
  - media server [276](#)
  - SIP ALG [245](#)
  - SSID [155](#)
- Address Resolution Protocol [345](#)
- AES (Advanced Encryption Standard) [154](#)
- applications
  - Internet access [20](#)
  - media server [275](#)
    - activation [276](#)
    - iTunes server [275](#)
- applications, NAT [250](#)
- ARP Table [345, 347](#)
- Asynchronous Transfer Mode [115](#)
- ATM [115](#)
- authentication [173, 174](#)
  - RADIUS server [174](#)

## B

- backup
  - configuration [384](#)
- bandwidth capacity
- cable type [19](#)

- Basic Service Set, see BSS
- blinking LEDs [26](#)
- bottom panel
  - buttons [34](#)
  - Zyxel device [30](#)
- Bridge mode [124, 133](#)
- broadband [113](#)
- Broadband screen
  - overview [113](#)
- broadcast [147](#)
- BSS [175](#)
  - example [176](#)
- button
  - power [34, 35](#)
  - reset [34, 35](#)
  - WLAN [34, 35](#)
  - WPS [34](#)
- BYE request [326](#)

## C

- CA [300, 304](#)
- cable type
  - Ethernet [19](#)
- call hold [331, 333](#)
- call service mode [331, 332](#)
- call transfer [332, 333](#)
- call waiting [332, 333](#)
- Canonical Format Indicator See CFI
- CCMs [387](#)
- certificate
  - factory default [301](#)
- certificates [300](#)
  - authentication [300](#)
  - CA
    - creating [302](#)
    - public key [300](#)
    - replacing [301](#)
    - storage space [301](#)

- Certification Authority [300](#)
  - Certification Authority. *see* CA
  - certifications [421](#)
    - viewing [424](#)
  - CFI [147](#)
  - CFM [387](#)
    - CCMs [387](#)
    - link trace test [388](#)
    - loopback test [387](#)
    - MA [387](#)
    - MD [387](#)
    - MEG [390](#)
    - MEP [387](#)
    - MIP [387](#)
  - channel
    - WiFi [172](#)
  - Class of Service [329](#)
  - Class of Service, *see* CoS
  - client list [191](#)
  - client-server protocol [323](#)
  - comfort noise generation [328](#)
  - configuration
    - backup [384](#)
    - firewalls [278](#)
    - reset [385](#)
    - restoring [385](#)
    - static route [207, 209, 253](#)
  - connection status screen [40](#)
    - overview [100](#)
  - Connectivity Check Messages, *see* CCMs
  - contact information
    - customer support [401](#)
  - copyright [419](#)
  - CoS [231, 329](#)
  - CoS technologies [215](#)
  - creating certificates [302](#)
  - CTS threshold [165, 173](#)
  - customer support [401](#)
- ## D
- Denials of Service, *see* DoS
  - DHCP [185, 204](#)
  - differentiated services [330](#)
  - Differentiated Services, *see* DiffServ [231](#)
  - DiffServ [231](#)
    - marking rule [231](#)
  - DiffServ (Differentiated Services) [329](#)
    - code points [329](#)
    - marking rule [330](#)
  - digital IDs [300](#)
  - disclaimer [419](#)
  - distance maximum
    - cable type [19](#)
  - DLNA [275](#)
  - DMZ [244](#)
  - DNS [185, 204](#)
  - DNS server address assignment [148](#)
  - Domain Name [251](#)
  - Domain Name System, *see* DNS
  - Domain Name System. *See* DNS.
  - DoS [278](#)
  - DS field [231, 330](#)
  - DS, *see* differentiated services
  - DSCP [231, 329](#)
  - DSL
    - counters [357](#)
    - port details [357](#)
    - statistics [356](#)
  - Dual Stack Lite [116](#)
  - dual-band application [21](#)
  - dual-band gateway [21](#)
  - dynamic DNS [252](#)
    - wildcard [252](#)
  - Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol, *see* DHCP
  - DYNDNS wildcard [252](#)
- ## E
- ECHO [251](#)
  - echo cancellation [328](#)
  - e-mail
    - log example [379](#)
  - Encapsulation [144](#)

MER [144](#)  
PPP over Ethernet [144](#)  
encapsulation  
  RFC 1483 [145](#)  
encapsulation method  
  technical reference [144](#)  
encryption [175](#)  
Ethernet port [34](#)  
Ethernet WAN port [34](#)  
Europe type call service mode [331](#)  
Extended Service Set IDentification [152, 158](#)

## F

factory-default configuration  
  reload [37](#)  
Fast Leave  
  enable [259](#)  
fiber optic cable [34](#)  
  connecting [36](#)  
  removal [36](#)  
FIBER port [34](#)  
filters  
  MAC address [159, 174](#)  
Finger services [251](#)  
firewall [277](#)  
  LAND attack [278](#)  
firewalls  
  add protocols [280](#)  
  configuration [278](#)  
  DDoS [278](#)  
  DoS [278](#)  
  Ping of Death [278](#)  
  SYN attack [278](#)  
firmware [381](#)  
  version [103](#)  
flash key [331](#)  
flashing [331](#)  
forwarding ports [236](#)  
fragmentation threshold [165, 173](#)  
FTP [22, 236, 251](#)

## G

G.168 [328](#)  
guest WiFi settings  
  configuring [106](#)

## H

HTTP [251](#)

## I

ICMPv6 [257](#)  
icon  
  Language [46](#)  
  layout [101](#)  
  Logout [46](#)  
  Restart [46](#)  
  Theme [46](#)  
  Wizard [46](#)  
IEEE 802.11ax [150](#)  
IEEE 802.1Q [147](#)  
IGA [249](#)  
IGMP [148](#)  
  multicast group list [257, 350, 351](#)  
  version [148](#)  
IGMP Fast Leave [257](#)  
IGMPv2 [257](#)  
IGMPv3 [257](#)  
ILA [249](#)  
Inside Global Address, see IGA  
Inside Local Address, see ILA  
interface group [263](#)  
Internet access [20](#)  
  wizard setup [47](#)  
Internet access application  
  Ethernet WAN [21](#)  
Internet connection  
  add or edit [118, 127](#)  
INTERNET LED [26, 28](#)  
Internet Protocol version 6 [115](#)  
Internet Protocol version 6, see IPv6  
Intra LAN Multicast [259](#)

IP address [184, 205](#)  
ping [388](#)  
private [205](#)  
WAN [114](#)

IP address assignment [147](#)

IP alias  
NAT applications [250](#)

IP over Ethernet [144](#)

IP packet  
transmission method [147](#)

IPoE technical reference [144](#)

IPv6 [115, 407](#)  
addressing [115, 148, 407](#)  
EUI-64 [409](#)  
global address [407](#)  
interface ID [409](#)  
link-local address [407](#)  
Neighbor Discovery Protocol [407](#)  
ping [407](#)  
prefix [115, 148, 407](#)  
prefix and length [115](#)  
prefix delegation [117](#)  
prefix length [115, 148, 407](#)  
subnet mask [115](#)  
unspecified address [408](#)

IPv6 address  
abbreviation method [148](#)

IPv6 rapid deployment [116](#)

iTunes server [275](#)

ITU-T [328](#)

## J

Java permission [38](#)  
JavaScript [38](#)

## K

key combinations [334](#)  
keypad [334](#)

## L

LAN [184](#)  
client list [191](#)  
DHCP [185, 204](#)  
DNS [185, 204](#)  
IP address [184, 186, 205](#)  
MAC address [192](#)  
status [104, 109](#)  
subnet mask [185, 186, 205](#)

LAN setup [108](#)

LAN to LAN multicast [259](#)

LAND attack [278](#)

Language icon [46](#)

layout icon [112](#)

LBR [387](#)

LED  
2.4G WiFi [27, 29](#)  
5G WiFi [27](#)  
INTERNET [26, 28](#)  
POWER [26, 28](#)  
WPS [27, 29](#)

LED description [26, 28](#)

LED indicators [23](#)

limitations  
WiFi [175](#)  
WPS [182](#)

link trace [388](#)

Link Trace Message, see LTM

Link Trace Response, see LTR

listening port [315](#)

login [38](#)  
password [38](#)

Logout icon [46](#)

logs [335, 338, 350, 354, 377](#)

Loop Back Response, see LBR

loopback [387](#)

LTM [388](#)

LTR [388](#)

## M

MA [387](#)  
MAC address [160, 192](#)

- filter [159, 174](#)
- MAC authentication [159](#)
- MAC filter [286](#)
- Maintenance Association, see MA
- Maintenance Domain, see MD
- Maintenance End Point, see MEP
- managing the device
  - good habits [22](#)
- Maximum Burst Size (MBS) [145](#)
- MBSSID [176](#)
- MD [387](#)
- media server [275](#)
  - activation [276](#)
  - iTunes server [275](#)
- menu icon [41](#)
- MEP [387](#)
- MESH
  - enable [168](#)
- MLD [257](#)
- MLDv1 [257](#)
- MLDv2 [257](#)
- MTU (Multi-Tenant Unit) [147](#)
- multicast [147](#)
- Multicast Listener Discovery, see MLD
- multi-gigabit [19](#)
- multimedia [322](#)
- Multiple BSS, see MBSSID
- multiplexing [145](#)
  - LLC-based [145](#)
  - VC-based [145](#)
- multiprotocol encapsulation [145](#)

## N

- NAT [235, 237, 249](#)
  - applications [250](#)
    - IP alias [250](#)
  - example [250](#)
  - global [249](#)
  - IGA [249](#)
  - ILA [249](#)
  - inside [249](#)
  - local [249](#)
  - outside [249](#)
- port forwarding [236](#)
- port number [251](#)
- services [251](#)
- SIP ALG [245](#)
  - activation [245](#)
- NAT example [251](#)
- navigation panel [42](#)
- Network Address Translation, see NAT
- network map [42, 101](#)
- NNTP [251](#)
- non-proxy calls [319](#)

## O

- OK response [326, 327](#)

## P

- Packet Transfer Mode [115](#)
- parental control
  - define schedule [112](#)
  - schedule setup [111, 289, 290](#)
  - setup [109](#)
- parental control profile
  - create [111](#)
- password [38](#)
- PBC [177](#)
- Peak Cell Rate (PCR) [145](#)
- peer-to-peer calls [319](#)
- Per-Hop Behavior, see PHB [231](#)
- PHB [231, 330](#)
- phone book
  - speed dial [319](#)
- phone functions [334](#)
- PHONE port [34, 35](#)
- PIN, WPS [178](#)
  - example [179](#)
- Ping of Death [278](#)
- Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol, see PPTP
- POP3 [251](#)
- port
  - FIBER [34](#)
  - LAN [34](#)

PHONE1/2 [34, 35](#)  
 USB [34, 35](#)  
 WAN [34](#)  
 port forwarding [236](#)  
 ports [26](#)  
 POWER button [34, 35](#)  
 POWER LED [26, 28, 29](#)  
 PPPoE [144](#)  
   Benefits [144](#)  
   technical reference [144](#)  
 PPTP [251](#)  
 preamble [166, 173](#)  
 preamble mode [176](#)  
 prefix delegation [117](#)  
 private IP address [205](#)  
 PTM [115](#)  
 Push Button Configuration, see PBC  
 push button, WPS [177](#)

## Q

QoS [214, 231, 329](#)  
   marking [215](#)  
   setup [214](#)  
   tagging [215](#)  
   versus CoS [215](#)  
 Quality of Service, see QoS  
 quick start wizard  
   overview [47](#)

## R

RADIUS server [174](#)  
 Real time Transport Protocol, see RTP  
 reset [37, 385](#)  
 RESET button [34, 35](#)  
   using [37](#)  
 restart [386](#)  
 Restart icon [46](#)  
 restoring configuration [385](#)  
 RFC 1058. See RIP.  
 RFC 1389. See RIP.

RFC 1483 [145](#)  
 RFC 1889 [325](#)  
 RFC 3164 [335](#)  
 RIP [213](#)  
 router features [20](#)  
 Routing Information Protocol. See RIP  
 RTP [325](#)  
 RTS threshold [165, 173](#)

## S

screen order  
   change [101](#)  
 security  
   WiFi [173](#)  
 Security Log [337](#)  
 Security Parameter Index, see SPI  
 service access control [364](#)  
 Service Set [152, 158](#)  
 services  
   port forwarding [251](#)  
 Session Initiation Protocol, see SIP  
 setup  
   firewalls [278](#)  
   static route [207, 209, 253](#)  
 SFP+ transceiver [34](#)  
 silence suppression [328](#)  
 Single Rate Three Color Marker, see srTCM  
 SIP [322](#)  
   account [322](#)  
   call progression [325](#)  
   client [323](#)  
   identities [322](#)  
   INVITE request [326, 327](#)  
   number [322](#)  
   OK response [327](#)  
   proxy server [323](#)  
   redirect server [324](#)  
   register server [325](#)  
   servers [323](#)  
   service domain [322](#)  
   URI [322](#)  
   user agent [323](#)  
 SIP ALG [245](#)  
   activation [245](#)

- SMTP [251](#)
  - SNMP [251](#)
  - SNMP trap [251](#)
  - speed dial [319](#)
  - SPI [278](#)
  - srTCM [233](#)
  - SSID [174](#)
    - activation [155](#)
    - MBSSID [176](#)
  - static route [206](#), [213](#)
    - configuration [207](#), [209](#), [253](#)
    - example [206](#)
  - status [100](#)
    - firmware version [103](#)
    - LAN [104](#), [109](#)
    - WAN [104](#)
    - WiFi [104](#)
  - status indicators [26](#)
  - subnet mask [185](#), [205](#)
  - supplementary services [330](#)
  - Sustained Cell Rate (SCR) [145](#)
  - SYN attack [278](#)
  - syslog
    - protocol [335](#)
    - severity levels [335](#)
  - system
    - firmware [381](#)
      - version [103](#)
    - password [38](#)
    - reset [37](#)
    - status [100](#)
      - LAN [104](#), [109](#)
      - WAN [104](#)
      - WiFi [104](#)
    - time [371](#)
  - system information [102](#)
- T**
- Theme icon [46](#)
  - three-way conference [332](#), [333](#)
  - thresholds
    - data fragment [165](#), [173](#)
    - RTS/CTS [165](#), [173](#)
  - time [371](#)
  - time zone
    - set [47](#)
  - top panel
    - LED indicators [23](#)
  - ToS [329](#)
  - TPID [147](#)
  - traffic shaping [145](#)
  - transmission speed
    - cable type [19](#)
  - trTCM [234](#)
  - Two Rate Three Color Marker, see trTCM
  - TWT (Target Wakeup Time) [150](#)
  - Type of Service, see ToS
- U**
- unicast [147](#)
  - Uniform Resource Identifier [322](#)
  - Universal Plug and Play, see UPnP
  - upgrading firmware [381](#)
  - UPnP [193](#)
    - cautions [185](#)
    - NAT traversal [185](#)
    - turn on in Windows 10 Example [196](#)
    - turn on in Windows 7 Example [195](#)
  - USA type call service mode [332](#)
  - USB port [34](#), [35](#)
- V**
- VAD [328](#)
  - Vendor ID [201](#)
  - Virtual Circuit (VC) [145](#)
  - Virtual Local Area Network See VLAN
  - VLAN [147](#)
    - Introduction [147](#)
  - VLAN ID [147](#)
  - VLAN tag [147](#)
  - voice activity detection [328](#)
  - voice coding [327](#)
  - VoIP [322](#)
    - peer-to-peer calls [319](#)

VoIP status [342](#)

## W

Wake on LAN [201](#)

WAN

status [104](#)

Wide Area Network, see WAN [113](#)

WAN IP address [114](#)

warranty [424](#)

note [424](#)

Web Configurator

layout [41](#)

login [38](#)

password [38](#)

WEP [153](#)

WEP Encryption [154](#)

WiFi [171](#)

authentication [173, 174](#)

BSS [175](#)

example [176](#)

channel [172](#)

encryption [175](#)

example [171](#)

fragmentation threshold [165, 173](#)

limitations [175](#)

MAC address filter [159, 174](#)

MBSSID [176](#)

preamble [166, 173](#)

RADIUS server [174](#)

RTS/CTS threshold [165, 173](#)

security [173](#)

SSID [174](#)

activation [155](#)

status [104](#)

WPS [177, 179](#)

example [180](#)

limitations [182](#)

PIN [178](#)

push button [177](#)

WiFi overview [149](#)

WiFi setting

configuration [105](#)

WiFi standards

comparison table [150](#)

WiFi6 introduction [150](#)

wireless basics [149](#)

Wireless tutorial [60](#)

Wizard icon [46](#)

Wizard setup

Internet [47](#)

WLAN button [34](#)

WPA [153](#)

WPA2 [153](#)

WPA2-PSK [153](#)

WPA3-SAE (Simultaneous Authentication of Equals handshake) [153](#)

WPA-PSK (WiFi Protected Access-Pre-Shared Key) [153](#)

WPS [177, 179](#)

activate [37](#)

example [180](#)

limitations [182](#)

PIN [178](#)

example [179](#)

push button [177](#)

WPS button [34, 35](#)

using [37](#)

WPS LED [27, 29](#)

## Z

Zyxel Device

managing [22](#)

Zyxel Family Safety page [295](#)